















# Godeffroy of Bologna.

---

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series. No. LXIV.

1893 (*reprinted* 1926.)



# Godeffroy of Bologne,

OR

## The Siege and Conquest of Jerusalem,

BY

WILLIAM, ARCHBISHOP OF TYRE.

TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH BY

William Caxton,

AND PRINTED BY HIM IN 1481.



EDITED FROM THE COPY IN THE BRITISH MUSEUM, WITH INTRODUCTION,  
NOTES, VOCABULARY, AND INDEXES,

BY

MARY NOYES COLVIN, PH.D.

PR 1119 .E5 no. 64

LONDON

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY  
BY HUMPHREY MILFORD, OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

AMEN HOUSE, WARWICK SQUARE, E.C. 4.

1893

[Reprinted 1926]

**112838**

**Extra Series, LXIV.**

---

PRINTED IN GREAT BRITAIN BY RICHARD CLAY & SONS, LIMITED,  
BUNGAY, SUFFOLK.

## CONTENTS.

							PAGE
INTRODUCTION	...	...	...	...	...	...	vii
TEXT	...	...	...	...	...	...	i
NOTES	...	...	...	...	...	...	313
VOCABULARY	...	...	...	...	...	...	317
INDEX OF NAMES	...	...	...	...	...	...	331
INDEX OF PLACES	...	...	...	...	...	...	343





## INTRODUCTION.

- I. *Caxton's text, and his original, William of Tyre*, A.D. 1163—1183, p. vii.
- II. *Editions, Manuscripts, and Translations of William of Tyre*, p. xi.
- III. WILLIAM OF TYRE, p. xx.
- IV. *William of Tyre's literary works*, p. xxv.
- V. GODFREY OF BOUILLON, p. xxix.

## I.

*Godeffroy of Boloyn, or the Siege and Conqueste of Jerusalem*, was printed by William Caxton, as he himself informs us, in the Abbey of Westminster, the work being finished on the 20th of November, 1481.

There are ten copies still extant of this edition: British Museum (1), Cambridge (2), Imperial Library, Vienna (1), Hunterian College, Glasgow (1), Baptist College, Bristol (1), and (4) in private libraries. The present edition was printed from the copy in the British Museum, which is described by Blades (*Biography and Typography of Wm. Caxton*, London, 1879), as follows:

"The book is a small in-folio, containing 144 leaves, of which two are blank. Excepting the first two gatherings, the signatures are entirely in Arabic numerals.

"Collation;—A is A 3<sup>n</sup> with A<sup>1</sup> blank, b a 2<sup>n</sup> b<sup>1</sup> being blank; 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, and 16 are all 4<sup>ns</sup>, 17 is a 3<sup>n</sup>.

"Typographic peculiarities;—There is no title page. A full page has forty lines, which are of even length, and measure 4 $\frac{3}{4}$  inches without folios or catchwords. Space is left at the commencement of chapters for the insertion of three to seven-line initials.—The volume commences with a blank leaf, after which follows the prologue or preface, the text beginning on A<sup>2</sup>, with a space for a four-line initial, thus, 'The hye, courageous faytes and valyaunt actes of noble, illustrious, and vertuous personnes, etc.', and ending halfway down the recto of the 6th folio, of sig. 17., the verso being blank."

Mr. Blades also states that the book is translated from the French, adding, "the author of the book appears to be unknown." Happily, this last conjecture of Mr. Blades is a mistake, as the author of our text, far from being unknown, is no less a personage than William, Archbishop of Tyre from 1175 to 1184, and Caxton's *Godeffræye of Boloyn*e is a translation of the first hundred pages or so of a History of the First Crusade, and the French establishments in the Holy Land, written by William, in the second half of the 12th century.

It is a book which not only was a standard authority through all the Middle Ages, but one which even up to the present time is regarded as reliable in most particulars, and forms the base of all modern histories of this period. The book was written first in Latin, but was soon put into French, from which Caxton translated it into English. His translation is almost a literal one. He turns many of his French constructions into English, without any attempt at Anglicizing them, even transferring a French word bodily when he does not readily find its English equivalent. On the whole, he understands his French, although there are incorrect renderings here and there, owing more to hasty reading, it seems, than to actual ignorance.

The editor of this text, in preparing it for publication, read the English first with a French Manuscript of the 15th century edition, from which without doubt it was translated. Curiously enough, MS. 68 of the Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris, with which it was collated, belonged originally to Louis de Bruges, Seigneur de la Gruythuyse. Blades says of him :

"Among the nobles at the court of Phillip the Good (Duke of Burgundy, in 1419), many emulated the literary taste of their sovereign, but none showed greater judgment and liberality in the formation of his library than Louis de Bruges.

"This nobleman, who had risen by his talents to the highest position, received at his château of Oost-camp, near Bruges, in 1470, Edward IV. of England, when he sought refuge from the Lancastrians, in Flanders, and was afterwards rewarded by the King with the title of Earl of Winchester. His library was scarcely inferior to that of his sovereign, and nearly the whole of its manuscripts were the production of Flemish artists, at Bruges or Ghent. The large size of the volumes, the beauty of the vellum, the elegance of the writing, the artistic merit of the illuminations and ornaments, and the luxury displayed in the bindings are evidences of the interest

taken by the Seigneur de la Gruythuyse in the formation of his library.

"At his death it passed to his son Jean, and was soon after added to the collection, already existing, at the château of Blois, belonging to the kings of France. Great pains were taken to obliterate the armorial bearings, devices, and monograms which showed the former owner of the manuscripts; but these attempts were only partly successful, as about one hundred volumes, now among the most precious treasures of the Bibliothèque Nationale of Paris, still attest that they once belonged to this celebrated collection."

As Caxton lived for many years in Bruges, as the representative of the English nation, and was on friendly terms with many of the Flemish nobility, there is little doubt that he was well acquainted with the library of Louis de Bruges, and probably had himself spent many an hour over this very volume, which is a magnificent specimen of Flemish handicraft—a large in-folio, with writing like copper-plate, and adorned with many beautiful artistically-executed miniatures in grisaille. But, although as far as execution and binding are concerned, a book worthy of our highest praise, the text itself, which, as may be seen by the headings of the different chapters, is the same as the copy from which Caxton translated, is a very poor one, and the result is that many of Caxton's sentences are faulty, obscure, or thoroughly unintelligible, owing to the faultiness and obscurity of his original. In many cases, the editor of the present text, in order to get at the original meaning, has been obliged to have recourse to vol. ii. of the *Recueil des Croisades*, published by the Academy of Inscriptions and Belles Lettres, in Paris, which contains not only the corrected French text of William's history, but also the Latin original, to which an appeal has been made in doubtful cases.

Some obscurities still remaining have been cleared up by Paulin Paris's recent edition of *William of Tyre*.

For aid in this preface, and in the Index of Places and Names, at the close of the book, the editor is also much indebted to the following authorities:

H. PRUTZ: Studien über Wilhelm von Tyrus, im Neu-Archiv Deutscher Geschichte, Bd. viii.

PAULIN PARIS: La Chanson d'Antioche.

PAULIN PARIS: Guillaume de Tyr. et Ses Continuateurs.

ROERICHT: Zur Geschichte der Ersten Kreuz-Züge.

H. VON SYBEL: Geschichte des Ersten Kreuz-Zuges.

DANSEY: The English Crusaders.

VON HASSELT : *Les Croisés Belges.*

VON REIFFENBERG, in vols. iv. and v. of *Les Chroniques Belges : Le Chevalier au Cygne and Godefroid de Bouillon.*

BARON DE HODY : *Description des Tombeaux de Godefroid de Bouillon.* Bruxelles, 1855.

PIGEONNEAU : *Le Cycle de la Croisade et de la Famille de Bouillon.*

HIST. LITT. DE LA FRANCE, vol. xiv., article by Pastouret on William of Tyre.

BRUNET : *Manual du Libraire.*

D. MARTÈNE ET D. DURAND : *Amplissima Collectio.* Paris, 1724-33.

MURATORI : *Rerum Italicarum Scriptores*, vol. vii.

GUIZOT : *Collection des Memoires sur L'Histoire du France*, vols. xvi.—xviii.

DESCHAMPS : *Dictionnaire de Géographie Ancienne et Moderne.* Paris, 1870.

LA GRAN CONQUISTA DE ULTRA-MAR. Madrid, 1858.

SPRUNER-MENKE : *Hand-Atlas des Mittel-Alters.*

MIGNE : *Patrologiæ Latinæ : Tomus 20 /*

„ „ *Graecæ* „ 86.

„ *Dictionnaire de Géographie Sacrée et Ecclésiastique*, vols. 28—30 of the *Cyclopédie Théologique.*

FREEMAN : *The Historical Geography of Europe.*

FROEBESE : *Gottfried von Bouillon. Wissenschaftliche Vorträge*, 14th Series. Berlin, 1879.

TASSO : *Jerusalem Delivered.*

COLLIN DE PLANCY : *Godefroid de Bouillon.* Paris, 1842.

AULT-DUMESNIL : *Dictionnaire des Croisades* in vol. xviii. of Migne's *Nouvelle Encyclopédie Théologique.*

PERE MAIMBOURG : *Hist. des Croisades.* Paris, 1686.

MCCLINTOCK AND STRONG : *Cyclopedia of Biblical Theology and Ecclesiastical Literature.*

GASTON PARIS, on *La Gran Conquista*, *Romania*, No. 68, Oct. 1888 and Oct. 1890.

TICKNOR : *History of Spanish Literature.*

PALGRAVE : *History of Normandy and England.*

ROGIER : *La Noblesse Française aux Croisades.*

RECUEIL DES CROISADES. Tomes i. and ii., published by the Academy of Inscriptions and Belles Lettres. Paris, 1844.

*II. Editions, MSS., and Translations of Wm. of Tyre.* xi

MAS-LATRIE: *Chronique d'Ernoul et de Bernard le Tresorier*. Collection de la Société de L'Histoire de France, vol. iii.

RIANT: *Catalogue des Manuscrits de L'Eracles*. Archives de L'Orient Latin, vol. i. Paris, 1881.

CHEVALLIER: *Repertoire des Sources historiques du Moyen-Age*. Paris, 1877-1886.

T. FULLER: *History of the Holy War*, ed. 1840.

MRS. W. BUSK: *Mediaeval Popes, Emperors and Kings*. 4 vols., 1854-6.

II. DIFFERENT EDITIONS, MANUSCRIPTS, AND TRANSLATIONS  
OF WILLIAM OF TYRE.

The original history was written, as has been already mentioned, in Latin. It was composed in Palestine, between the years 1163 and 1183, and consisted of twenty-two completed books, divided into chapters, and of one chapter of a twenty-third book. The work was evidently either left unfinished, or mutilated after William's death, as he tells us expressly in his preface that he has divided his work into twenty-three books, each of which is in turn divided into chapters. "*Distinximus autem volumem universam in libros xxiii, eorumque singulos certis designavimus capitulis, quo lectori facilius quicquid de articulis historiæ sibi viderit necessarium occurrat.*" The theory that portions of the history were destroyed after William's death, is a very plausible one, when we reflect that these closing chapters, if closing chapters there were, must have contained the record of events which did not present his political opponents in a very favourable light, so that they would have had every reason for suppressing them.

The book commences with a brief general account of the situation of affairs before and at the time of the first crusade. Then follows a detailed account of that great movement, particular stress being laid on the part taken therein by the French and Flemish chivalry, and especially by Godfrey of Bouillon. The ninth book treats of the taking of Jerusalem by the Crusaders, and of the choice of Godfrey as king, closing with his sudden and unfortunate death. The other thirteen books contain the history of Palestine under French rule, down to the time of William's own death, which is supposed to have taken place in 1184.

His preface, written after he had nearly completed his work, tells us of its aim and scope :—

"Narrationis seriem ordinavimus exordium, sumentes ab exitu virorum fortium, et Deo amabilem principum qui, a regnis occidentilibus, vocante Domino egressi, terram promissionis et pene universam Syriane in manu forti sibi vendicaverunt, et inde usque ad regnum domini Balduini quarti, qui in ordine regum computato domino duce Godefrido qui primus regnum obtinuit, locum habuit septimum, per annos LXXXIV, cum multa diligentia protraximus historiam."

This history had, in the course of time, several different continuators. The first of these was one Ernoul, member of a noble family of Giblet, a town of Palestine, on the coast north of Beirut. Ernoul, who must have been a well-grown youth at the time of William's death, served as a young squire under Balian d'Ybelin, who had been made Lord Lieutenant of the kingdom of Jerusalem, after the capture of king Guy of Lusignan in 1187. Young Ernoul followed his master through all the vicissitudes of this critical period, and assisted in the defence of Jerusalem when besieged by Saladin, a few months later. Years after,—after he had become one of the most able and learned jurists in the High Court of Cyprus,—Ernoul of Giblet wrote, in the French language, an account of the events in which he had taken part, his intention being to give the world a truthful narration of the conquest of Jerusalem, and of the irreparable loss of the Holy Cross.

Ernoul's story stops with the year 1228. Here, however, an unknown pen takes it up, and, after some condensation of the previous matter, brings it down to about 1231. This last writer narrates especially the events of the Crusade of Frederic II. of Germany, ending with the capture of St. Jean d'Acre.

At about this same time, in France, one Bernard, called the treasurer, *Bernardus Thesaurius*, supposed to have belonged to the monastery of St. Pierre in Corbie, wrote a history of affairs in the East, ending also with the year 1231. Corbie is a little town in France, east of Amiens. Here existed formerly a magnificent abbey of Benedictines of great wealth and antiquity, said to have been founded by Queen Bathilde in 662. The history of this abbey has been written by a Benedictine of Picardy, but nothing has been learnt of Bernard, except the fact that the office of treasurer has existed there since the 13th century.

Already, before the continuation of the unknown author was finished, or Bernard's account was written, the Latin original of *William of Tyre* was known in France, where it received, without a doubt, the title with which it has come down to us, viz., *Historia*

*Rerum in Partibus Transmarinis Gestarum* ; and certainly by 1225, if not before, it was translated into French.

Now we have, as we see, three or four different historians, all handling the same subject, but at different epochs. What more natural than that they should be arranged chronologically ; and by the omission of prefaces, and by judicious condensation, be made into one compact whole. This is exactly what was done by some one, perhaps by Bernard himself, who, after he had written his account of affairs in the *Orient*, as an independent composition, may have conceived the idea of combining it with William's and Ernoul's histories. Be this as it may, the compilation closes with Bernard's work, which ends thus : *Explicit liber ; ceste conte de la terre d'Outremer, fist faire li tresoriers Bernars de St. Pierre de Corbie en la carnation.* Mello C.C. XXXII.

Naturally, for centuries, and even down to the modern critical examination of the book, Bernard was regarded as the real author of the whole work. His compilation was the history, par-excellence, of the Crusades and the Holy Land through all the Middle Ages. Strangely enough, although the compiler left Bernard's name at the close of the book, he forgot to give it any title at the beginning ; and as a result of this forgetfulness, each editor, or even copyist, felt himself privileged to bestow upon the book what seemed to him a suitable appellation, so no one text probably in the whole history of literature has had so many different names. The most common and curious of all them is that of the *Roman d'Eracles*, a title given by some rubricator, because the first line begins, "*Les anciennes ystoires dient que Eracles en fut moult bon Chrestien, et gouverneur de l'empire de Romme,*" William having introduced his history by recalling the fact of the conquest of Jerusalem by the Persians, and their deliverance by the Emperor Heraclius, in 629. Other more appropriate titles are : *Le Livre des Passages d'Outre Mer* ; *Le Livre de l'Acquisition et de la Perte de la Terre Sainte* ; *Les Chroniques d'Outre Mer* ; *Livres des Voyages à la Terre Sainte* ; *Histoires du Passage de Godefroy de Bouillon*, or simply, *Le Livre du Conquête*.

Ernoul and Bernard form what M. Mas-Latrie,—who first disentangled the intricate relations of the different editions of *William of Tyre* to each other,—calls the "first epoch" of his continuators.

A few years later than Bernard, in 1248, St. Louis of France "put on the cross," and departed for the Holy Land ; the attention

xiv II. *Four Groups of Continuators of William of Tyre.*

of the Christian world was again drawn towards the East, and new deeds of valour called for a new chronicler. Another continuation was composed in the French language, taking the narrative up where Bernard left it, and bringing it down to the year 1261. This continuation has been published in the French Academy edition of the continuators of William of Tyre, under the title, *Continuation d'après le Manuscrit de Rothelin*.

Soon after this appeared what may be called the third series of continuators. This third series is not a direct continuation of the second series. It does not take up the narrative where that left it, in 1261, but attaches itself to Ernoul and Bernard, that is, to the first class of continuators, and closes with the year 1275. This third continuation, according to the best judges, is the work of two hands, and was written entirely in the East. The first half is supposed to have been the composition of a knight of Cyprus or Syria, and contains the history of the kingdoms of Cyprus and Jerusalem, united during the minority of King Henry III. of Lusignan; the latter half, which narrates the events transpiring between 1248 and 1275, seems to have been written by a monk, as it is more scholarly in style and character.

The fourth and last group of continuators are only copies of the second series (that closing in 1261), to which has been added an account of the taking of St. Jean d'Acre, and of events subsequent to 1288, so that, in this edition, there is a gap in the history, from 1261 to 1288.

Most of these different series exist only in manuscript, there being several copies of each known. M. Riant, in *Les Archives de l'Orient Latin*, gives the following summary of the manuscripts of William of Tyre and his continuators, suppressing very justly M. Mas-Latrie's last class, which (as he observes) differs from the others only by the addition of matter that is really foreign to the rest of the work.

- I. Class. Translation of *William of Tyre*; eleven MSS., two of which are now lost.
- II. Class. In three subdivisions, and containing thirteen MSS.:  
*a.* Ernoul to 1228, five MSS.; *b.* *Estoires d'Oultre Mer, et de la Naissance Saladin*, three MSS.; *c.* *Bernard le Tresorier* to 1231, five MSS.
- III. Class. *William of Tyre* translated, and continued down to 1231, twenty-two MSS.



IV. Class (Rothelin). *William of Tyre* translated and continued down to 1261. (This is the Academy edition.) Sixteen MSS.

V. Class. *William of Tyre* translated and continued down to 1275. This has been published by the Academy, and by Dom Martène and Guizot, eleven MSS.

An excellent description of many of these manuscripts is given in vol. ii. of the *Recueil des Croisades*, published by the French Academy of Inscriptions and Belles Lettres.

Taking into consideration the extreme popularity of William of Tyre's history in France, as attested by the large number of manuscripts still existing, it is strange that more translations into other languages have not been found. Of those known, but one seems to have been in any sense a popular book, namely, that into Spanish, which is known under the title of *La Gran Conquista de Ultra Mar*. This is a vast compilation, of which M. Gaston Paris has commenced to give us the first satisfactory analysis in the *Romania*, No. 68, Oct. 1888. *La Gran Conquista* takes as its basis the history of William of Tyre, inserting at appropriate intervals other French compositions treating of the Crusades or of Godfrey of Bouillon, such as *La Chanson d'Antioch*, *La Chanson de Jerusalem*, *Le Chevallier au Cygne*, the poem of *Les Chétifs*, also the romans of *Berthe*, of *Mainet*, of *Flore and Blanchfleur*. It is an immense work, filling a volume of 659 pages of two columns each, of a quarto edition. The date of this compilation is uncertain. The prologue of the first printed edition, that of 1503, states that it was made at the suggestion and under the auspices of Alphonso X. of Castile, who reigned from 1252 to 1284. The epilogue of a manuscript of the 15th century attributes it to Alphonso XI., who died in 1350, while the epilogue of the oldest manuscript known, that of the 14th century, gives the merit of the undertaking to the son of Alphonso X., Sancho IV., who died in 1295. M. Paris remarks that this latter date is probably the correct one,—the first being too remote, and the second too recent, to be accepted. Both of the epilogues mentioned state that the kings of whom they speak caused the book to be translated from the French into Castilian.

There is no doubt that the Spanish translator possessed a copy of William of Tyre with the third series of continuators, namely, that bringing it down to 1275, as *La Gran Conquista* follows that edition closely, with additions (according to M. Paris) from a source still

unknown. M. Paris also conjectures that the French MS. at the disposal of the arranger of the book may have been a defective one, as the translation breaks off abruptly in the middle of a sentence, leaving the narration at the beginning of the year 1271. Ticknor, in a note on *La Gran Conquista*, in his *History of Spanish Literature*, says that its closing chapters (those giving an account of Conrad of Hohenstaufen, and the assassination of Henry, grandson of Henry III. of England, at Viterbo) were added by the Spanish arranger; but a comparison with the original shows that these details were all literally and exactly translated from the French.

Of *La Gran Conquista* three manuscripts are known: two in the National Library at Madrid, and one in the Royal Library. The first printed edition was that of Hans Gicssen, Salamanca 1503, in folio. A later edition is that of Madrid 1858, in 8vo.

We have one *English* translation, that made by William Caxton, printed for the first time in 1481, and reprinted in the present volume.

Caxton made his translation from the same edition as *La Gran Conquista*, viz. that ending with the year 1275.

Riant in his enumeration of the versions of Eracles, mentions a second English translation contained in manuscript, Reg. 18. B. 26, of the British Museum, and entitled *The History of the Holy Ware*. This manuscript is a paper one, in folio, containing 256 leaves, and written about the middle of the 16th century, apparently late in the reign of Henry VIII., instead of in the 15th century, as Riant gives it, on the authority of the old Royal Catalogue, by Casley, which is wrong.

This *History of the Holy Ware* is a compilation containing: I. An account of Robert, Duke of Normandy, of his visit to the Holy Land, and of his son William, afterwards the Conqueror of England. II. A narration of the events of the First Crusade, taken, according to the author, from the book of the *Conquest of Jerusalem*, and from the book of the *Nine Worthies* in French. III. An account of the adventures of Richard, Cœur de Lion, in the Third Crusade. IV. A narration of the prowesses of Prince Edward, son of Henry III., and of the events of the Ninth Crusade. V. A "Treatie" translated from the French of a certain Frère Hayton, treating of the different countries of the East, and of their great rulers and heroes. The book ends with directions for making the

journey to the Holy Land, and rules for the behaviour of pilgrims en route.

Part II. of this compilation is supposed by Riant to be a direct translation of the compiler from one of the numerous French editions of William of Tyre. On investigation, however, it proves to be only a condensation of Caxton's translation.

The first chapters consist of a genealogy and biography of Godfrey of Bouillon, taken without doubt, as its author says, from the "IX boke of the IX worthies in french." After this introduction, the history of the First Crusade is taken up, at the departure of Gautier Sans Avoir for the Holy Land, and continued down to the death of Godfrey. The close of this book, at the same point where Caxton ends his translation, together with the fact that all of Caxton's mistakes in translation and in proper names are found in it, is pretty conclusive proof that our unknown arranger did not trouble himself to go back to the French for his materials, but availed himself of Caxton's translation. The matter is very materially abridged, the condensations being made with great ability and discretion by omitting the long rhetorical speeches, and giving their substance in brief. Many minor and unimportant details are also judiciously omitted; the wording is in general exactly that of Caxton.

The fifth part of this compilation, that translated from Frère Haiton, was published in 1526 by Pynson, but the first, third, and fourth seem never to have been printed.

As to the translations into German, it is not easy to decide from the brief descriptions given, whether those mentioned by bibliographers are really translations of *William of Tyre*, or of the poems of *Godfrey of Bouillon*, and the *Chevalier au Cygne*, which were extremely popular in the 13th and 14th centuries, and were rendered into a prose form, which caused them to resemble not a little the genuine history, and to be often confounded with it.

Brunet, in his *Manuel du Libraire*, under the heading "Godefroy de Bouillon," and M. Reiffenberg (Int. to *Le Chevalier au Cygne*) mention several German and Flemish translations of the romance of *Godefroid de Bouillon*. The oldest of these Brunet describes as follows:

"It was printed at Augsburg in 1482, with this title 'Hienach folgt. ein warhaft und bewerte historie wie die turche uñ andre geschlecht der ungleubigen die cristeltichen Kirche,' etc.; on the back of the last leaf is printed 'Dise warhafftige history hat gedruht

hanns Bämle zu Augsperg, und volendet au Mäntag vor Jeorg. Anno Te JM Lxxxij jare ze' (1482)."

The book is a Gothic in-folio. It contains 47 half-page woodcuts. This book is mentioned by Zapf, *History of Printing in Augsburg*, I., p. 65, No. 21, under the title of *Historie von der Kreuz Fahrt*. It was reprinted at Augsburg in 1502 by Lucas Zeissenmeier under the following title: *Herzog Godfried wie er wider die Turgen und hayden gestritten*.

No reliable analysis of the contents of these books seems ever to have been made; but the Bibliothèque Nationale of Paris, according to M. Brunet, possesses a Flemish translation of this same work printed at Harlem in 1486, and reprinted in Antwerp in 1510 and 1511. This Flemish copy, however, on the authority of M. Pigeonneau (*Le Cycle de la Croisade et de la Famille de Bouillon*), who has examined it, is not at all a copy of either the poem of *Le Chevalier au Cygne* or of *Godefroid de Bouillon*, or of both combined, but is a translation of *William of Tyre*; so the conclusion is that the Augsburg German editions must also be translations of William's history. Pigeonneau gives the following description of the Flemish book: "It is a small in-quarto, without title, date and name of editor, printed in Gothic characters and ornamented (like the Augsburg edition of 1482) with 47 wood cuts. It commences with these words, '*Hier beghient prologhe van der Scoene historien Hertoghe Godewort van Boloen*.'"

In Italy the first translation into the popular language that I have been able to find, with the limited means of research at my disposal, is that by Lorenza di Firenze, which bears the date of 1347, and the following title, "*Il Libro del Passagio di Terra Sancta, et e traslato di francescho in fiorentino, per Lorenzo di Firenze cittadino*." This manuscript is to be found in the Laurentian Library in Florence, is written on vellum, is in folio, and is translated from the second class of William of Tyre's editions. Its designation is Phet. LXI, No. 44. In 1562, at Venice, an Italian translation was printed by Guiseppe Horologgi, entitled, "*Historia della guerra sacra de Gerusalemme della terra promissione, et de tutti la Soria ricuperata da christiani da Guglielmo arcevesco di Tiro, tradotta da Guiseppe Horologgi, Venetia 1562*." Guizot in *La Collection des Memoires sur l'Histoire de France*, vol. xvi, p. 14, mentions a third Italian translation made by one Thomas Baglioni, in 1610, and also published in Venice.

The most curious thing about the history of our book is its re-translation into Latin, at an early date, showing that the French translation must have been considered the original composition, and that the Latin original was comparatively unknown. In 1725, Muratori published a collection of Italian historians, entitled *Rerum Italicarum Scriptores*. Among these historians he included Francisco Pipino, a monk of Bologna, who lived in the first half of the 14th century, and wrote in Latin a history of the First Crusade and the events which transpired in the Holy Land between the years 1095 and 1230. His book is introduced by the following statement: "Here commences the history of the Conquest of the Holy Land, which the author has translated from French into Latin." He closes thus: "All these things, about the life and deeds of King John, are taken from the history of Bernard the Treasurer." Pipino translated, as can easily be seen, from a manuscript of the third class, that containing the continuation of Ernoul and Bernard, which he, like everybody else, regarded as the work of Bernard alone.

Riant, in his list of the versions of Eracles, also cites two other Latin re-translations, both-anonymous: one in the University Library at Leyden (Voss 110). This is a paper folio of the 16th century, and is supposed to be a copy of an old MS. written in Italy. The second is at Utrecht, No. 285 of the City Library, a manuscript of the 15th century, although this latter piece of information seems to be regarded as doubtful by M. Riant.

We have also very good evidence that a Latin re-translation was made in England as early as the first half of the 13th century. Ralph, prior at this time of the monastery of Coggeshall in Essex, wrote a history of the Holy Land, which he calls *Chronicon Terræ Sanctæ*, describing especially the siege of Jerusalem by Saladin, at which he himself had been present. In order to excuse the lack of details in regard to many previous events in the history of the European establishments in Palestine, Ralph refers his readers to a Latin history treating of these events, and lately translated from the French by the prior of the Holy Trinity in London, a book which could hardly fail to be one of the earlier editions of *William of Tyre*.

Since the invention of printing, there have been many excellent editions of *William of Tyre*, both in Latin and French. It was published for the first time in Latin in 1549, in Bâle, in folio, by Phillibert Poyssenot of Dôle. Henri Panteleon issued a new edition

in the same city in 1564, adding a continuation, also in Latin, written by one John Herold, a learned German of the 16th century, and a native of Höchstädt, in Suabia. Herold narrates the history of the Holy Land from 1185, bringing it down as late as the year 1527. The earliest French edition printed was that published in Paris in 1575, in folio, under the title "*Histoire de la guerre Sainte Dite proprement La Franciade orientale, faite latine par Guillaume archevesque de Tyr, et traduit en Français par Gabr. du Préau.*" In 1611 Bongars published a collection of Latin writers on the Crusades, under the title *Gesta Dei per Francos*, 2 vol. in folio, in which he included *William of Tyre*. Between 1724 and 1733, Dom Martène and Dom Durand, benedictines of St. Maur, men of great learning and research, published a second collection of Latin authors on the Crusades, entitled *Amplissima Collectio*, in 9 vols., folio. The fifth volume of this collection contains the Latin version of *William of Tyre*.

Other more modern editions of importance are those of Migne, *Patrologiæ Latinæ Cursus*, vol. 201, and Guizot, vols. 16—18 of the *Collection des Memoires sur l'Histoire de France*, Paris 1823—25. The *Académie des Inscriptions et Belles Lettres* commenced in the first half of this century a collection of texts relating to the Crusades, entitled *Recueil des Croisades*: vols. I and II, which appeared in 1844, contain not only the Latin, but the corresponding French text of *William of Tyre*. The latest edition in the French language, and without a doubt the most accurate and scholarly that has yet appeared, is that of Paulin Paris, Paris 1879, which contains, however, simply the history as written by William, without any of the various continuations.

### III. WILLIAM OF TYRE.

Of William of Tyre, second archbishop of the name, but little is known, except what can be gathered from his own writings. He was born about 1130, without a doubt in Palestine, which, in the prologue to his history, he calls his beloved birth-place, *Natalis soli magis tracti dulcedine*. He was probably of French descent, as shown by his familiarity with French ways and customs, people and events, although Paulin Paris hazards the supposition that he was an Italian, as he speaks of being called to Rome on one occasion, not only by public business, but also by private affairs.

As to his rank, authorities differ; Prutz (*Neues Archiv der Geschichte*, etc., vol. viii. p. 93), stating that he was from a middle-class family. Prutz bases his conclusion on a Cartulary of the Church of the Holy Sepulchre, of the year 1175, in which the name of a certain Radolphus, brother of the archbishop, William of Tyre, occurs, as belonging to a family not of noble rank. On the other hand, Pastouret (*Hist. Litt. de la France*, vol. xiv., p. 588) affirms, on the authority of one Etienne of Lusignan, author of a history of Cyprus, that William of Tyre was related to some of the leading nobles of the kingdom of Jerusalem. However this may be, it is certain that he was brought up in or near Jerusalem, with which he was thoroughly acquainted. Every part of the city is known to him intimately, not only as it was in his day, but as it had been in the past. In mentioning Jerusalem, he always calls it "regio nostra," and when speaking of anything in connection with that city or its inhabitants, he says "we," "ours," to distinguish it from the Principality of Antioch or the Counties of Tripolis and Edessa. On this subject we have also the authority of the unknown continuator of William, who tells us (Book XXIII., chap. 10): "The archbishop of Tyre was called William, and was born in Jerusalem."

As to the exact date of his birth it is difficult to decide, although both French and German savants have spent much time in investigating this point. We can only judge approximately by incidental remarks that William makes about fresh events in his life. He certainly studied, as a young man, for a time at least, in Europe. He says of himself that he was studying "trans mare" at the time of the divorce of Amalric, king of Jerusalem, from Agnes of Courtenay, daughter of Joscelin II., Count of Edessa in 1162 (Book XIX., chap. 4):

"Quaesivimus sane nos postea diligentur, tamquam circa talia curiosi quoto consanguinitas gradu se contingent, qui non de scholis redieramus, sed trans mare, circa liberalium artium adhuc detinebantur studia, quando Hierosolymis haec facta sunt."

Just where he was studying is only to be conjectured. Pastouret imagines in Paris, while other authorities remark that he seems very well acquainted with Rome; and the supposition has even been advanced that his studies may have been prosecuted at Constantinople, which theory would account for his thorough knowledge of the Greek language, and also for his acquaintance with Byzantine politics and dignitaries. Wherever he received his education, it was

most certainly unusually thorough and extensive, embracing a range of studies which only a man brought into constant contact with both the Occidental and Oriental civilization and literature would pursue at this epoch.

That he was an excellent Latinist is shown, not only by his fine style, which compares favourably with any other composition that the Middle Ages produced, but by his extended acquaintance with classical Latin literature, citations and references being found in his history from nearly all the best-known Latin authors, such as Ovid, Virgil, Horace, Lucan, Juvenal, Statius, Terence, Cicero, Livy, and Sallust. Of his proficiency in the Greek language there is no doubt. He says himself that he spoke it (Book XIII., chaps. 1 and 2), and the fact that he was sent on more than one diplomatic mission to Constantinople confirms his own statement. He also spoke and read Arabic with ease. In speaking of his *History of the Arab Princes*, he tells us that he followed mainly Arabian authorities. His explanation of Arabic terms also shows his familiarity with the language.

A young priest of his learning and abilities did not have to wait long for preferment, and in 1163, which must have been immediately after his return from his Western studies, we find him figuring as a Canon of the church in Tyre. Although not living in Jerusalem, William evidently soon became a special favourite with the king, Amalric I., at whose request he was made an archdeacon on the 1st of September, 1167. The little kingdom of Jerusalem was at this time agitated by the plan that Amalric had conceived of subjugating Egypt. For many years a civil war had been waged in that country headed by two rival viziers. As each party was threatened with defeat, it had applied in turn to the Turks or to the Latins for aid, so that Amalric had had an excellent opportunity for obtaining a thorough knowledge both of the wealth and of the weakness of his neighbours. Induced partly by cupidity, and partly by fear of the Turks,—who under the brave Nouredin were becoming more powerful every day,—Amalric decided that the time had come for a serious invasion of Egypt, and, to this end, he sent an embassy to Constantinople to ask for assistance from the Emperor Manuel, whose niece he had lately married. William, the newly-made archdeacon, accompanied this embassy, which was composed of Greeks and Latins. He remained in Constantinople, presumably on business for the king, until October 1168, when he returned to Tyre and to his church duties. His relations to his archbishop seem, however, not



to have been very agreeable, and in a few months, early in 1169, we find him starting for Rome, partly, as he expressly states, on private business, and partly to get out of the way of his unfriendly superior. Towards the close of this same year he returned to Palestine, but not to Tyre, as Amalric offered him the tutorship of his nine-year-old son, afterwards known as Baldwin IV. or Baldwin the Leper. From this time on, William lived in Jerusalem, and seems to have grown daily in favour with the king, already well-disposed towards him.

That William was a kind and able instructor is not to be doubted by any one who reads the accounts that he gives of his royal charge. The most interesting is that of Book XXI., chap. 1 :—

“The child made great progress in his studies, and more and more gave us reason to centre our hopes upon him. He had a fine figure, and was more skilful in riding and controlling a horse than any of his ancestors had been. He had a good memory, and was fond of conversing. He was economical, and remembered a kindness done to him as well as an injury. He resembled his father, not only in face but in form, and in his walk, and the sound of his voice. His mind was quick, but his tongue was slow. Like his father, also, he was fond of hearing interesting stories told, and was always ready to follow good advice.”

The boy seems in return to have conceived a deep attachment for the wise and learned prelate.

In 1173 Amalric died, and Baldwin succeeded to the throne, at the age of 13. The future did not promise tranquillity or happiness to the young king, who was even then afflicted with an incurable and loathsome malady. The political situation of Jerusalem, always one of danger, was at this time more precarious than ever. Weakened by the fruitless attempts of Amalric to conquer Egypt, it was now torn by internal dissensions, as the more powerful barons contended among themselves for the supremacy, foreseeing the speedy death of the sick boy. Amidst this confusion the fortunes of William throve steadily. He was immediately appointed Chancellor of the Kingdom, as he tells us, Book XXI., chap. 5, “*ut esset qui regiarum epistolarum curam habent.*” Very soon after, in 1174, Bishop Radulphus of Bethlehem died, and William was installed in the vacant bishopric. At about the same time he must have been made archdeacon of the church in Nazareth, as the records show him in possession of this dignity in December 1174. The very next year, his old enemy, Frederic Archbishop of Tyre, died, and William was named as his successor. For the next three years we find William occupied with his double

duties as Chancellor and as Archbishop, keeping an attentive eye on the political condition of his land,—which we know from his own words was a constant and ever-increasing source of anxiety to him,—and at the same time defending firmly the rights of his pupil against all encroachments. In September 1178 he went with the dignitaries of the Holy Land to Rome, to the third Council held in St. John Lateran. There he was deputed to draw up a report of the Council, of the number of persons present, of its proceedings, and its decisions. He remained in Rome until September 1179, when he started for home, stopping on the way several months at the court of Manuel, Emperor of Constantinople, on political business, and arriving in Tyre the 6th of July, 1180. On his return, William found his native land in greater need than ever of wise counsels and energetic action, and from this time on he occupied himself much more with statesmanship than with ecclesiastical matters. The rapidly increasing power of Saladin was a source of the greatest apprehension to the feeble little Latin kingdom, and none saw more clearly than William, the dangers that threatened them, or strove more untiringly to prepare for the struggle which was inevitably to come. Although his home was ostensibly in Tyre, he spent all of his time in Jerusalem with the young king.

Late in the year 1182 came the news of Saladin's approach at the head of a powerful army. After ravaging Galilee, Saladin commenced the siege of Beirut. Baldwin, accompanied by William, hastened to Tyre, where a fleet was fitted out to be sent to the rescue of the threatened city. The two, pupil and master, celebrated Christmas at Tyre, and then returned in January 1183 to Jerusalem.

This is the last positive record by himself that we have of William of Tyre. The last chapter of his history mentions the incidents of the spring and summer of this year, without any specific information as to his own movements. Of the date of his death, nothing certain is known. Ernoul, in his continuation, gives the following account of it.—In 1180, Amalric, patriarch of Jerusalem, died. The question of his successor was one of great importance, as the position of spiritual director of the Holy City, and that of guardian of the Holy Sepulchre, was regarded by the whole Christian world as one of the most honourable that the Church had in its gift. Sybilla, mother of the infant Baldwin V., favoured Heraclius of Cæsarea, a man of fine personal appearance: “*Beau clerc était,*” says Ernoul, “*et pour sa beauté l’ama la mère le roi.*” His habits, however,

were dissolute, and William opposed him energetically, not only on the ground of his personal unfitness for this lofty position, but also because of a prophecy that the Holy Cross which had been brought back to Jerusalem under a Heraclius, should be taken away again under a Heraclius.

Heraclius, notwithstanding, received the patriarchate. William, convinced of the evils that would result from this unworthy choice at such a critical time, decided to appeal to Rome, and hastened hither to prevent if possible its confirmation. Here he died suddenly, killed, it was supposed, by poison administered by a physician sent after him for that purpose by Heraclius. As the quaint old French of the 13th century has it, "Quand Eracle sut qu'il ala à Rome, dist a un sien fisicien qu'il alast après, et quil l'empoissonast ; et cil si fist ; si fu mort."

#### IV. WILLIAM OF TYRE'S LITERARY WORKS.

The literary productions of William of Tyre, of which we have to-day any knowledge, are three in number.

I. The already mentioned Report of the Third Lateran Council, held in Rome in 1179. In his 21st Book, chap. 26, William refers to this Report thus : "If any one would like to know the statutes of this Council, the names, the number, and the titles of the bishops who were present, let him read the account that we wrote of it, at the request of the holy fathers who were there present, which we have caused to be deposited in the archives of the holy church at Tyre, among other books that we have placed there."

II. A History of the Arabian Princes, from the time of Mahomet up to the year 1184. This book which was entitled *De Gestis Orientalium Principum*, or *De Orientalibus Principibus et eorum Actibus*, is now unfortunately lost, but in the prologue to his History of the First Crusade, William speaks of having written it, and says that he was urged to undertake it by King Amalric, who procured for him the Arabian books that he used as authorities, especially the history of Seith, patriarch of Alexandria, which he followed mainly.

"Cujus etiam rogatu ipso Arabica exemplaria menestrante alium historiam, a tempore seductoris Mahumeth usque in hunc annum, qui est nobis ad incarnatione Domini M.C.LXXXIV, per Annos quingentos septuaginta decurrentem conscripsimus, auctorem maxime secuti virum venerabilem Seith, filium Patrici, Alexandrinum patriarchum."

He also mentions this same work in several other places, namely, Book I. chap. 3, Book XIX. chapters 15 and 21.

This "venerabilem Seith" is, according to the best authorities, Said Ibn Batrik, born in Egypt in 879. He was a celebrated physician, and was for many years Patriarch of Alexandria. His book was written in Arabic, and contained a history of the world, from the time of Adam up to the year 326 of the Hegira, that is, up to 937 A.D. The Arabic word Said or Seith, meaning "the fortunate one," was transformed into Eutychius, in Greek; and the same history was published in a Latin and Arabic edition, at Oxford, in the 17th century, by one Pococke, under the title *S. Eutychii Patriarchi Alexandrini Annales Lat. et Arab.*, ed. Pococke, Oxon. 1658.

III. William's third work was his History of the First Crusade and of the Establishments founded in the East by the Crusaders, or, as the title runs—*Historia rerum in partibus transmarinis Gestarum*. This is really the great work of his life, and the work on which his literary fame rests. Soon after his return from his Eastern studies, in 1163, he conceived the plan of writing a truthful and unbiassed history of Latin affairs in the East. King Amalric encouraged him also in this literary undertaking, and volunteered to assist him in every way possible. The first eleven books were finished, the internal evidence shows us, before the summer of 1173: book fourteen, after William was made Archbishop; and the first chapter of the unfinished twenty-third book must have been written in the last year of his life. According to these data, the book occupied him for twenty years.

When we consider William of Tyre's merits as a historian critically, and compare him with other writers of the same period, it is not difficult to see that he far surpasses them all, and that his work is, in fact, the first *history*, in the modern sense of the word, and the best, that the Middle Ages have to show us. The list of authors who have treated of the same subject is a long one, but none are at all worthy to be compared with William, either in learning, ability, style, or arrangement of materials. We have, first, the narratives of those men who were themselves eye-witnesses of the events they record—diffuse, ill-arranged chronicles, generally written from a partisan standpoint, to celebrate the prowess and doughty deeds either of one great noble or hero, or of one nation or section of a nation. Under this head may be ranked Raymond of Agiles, who accompanied

the Count of Toulouse on the First Crusade. Naturally, his liege lord and the hot-headed superstitious Provençals have the leading places in his account of things. Then comes an anonymous writer, attached probably to Bohemond, Prince of Tarentum, whose adventures and prowess he narrates at length. Foucher of Chartres is the next in order, with his chronicle, which he calls *Gesta Peregrinantium Francorum*. Foucher started for the Holy Land in the suite of Robert of Normandy and Steven of Blois, but soon left them for Baldwin, the brother of Godfrey of Boulogne, whom he followed to Edessa, so that his narrative recounts the deeds and conquests of the North Frenchmen and Flemish.

In many instances these accounts disagree totally, and the aim of their authors seems to be, not so much to give a fair, dispassionate, accurate statement of what happened, as to make everything as marvellous and wonderful as possible. As to the historians who were not eye-witnesses—of whom Albert of Aix (Albertus Aquensis) is a fair sample—they seem to have copied all the others, without even noticing the incongruities in the narrations that they were combining, or without having the least idea of regarding their sources with any critical attention.

William's idea of the manner in which a history should be written was very different from this. In the first place, the scope of his work was much greater, including not only an account of the First Crusade, but of almost a century of French rule in the Orient. Instead of plunging *in medias res*, he went systematically to work, and gave, in the first place, a clear, well-arranged description of the state of things in the East, previous to the First Crusade, with a logical analysis of the causes leading up to that great movement. As to his sources, William states in his Preface, that Books I. to XV. are based on oral communications of old people, on letters and other reliable documents. He also states further, that he has used no previous authorities: "In hoc véro nullam aut Græcam, aut Arabicam habentes præducem scripturam, solis traditionibus instructi, exceptis paucis quæ ipsi oculata fide conspeximus narrationis seriem ordinavimus."

Notwithstanding this elaborate disclaimer, it is certain that William was acquainted with all previous histories of the Crusades. Von Sybel, the learned German historian of the First Crusade, has amused himself by comparing William's history with those of Albert of Aix, Foucher of Chartres, Raymond of Agiles, and Tudebodus, and has clearly demonstrated that William followed sometimes one,

sometimes another of these authorities for the first half, at least, of his work. But this much must be said for him, that he followed with discrimination, always selecting the author who, in his judgment, would be most likely to have gotten the correct account of an event, and always suppressing whatever, to his mind, savoured of exaggeration, or appealed too strongly to the credulity or superstition of his time—in a word, he weighed carefully his authorities, and strove to be painstaking, critical, and impartial.

When it came to the later period of his history—to that of his own time—he was equally exacting in respect of the testimony of eye-witnesses, always, if possible, getting more than one account of an event or a transaction. His historical and geographical data are especially accurate and good. He also seems to have some idea of the philosophy of history, and tries to bring out clearly the relations of cause and effect in his narration of events. His style is excellent. Although using the Latin of the Middle Ages, it was founded on the best Latin models, with which, as we have already seen, he was thoroughly familiar. His matter is well arranged, and his sentences clear. His great fault is a certain striving after rhetorical effect. He is fond of stately, well-sounding sentences, and fine phrases, which he employs with effect in his descriptions of battles and sieges. The merits of a style of this kind are seen but dimly through the medium of 15th-century English, especially when we consider, that, often owing to mistranslation, or to paleographic errors, the long sentences which were so sonorous in Latin, have suffered a *reductio ad absurdum*, and have lost not only their pristine literary grace, but even their original meanings. Still, notwithstanding these drawbacks, no one can read Caxton's *Godeffroye of Boloynes*, translation of a translation as it is, without feeling the vigour, sincerity, and culture of its far-away author, whose character the learned Thomas Fuller long ago so admirably summed up, in the Preface to his *Holy War* :

“He was a pious man, and an excellent scholar, skilled in all the learned Oriental tongues, besides the Dutch and French, his native tongue—a moderate and faithful writer: treasurer he was of all the money contributed to the *Holy War*, chancellor of his kingdom, employed in several embassies in the West; present at the Lateran Council, the acts whereof he did record; cardinal he might have been, but he refused it; in a word, unhappy only that he lived in that age, though that age was happy that he lived in it.”

## V. GODFREY OF BOUILLON.

Godfrey of Bouillon is to us of the 19th century a very shadowy personage, known chiefly as one of the leading characters in Tasso's *Jerusalem Delivered*, and it would certainly not occur to us, were we called upon to name the world's greatest heroes, to place him high up in the list.

As the dispassionate modern judge reads the histories of the First Crusade, it seems to him that there are half a dozen other princes at least who deserve as much consideration and admiration as Godfrey: the clever scheming Bohemond, the chivalrous Tancred, the impetuous Count of Toulouse, and even Godfrey's own brother, the sensible and energetic Baldwin, all, according to the records, seem to have done as good service; all seem to have played as important a part, and to have distinguished themselves as much as Godfrey of Bouillon. But it is very evident that William of Tyre does not think so, nor does Caxton, nor any of the preceding or subsequent historians of the Crusades.

Young, chivalrous, and sincerely religious, Godfrey of Bouillon seems from the very beginning of the First Crusade to have aroused the popular admiration, and to have been singled out from among his peers to become the subject of tradition, legend and poetry. In fact, by common consent he was regarded as the central figure of the Crusades; and there is no doubt that Caxton only voices the general opinion of his time when he "stalls" him in "thyrdle stalle of the moost worthy of Cristen men," and ranks him as the world's greatest hero since Arthur and Charlemagne. Of course, as is the case with all great men who live in an uneducated and uncivilized age, a series of traditions and legends soon grew up around his name. Even less than a hundred years after his death, at the time that William of Tyre wrote his history, these traditions and legends were widely spread. Over some of them the discriminating William shakes his head, in particular, wisely refusing to credit the story of the swan, which strangely enough, after having been brought from the East by Oriental story-tellers, had attached itself to the family of Bouillon. Of this very legend, William says, "*Praeterinus denique studiose licet id verum fuisse plurimorum, astruat narratio cygni fabulam, unde vulgo dicitur, sementivam eis fuisse originem, eo quod a vero videatur deficere talis assertio.*"

xxx V. *The Life of Godfrey of Bouillon. His Birth.*

Other traditions, equally false but more probable and natural, he accepts, and bravely incorporates in the interesting little sketch which he gives us of the life of Godfrey, in the ninth book of his history, when narrating the circumstances of the choice of the first king of Jerusalem. Indeed, late investigations have shown that much of the biography of Godfrey of Bouillon which has been regarded as authentic, is either without any foundation in fact, or has been obtained from unreliable sources. In the few pages following, I give a brief account of what is really known of the life of Godfrey of Bouillon. This account, although containing information regarding our hero's early life—from outside sources—yet on the whole follows William of Tyre, and fulfils the double purpose of giving a brief biography of Godfrey of Bouillon, and, at the same time, a short *résumé* of Caxton's book, from the point where Godfrey puts on the cross, to start for the Holy Land.

Godfrey of Bouillon—or “Boloyné,” as Caxton incorrectly calls him—was the second son of Eustache, count of Boulogne-sur-Mer, and Ida, sister of the hump-backed Godfrey, duke of Lower Lorraine. William, following the authority of William of Malmesbury, makes Godfrey the eldest son of his parents, but Ordericus Vitalis and other contemporary historians state that he was the second son. In the life of his mother Ida (*Acta Sanctorum*, ad XIII April, p. 141), we find also that Godfrey is given as her second son. He was of most distinguished birth and lineage, as both his father and his mother traced their descent back to Charlemagne. Eustache and Ida had two other sons; one older, named after his father, Eustache, succeeded to the estates and title of Count of Boulogne; another, younger, named Baldwin, became king of Jerusalem after Godfrey's death. William of Tyre assigns to Ida a fourth son, named William, who remains at home with his mother, while his three brothers are fighting in the Holy Land, but no reliable authority for the truth of this statement has ever been found. Ida had no daughter, although tradition designates a sister of Godfrey of Bouillon as the unfortunate and ill-used wife of Henry IV. of Germany.

The year of Godfrey's birth is not positively known, but its most probable date is 1060. His birth-place is equally uncertain, some authorities stating that he was born in Baisy, Brabant, thus making him a German subject both by birth and adoption. Most of the later historians and biographers have, however, decided in favour of Boulogne-sur-Mer, in France, his father's ancestral home. Here the



three boys were very carefully reared by their pious and intelligent mother, whose teachings seem to have had a life-long influence over them all.

Godfrey, who at an early age was adopted by his childless uncle Godfrey, duke of Lower Lorraine, spent much of his childhood in Brabant, and at the age of seventeen succeeded to the March of Antwerp and all his uncle's allodial possessions. Among these was the family castle of Bouillon, from which he took his title, which curiously enough Caxton has altered into "Boloynes," confounding it evidently with that of his father and brother in France. The early manhood of Godfrey, up to the call for the First Crusade, as narrated by enthusiastic biographers, and repeated to a certain extent by William of Tyre, represents him already as a brilliant, irresistible hero. According to these traditions, Godfrey appears at the court of the Emperor of Germany, surrounded by glittering retainers. Henry, impressed by the stately manner and beautiful person of the youthful hero, inquires "Who is this noble-looking knight?" and kisses him when he learns his name, twice on the chin and cheek. Then follows a series of knightly deeds. Godfrey succours the poor orphan, protects the friendless, and fights a duel for part of his heritage unjustly claimed by a relative. He is chosen from all the German nobles to carry the banner of his emperor against Rudolph of Suabia, and kills this same Rudolph on the field of battle. Then comes the famous journey to Rome, where Henry besieges the Pope, and Godfrey, after wonderful deeds of valour, is the first to enter the city. Here, tradition says, heated by battle, he drank too freely of wine, and was in consequence seized with a fever, which lasted until he put on the cross for the First Crusade, when he immediately became well. William of Malmesbury, who relates the story, states that Godfrey had no return of his malady during all the exposures of the First Crusade, until Jerusalem was taken, and a Christian government thoroughly established; then, his mission on earth being fulfilled, God permitted his fever to seize him again so violently, that in a few days he died of it. All of these stories except the last are plausible, and probable enough, but we do not find authorities to confirm them. Godfrey's life up to the time of the First Crusade—as nearly as can be gathered from documents and authentic records—was that of an ordinary young knight of good family. He was courageous and upright, and occupied himself chiefly in protecting his possessions from powerful and greedy neighbours, and in attend-

GODFREY.

ing to his own affairs. His chief care seems to have been to advance to the best of his ability his own worldly interests; and there seems to have been very little manifestation of religious enthusiasm, or indeed of those heroic qualities which were soon to develop him into a world-renowned hero, and obtain for him honours which the world esteemed as among the greatest that could be conferred upon mortal man. This much is really known of him. He had a quarrel with Count Theodore of Flammes, whom he took prisoner, and kept in durance vile for the rest of his life. When only seventeen, he was besieged in the Castle of Bouillon, just after his uncle's death, by Albert count of Namur, and by the Bishop of Verdun. Against this combined attack Godfrey defended his fortress with skill and energy. The lords of Bouillon up to 1076 were also counts of Verdun, but after this time, Bishop Theoderic wished to have the title and the property bestowed upon Albert of Namur. Godfrey naturally opposed this intention, and not only protected himself and thwarted their purpose, but laid waste the diocese of the Bishop, and harassed him and his ally in every possible way. That Godfrey did go to Rome, to aid the Emperor against the Pope, seems definitely established, and as a reward for his services, in 1089, Henry bestowed upon him the duchy of Lower Lorraine, which had been refused him after the death of his uncle.

When the call for the First Crusade came in 1095, from Urban II, at the council of Clermont, Godfrey decided at once to go, and set about his preparations with such energy that he was the first of the great princes ready to start, although his retinue was one of the largest, for under his standard were ranged 10,000 horsemen and 80,000 infantry. At this time, it is certain that he had no idea of devoting his life to the conquest of Jerusalem, and no intention of expatriating himself for ever. He sold his castles of Stenay and Monzon to the Bishop of Verdun, with whom he seems to have been on good terms again; he also mortgaged the Seignory of Bouillon to the Bishop of Liege, but on the express condition that he himself, or three of his nearest heirs especially named, might buy the property back within fourteen years. The price fixed was 1300 silver marks, and three gold marks. This price is given by Gilles d'Arval. Ordericus Vitalis says that he received 7000 marks of silver for them, while Albert d'Aix makes it only 1500. The bishop had a great deal of difficulty in raising this large sum of money, and even went so far as to despoil the shrine of St. Lambert, the altar, the

pulpit, and the sacerdotal vestments, of their gold and precious stones, besides taking everything valuable that he could lay his hands on in the convents and monasteries of his diocese.

The fact that Godfrey made a series of unusually rich donations to different churches and religious houses between the years 1090 and 1096 is well authenticated. In 1090 the records show that he restored to the Abbey of Gorze, in the diocese of Metz, the church of St. Dagobert at Stenay. In 1096 he gave many large gifts to this same church in concert with his brother Baldwin. In 1094, in concert with his mother and brothers, he presented the church of Baisy to the monastery of St. Pierre at Bouillon. He also founded at Antwerp the chapter of St. Michel, transferred later to the church of Notre Dame. In 1096 he assigned five manors to the monastery of Afflighem, situated near Genappe; and the same year the family, as a whole, gave the church of Genappe, with all its revenues, to the same monastery. Godfrey also gave the castle of Falkenstein to the church of Notre Dame at Verdun, and presented the chapter of St. Jervais, at Maestricht, with an estate that he possessed on the Meuse.

Godfrey's worldly and religious affairs thus being all put in order, as we see, he finished his preparations and started for the Holy Land in August 1096, with his brothers Eustache and Baldwin. As for the oft-repeated statement that Godfrey was the officially appointed leader of the First Crusade, there is no truth in it. The Papal Legate, Bishop Adhemar of Puy, was the only person to whom any authority had in any sense been officially delegated; but there was no one particular leader of this great movement in the strict sense of the word; each great prince prepared his own outfit, and gathered his army, and set out, when and how it best pleased him. If Godfrey has always been considered the central figure of the First Crusade, it is owing not to his political position, but to his moral influence and personal character, probably because it was instinctively felt that he, more than any other of the great princes, was in sympathy with the tendencies and motives that called it into being.

Godfrey's journey to Constantinople, which city Adhemar had chosen as the rendezvous of all the princes, was not an easy one. He found all the countries through which he had to pass excited and unfriendly, owing to the outrages which had been perpetrated upon their inhabitants by the undisciplined bands of common people that had preceded him. Following the Danube, he arrived peacefully

enough at the boundaries of Hungary. Here however he encountered great difficulties, so that it took him the whole month of September to traverse that country. The first part of November he crossed Bulgaria, and finally reached Nissa, where he received friendly messages from the Greek emperor Alexis, which he accepted in good faith. When he came to Phillipopolis, however, he learned that Hugh of Vermandois, brother of the king of France, who had preceded him to Constantinople by another route, instead of being treated by the Greeks with the consideration due to his lofty rank, was held a prisoner by the Emperor. Indignant at this treatment, Godfrey—who had scrupulously refrained from molesting the inhabitants of the countries through which he passed—immediately gave his men licence to pillage the land. This summary proceeding soon brought the Emperor to his senses, and he begged Hugh's pardon for his imprisonment, and agreed to set him free as soon as the French army should arrive in front of Constantinople. Not being able to obtain his ends by force, the crafty Alexis then changed his tactics, and by flattery and gifts soon persuaded Hugh, who was a vain young prince, to take the oath of allegiance to him—hoping to induce all the other barons and princes to follow this example. Godfrey was the next to arrive; but on being summoned to swear fealty and obedience to the Emperor, he utterly refused to do so, exclaiming reproachfully to Hugh, who came to him a second time to persuade him to take this step, "What! you, a king's son, have become a slave also!" But as the winter wore on, and Alexis showed himself so unfriendly, Godfrey began to fear that, unless this concession were made, they might be long delayed in their undertaking, or indeed be hindered altogether from going on to Jerusalem. Albert of Aix, who gives a fuller report of these negotiations than William of Tyre, states that finally Godfrey consented to become Alexis' liege man, rather than bring about an open rupture with him, saying that he had not left home to overturn Christian kingdoms, but to get the Emperor's help in carrying Christian weapons against Jerusalem. This matter being settled the barons and princes decided to leave Constantinople, and to continue on their holy journey. The first city of importance beyond Constantinople on Mussulman territory was Nicaea, the capital of Bithynia, then under the rule of Solyman's son David, surnamed Kilidge-Arslan, or the Sword of the Spirit. This town, although strongly fortified, the Crusaders resolved to besiege. Godfrey fought valiantly, and performed wonderful deeds

of valour, but he was not successful as the director of this siege. Nothing was really accomplished before Nicaea until Bohemond, Prince of Tarentum, arrived. He infused new life and energy into everything, and soon forced Kilidge-Arslan to surrender.

In accordance with the oath that they had sworn at Constantinople, the Crusaders handed the city over to Alexis, on the 27th of June, 1097. Having rested themselves thoroughly, they set off again for Syria by way of Phrygia, Cilicia, and the passes of the Taurus. Very unwisely the army divided, the main body, under Godfrey, Raymond of Toulouse, Adhemar, and Hugh of Vermandois, crossing the plain of Dorylaeum, while a smaller force, commanded by the Duke of Normandy, Bohemond, and Tancred, turned off to the left. Kilidge-Arslan, after his flight from Nicaea, nothing daunted by his defeat, had collected an army of about 200,000 men, and had returned, hoping to retrieve his misfortunes. As soon as he learned of the division of the army of his opponents, he determined to attack the smaller body. A terrible slaughter ensued. The Saracens were on the point of gaining a complete victory, when the main army came up to the rescue, preceded by Godfrey and fifty knights, who had been too impatient to wait for their slower-moving companions. In a moment the situation was changed. The Saracens were thoroughly routed, and fled in every direction, leaving their tents and a rich booty to the victors.

The Crusaders continued their route after their victory, through an arid and desolate country, suffering incredible tortures from hunger, thirst, and heat; and it was not until they arrived in Armenia that relief was obtained. Here Baldwin left the main body of the army in order to besiege Edessa, which seemed to him too tempting a piece of booty to be left behind, while Godfrey and the other princes marched towards Antioch in Syria, which great and powerful city they realized must be taken before they could go on to Jerusalem.

Bagi Sijan, a Seljoucide prince, was at this time Emir of Antioch. For several years the whole Mahommedan world had been convulsed by internal religious dissensions. The two parties, whose heads resided respectively in Egypt and Bagdad, were struggling for the mastery in Palestine. Bagi Sijan,—or Baghistan, as he is called in French and English Chronicles,—who sympathized with the Fati-mides or Egyptian faction, was absent from Antioch as the Crusaders approached, having gone with the princes of Aleppo and Jerusalem

against Emessa, which was occupied by the opposite faction. On hearing the news of the Christians' arrival, he speedily returned to Antioch, and realizing his danger, sent for aid in all directions, including even those foes against whom but the day before he had been arrayed in arms.

The Crusaders, after some debate, decided to attempt the siege of Antioch immediately, and took up their position around its walls, notwithstanding the fact that they had not enough men to invest them entirely. This was a siege in which, strange to say, the besiegers suffered infinitely more than the besieged. Antioch was well provisioned, while the country round about had been so thoroughly pillaged and laid waste, that it was with extreme difficulty that the Christians could obtain the necessities of life. Added to this was the discomfort of a rainy season, so long continued that their very tents rotted over their heads. As a natural consequence of this state of things, a frightful epidemic broke out, which reduced their numbers with startling rapidity, and enfeebled and discouraged those who were left alive. It was not until spring returned, and better weather came, that anything like energy showed itself among the besiegers.

In all this trouble Godfrey bore himself like a Christian hero, suffering patiently with the others, and signalizing himself by deeds of valour and courage. One of his exhibitions of strength and bravery is reported in more than one of the old chronicles. A fleet of Genoese and Pisans having anchored in the port of St. Simon, the Crusaders, in all haste and joy, sent a body of men to receive the provisions and news that they brought, and to escort back to Antioch the sailors and carpenters who were to assist them in constructing besieging engines. As the little body of men returned, it was attacked and routed by a party of Saracens, who were lying in wait for them. Godfrey, hearing of the engagement, hastened to the spot with a large detachment of men. Bagi Sijan, who was standing on one of the towers of Antioch, rejoicing over the defeat of the Christians, seeing his own men, in turn, in danger, sent a party out from the town to their assistance. The *mêlée* became general, and the fighting desperate on both sides. The Christian princes smote prodigious blows, and performed wonderful deeds of valour. Robert of Normandy split the head of one of his opponents to the shoulder with a single stroke, but Godfrey surpassed even that. A huge Saracen engaged with him, and shivered his shield with the first blow.

Godfrey, rising in his stirrups, calmly cut his adversary in two across the middle with one stroke, so that the upper half of the man fell to the ground, leaving the lower half still sitting on the horse.

Thus for months the Crusaders invested Antioch, and at the end of this time would have been no nearer accomplishing their purpose than at the beginning, had not one Emir Feirus, as William of Tyre calls him, a renegade Armenian of wealth and influence in Antioch, turned traitor, and delivered the city into their hands, on condition that Bohemond of Tarentum should be its prince and ruler. Once inside the walls, the Christians, infuriated by the long resistance, and exasperated by their own sufferings, slaughtered the greater part of the inhabitants, young and old indiscriminately, as many as six thousand perishing in a single night. But Godfrey and the other princes had but a short time to exult over their success. It will be remembered that Bagi-Sijan at the commencement of the siege sent to all the great Mahomedan princes for aid. To his appeal they did not turn a deaf ear; and only three days after the Christians entered Antioch, on the 6th of June, Kerboga, prince of Mosul, presented himself before its gates, with an army estimated variously at from 300,000 to 600,000 men, and the besiegers became in turn the besieged. On the horrors of that siege it is difficult to dwell. It is enough to say, that after being shut up three weeks in a city stripped of provisions and stores of every kind, the Crusaders, rendered desperate by famine and misery, marched out against Kerboga and his army—headed by Godfrey and Tancred, and their fellow peers—decided to die by the sword rather than by disease and hunger. Inspired by their necessities, and uplifted by their religious faith, the weak and enfeebled men fought as only desperate men can fight, and were rewarded by complete victory. They remained masters of the field, while the vast army of Kerboga was scattered to the four winds of heaven. This battle was the end of any effective opposition to the onward march of the Crusaders; but the hardships that they had endured seemed for the time to have quenched the ardour of the leaders of the army, for it was not until late in the following winter, after the repeated solicitations of the common people, that the princes and great barons could be persuaded to leave their private expeditions against adjacent cities, and start on their way towards Jerusalem. Godfrey, Eustache, and Robert of Flanders did not get under way until spring.

Their route lay along the sea now, through such a beautiful and fertile country, that notwithstanding the murmurs of the common people, who were impatient to reach their journey's end, the leaders could not resist the temptation to stop and lay siege to some of the wealthy towns near by. Godfrey besieged Gibel, while Raymond of Toulouse attacked Archas. In this way some time was consumed, so that it was not until the end of May that the forces were all united again, this time, however, with a firm determination to let nothing hinder them from proceeding directly to Jerusalem.

Sickness and war had made terrible havoc among their number, so that of the hundreds of thousands who had started on this undertaking, scarce fifty thousand were now left. The excitement was tremendous as they approached the Holy City. The last night, many of the men, unable to restrain their impatience, marched the whole night through, and at daybreak, June 10th, 1099, saw the walls and towers of Jerusalem rise up before them. Never before or since, in the history of the world, probably, has a scene of such intense emotion, on so large a scale, been seen, or have such transports of joy and reverence been witnessed. Strong, stalwart men, who had endured untold suffering and privations to behold this sight, sobbed aloud; some cast themselves upon their knees in prayer; others kissed the earth on which they stood, in an ecstasy of rejoicing.

The very next day energetic preparations were made for the assault of the city. To each of the princes was assigned a portion of the walls, to invest. Godfrey, with his brother Eustache and his cousin Baldwin du Bourg, occupied the north-west side, between the gate of Damascus and the gate of Jaffa, which included the spot most precious to them all, the inclosure of Mount Calvary. The Saracens—well provisioned, and thoroughly prepared for a long siege—had not only stripped the country around of everything eatable, but had filled up all the wells and cisterns for a long distance, so that in a few days the besiegers suffered both from hunger and thirst. Nothing daunted, they continued their siege with all the fire of religious enthusiasts; and recognizing the fact that their unaided strength could not accomplish their purpose, they set themselves systematically and patiently about building the necessary engines for making a decisive attack. For weeks they laboured untiringly, until at length everything that the military science of the time could devise, with the limited means and material at their disposal, was



ready. On Thursday, July the 14th, the assault was commenced. For two days the conflict was terrible; both sides fought with the energy of desperation, until late on Friday afternoon, when the two brothers Lethold and Engelbert of Tournai, followed by Godfrey of Bouillon, set foot upon the walls of Jerusalem. In an incredibly short space of time Godfrey and his men were down in the city, and the gates were thrown open. The Crusaders massacred their enemies without mercy, and blood ran in torrents to their knees in the street.

But Godfrey, with his deep religious sentiment, felt that prayer rather than bloodshed befitted their first hours in Jerusalem, and set the example to the others by withdrawing from the carnage, and going barefooted, clad simply in a clean linen garment, to the sepulchre of our Lord, to return thanks that He had thus allowed them to accomplish their pilgrimage and fulfil their vows. Godfrey was followed by all; weapons and bloody garments were laid aside, and barefooted, with heads reverently uncovered, all marched to the Church of the Resurrection, weeping tears of joy, praying and singing songs of penitence and rejoicing.

The victory now obtained was complete, but there was no time to sit idly, or even to rest after their long labours. The city was cleared of its dead; and after that, the first care of the Crusaders was to organize a Christian government, and above all to choose a fitting ruler, a man capable of leading them in war, and of controlling and guiding them in peace. After due deliberation and careful inquiry into the character and ability of each of the great barons, on July 23rd they elected Godfrey of Bouillon king of Jerusalem, and would have proceeded immediately to crown him, had not that pious and reverential prince unconditionally refused the honour. Their leader and duke he was willing to be, "but God forbid," said he, "that I should be crowned with a crown of gold, where my Saviour bore a crown of thorns." At least, this is the report of the deliberations and their result, as given by William of Tyre, who followed Albert of Aix. According to Raymond of Agiles, the crown was first offered to Raymond of Toulouse, who refused it in the words here attributed to Godfrey. Other authorities state that the crown was also offered to Robert of Normandy, who in turn refused it, and that then the choice fell upon Godfrey of Bouillon. Whether this be true or not, it is certain that the choice once made, all were unanimously pleased and contented with it; the common people, especially, regarded it as

the result of an inspiration from heaven. Little opportunity was offered for festivities in honour of the new king, as an Egyptian army, 300,000 strong, under the Emir Afdal, was advancing against them. So confident of victory were the Moslems, that they were even bringing with them, it was reported, ropes or chains with which to bind their prisoners. At the moment that Godfrey took command of the little army of the Crusaders, the enemy were already traversing Gaza, the ancient land of the Philistines. He sent immediately for Tancred and Eustache, who were away in Naplouse, and prepared to go out against the foe, as he saw that to allow themselves to be besieged in Jerusalem would only repeat the horrors of Antioch. At first, Robert of Normandy and Raymond of Toulouse refused to join the outgoing troops, but soon, seeing the imminent danger that threatened them, yielded, and united with the others. The two armies met near Askalon, Godfrey at the head of scarce 20,000 men. But such was their enthusiasm and bravery that nothing could withstand them, and the vast army of Afdal was gloriously routed. This battle firmly established the Latins in Palestine; and the great princes, feeling that they had fulfilled their vows, started one after another for home, leaving Godfrey with a few thousand men to solve the difficult problem of governing, protecting, and increasing his newly-founded domain.

Of the events of Godfrey's reign there is but little to say. He ruled wisely, strengthening himself in every possible way, and making good laws both for the governing and the governed. He died after one short year of kingship on July 18, 1100, and was buried on Mount Calvary, near the Saviour whom, in life, he had striven with reverence and single-heartedness to serve. Tradition gives us more than one version of the cause of his death. One authority tells us that he died from eating some poisoned fruit, presented by the neighbouring Emir of Cæsarea; another states that he was poisoned by Dagobert, the new bishop of Jerusalem; but neither of these two stories seems to be any more reliable than the quartan-fever legend already mentioned.

Thus perished, in the flower of his age, the man who above all others was the leading figure in the great religious movements of the 11th and 12th centuries.

Caxton's reasons for presenting the English-speaking and reading world with a translation of William of Tyre's history, he gives us in his simple preface. He wishes to arouse his countrymen to a

renewed interest in the Holy Land, and above all to make them familiar with the noble deeds and "hye courageous faytes" of Godfrey of Bouillon. As Godfrey disappears from the pages of William's history at this point, so Caxton abruptly ends his translation, without other comment than the date when the work was finished. It may be wondered that Caxton makes no mention of William of Tyre, either in his preface, or at the close of the book ; but there is no reason to believe that he, any more than the other editors and translators, knew who the real author of the work was, the identity of these editions and translations with the Latin text of William of Tyre, being a discovery which it was reserved for modern scholars to make.



## GODFREY OF BULLOGNE,

OR

## THE SIEGE AND CONQUEST OF JHERUSALEM.

CAXTON, 1481. THE PROLOGUE.

- He hye couragious faytes / And valyaunt actes of noble, Illus-  
 t t rous and vertuous personnes, ben digne to be recounted / put  
 in memorye / and wreton, to thende that ther may be gyuen  
 4 to them name Inmortal, by souerayn laude and preysyng,  
 And also for to moeue and tenflawme the hertes of the Redars  
 and hierers, for teschewe and flee werkes vycious, dishonnest and  
 vytuperable / And for tempryse and accomplysshe enterpryses  
 8 honnestes, and werkes of glorious meryte, to lyue in remembraunce  
 perpetuel / ffor as it is so, that thystoryagraphes haue wreton many  
 a noble hystorye, as wel in metre as in prose, By whiche thactes  
 & noble fayttes of thauncyent conquerours ben had in remem-  
 12 braunce, and remayne in grete, large / and aourned volumes / and  
 so shal abyde in perpetuel memorye, to thentente that glorious  
 Prynces and hye men of noble and vertuose courage, shold take  
 ensample tempryse werkys leeful and honneste / Fyrst, for goddes  
 16 quarell / in mayntenynge oure<sup>1</sup> fayth and the libertees of holy chirche,  
 For the recuperacion of the holy land, whiche our blessyd lord  
 Ihesu Criste hath halowed by his blessyd presence humayne / and  
 by shedyng therin for oure redempcion his precious blood ; ffor the  
 20 releef of suche cristen men as there dwelle in grete myserye and  
 thraldomm, And also for the defence of theyr Royammes, Londres,  
 Enherytages / and subgettes. And for thyse causes tendeuoyre  
 theym in theyr noble persones / with alle theyr puyssaunces and  
 24 power, tadresse and remyse theym in theyr auncyent Fraunchyses  
 and lyberte / Acordyng to that we fynde wreton in holy scripture  
 of many noble historyes, which were here ouer long to reherce.  
 But in especial of thre noble and mooste worthy of alle other, that  
 28 is to wytte, fyrst of duc Iosue, that noble prynce / whiche ladde and

Noble dedes  
 should be  
 held in  
 memory,  
 to influence  
 readers to  
 avoid evil  
 works.

Princes and  
 high men  
 should pat-  
 tern after  
 them,

to recover the  
 Holy Land,

to defend  
 their king-  
 doms.

Many noble  
 histories are  
 written in  
 Holy Scrip-  
 tures.

Of Joshua,

<sup>1</sup> *Orig. onre.*

of David the  
King,

of the noble  
Judas Mac-  
cabeus.

In profane  
history is  
found re-  
corded the  
prowess of  
Hector of  
Troy,

of Alexander,

of Julius Cæ-  
sar, Emperor  
of Rome.

Of Christian  
heroes,  
the first and  
best is  
Arthur, King  
of the Britons.

He is staled  
in the first  
place.

Charle-  
magne, the

conduyted the Childeren of Israhel, the chosen people of God, oute of deserte in to the londe of promysseyon, the Londe flowynge Mylke and hony. Socondly, of Dauyð the Kyng and holy Prophete / Whome God chaas after his herte, And achyeuyð many grete 4 Bataylles, gouernyng the sayd chosen people of God by the space of fourty yeris / And the thyrd of the Noble Iudas Machabeus; how he deffended the sayd people in fyghtyng many and merueyllous bataylles, for veray zeele and loue of his lawe, and mayntenynge of 8 the same vnto the deth, ffor which causes a-forsayd, the names of thyes thre abyde perpetuel, for thre of the moste beste and Nobleste of the Iewys / And in the nombre of <sup>1</sup>the moost digne and moost worthy / 12

a Nd by cause valyaunce and prowess is remembryd among the gentyles & payn[e]mes, as among thebrewes, I fynde wreton of the incredible, cheualrous prowess of the noble and valyaunt Hector of troye, whos excellent actes wryten / Ouyde, Homer, Virgyle, 16 Dares, Dytes and other dyuerse, and eche better than other, reherchyng his noble vertues / strengthe and humanyte / Secondly, of Alysaundre the grete kyng of Macedone, which domyned and had to hym obeyssaunt the vnyuersal world; And the thyrd, the noble 20 Julyus Cezar, Emperour of Rome, whos noble actes ben wreton by poetes, as lucan / stace and other / And dayly remembryd as newe and ffresshe as he yet lyuyd / whiche thre ben sette as for the moost worthy among the gentyles and paynems. 24

n Ow lete vs thenne remembre what hystories ben wreton of Cristen men, of whom ther be many wreton. But in especial, as for the best and worthyest, I fynde fyrst the glorious / most excellent in his tyme / and fyrst founder of the round table / Kyng 28 Arthur, kyng of the brytons, that tyme regnyng in this Royamme / of whos retenue were many noble Kynges, Prynces / lordes and knyghtes, of which the noblest were knyghtes of the round table, of whos actes and histories there be large volumes, and bookes grete 32 plente and many / O blessyd lord, whan I remembre the grete and many volumes of seynt graal / ghalehot, & launcelotte de lake / Gawayn, perceual / Lyonel / and tristram, and many other, of whom were ouer longe to reherce / and also to me vnknownen! But 3 thystorye of the sayd Arthur is so glorious and shynnyng, that he is staled in the fyrst place of the mooste noble / beste and worthyest of the cristen men. Secondly, of Charlemayn, the grete Emperour<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> leaf 1, back.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* Epemrour.

- of Allemayne, and kyng of ffraunce / whos noble actes and con-questes ben wreton in large volumes with the noble faytes and actes of his douze pieres, that is to saye, Rowlond and olyuer / with the  
4 other / whos name and renommee abydeyth also perpetuel, and is stalled in the second place emonge the most worthy of Cristen men.
- Of alle thyse historyes afor reherced, the bookes and volumes ben had in latyn, ffrenssh and Englysshe, and other langage.
- 8 t Henne as for the thyrd of the Cristen prynces, taken, reputed and renommmed for to be egal emong thyse worthy & best that euer were, I mene the noble Godefroy of Boloynes / whiche <sup>1</sup>now but late, not yet four C. yere syth he flowred, and was stalled in  
12 the thyrd stalle of the moost worthy of Cristen men, whos hystorye is made and wreton in Latyn and ffrenssh in large and grete volumes / And as not knowen emonge vs here / whiche ben adiacent and neyghbours to the place of his natyuite / whos noble hystorye I  
16 late fonde in a booke of ffrenssh, al alonge of his noble actes, valyaunces, prowesses / and accomplysshement of his hye empryses / In whiche I fynde very causes, as me semeth, moche semblable and lyke vnto suche as we haue nowe dayly tofore vs, By the mes-  
20 creauntes and turkes emprysed / ayenst Cristendom. And yet moche more nowe than were in his dayes / ffor in his dayes the turkes had conquerd vpon Cristendom but vnto the braas of seynt George by Constantynople, And had no foote on this syde the sayd  
24 Braas. But at this daye it is so that they haue comen ouer and gotten that Imperial Cyte, Constantynople aforsayd / and many Royamine and countre / to the grete dommage and hurte of alle Cristendom; To the resistance of whom, as yet, fewe Cristen prynces  
28 haue put theym in deuoyr. Thenne I retorne agayn vnto the conqueste at suche tyme as they were come to the sayd Braas, that by the dyligent sollicitude of a pour heremyte / the sayd Godeffroy of Boloynes, and other dyuerse prynces / lordes and comyn peple,  
32 auowed the croysyng and empryse to warre agayn the mescreauntes, And to recouere the holy Cyte of Iherusalem; whiche afterward they achyeuyd, and conquerd fro the sayd braas vnto the holy lande, and recouerd the holy cyte of Iherusalem / as in this sayd book,<sup>2</sup> al  
36 alonge and playnly shal appere. In whiche cyte the sayd Godeffroy was elect and chosen for his vertue / prowesse / and blessyd disposicion, to be kyng of the sayd Iherusalem, and the londe therabout.

great Em-  
 peror of Alle-  
 mayne and  
 King of  
 France, is  
 second.

All these his-  
 tories are to  
 be had in  
 Latin,  
 French, and  
 other lan-  
 guages.

The third is  
 Godfrey of  
 Bologne,

His history is  
 in Latin and  
 French, but  
 not yet known  
 in English.

The Turks  
 to-day have  
 made greater  
 encroach-  
 ments vpon  
 Christendom  
 than in the  
 time of  
 Godfrey.

The First  
 Crusade un-  
 dertaken at  
 the sollicita-  
 tion of a poor  
 hermit.

<sup>1</sup> leaf 2.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. booke.

This history is no fable, t Henne I, thus vysytyng<sup>1</sup> this noble hystorye / whiche is no fable ne fayned<sup>2</sup> thynge, But alle that is therin trewe / Considering the late encroachments of the Turke. sideryng also the grete puyssaunce of the Turke, grete enemye of oure Cristen fayth, destroyar of Cristen blood, and vsurpar of certayn Empyres, and many Cristen Royammes and countrees, And now late this sayd yere hath assaylled the Cyte and castel in the Isle of rhodes, where valyantly he hath be resisted; but yet not withstondyng he hath approchod more ner, & hath taken the Cyte of Ydronte in puylle, By whiche he hath gotten an entre to entre in to the Royamme of Naples; And fro thens, withoute he be resisted, vnto Rome & ytalye / to whos resistance I beseche <sup>1</sup> almyghty God to prouyde, yf it be his wylle: Thenne me semeth it necessary and expedyent for alle cristen prynces to make peas / amyte and allyaunce eche with other, and prouyde by theyr wysdommes the resistance agayn hym for the defense of our fayth and moder / holy chirch / & also for the recuperacion of the holy londe & holy Cyte of Iherusalem / In whiche our blessyd sauour, Ihesu Crist, redemed vs with his precious blood, And to doo as this noble prynce Godeffroy of bolyne dyde, with other noble and hye prynces in his companye. Thenne for the exhortacion<sup>2</sup> of alle Cristen prynces / Lordes / Barons / Knyghtes / Gentilmen / Marchanntes / and all the comyn peple of this noble Royamme, walys & yrlond, I haue empyrised to translate this book of the conquest of Iherusalem out of ffrenssh in to our maternal tongue, to thentente tencourage them by the redyng and heeryng of the merueyllous historyes herin comprysed, and of the holy myracles shewyd that euery man in his partye endeuoire theym vnto the resistance afore sayd, And recuperacion of the sayd holy londe. & for as moche as I knowe no Cristen kyng better prouyd in Armes, and for whom god hath shewed more grace / And in alle his empyrises glorious, vayn- quysshour, happy and eurous / than is our naturel / lawful / and souerayn lord and moost cristen kyng / (1) Edward, by the grace of god, kyng of englond and of ffraunce, and lord of Yrlond / vnder the shadowe of whos noble protection / I haue achyeued this symple translacion / that he of his moost noble grace wold adresse, styre, or commaunde somme noble Capytayn, of his subgettes to emprise this warre agayn the sayd turke & hethen peple, to whiche I can thynke that euery man wyll put hand to in theyr propre persones /

All Christians should unite against them,

and follow the example of Godfrey of Bologna.

I translate this book from the French, to encourage men to undertake the recovery of Jerusalem.

I hope especially to induce King Edward to interest himself in the matter.

<sup>1</sup> leaf 2, back.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* the exhortacioun.

(1) The Clarendon figures in brackets refer to the Notes at the end of the text.



- and in theyr meuable goodes / Thenne to hym, my moost drad  
 naturel and souerayn lord, I adresse this symple and rude booke,  
 besechyng his moost bounteuous and haboundaunt grace to receyue  
 4 it of me, his indigne and humble subgette, William Caxton, And  
 to pardonne me so presumynge; besechyng almyghty god that this  
 sayd book may encourage, moeue, and enflamme the hertes of  
 somme noble men, that by the same the mescreauntes maye be  
 8 resisted and putte to rebuke, Cristen fayth encreaced and enhaunced,  
 and the holy lande, with the blessyd cyte of Iherusalem, recouerð,  
 and may come agayn in to cristen mens hondes. Thenne I exhorte  
 alle noble men of hye courage to see this booke, and here it redde;  
 12 by which ye shal see what wayes were taken, what noble prowesses  
 and valyaunces were achyeuyd by the noble compa<sup>n</sup>yes, & especial  
 by the said noble prynce godeffroy of boloyne, duc of Loreyne / by  
 whiche he deseruyd the name of one of the moost worthy that euer  
 16 were, and ys stalled in the thyrd stalle of the Cristen conquerours /  
 And in the nynthe of the mooste worthy / where his name and  
 renomme shal remayne and abyde perpetuel / And for to deserue  
 the tenthe place, I beseche almyghty God to graunte and ottroye to  
 20 our sayd souerayn lord, or to one of his noble progenye / I meane my  
 lord Prynce / and my lord Rychard, duc<sup>3</sup> of yorke and norfolke, (2)  
 to whom I humbly beseche / at theyr leyzer and playsyr, to see &  
 here redde this symple book, by which they may be encoraged to  
 24 deserue lawde and honour, and that their name and renomme may  
 encrease and remayne perpetuel / And after this lyf short and tran-  
 sytorye / All we may atteyne to come to the euerlastyng lyf in  
 heuen, where is ioie and reste withoute ende. Amen.
- 28 t Henne for to knowe the content of this book, ye shal playnly see by  
 the table folowyng / wherof euery chapytre<sup>3</sup> treateth al alonge.  
 The fyrst chapytre treateth how Eracles conquerd Perse, And slewe Cosdroe  
 and brought in to Iherusalem the veray Crosse / Capitulo primo. [p. 18,  
 32 How the puyssaunt Cosdroe wasted thempyre of rome; for tauenge the deth of  
 themperour Mauryce, fader to his wyf / ca<sup>o</sup>. ij. [p. 20]  
 How this puyssaunt kyng entred in to Iherusalem / and demaunded dyly-  
 gently of the temple / and reedefyed it, and assigned grete reuenues to  
 6 entretiene it / capitulo iij<sup>o</sup>. [p. 21]  
 How Charlemayne by his lyberalyte gate, for the prouffyt of cristen peple in  
 hethenesse, thamyte of hethen prynces. capitulo iiij. [p. 22]

I address this  
 simple and  
 rude book to  
 my sovereign  
 lord,

beseching  
 God that it  
 may influence  
 those who  
 read it.

I exhort all  
 men to read  
 this book,  
 in order to  
 learn the  
 route taken  
 by Godfrey  
 of Bologne  
 and his com-  
 panions.

I beseech my  
 lord Prince,  
 and my lord  
 Richard, the  
 Duke of  
 York and  
 Norfolk,  
 to read this  
 simple book.

<sup>1</sup> leaf 3.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig. dnc.*

<sup>3</sup> *Orig. chapytpe.*

Of the noyse that soured emonge the hethen peple discordynge in theyr lawe / And how they of egypte yssued oute of theyr londe; and of the euylls and harmes that they dyde.	capitulo v. [p. 23]
How thafflyction / Iniuries, and tormentes of cristen men, grewe in the tyme of Calyphe hetham.	capitulo vi. [p. 24]
How at the requeste of themperour of constantynople the cristen men obteyned licence to bylde agayn the chirche of the holy sepulcre.	Capitulo vij. [p. 26] 8
Of the turkes, fro whens they cam, And how they grewe in to <sup>1</sup> grete puyssaunce, & dyde chose theym a kyng for to mayntene their warrys.	Capitulo viij. [p. 28]
Of thorryble synnes regnyng theñne in Cristiente / as wel in thyse partyes as in tho partyes /	capitulo ix. [p. 31] 12
Of a bataylle that themperour Romayn of Constantynople had ayenst a pryñce of thoryent named belphet /	capitulo x. [p. 32]
Of many maner tormentes / that the Cristen peple suffred for their synnes in that tyme.	capitulo xi. [p. 35] 16
How after they had ben .iiij C / lxxxx yere in the seruage of the hethen men, our lord pourueyed remedye for his cristen peple.	ca. xii. [p. 36]
How Peter theremyte enterprysed the more hardly his viage, by the reuelacion or vysyon that he sawe in his sleep /	ca°. xij°. [p. 39] 20
Of the persecucions of the chirche in that tyme / And how the pope Vrban was put out of the see of Rome by the Bysshop of Rauenne.	Capitulo xiiij. [p. 40] 24
Of a general counseyl that the pope Vrban ordeyned, for the reformation of holy chirche and thamendement of the people.	ca / xv. [p. 42]
How many noble and hye men / and other moeyen peple of the royaume of ffrance crossyd theym for to goo ouer see /	ca°. xvj. [p. 43] 28
The names of noble men that enterprysed this pylgremage / as wel on this syde the see as beyonde the montaynes / <sup>2</sup>	ca°. xvij. [p. 45]
Of thauentures that a Rowte of Cristen men in this vyage, of whom one gaultier without knowleche was capitayn /	ca°. xvij. [p. 47] 32
How Peter theremyte was chyef and Capitayn of a grete hooste, in this vyage toward the holy londe.	capitulo xix. [p. 49]
How somme of thoost of Peter theremyte vnwytyng hym / sette fyre in the subarbys of Nyz at theyr departyng /	capitulo xx. [p. 50] 36
How Peter theremyte was aduertysed of al this, and of the harme that ensiewed /	Capitulo xxi. [p. 51]

<sup>1</sup> leaf 3, back.<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* montaxnes.

- How themperour of constantynople, beyng<sup>1</sup> aduertysed of thies oultrages, sente his messagers to Peter theremyte / capitulo xxij. [p. 54]
- 4 Of the mayntenynge of thoost of Peter theremyte, And how thre M / duchen men toke a castel by assault / and slewe alle theym that were therin with the swerd. capitulo xxiiij°. [p. 55]
- How Solyman, lord of that countre, reprised and toke agayn the castel, and slewe alle the duche men that were therin / ca°. xxiiij. [p. 56]
- 8 How our men armed theym for tauenge the duche men, And of a recoutre that they had agaynst Solyman. ca°. xxv. [p. 57]
- How Peter theremyte, beyng in Constantynople, was aduertysed of this disconfytur / And saued thre thousand cristen men beyng<sup>1</sup> in grete daunger. capitulo xxvj. [p. 58]
- 12 How a preest named Godechan made hymself Capytayn of / xv thousand duche men in this vyage, And of theyr oultrages. Capitulo xxvij. [p. 59]
- 16 How two C thousand Cristen men afoote, & thre thousand on horsbak, withoute Capytayn, assembled in this pylgremage, And of theyr mayntene / capitulo xxviij. [p. 61]
- How this peple began to destroye the londe of the kyng of hongrye by  
20 cause he wold not graunte them leue to passe / capitulo xxix. [p. 63]
- How the duc godeffroy of Boloyne beyng with a grete hoost cam vnto hongrye, and sente his messagers to the kyng to demande passage. capitulo xxx. [p. 64]
- 24 How the messagers of duc godeffroy declared theyr message vnto the kynge of hongrye / and therupon his answere. ca°. xxxj. [p. 65]
- How the sayd kynge sente for to fetch the duc Godeffroye, And how he wente, & of the deuyses that they had to gydre / ca°. xxxij. [p. 68]
- 28 How the duc Godeffroy sente his messagers to themperour of constantynople,<sup>2</sup> to thende that he shold delyuer to hym huon le mayne and other that he helde in pryson. capitulo xxxiiij. [p. 69]
- How duc Godeffroy constrayned themperour by force to rendre & delyuer  
32 his prysoners. capitulo xxxiiij. [p. 71]
- The grete despyte that themperour toke that duc godeffroy refused to goo in to Constantynople vnto hym / capitulo xxxv. [p. 72]
- Of the descripcion of the Cyte of Constantynople, And of many conntrees  
36 and londes therabout. capitulo xxxvi. [p. 73]
- How our peple brente theyr lodgys, and toke theyr harnois / and of an assault that the grekes made on them. capitulo xxxvij. [p. 74]

<sup>1</sup> leaf 4.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* constantynople.

How after our peple began to destroye the contre / And of a message fro Buymont vnto duc godeffroy. And the answe're of the duc vpon the same agayn.	capitulo xxxviii. [p. 76]	
How themperour appeased the duc Godeffroy / and sente for hym / and of 4 thonour that he dyde to hym /	capitulo xxxix. [p. 77]	
Of the yeftes that themperour made to duc Godeffroye, to the barons, and to the gentilmen of his hooste.	capitulo xl. [p. 78]	
How buymont was made Capitayn of a greet hooste, And the names of 8 many nobles of thooste, & of theyr maytene.	ca°. xli. [p. 79]	
Messagers and lettres fro themperour to buymont, And the conteneue of the same, as foloweth /	capitulo xlii. [p. 81]	
How Buymont approched constantynople, and was sente for to come to the 12 emperour, And how by the prayer of duc Godeffroye <sup>1</sup> he wente toward hym /	capitulo xliii. [p. 82]	
How therle Robert of fflaundres with his hoost approchyd Constantinople, And how themperour sente for hym / And of theyr deuyses to gydre. 16	capitulo xliiiij. [p. 83]	
Of the mayntyene of thoost whiche therle of tholouse and the bisshop of Puy brought ouer see.	capitulo xlv. [p. 84]	
Ambassadors of themperour to the sayd erle and Bysshop, and of the 20 conteneue of his lettres / and of the daunger wherin the sayd bisshop was.	ca°. xlvi. [p. 86]	
How therle of tholouse, beyng with themperour, wold not doo homage to hym, And of the despyte that themperour dyde / 24	ca°. / xlvij. [p. 87]	
How themperour, for tauenge hym and therle, made his conestables tenbusshe them, and assaylle thoost of therle.	capitulo xlviii. [p. 88]	
How at thynstaunte prayer of the barons of thooste, therle made homage to 28 themperour, which thenne gaf grete yeftes to hym and his /	capitulo xlix. [p. 90]	
How duc Robert of Normandy / and other here named, approched Con- stantynople, and made homage to themperour /	ca°. L. [p. 91]	32
How themperour sente, for to destroye our cristen men, one his seruauent, faynyng to be a trewe conduytour and guyde.	ca°. Ij. [p. 92]	
Of the situacion of Nycene / And how our peple approched therto, merueyl- lyng of the place, and of the strengthe /	capitulo / Lij. [p. 93]	36
How the puyssaunt turke Solymán with a grete hooste aduysed tyme and houre to assaylle and smyte on our peple, for to reyste the siege /	capitulo Liiij. [p. 94]	

- How Solyman, beyng<sup>1</sup> in the montaynes, sente his messagers to them of the toun,<sup>2</sup> And of the comforte that he gaf to theym.  
Capitulo Liiij. [p. 95]
- 4 How the messagers of Solyman were taken by our men / And by them was knowen the couyne of the sayd Solyman. ca°. Lv. [p. 96]
- How a grete batayll of Solyman cam and smote on our peple / And of thende of the skarmuche / capitulo Lvj. [p. 97]
- 8 How our barons were lodged in the sayd siege / of their mayntene, & how euery day they enforced them thassaylle the toun / ca°. Lvij. [p. 98]
- How our barons made castellys of tree and approuched the toun, And how they within brake one of theym / and slewe them that were therin / capitulo Lviiij. [p. 99]
- 12 Of the counseyl that our men toke for tassiege the toun by water, for to constrayne them not for to entre ne yssue / capitulo Lix. [p. 100]
- How, after the cyte was assieged by water and by londe, our men<sup>3</sup> assaylle it; And of a shotte that duc godeffroy dyde shote. ca°. Lx. [p. 101]
- 16 How, after many assaultes, oure men beyng in counseyl / A lombard cam to them / whiche offred to make an engyne that shold destroye the toun / capitulo Lxi. [p. 103]
- 20 How after / that this engyne was so wel wrought, the wyf of Solyman, with tweyne of her childeren, wente out of the toun, & were taken by our men. capitulo Lxij. [p. 104]
- How themperour<sup>4</sup> sente grete barons for to receyue the toun / after that our people had acerteined hym that they wold yelde it / Capitulo Lxiiij. [p. 106]
- How our hoost<sup>5</sup> departed on theyr iourneye. And how somme departed fro theyr felawship / And how solyman determyned tassaille them / capitulo Lxiiij. [p. 107]
- 28 Of the bataylle that Solyman had ayenst somme of oure peple that were departed fro theyr felawship folylly / capitulo Lxv. [p. 108]
- Of the dylygence that duc godeffroy made whan he was aduertysed herof / and how Solyman was disconfyted, and his lygnage taken. capitulo Lxvj. [p. 109]
- 32 How the fourth day after this vycторыe, our peple went forth on theyr waye, And of the grete mesease of the hooste the same daye.
- 36 Capitulo Lxvij. [p. 111]
- How somme of the grete barons of thoste / after to haue approuched Anthyoche the lasse / departed for to goo vytaylle them / Capitulo Lxviij. [p. 112]

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* montayues.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* tonn.

<sup>3</sup> leaf 5.

<sup>4</sup> *Orig.* themperonr.

<sup>5</sup> *Orig.* hoost.

- Here recounted thystorye of somme aduentures / that thenne fylle in thoost  
of Cristen men / capitulo Lxix. [p. 114]
- How Tancre, that was departed fro thoost / assieged Tarse / and toke it by  
certayn couenaunt. ca°. Lxx. [p. 115] 4
- How bawdwyn, broder<sup>1</sup> of Godeffroy, sechyng his aduentures, sawe Tancre  
and his peple tofore Tarse, and adressyd hym to theym.  
Capitulo Lxxj. [p. 116]
- Of thenuye that Bawdwyn and his peple had, to see the baner of Tancre on 8  
the walle of the toun. And how Tancre departed.  
Capitulo Lxxij. [p. 116]
- How a lytil after, Tancre cam to the Cyte of anamystre / whiche the turkes  
helde, and toke it by assault. capitulo Lxxiiij. [p. 118] 12
- How Bawdwyn entrede in to Tharse / And how thre honderd pylgryms were  
slayn of the turkes afore the same toun / Capitulo Lxxiiiij. [p. 118]
- How the peple of bawdwyn knewe the departyng of the turkes, <sup>2</sup>And of  
the slaughter of the cristen men. capitulo Lxxv. [p. 120] 16
- How the sayd Bawdwyn retorned to the grete hoost / And how Tancre  
mayntened hym moche wel in conqueryng countrees.  
Capitulo Lxxvj. [p. 122]
- How bawdwyn conquerd a grete contre vpon the turkes, by the counseyl of a 20  
knyght Ermyne, named Pancrace / ca°. Lxxviij. [p. 123]
- How they of Rages sente their messagers to bawdwyn, prayeng hym that he  
wold come to theym. capitulo Lxxviij. [p. 124]
- How this duc that was at Rages varied for to holde this / that he had 24  
promysed to bawdwyn / capitulo Lxxix. [p. 126]
- How bawdwyn wente tassaylle famosette, a Cyte nygh to rages.  
Capitulo Lxxx. [p. 127]
- How they of the toun of rages slewe theyr duc, And chaas bawdwyn for to 28  
be theyr lord. capitulo lxxxj. [p. 128]
- How bawdwyn wente and assieged the toun of Sororge, nygh to Rages, and  
toke it / and of his ordenaunces. capitulo lxxxij. [p. 129]
- How the grete hoost cam to fore Marese, and how the turkes that were within 32  
fledde / And how our peple payned them to conquere countrees /  
capitulo lxxxiiij. [p. 130]
- How it was commaunded vnto alle the barons to come to thoost, for to goo  
vnto Anthyoche, And of somme recountrees that they had in the waye / 36  
capitulo Lxxxiiiij. [p. 132]
- How Anthyoche by sucession of tyme / had dyuerse names. And of the  
noblesse of aunycyente. capitulo Lxxxv. [p. 134]

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* kroder.<sup>2</sup> leaf 5, back.

- Of the situacion of Anthyoche. Lxxxvj. [p. 135]  
 Who was thenne lord of anthyoche / and by what maner he was comen vnto  
 this seynorye. capitulo Lxxxvij. [p. 136]
- 4 Diuerse oppiynons of our men tofore they had assieged anthyoche. And  
 how they acorded alle for tassiege it. capitulo Lxxxviij. [p. 137]  
 How, after the situacion of the toun, eche of the hye barons of thoost were  
 lodged at the sayd siege / capitulo Lxxxix. [p. 139]
- 8 How our peple assembled in counseyl for to fynde the moyen for to sende for  
 vytaylle, and of a brydge that they made. ca°. Lxxxx. [p. 140]  
 How our peple stopped a yate without forth / And of a castel of tree that  
 they made. capitulo Lxxxxj. [p. 141]
- 12 How oure peple were in grete meschyef, for as moche as they of the toun  
 yssued / & entred in & out with grete rowtes.<sup>1</sup> ca°. Lxxxxiij. [p. 142]  
 Of the famyne and mortalyte of thost, after that they had be at the sayd  
 siege the space of two monethis / capitulo Lxxxxiij. [p. 144]
- 16 How our peple ordeyned grete Rowtes for to goo for vytalle,<sup>2</sup> & to reteyne the  
 peple whiche fledde for hongre. capitulo lxxxxiij. [p. 145]  
 How buymont and therle of flaundres mayntened theym, beyng in fourage  
 of theyr recountrees / and of the gayn that they made.
- 20 capitulo Lxxxv. [p. 146]  
 How a grete Rowte of Cristen men were in this tyme slayn by the turkes  
 bytwene<sup>3</sup> Fynemye and terme / capitulo Lxxxvj. [p. 147]  
 How the vntrewe greke latyus departed fraudelously fro thoost, And other
- 24 moo by the ensample of hym / capitulo Lxxxvij. [p. 148]  
 How the prelates of thoost counseyllled to doo penaunce for tappese god, & of  
 thordenaunces that were made teschewe synne.<sup>4</sup> Lxxxviiij. [p. 149]  
 How buymont fonde a subtil remedye, for to delyuer and purge thoost of
- 28 tespyes of the turkes / capitulo Lxxxix. [p. 150]  
 How the Calyphe of Egypte sente his messagers with grete yeftes vnto our  
 hoost. capitulo C. [p. 152]  
 How Ancean, lord of Anthyoche / and the barons, sente vnto the turkes theyr
- 32 neyghbours for to demaunde socours. ca° Cj. [p. 153]  
 How oure peple knewe the couyne of the turkes. Of thembusshe that they  
 made, & of theyr victorye & gayn that they had / ca°. Cij. [p. 154]  
 How the turkes of Anthyoche sprang out, and assaylled the lodgyes of our
- 36 peple / capitulo Ciiij. [p. 155]  
 Of a castel that oure men made / Of somme pylgryms that arryued atte porte /  
 And how they were disconfyted by a busschement of turkis.  
 capitulo Ciiij. [p. 156]

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* rowtes.

<sup>2</sup> leaf 6.

<sup>3</sup> *Orig.* bytwewe.

<sup>4</sup> *Orig.* synue.

- Of a bataylle where our men auenged them of the turkes / And of a stroke  
that duc godeffroy gaf in this bataylle. ca°. Cv. [p. 159]
- How the cristen men thanked our lord of this vycторыe, And made a castel in  
their mahommerye / where they founde grete gayne. 4  
Capitulo Cvj. [p. 162]
- Of a fortesse that Tancre made ouer the ryuer, And how he defended it  
valyauntly. capitulo Cvij. [p. 163]
- How thenne the turkes of the toun<sup>1</sup> began to haue mescase and sorowe, and 8  
our peple ease. capitulo Cvij. [p. 165]
- How therle estieuen of chartrys and of bloys fledde fro thooste shamefully.  
capitulo Cix. [p. 166]
- How a Cristen man, Emyrferius, whiche was in Anthyoche, acquyented hym 12  
with buymont. capitulo Cx. [p. 167]
- Of som deuises that the said emirferius sent to buymont,<sup>2</sup> & in what maner  
he acorded to delyuer hym the toun / capitulo Cxj. [p. 169]
- How buymont discoverid this thyng to duc godeffroy, to huon le mayne, to 16  
the duc of normandye, & to therle of flaundres. ca°. Cxij. [p. 170]
- <sup>3</sup>Of the grete socours that the soudan<sup>4</sup> of Perse had sente to them of An-  
thyoche, And corbagat assieged Rages / capitulo Cxij. [p. 171]
- How oure men aduertysed of the grete hooste of corbagat, sente somme of 20  
theyr knyghtes for to esteme them. And what they reported of that  
they had seen. capitulo Cxiiij. [p. 172]
- Of the counseyl that oure peple toke for to ordeyne theyr nedes, whan they  
sawe the comyng of this right grete hoost. cap°. Cxv. [p. 173] 24
- How after that buymont had declared his fayt to alle thoost / they acorded  
that the toun shold be his, sauf therle of tholouse / ca°. Cxvj. [p. 174]
- How they of Anthyoche had fere of treson, And how they assembled in coun-  
seil, & of that which emirferius deposed therat. ca°. Cxvij. [p. 176] 28
- Of the meschyf that the turkes made euery day to the cristen men that were  
in Anthyoche enhabytyng with them / ca°. Cxviiij. [p. 177]
- Of the dylygence that buymont<sup>5</sup> made in this werke. And emyrferius slewe  
his broder, & delyuerd the toun to the cristen men. ca°. Cxix. [p. 179] 32
- Of the mayntene of the cristen men in this pryse, And of thaffraye of the  
turkes of the toun. capitulo Cxx. [p. 181]
- How Ancean, lord of Anthyoche, fledde by a posterne oute of the toun / and  
he was recountred and put to deth. capitulo Cxxj. [p. 183] 36
- How, after that our men had made grete slaughter of theyr enemyes, our men  
helde counseyl for to take the dongeon / thenne beyng seased of the  
turkes. capitulo Cxxij. [p. 184]

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* tonn.    <sup>2</sup> *Orig.* bymont.    <sup>3</sup> *leaf* 6, back.    <sup>4</sup> *Orig.* soudaner.    <sup>5</sup> *Orig.* buymont.



- How, whyles that thoost garnysshyd the toun, Somme of thoost corbagat cam rennyng to fore it. capitulo Cxxiiij. [p. 185]
- How, the thyrd day after the getyng and pryse of Anthyoche, corbagat with  
4 his hoost arruyed to fore it. capitulo Cxxiiiij. [p. 186]
- How after that / the duc was within the barres of the toun / many of his men slayn, the turkes entred in to the toun. ca°. Cxxv. [p. 188]
- How oure cristen men, that a lytil tofore had assieged the toun / were now  
8 assieged in the same. capitulo Cxxvj. [p. 189]
- How corbagat dyde do assaylle a fortresse which therle of ffaundres keppe without the gate, & of that ensiewed. capitulo Cxxvij. [p. 191]
- Of the grete famyne and mesease that our men suffred in the cyte of Anthyoche, beyng assieged on alle sydes by the said corbagat.  
12 capitulo Cxxviiiij. [p. 192]
- How the turkes, felyng that oure men were in suche mescheyf of hongre, enforced them for tassaylle the cyte / capitulo Cxxix. [p. 193]
- 16 How corbagat sente his men of armes, for to slee the marouners that were at the parte; wherof our men had a grete losse. capitulo Cxxx. [p. 194]
- How guyllem de grateuylle and his felaws fugytyfs cam in to <sup>1</sup>Allexandryee the lasse. Capitulo Cxxxij. [p. 195]
- 20 How therle of chartres / discouraged themperour of constantynople, that he shold not goo & socoure our peple in anthioche. ca°. Cxxxij. [p. 196]
- How, by the warnynges of the sayd Erle / themperour, whiche wold haue goon & socoured our men, retorned shortly. ca°. Cxxxiiij. [p. 198]
- 24 How our peple in Anthyoche, beyng aduertysed herof, were alle discouraged / And Corbagat enhaunced in pryde. ca°. Cxxxiiij. [p. 199]
- How the spere was founden that Ihesus was prechyd<sup>2</sup> on the crosse with / & of the comfort that our pilgrims toke therby. ca°. Cxxxv. [p. 200]
- 28 How peter thoremte was sent by our men vnto Corbagat, the wordes that he sayde / and answeere of the sayd corbagat. ca°. Cxxxvj. [p. 202]
- How the sayd Peter retorned in to the toun / and wold openly haue<sup>3</sup> sayd his message / and of the subtyl counseyl of the duc / whiche wold not  
32 suffre it / capitulo Cxxxvij. [p. 204]
- How tofore, er our men departed, they made redy theyr bataylles right wel in poynt / And of the nombre of them / ca°. Cxxxviiiij. [p. 205]
- How Corbagat was aduertysed of thyssuyng of our peple / and sente archers  
36 for to deffende the brydge / And how they were disconfyted / capitulo Cxxxix. [p. 207]
- How oure men reioysed them of a dewe descendyng fro heuen / & of theyr mayntene in approuchyng the turkes / capitulo Cxl. [p. 208]

<sup>1</sup> leaf 7.

<sup>2</sup> sic: = pricked.

<sup>3</sup> Orig. hane.

- How Corbagat ordeyned his bataylles / and how the two hoostes marched to  
gydre in bataylle. capitulo Cxlj. [p. 209]
- Of the fleying of corbagat, and<sup>1</sup> of somme turkes gadred to gydre and agayn  
discomfyted by our men / capitulo Cxliij. [p. 211] 4
- How our peple retorned fro the chaas / and wente to the pyllage. And of  
the grete rychesses that they fonde / capitulo Cxliij. [p. 213]
- Of the fayr ordenaunces that oure people made in the chirches of anthyoche /  
& in other townes by / after this victorye / ca°. Cxliiij. [p. 215] 8
- How our peple sente ambassadours to themperour of constantinople, for to  
somone hym for to come socoure them as he had promised /  
capitulo Cxlv. [p. 216]
- How the pylgryms of thoost desired to goo vnto Iherusalem, for teschewe the 12  
mortalyte and tacomplysshe theyr vowe / ca°. Cxlvj. [p. 218]
- The dylygence that duc Godeffroye made for to socoure a turke, to whom he  
had promised to helpe hym. And how he reysed the siege, beyng tofore  
his castel. capitulo Cxlvij. [p. 219] 16
- Of somme pylgryms goyng fro Anthyoche toward the duc godeffroye, that  
were distressyd by the turkes / And rescowd by the duc /  
Capitulo Cxlvij. [p. 220]
- <sup>2</sup>How the duc alway enforced hym to augmente cristiente, and of somme 20  
fortresses by hym beten and destroyed. ca°. Cxlix. [p. 221]
- How the knyghtes of Rages wold haue bytrayed Bawdwyn theyr lord, And  
how he was therof aduertysed / ca°. CL. [p. 222]
- How therle bawdwyn was in daunger of deth, by the treson of a turk named 24  
balac. ca°. CLj. [p. 223]
- How therle of tholouse<sup>3</sup> toke the cyte of albane / and therin constituted a  
bisshop / ca°. CLij. [p. 225]
- How oure peple retorneð in to Anthyoche / and toke counseyl for to goo to 28  
Iherusalem / and of this that foloweth. ca°. CLiij. [p. 226]
- How the duc godeffroy wold goo to Rages to vysyte his brother, er he began  
his way to Iherusalem, And of somme of his aduen[tu]res.  
capitulo CLiij. [p. 228] 32
- How, after the cyte of albane<sup>4</sup> was conquerd, a grete debate aroos bytwene  
therle of tholouse and buymont / ca°. CLv. [p. 228]
- How, at the request of the comyn peple, therle of tholouse ordeyned day for  
to conduyte them. Ca°. CLvj. [p. 230] 36
- How therle of tholouse auengyd hym of somme turkes Robbours which  
robbed his hoost. Capitulo CLvij. [p. 231]

<sup>1</sup> *Orig. aud.*<sup>2</sup> leaf 7, back.<sup>3</sup> *Orig. tholouse.*<sup>4</sup> *Orig. albare.*

- How therle of tholouse approchyð with his hoost vnto Archys / And of the  
situation of the same. Ca°. CLviiij. [p. 233]
- Of a toun named tortuose, whiche Raymont toke with a Rowte of pylgryms /  
4 And of the departyng of the other Barons. Capitulo CLix. [p. 234]
- How the duc assieged Gibelet / and of a trayson by whiche he left his siege.  
Capitulo CLx. [p. 235]
- How thoost murmured of the spere founden in Anthyoche, And of the grete  
8 miracle that happed in the presence of alle thooste.  
Capitulo CLxj. [p. 237]
- Of thambassade of Egypte comen with oure men in to thooste of pylgryms /  
and of the reuerence that was don to them. ca°. CLxij. [p. 239]
- 12 Of an embassade fro themperour of constantynople comen to our pylgryms, &  
of thanswer to the sayd Ambassiate / capitulo CLxiiij. [p. 240]
- How the comyn peple complayned them of this, that they wente not hastily  
to Iherusalem / capitulo CLxiiiij. [p. 242]
- 16 Of the grete dylygence that our men made for tapproche to Iherusalem, And  
of thalyannces of somme Turkes made vnto them.  
Capitulo CLxv. [p. 243]
- How the Cristen men of Bethlehem receyued moche wel Tancre & his rowte /  
20 & sette his<sup>1</sup> baner in the chirche of our lady / ca Clxvj. [p. 245]
- <sup>2</sup>Of thardaunt desire that the peple had to see Iherusalem, and how thoost  
approched, and was lodged by ordenaunce. capitulo Clxvij. [p. 246]
- Of the situacion of Iherusalem, and of the descripcion, and also of many other  
24 cytees, townes, and countrees therabout. Capitulo / CLxviij. [p. 248]
- How Iherusalem hath had many names, after dyuerse lordes therin regnyng /  
And yet of the situacion wel at longe / Capitulo CLxix. [p. 250]
- Here thystorye deuyseth of many merueyllous edefyces conteyned in the same  
28 cyte of Iherusalem / & who made them. capitulo / Clxx. [p. 251]
- How the turkes of Iherusalem, whan they knewe the comyng of oure hooste,  
stopped the pyttes and fontaynes of the toun /  
Capitulo CLxxj. [p. 253]
- 32 Of the nombre of them of thoost / of them of Iherusalem, and how our men  
lodged them in the siege to fore Iherusalem. capitulo CLxxij. [p. 254]
- How our men began tassaylle Iherusalem, And of the grete dylygence that  
they dyde to make engyns for to take it / ca° / CLxxiiij. [p. 256]
- 36 How our peple were in grete meschyef atte sayd siege / And how the turkes  
deserted them / by cause they myght yssue and entre in and out of the  
toun. capitulo CLxxiiiij. [p. 257]

<sup>1</sup> *Orig. hit.*

<sup>2</sup> leaf 8.

- How the turkes enforced them to make merueyllous engyns ayenst oures, and  
of the meschyef don to the cristen men dwellyng in the toun.  
capitulo CLxxv. [p. 258]
- In this tyme arryued<sup>1</sup> a ship of genewys atte porte of halappe, And how 4  
they messagers cam in to thoost, and of theyr request /  
Capitulo CLxxvj. [p. 259]
- How alle the pylgryms, euerich after his estate / payned them to make  
thengyns for thassault. capitulo CLxxvij. [p. 261] 8
- Of the fayr processions that oure pylgryms made / to thende that god shold  
gyue to theym vycторыe / And how they pardonned eche other theyr  
male talentes and euyl wylles / capitulo / CLxxviii. [p. 262]
- How oure men sodenly transported in the nyght they engyns vnto that 12  
other parte of the toun for tassaylle on that syde.  
Capitulo CLxxix. [p. 263]
- How, the daye folowyng, oure peple made a merueyllous assault, & how the  
turkes defended them subtylly & wel. capitulo CLxxx. [p. 265] 16
- The nyght departed the sayd assault, our peple withdrewе them / And how  
they watched theyr engynes / and the turkes the toun /  
Capitulo Clxxxj. [p. 266]
- How oure peple retorneð agayn on the morn to thassault<sup>2</sup> / And<sup>3</sup> of the 20  
sorceryes that they wold haue charmed one of our engyns.  
capitulo CLxxxij. [p. 267]
- Of the dispar of our peple at the sayd assault, And how they were recom-  
forted by a knyght vnknown<sup>4</sup> and eydent myracles. 24,  
capitulo CLxxxiiij. [p. 268]
- How therle of tholouse assaylled vygorously toward the south, And of  
thardaunt desire that eche man had to doo wel /  
capitulo CLxxxiiiij. [p. 270] 28
- Of the pryse and takyng of Iherusalem / and how duc godeffroy entred fyrst  
on the walles / and who folowed. capitulo CLxxxv. [p. 271]
- Of the mayntenynge of our peple entred in to the toun toward the northeest,  
and therle of tholouse, herof al ignoraunt, assaylled alwey. 32  
capitulo CLxxxvi. [p. 272]
- How xM turkes were slayn in the temple, and of the grete tresour that  
Tancre fonde in the temple / capitulo CLxxxvij. [p. 274]
- Of the ordenaunces that the cristen men made tofore they vnarmed them 36  
after that the toun was taken. capitulo CLxxxviii. [p. 275]
- How the cristen men, that had charged theyr message for theyr delyueraunce  
to peter theremyte, knewe hym. ca. CLxxxix. [p. 277]

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* arryued.<sup>2</sup> thassault.<sup>3</sup> leaf 8, back.<sup>4</sup> *Orig.* vuknownen.

- How they clensyd the toun of the dede bodyes. Of many other ordenaunces /  
And how the dongeon was yolden to therle of tholouse.  
capitulo CLxxxx. [p. 278]
- 4 How the hye barons of thoost assembled for to chose a kynge of Iherusalem,  
And thoppynyng of the clergye vpon the same.  
Capitulo CLxxxxj. [p. 279]
- How the duc godeffroy was chosen kynge of Iherusalem, And how he was  
8 presented to our lord in his chirche of the holy sepulcre /  
capitulo CLxxxxij. [p. 281]
- How duc godeffroy after his election requyred therle of tholouse that he shold  
delyuer to hym the tour dauyd. ca°. CLxxxvij. [p. 282]
- 12 Of a patriarke electe and chosen in Iherusalem. And how there was founden  
a part of the veray crosse. capitulo CLxxxvij. [p. 283]
- How duc godeffroy payned hym to amende the Royamme: of his good con-  
dicions and statutes. capitulo CLxxxv. [p. 284]
- 16 Of the sayeng of the countesse of boloyne, moder of the sayd duc, that she  
sayd of her iij oldest sones was veriefed / ca°. CLxxxvj. [p. 286]
- Of the waging of a bataylle which was bytwene duc godeffroy and an hye  
baron of almayne / capitulo C : Lxxxvij. [p. 287]
- 20 Of a fayr fayte of armes, which that the duc<sup>1</sup> dide in a bataill that temperour  
of Almayne had ayenst them of saxone. ca°. Clxxxvij.<sup>2</sup> [p. 288]
- <sup>3</sup>How the valyaunt duc godeffroy augmented holy chirche / and he wold  
neuer bere crowne / capitulo CLxxxix. [p. 290]
- 24 How the turkes of Arabe and of Egypte made their sommance for to come in  
to Sury tassaylle our cristen men. capitulo CC. [p. 291]
- How the crysten men, whan they knewe thyse tydynges, cryed to god for  
mercy & for to haue vycторыe. capitulo CCj. [p. 293]
- 28 How oure men assembled and ordeyned theyr bataylles for to fyghte ayenst  
the turkes. And how the turkes were disconfyted.  
capitulo CCij. [p. 294]
- How somme of oure barons wolde retorne home / after that they had don  
32 theyr pylgremage / capitulo CCij. [p. 296]
- How buymont and bawdyn acerteined of the conquest of Iherusalem wold  
accomplysse theyr pylgremage / ca°. CCij. [p. 298]
- How our cristen men chosen a very patriark in Iherusalem / And assigned to  
36 hym rentes / capitulo CCv. [p. 300]
- How by thatysement of somme men a grete debate sourded bytwene the duc  
& the patriark of Iherusalem. ca°. CCvj. [p. 301]

<sup>1</sup> *Orig. dnc.*

<sup>2</sup> *Orig. clxxxvij.*

<sup>3</sup> leaf 9.

Here recounteth thistorye, how the fourth part of Iherusalem cam vnto the  
 patriarke of the same / capitulo CCvij. [p. 302]  
 Of the same mater. ca°. CCviiij. [p. 304]  
 How duc godeffroy, for taugmente cristiente assyged<sup>t</sup> one of the tounes of the 4  
 turkes / capitulo CCix. [p. 305]  
 How the turkes brought presentes to the duc Godeffroye at the sayd siege /  
 and of theyr deuyses to gydre / capitulo CCx. [p. 307]  
 How buymont was taken in goyng to meletene, whiche cyte the lord of the 8  
 toun wold<sup>t</sup> haue yolden to hym. capitulo CCxj. [p. 308]  
 How the duc godeffroy assembled his peple and<sup>t</sup> entred in to Arabye. And  
 of the gayn that he made of two grete strokes, that he smote on two  
 camellis, And of his deth. capitulo CCxij. [p. 309] 12

Here endeth the table of the content and<sup>t</sup> chapytres nombred<sup>t</sup> of this  
 present book, entitled the siege and<sup>t</sup> conqueste of Iherusalem by cristen men.

<sup>1</sup> leaf 10.  
 Beginning  
 of the booke  
 Eracles,  
 also called  
 Godfrey of  
 Bologne,  
 treating of  
 the conquest  
 of the Holy  
 Land  
 by Godfrey of  
 Bologne.

<sup>1</sup> Here begynneth the boke Intituled<sup>t</sup> Eracles / and also Godefrey  
 of Boloynne / the whiche speketh of the Conquest of the holy londe 16  
 of Iherusalem / conteynyng diuerse warres and noble faytes of  
 Armes made in the same Royamme / and in the contrees adiacent,  
 And also many meruayllous werkes happed<sup>t</sup> and fallen, as wel on  
 this syde / as in tho partyes this tyme duryng<sup>t</sup> / And how the 20  
 valyant duc Godefrey of Boloynne conquer<sup>t</sup> with swerd the sayd  
 Royamme / And was kynge there /

The ffirst chapitre treateth how Eracles conquerd  
 Perse and slewe Cosdroe / and brought in to 24  
 Iherusalem the very crosse / capitulo primo /

Eracles was  
 Emperor of  
 Rome.

He Auncyent hystories saye that Eracles was a good<sup>t</sup> crysten  
 man, and gouernour of thempyre of Rome / But in his tyme  
 Machomet had ben, whiche was messenger of the deuil, And<sup>t</sup> 28  
 t made the peple to vnderstonde / that he was a prophete sente  
 from our lorde / In the tyme of Eracles was the fals lawe of  
 machomet sowed and sprad abroad in many partyes of thoryent /  
 and namely in Arabye / in so moche <sup>2</sup>that the prynces of the 32  
 londes yet wold not gyue faith to his secte that he prechid and  
 taught, whiche is cursed and euyl / but he constrayned them by  
 force and by swerd to, & alle their subgets to obeye to his com-  
 mandemens, and to byleue in his lawe<sup>2</sup> / Whan Eracles had 36

Mahomed-  
 anism was  
 widely spread  
 in his time.

<sup>2-2</sup> Caxton seems to have misunderstood his French here entirely. It  
 was the princes themselves who "constrayned their subjets by force and by

- conquerd Perse, and slayn cosdroe, which was a puissaunt kynge, he brought agayn to Iherusalem the very Crosse(3) / whiche they had ladde in to perse / And abode and dwellyd in the londe of Surrye /
- 4 And dide do ordeyne and chose a patriarke, a moche wise man named Modeste / By whos counseil he dyde do make agayn the chirches / and habyllid the holy places / and clensed them that the tyraunt Cosdroe(4) of Perse had smeton doun and destroyed,
- 8 Eracles sette grete entente & made grete costes for to repayre them / And whiles he entended ther aboute / homar, the sone of captap, whiche was a prynce of Arabe, the thirde after machomet / cam in to this contree named palestyne, with so grete nombre of peple that
- 12 alle the londe was couerid with them / and had thenne taken by force a moche stronge Cyte of that londe named Iadre / ffrom thens he drewe hym toward damaske / and assiged<sup>1</sup> the cyte, and by strengthe toke hyt / ffor he had so grete a nombre of peple that
- 16 nothyng myght resiste hym / themperour heracles, which yet dwellyd in a parte of this londe named Cylyce, herle tydynges of this peple / And sente good espyes & trewe, in whiche he trusted, for to see and serche their couine / <sup>2</sup>ffor he desyred moche to hane
- 20 a doo with thise peple on the felde, and fyghte and chase them out of the londes and cytees<sup>2</sup> whiche obeyed to Cristente & to thempyre of Rome. But whan his messagers cam, he had by them knowleche certaynly that he had not peple ynowhe to fyhte ayenst them / ffor
- 24 they were so fyers & so orguylous of the grete nombre of peple that they had / that they thought / nothyng myght resiste them / And ther vpon heracles had deliberacion, and counseilled with his peple / that it shold be lest dishonour to departe and retorne in to
- 28 his contre / than suffre his peple to be destroyed, & myght not amende it / Thus thenne, he departed out of Surrye, by cause the kynge of Arabe & his peple were of so grete power & so proude / as they that fonde alle the contre habondonned<sup>3</sup> to them / ffor in a
- 32 short tyme they had conquered alle the contre of Surrye vnto Egypte / One thyng that was to fore happenned in this contree,

Eracles conquered Cosdroe, king of Persia, and brought the true cross back to Jerusalem.

Homar, son of Captap, prince of Arabia, invades Palestine.

Eracles sends his spies to ascertain the character of the invaders.

Eracles decides not to fight with them, but to withdraw from Syria.

The Arabs conquer all Syria.

sword to obey." *Fr. que li princes des terres ne se tenoient mie à ce que l'en enseignast et amonestast à croire celle male aventure, encois contreignoient par force et par espée touz leur songiez à obeir au commandement Mahomet, viz. as princes of the land were not satisfied with teaching and admonishing, etc.* <sup>1</sup> leaf 10, back.

<sup>2-2</sup> Caxton has translated very freely *Fr. Car il desirois moult à sçavoir s'il peust cele gent attendre en champ ou ruser eux et chacier des terres et des citiés.* <sup>3</sup> *Orig.* habandonned.

They did  
this the more  
easily, be-  
cause of the  
damage done  
previously by  
Cosdroe.

whiche heelp moche them of Arabe tencrece their power, ffor  
cosdroe the puissannt kynge of perse, of whom I haue spoken to  
fore / had ben with grete puissaunce in Surye / and had destroyed  
the Cytees and castels / brent townes & chirches, and slayn grete 4  
partye of the peple / and the remeunnt had brought in to Captyuyte /  
And toke the cyte of Iherusalem with force, and slewe within the  
tounn xxxvj. M. men / And bare away with hym the veray crosse  
that our lord Ihesu Cryste suffred deth on for vs, And ladde with 8  
hym the patriarke of Iherusalem named (5) Acharye,<sup>1</sup> and brought  
hym with hym with the other Caytyfs /

Here recounteth thistorye how that the puissaunt  
kynge Cosdroe wastyd the Empyre of Rome, for 12  
tauenge the deth of themperour Maurice / fader  
of his wyf / capitulo ij°

Maurice was  
an Emperour  
of Rome,

Ow I shal telle yow why he had so doon / lyke as I sayde /  
n he was a ryght myghty kynge / now had ther be an emperour 16  
at Rome, named Mauryce, whiche as we fynde was moche  
acquyented with seint gregorie, And was his gossib, ffor the sayd  
seynt Gregorye had cristenyd to hym a daughter named Marie /

who gave  
his daughter  
Marie in  
marriage to  
Cosdroe, king  
of Persia.

This Maurice gaf her in Maryage to this Cosdroe / And ther by was 20  
a grete frenship bytwene them / & grete alyauunce bytwene them of  
perse and the Romainys as longe as themperour lyued / in suche  
wise / that for the loue of his wyf & the Romainys, whiche were  
Cristen / This Emperour made Cosdroe to be baptised. But after 24

When Mau-  
rice was slain  
by Foca,

it befylle that foca slewe in treson this Emperour Maurice / And  
was Emperour in his place, and was called ffoca cesar / whan

Cosdroe was  
very angry  
with the  
Romans.

cosdroe herd herof he had merveyllous grete sorow, grete desdayne /  
grete orguyel, & grete hate ayenst the peple of the Romainys, by 28  
cause that he whiche had slayn theyr lorde vntrewly / and was yet  
bloody of the blood of the emperour, they had chosen to be their  
lord, and had gyuen to hym thempire / ffor this cause he entended  
to his power to hurte and destroye al thempire of Rome / And for 32  
this cause, for tauenge the deth of the fader of his wyf / whiche  
ofte enticed hym therto / he entred in to the londe of Surye, whiche  
thenne was subget to thempyre of Rome, and wasted & destroyed  
it / lyke as I haue said to fore / and voyded almost alle the peple 36  
that was therin / ffor whiche cause This kynge homar aforsaid, &

To avenge  
his wife's  
father he  
wasted and  
destroyed  
Syria, which  
was a Roman  
province.

<sup>1</sup> Lat. *Zacharias*.

<sup>2</sup> leaf 11.



his peple of Arabe, that fonde this londe so voyde, myght the better  
doo theyr wylles with alle /

Homar found  
Jerusalem  
deserted and  
destroyed.

How this puissaunt kynge entred in to Iherusalem /  
4 and demaunded dylygently of the Temple, and  
reedyfied it, and assigned grete reuenues therto  
for tentretene<sup>1</sup> it. capitulo iij<sup>o</sup>

Han they cam in the holy cyte of Iherusalem, they fonde it  
8 w destroyed & an<sup>d</sup> deserte / sauf a fewe cristen men whiche dwellyd  
there, and were suffred that they shold lyue as Cristen men, and  
make agayn their chirches, an<sup>d</sup> that they shol<sup>d</sup> haue a patriarke.  
In the while that this myghty prynce duelli<sup>d</sup> in Iherusalem, he  
12 began tenquyre moche ententify<sup>2</sup> of the peple of the tounn, &  
pryncipally of the patriarke whiche was named<sup>d</sup> Sophonye / & had  
ben chosen after modeste, whiche was deed, of whom I haue spoken  
to fore, In what place the temple of our lord<sup>d</sup> had<sup>3</sup> be whan Titus  
16 the prynce deffeted<sup>d</sup> and destroyed al the cyte / he shewid to hym  
the very certayn place, & the fondamentes, & a parte of the  
muraylles whiche were thenne yet apperyng / he made anon to be  
sought & to be brouht to hym, without longe taryeng, grete nombre  
20 of masons & of carpenters / & dide do be sette stones of marble &  
of other manere, & alle thynges necessarye therto he dide do  
assemble as moche as shold nede / And deuised the maner and  
ordynance of the mesure<sup>4</sup> / and of the dyspences for to make the  
24 temple / And<sup>d</sup>, as he was a noble prynce of hye affaire & noble / he  
brought anon to ende this that he had emprised<sup>d</sup>, in suche wise that  
the temple was reedefied in suche forme and estate as it yet  
apeereth / this saide prynce hym self assygned grete rentes &  
28 reuenues ffor euer more, for to sustene and repayre alle that shol<sup>d</sup>  
be nedeful to thedyfices and other necessites of the temple / and for  
the seruyng<sup>5</sup> of the lyght / day and nyght, by the handes of them  
that he commysed<sup>d</sup> to kepe the temple / Ther is in the same temple,  
32 within and without, <sup>5</sup>letters of golde<sup>5</sup> in the langage of Arabe,

Homar in-  
quired where  
the temple  
was.

He assembled  
material,  
and caused it  
to be rebuilt.

He assigned  
revenues to  
sustain it for  
ever.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *entretenir*, i. e. support.    <sup>2</sup> *Orig.* eutentify.    <sup>3</sup> leaf 11, back.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. *merrain*, building material, not measure.

<sup>5-5</sup> The French has *lettres faites d'or musique*, i. e. letters made of gold mosaic-work. Caxton probably misunderstood the word *musique*, and simply left it out. The Latin gives, *Exstant porro in eodem templi aedificio intus et extra ex opere musaico Arabicè idiomatis litterarum vetustissima monimenta quae illius temporis esse creduntur.*

whiche deuysse as we suppose / who was he that reedefyed the temple / and what tyme / And how moche it costeto rebylde it /

How Charlemayne by his lyberalite gate for the  
prouffyt of cristen peple in hethenes / thamytte 4  
of hethen prynces / capitulo iiij.

Jerusalem  
was under  
the power of  
heathen  
nations four  
hundred and  
thirty-four  
years.

The Prince  
Aaron Resst  
ruled all the  
Eastern  
nations ex-  
cept India.

This Aaron  
lived at the  
same time  
as Charle-  
magne.  
The Chris-  
tians of Jeru-  
salem were  
well treated  
by him.

Aaron loved  
and honored  
Charlemagne  
above all  
other princes.

He rewarded  
richly Charle-  
magne's  
ambassadors.

Hus it happed that this holy cyte of Iherusalem, for the synnes of the peple, was in seruage and <sup>1</sup>in daunger<sup>1</sup> of hethen peple longe tyme / That is to wete cccxxxiiij yere con- 8  
tynuely / but not allway in one manere / They were one tyme better, & another tyme werse / lyke as the lordes chaunged, whiche were of dyuerse maners & condicions / but neuertheles thise peple were alway in subiection / It happed that one grete lorde of this 12  
saide lawe had nyghe in his seignorye alle the londe of thoryent, sauf only ynde / This prynce<sup>2</sup> was named Aaron,(6) & his surname ressit / This man was of so grete cortosye / of so grete largesse / of so hye vygour / and of so grete affaires in alle goock maners, that yet 16  
the paynems speke of hym / lyke as they doo in ffraunce of Charlemayn / they were bothe in one tyme, this aaron & this charlemain. <sup>3</sup>And therefore, in their tyme, the cristen peple in Iherusalem were in better poynt / than thei had euer be to fore 20  
vnder any of the hethen peple / ffor Charlemayn the good Emperour,<sup>4</sup> whiche so moche trauailed and suffryd for our lorde / and so moche enhaunced the fayth of Ihesu Criste, to thende that the Cristiente in Surye myght be the better and more debonairly cherysshed and 24  
entreated; Pouchassed so longe that he had the loue and acqueynt-  
aunce<sup>5</sup> of the said Aaron, by messages that wente and cam /  
Wherof this Aaron had moche grete Ioye / And aboue alle the prynces of the world he louid and honoured themperour Charle- 28  
mayne, and the Cristen peple that were vnder hym / And alle the holy places that were vnder his power / he wolde that they shold be entretiened, mayntened and wel aourned, lyke as Charlemayne had desyred and sente to hym worde / Wherof it semed that our 32  
peple beyng there / Were more vnder the power of Charlemayne than vnder the power of the hethen men / Whan he myght fynde the messagers of Charlemayn / he charged and<sup>6</sup> laded them alle with riches of thoryent / With clothes of sylke, with spyces / 36

<sup>1-1</sup> Fr. *en dangier*, in the power of. <sup>2</sup> *Orig.* pryuce. <sup>3</sup> leaf 12.

<sup>4</sup> *Orig.* Emperonr. <sup>5</sup> *Orig.* acqueyutaunce. <sup>6</sup> *Orig.* aud.

Ieweles of golde of dyuerse facions / And with ryche precious stones, whiche he sente to his frende Charlemayn / And largely he gaf and rewarded the messagers / And emonge al other thinges, He  
 4 sente into ffraunce an Olyphant; This debonayrte purchased the good Charlemayn for the Crysten men that were in captiuyte vnder the said Aaron / And in lyke wyse the said Aaron, for the loue that he bare to Carlemayn, purchased for other Cristen men that  
 8 were in al hethenes vnder dyuerse lordes, as in egypte, And in Aufrique / That is to seye in Alexandrye / And in Cartage / ffor he sente grete yestes and<sup>1</sup> moche good<sup>2</sup> to sustene the power of Cristen men,<sup>2</sup> & sente grete presentes vnto theyr lordes & maistres mys-  
 12 creauntes, & amyable letters / In suche wise, that he purchased their loue and acqeyntaunce / by whiche they conteyned them more debonairly vn to cristiens that were in theyr subiection; thus dyde the hie prynce charlemayn vnto the hethen lordes, that were  
 16 fer fro hym / ffor it is to be bileuid / that yf he had ben nyghe to them, that he wold haue essayed for to haue delyuerd in another maner the peple of our lord, lyke as he dyde ryght gloriously in many places /

He even sent an elephant to France.

This Aaron also procured better treatment for the Christians in other heathen countries.

If Charlemagne had lived nearer these heathens he would have succoured the Christians more effectually.

20<sup>3</sup> Of the noyse that sourded emonge the hethen men discordyng in theyr lawe / and how they of egypte yssued out of theyr londe, and of the euyllis that they dyde. capitulo v<sup>o</sup>

24 N this season, it happed that a grete debate sourded bytwene  
 i the mescreauntes of Egypte / and the mescreauntes of Perse / ffor eueryche partye of this peple wold haue the seignourye vpon the other / The Rote of this grete hate and enuye sourded and  
 28 aroos of that whyche discorded / and yet dyscorde of certayn poyntes of theyr lawe / in suche wise that they haue dyuerse names / ffor they that holde the lawe of perse haue the name in theyr langage soun<sup>4</sup> / And they of the lawe of Egypte be named siha. And they  
 32 be not so ferre fro the very crysten lawe / as ben the other / It happed that they of Egypte yssued out of theyr londe, and conquered alle the londes vnto Antyoche / And emonge the other cytees that were taken / The holy cyte of Iherusalem cam vnder theyr power

Great religious disputes arose among the unbelievers,

so that the Egyptians issued out of their country and conquered Jerusalem.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig. aud.*

<sup>2-2</sup> Fr. *à soutenir les pources chrestiens*. Caxton has here mistaken "*pources*," poor, for "*pouvoir*," power.

<sup>3</sup> leaf 12, back.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. *Soun*, Lat. *Sonni*.

Heccam,  
Caliph of  
Egypt, sur-  
passed in  
cruelty all  
of his pre-  
decessors.

He cast down  
the church  
of the Holy  
Sepulchre.

Orestes was  
the patriarch  
of this  
church.

and seignourye / The peple that were there in captiuyte<sup>1</sup> were  
resonably wel entreated / tyl it happed by the suffraunce of god  
that his peple shold be chastised / and that was by a desloyal and  
cruel lord and calyph of Egypte, whiche was named hecam / he<sup>4</sup>  
passed in malyce and cruelte alle his predecessours in suche wyse  
<sup>2</sup>that the peple of his lawe helde them as wode men of pryde / of  
rage / and of falsehed<sup>2</sup> / Emonge the other tyrannyes, he commanded  
to caste down to the ground the chyrche of the sepulchre of our<sup>8</sup>  
lorde Ihesu Cryste / whiche had ben<sup>3</sup> made<sup>4</sup> first of Constantyne  
themperour / by a noble Patryarke of Iherusalem named Maxyme /  
and after reedefyed by modest that other patriarke / In the tyme of  
heracles, of whom we haue spoken to fore, he sente to them a fals<sup>12</sup>  
caliphe, one his bayly, whiche was lord of Rames, and named  
hyart.<sup>5</sup> (7) This dyde the commandement of his lord, and caste it  
down to grounde / In this tyme was patriarke of this chyrche a  
right valyaunt man named Oreste / and was vnclie vnto this vntrew<sup>16</sup>  
kyng of Egypte, broder of his moder / And this was the reson why  
he was so cruel ayenste Crystiente / ffor the heethen men sayde that  
he shold neuer be ferme in theyr lawe / by cause he had a crysten  
moder / And for to take away this suspesion he destroyed this<sup>20</sup>  
holy chyrche of the holy sepulchre / whiche was the fontayne and  
begynnyng of our very creaunce /

How thaffliccyon, iniuries and tormentes of crysten.  
men grewe in the tyme of Calyphe hetam. 24  
capitulo vj<sup>o</sup>.

Ro thenne forthon began thestate of our peple at Iherusalem  
f to be more greuous and more sorowful than it was wonte to  
be / ffor they toke grete displaysir at theyr herte for the<sup>28</sup>  
chirche of the resurrexion of our lorde, whiche they sawe so  
destroyed emonge them / And on that other syde they were  
charged ouer sorowfully wyth tributes, taskes and tayllages, ayenst  
the custome and preuyleges graunted to them of hethen prynces /<sup>32</sup>  
And also, they were deffended to make ony festes on the dayes of  
theyr hye festes / but thenne they were compellyd to trauaylle by

Heccam im-  
posed great  
tributes upon  
the Chris-  
tians of  
Jerusalem.

They were  
obliged to  
work on their  
fast days.

<sup>1</sup> Orig. captiuyte.

<sup>2-2</sup> Fr. *que les gens de la loi le tenoient aussi comme forsené d'orgueil et de raige*, i. e. even the people of his own religion considered him crazy with pride and anger.

<sup>3</sup> leaf 13.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. "*refait, premierement*." Constantine did not make, but *remade* the church.

<sup>5</sup> The ed. of P. Paris, Paris 1879, gives Hiarot.

- force and angre / or they were commanded not to yssue out of  
 theyr howses ne dores / but holde them cloos wythin ⁊ to thende  
 that they shold make no semblaunce of feste wythin them / And  
 4 yet also they myght not be therin in pees ne assured / but they  
 caste at them by the wyndows grete stones, donge, dyrt, and foul  
 ordure / And yf it happed somtyme a Crysten man to saye a light  
 worde that dyspleased any of the hethen men / Anon he shold be  
 8 taken like a murderer, and brought to pryson, and shold lose  
 therfore his fyste or fote / or he was brought to the gybet / And  
 alle the gook that he had / was brought in to the handes of the  
 Calyphe / Somtyme they wold take the chyl dren of the crysten  
 12 peple / bothe sones and doughtres, in to theyr owne howses / and  
 made them mescreauntes ayenst theyr wylle / And somtyme by  
 betynge / and another wyth lyes and flaterye made many yonge  
 folke to renye our fayth / And thus they dyde to our<sup>1</sup> peple moche  
 16 shame and grief / But notwythstondyng / good crysten men lefte  
 not / but admonestech and confortech the peple to suffre al this with  
<sup>2</sup>a gook herte and veri penitence for the faith of Ihesu Criste, and  
 promysed them for thise shames / the Ioye / thonour and the  
 20 glorie of heuen, whiche euer shal endure / The good Cristen peple  
 spack so to gydre / that they enforched them to holde, And kepe  
 their cristen fayth the more surely / By cause they dyde them so  
 moche harm And reproof. It sholde be ouer longe a thinge to  
 24 recouthe to you / Alle the meseases & the myschiefs that the peple  
 of our lord endured that tyme. But I shal shew yow one exampl,  
 to thende that by the same ye vnderstonde the<sup>3</sup> more of other /  
 One of the hethen men, ouermuche malicious and vntrewe, whiche  
 28 hated of ouermuche cruel hate the cristen men, he aduised and  
 thoughte an a day how he myght brynge them to deth. He sawe  
 wel that alle the cyte helde the temple in moche grete honour &  
 reuerence, whiche was redefyed, & the laye peple named it / the  
 32 temple dominus / & that they whiche had the charge to kepe it dide  
 al their payne to kepe it cleen & nette / now ther was a place to  
 fore the temple, whiche was named thaitre<sup>4</sup> of the temple / Whiche  
 they wolde kepe as clene / as cristen men kepe their chirches and  
 36 aultres / And this vntreu man, that I haue said yow of to fore,

They could  
not even  
remain in  
peace in  
their homes.

Heavy  
penalties  
were inflicted  
for the  
slightest  
offences.

Their chil-  
dren were  
forced to  
renounce the  
Christian  
faith.  
But, notwith-  
standing,  
good Chris-  
tians en-  
couraged  
each other  
to endure all  
these things.

A malicious  
heathen  
devised a  
plan to  
destroy all  
the Chris-  
tians.  
The temple  
was regarded  
with great  
reverence by  
both Chris-  
tians and Mo-  
hammedans.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig. onr.*      <sup>2</sup> leaf 13, back.      <sup>3</sup> Fr. "*Plusieurs des autres.*"

<sup>4</sup> Fr. *aitre*, i. e. the Cathedral yard, or the square before the Cathedral.  
 The word evidently puzzled Caxton, so that he transferred it bodily, instead  
 of trying to find its English equivalent.

This malicious man  
aforesaid placed a dead  
dog in the open place  
before the temple.

The heathen  
men all declared that  
it had been done by some  
Christian, and clamored  
for their death.

A young man  
devised the deliverance  
of the Christians, by  
taking the deed upon  
himself.

He had his  
head smitten  
off.

Toke by nyght, in suche wise that no man sawe it / a dede hounde  
al roten and stynkyng, and brought it in to the same aitre to fore  
the temple / On the morn, whan they of the toun<sup>1</sup> cam to the  
temple, they fonde this dogge / Thenne sourded and aroos / a crye / 4  
a noyse, and a clamour so grete thurgh alle the toun / That ther  
was nothinge spoken of but of this hounde. They assembled / and  
put out of doubte / that this was not doon ne caste there but by the  
Cristyens / Alle the hethen men Accorded to this poynt that alle 8  
the cristen peple shold be put to deth with the swerd / <sup>2</sup>And there  
were theyr swerdes drawn redy out / And they also that sholde  
smyte of their heedes.<sup>2</sup> Emonge the crysten men was a yonge man  
of a moche grete herte and of grete pyte / And spak to the peple, 12  
and said to them / "flair lordes, trouthe it is / That I am not  
culpable in this thinge, ne none of yow, as I byleue certaynly / But  
it shold be ouermoeche grete domage yf we alle shold deye thus,  
ffor by this shold alle the Cristendomme be quenched in this londe / 16  
Wherefore I haue thought in my self / how I shal delyuer yow alle,  
by thayde of our lord / Two thynges I <sup>3</sup>desyre of you, for the loue  
of god / That one is that ye praye for my sowle in your orisons /  
That other is that ye deport<sup>4</sup> and honoure my poure lygnage / ffor 20  
I will take this thinge on me / and saye that I allone haue doon  
this fayt, whiche they put on vs alle" / they that doubted the deth  
had grete Ioye whan they herd this / and promysed to hym their  
orisons, and thonoure of his lygnage / In this maner that they of 24  
his lygnage euermore on palmsunday shal bere tholyue, whiche  
signifyeth Ihesu Criste whan he cam in to Iherusalem / Thus this  
man cam to fore the Iustice / And said to them that the other  
Cristen men were nothyng culpable in this fayt / and sayde that he 28  
hym self had doon the dede / whan they herde this / they delyuerd  
alle the other / And he only had his heed smeten of /

How at the requeste of Themperour of Constantyn-  
noble the cristen men obteyned lycence to bylde <sup>32</sup>  
agayn the chirche of the holy sepulcre.

capitolo .vij<sup>o</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Orig. tonn.

<sup>2-2</sup> Caxton is so hampered here, by his corrupt French text, that he does not make a very intelligible translation. The text of A. shows us the sense of the passage—"Et jà estoient pres les espées traites de cel qui leur devoient à touz les testes tranchier."

<sup>3</sup> leaf 14.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. *deportez*, protect, take care of

- 8 Uche diseases<sup>1</sup> suffred the peple of our lord in this tyme; but  
 Ihesu cryste, that wel can sette remedyes in thinges merueillous  
 & out of ordre / recomforte them after, ffor this vntrewe  
 4 prynce of egipte, hetam, deyde / and his sone, named daher, regned  
 after hym / This daher renewed the alyaunces with themperour of  
 constantynoble, <sup>2</sup>whiche was a Romain, and named Eliopolitans<sup>2</sup> /  
 he prayde <sup>3</sup>the said daher, whom he moche louyd,<sup>3</sup> that he wold  
 8 suffre that the Cristen men myght reedefye the chirche of the holy  
 sepulchre, whiche his fader had do beten dounn / he graunted it for  
 the loue of themperour / It was not longe after that this emperour  
 deyde / and after hym regned Constantyn, whiche had to surname  
 12 Monomaques / whiche is to saye in grece as a man fyghtyng allone /  
 The poure cristen that were in Iherusalem had lycence for to make  
 agayn their chirches / but they had not the power, for their  
 pouerte / And herupon they had a counseyl that they wold sende  
 16 to themperour / and requyre hym for goddes sake that he wold  
 helpe and socour of his Almesse, for the reedefyng of this holy  
 werke / Ther was in the tounn of Iherusalem a good man named  
 Iohan <sup>4</sup>Cariantes, born in Constantynoble, & had ben a grete  
 20 gentilman of the contre as of his lignage / But yet was he more  
 gentil of herte & good maners / This man was comen on pylgrymage  
 to the holy sepulchre, and had lefte alle the bobauce and thonour  
 of the world / & had taken thabyte of relygion / ffor to folowe our  
 24 lord Ihesu Criste in pouerte<sup>5</sup> in the place / where he suffred pouerte  
 & messease for vs / This said Iohan was prayd of alle the cristen  
 people there, that he wolde entrepryse this message for to go to  
 themperour, for the loue of god and of them / he dyde it with a  
 28 good wyll, and departed, and <sup>6</sup>cam in to Constantynoble, and spak  
 to themperour / and dide alle that he was requyred / ffor themperour  
 graunted that he wolde make alle the dispences<sup>7</sup> that shold be  
 nedeful to the byldyng of this holy chirche / and wolde reedefye it  
 32 at his owen coste / This Iohan was moche Ioyous whan he had so  
 wel accomplisshyd his message / and toke leue of themperour, and  
 cam agayn in to Iherusalem / Whan he had said to the peple the  
 good tydings that he brought / they made grete Ioye, And many

Heccam,  
 Prince of  
 Egypt, died.  
 Daher, his  
 son, reigned  
 after him.

The Chris-  
 tians had  
 permission  
 to rebuild  
 their church,  
 but no  
 money.

They sent to  
 beg aid of the  
 Emperor of  
 Constanti-  
 nople.

The Emperor  
 agreed to  
 bear all the  
 expense of  
 rebuilding  
 the church.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. "*mesaises*" should not, in this case, be translated "*diseases*," but *calamities, miseries*.

<sup>2-2</sup> Caxton has here misunderstood his text. The French has, "*qui avoit nom Romain, et estoit nommé en sournom Elyopolitanes*."

<sup>3-3</sup> Fr. *celui Daher qui moult l'aimoit*.

<sup>4</sup> leaf 14, back.

<sup>5</sup> Orig. ponerty.

<sup>6</sup> Orig. aud.

<sup>7</sup> Orig. dispeuces.

The Christians wept for joy at this news.

The church was completed in the year 1048.

The Christians now feel repaid for all they have suffered.

They had suffered greatly under the Egyptians and the Persians,

but that was as nothing compared to their treatment by the Turks.

It seems best to give some account of the Turks.

wepte grete terees for pyte / by cause they thoughte that our lord wolde not al way forgete them / whan he had doo to them suche comforte / In this tyme was patriarke in Iherusalem an holy man named nycesores<sup>1</sup> / Themperour held ryght wel his promesse, for he sente without taryeng grete partyr of his tresour / and dide do make the chyrche of the holy sepulchre moche hye in thestate and manere that it is yet / And was ful made the yere of thincarnacion of our lord a M xlviij, And had ben xxxvij yere destroyed. This was ryght the yere to fore that our peple recouerd the cyte / Whan the Cristen men there had made agayn the chirche / they were moche Ioyous, and were also therin well comforted of all theyr mēseases and repreues that they suffred, wherof they had grete<sup>12</sup> plente / not only in Iherusalem / But also in alle the cytees aboute / as in bethleem / And in the cyte where Amos the prophete was born, named Tecua / As ofte as the Caliphe sente in to the lande a newe bayly / so ofte were sette on them new tributes & taillages, 16 whiche they myght not well paye / & yf they payed not, anon they menaced them for to caste down their chirches to the ground, & saide they had of their lord commandement so to doo: thus in this sorow were the cristen peple / one while vnder them of egipte / 20 another tyme vnder them of Perse / but this was not but yet a begynning to them, as whan they cam vnder the power of the<sup>2</sup> turques / ffor the turques conquerd the Royame of perse / and also of Egypte. Thus the holy cyte fyll in to their demayne / whiche 24 demened it so cruelly & tormented it so cruelly / that it semed to the peple of our lord that they had be in fraunchise and in grete reste vnder them of Egypte and of perse. Thus helde the turkes them there viij yere / 28

Of the turkes; fro wens they cam / and how they grewe in to grete puisaunce, and dide chese them a kynge for to mayntene their warres.

capitulo viij<sup>o</sup> 32

or as moche as we haue spoken of the turkes / & shal ofte speke of them in this book / me semeth good that I saye to yow fro whens this peple cam first / & wherby they had so grete power / The turke & turkemans cam out of a lynage, Rote, & 36

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *Nycesores*, Lat. *Nycephorus*.

<sup>2</sup> leaf 15.



- of a contre <sup>1</sup>toward the Eest whiche is in surye,<sup>1</sup> And were a peple  
 moche rude & without ordynaunce / ne had no contreye, ne no  
 certayn dwellyng place / But went all aboute fro londe to londe /  
 4 & sought pastures for their beestis / ne neuer duellid in castel ne  
 tounn / And whan they wolde meue from one place to another /  
 thenne wente euery lynage by hym self / And they made in euery  
 kynred or lygnage a prince whiche was theyr Iusticer: by thise  
 8 prynces, all their mesfeates and trespeaces were redressyd and  
 amendid / And they obeyed, and dide that he or they commanded /  
 They caryed with them alle theyr thynges, seruantes, menages,  
 houshold, thier Oxen, kyen, sheep, and other beestis. In this  
 12 thyng was alle theyr rychesse / They laboured no londe by eeryng  
 ne sowyng / ne they coude neyther bye ne selle / ffor they had no  
 moneye; but their beestes, their chese and Mylke, changed thei, for  
 to haue other thinges that they neded. Whan they had ben in  
 16 one place, and had nede to goo in to another, they sente the wisest  
 of their peple vnto the princes of the contre / And they made  
 couenauntes for them for to dwelle in theyr wodes & pastures for  
 the tribute that they shold paye lyke as they shold accorde / Now it  
 20 happed that a grete partye of this peple departed fro the other / and  
 entred in to the londe of perse / & fonde this londe moche plenty-  
 vus of pastures / and ryght good of suche as they neded / And gaf  
 to the kyng the trybute that they were accorded fore / And dwellyd  
 24 there I can not telle how longe / This peple began to growe and  
 multeplye<sup>2</sup> in suche wise that <sup>3</sup>there were of them a meruayllous  
 grete nombre / in so moche that the kyng, and they of the contre  
 self began to haue grete doubt of them and fere / leste they myght  
 28 doo harme by the power that ouermoeche grewe and encreced; here  
 vpon they had a counseyl emonge them / that they wold dryue and  
 chasse them by force out of theyr londe / But after, they chaunged  
 theyr counseyl / and semed better / that they shold charge them  
 32 with suche tributes that they myght not suffre / And thenne they  
 shold departe <sup>4</sup>by their owne agreement<sup>4</sup> lyke as they were come /  
 Thus they dyde / But they suffred longe thise greues / til atte  
 laste, whan they myght nomore suffre / thei counseyllled emong  
 36 them self that they wold nomore paye to the kyng. whan the  
 kyng herde this / he dide do crye thurgh alle his Royamme / that

They came from the East, and were a rude and untrained people.

Every tribe lived by itself, and chose out of its number a prince to administer justice.

All their wealth was in herds.

They had no money, but exchanged their products for what they needed.

A large body of Turks wandered into Persia,

and lived there a long time,

until they increased so that the Persians began to fear them.

Heavy tributes were imposed upon them.

<sup>1-1</sup> Fr. "*vers bisse quand l'en est en Surie*," i. e. north of Syria.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* multeplye.

<sup>3</sup> leaf 15, back.

<sup>4-4</sup> Fr. "*par ennui, et de leur gré*."

At last they were ordered to leave the country.

As the Turks came together to depart, they first realized their number and power.

They decided to choose a king to rule them.

One Selduc was chosen by lot.

His first commandment was that all should return into Persia

they shold yssue out of it by a certayn day that was named to them / And that they shold passe the flood named cobar, whiche is vtterist part of the Royamme of perse on that other syde / And whan they were departed, and on the playn, they sawe them self ouer, & apperceyued that they were so grete plente of peple that no londe myght suffyse<sup>1</sup> them / ne withstonde them yf they helde hem to gydre ; ffor to fore, whan they dwellid in perse / they dwellid fer a sondre, in suche wise that they knewe not their power / But now 8 whan they sawe that they were so many, they had meruailous grete desdayne of that they had suffred, and the pryde & griuousnes of one prince. They take counseyl emonge them, and sawe that no peple myght resiste them / but myght conquere alle londes ther 12 aboute / But one thyng destroubled them / and that was / they had no kynge on them / And thenne they dyde in this manere / They fonde emonge them an hondred lignages / of whiche euerich had his meyne / And euery lignage brought forth an Arowe marked 16 in suche wise that the Arowe of eche lignage myght be knowen / and whan alle thise Arowes were brought to gydre / They called a lytil chylde / and commanded hym to take vp suche one as he wolde / ffor they had acorded emonge them / that of the lignage, 20 that the Arowe shold be taken vp by the chylde / they shold chese them a kynge / The chylde toke vp one of a lignage that after was called Selduees / Now they knewe that of this lignage they muste chese a kynge / And they toke an hondred of the most prudent & 24 wise men that they coude fynde in al the lignage / And commanded that eche of them shold brynge an arowe / wheron his name shold be wreton / And after they called the chylde / and bad hym take vp one of the Arowes / And concluded emonge them / that he 28 shold be kynge / of whom he <sup>2</sup>toke vp the arowe / he toke vp one / on whiche was wreton Selduc / This Selduc was a moche goodly man / and gretely honoured in his lignage / he was grete and stronge, a good knyght and wel proued / and semed wel to be a 32 good man and of hye werkes / They chees alle this man for to be theyr kynge, as they had promysed / And dyde to hym homage and feaulte by oth, and obeyed hym, and honoured hym, lyke as is don to a new kynge / This kynge, for the first of his commande- 36 mentis, commanded and made do crye ouer all, on payne of lesyng of theyr lyues, they shold repasse & goo ouer agayn the flood of

<sup>1</sup> The French gives "*souffrir*," endure, which Caxton has evidently mistaken for "*suffire*," to suffice.

<sup>2</sup> leaf 16.

- Cobar, and retorne agayn in to perse, ffor they wold no lengre be  
 in danger for to seche place and stede where they myght dwelle /  
 but wolde that they shold conquere this londe and other / and  
 4 reteyne them in theyr seignourye / lyke as he sayd and commanded,  
 it was don / ffor the peple conquerd in a short space by force of  
 armes, not only the Royame of Perse / but alle Arabe and other  
 contrees of thoryent / and toke them by strengthe, and reteyned  
 8 them vnder theyr power / And thus it happed that this peple that  
 tofore had be so rude / and lyued so out of rule as beestis / after  
 gate in lasse than fourty yere so grete seignouryes, as ye now here /  
 And mounted in so grete pryde / that they wolde no more haue the  
 12 name lyke as the other had / <sup>1</sup> wherfore they were called turkes /  
 The other that wold not leue theyr maner of lyuynge were alleway  
 named, and yet ben, Turquemans / Thise peple, whan they had  
 conquerd this contre of thoryent / they wold entre in to the  
 16 Royamme of Egypte / ffor they were of moche grete puissaunce /  
 And descended in to Surrye / and conquered the contre / And  
 emonge the other cytees, they toke the holy cyte of Iherusalem, And  
 suche peple as they fonde there they demened right euyl, and  
 20 tormentid and greued them more than they had ben tofore / lyke  
 as I haue sayd to you to fore /

to conquer  
the land.

They con-  
quered not  
only Persia,  
but Arabia  
and other  
lands of the  
East.

They would  
no longer  
be called  
Turcomans,  
but took  
the name of  
Turk.

They de-  
scended into  
Syria,  
and took the  
holy city of  
Jerusalem.

Of thorryble synnes regnyng thenne in crystiante, as  
 wel in thyse partyes / as in tho partyes.

24 capitulo ix<sup>o</sup>

- E haue herd how this peple that were crysten were demened,  
 y in this contre of thoryent / Now ye may here how the  
 crystiente <sup>2</sup>is contened and ruled in other partyes of the  
 28 world / knowe ye for certayn, that this tyme were founden but <sup>3</sup>  
 fewe / that had the drede of our lord in theyr herte / Alle right  
 wysnesse / alle trouthe / alle pyte were faylled / The fayth of  
 Ihesu cryste was <sup>4</sup>as it had be quenched / and of charyte men spack  
 32 not / debates / discordes / and warres were nyhe oueral / in suche  
 wyse, that it semed / that thende of the world was nyghe / by the  
 signes that our lord sayth in the gossell / ffor pestylences and  
 famynes were grete on therthe / ferdfulnes of heuen, tremblyng of  
 36 therthe in many places, and many other thinges there were that

But few  
people in the  
world at this  
time had the  
fear of the  
Lord in their  
hearts.

The end of  
the world  
seemed nigh.

<sup>1</sup> Caxton omits here "*dont ilz vindrent.*"

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *se contenoit*, i. e. conducted itself.

<sup>3</sup> Orig. but.

<sup>4</sup> leaf 16, back.

The princes  
oppressed  
their own  
subjects,

and even  
despoiled the  
churches.

Monks and  
priests were  
maltreated.

Sin and vice  
flourished  
unrebuked.

Every one  
seemed to  
exert himself  
to serve the  
devil.

ought to fere the hertes of men, to drawe them fro euyl / & to  
brynge to them the remembraunce of our lord / But they were as  
deef and blynde of heeryng and of seeyng<sup>1</sup> / this that was nedeful to  
them for to saue theyr sowles / The prynces and the barons brente 4  
and destroyed the contrees of theyr neyghbours / yf ony man had  
saued ony thyng in theyr kepyng / theyr owne lordes toke them,  
and put them in prison and in greuous tormentis, for to take fro  
them suche as they had<sup>2</sup> / in suche wyse that the chyldren of them 8  
that had ben riche men / men myght see them goo fro dore to  
dore, for to begge and gete theyr brede / and somme deye for  
hungre and mesease / <sup>1</sup>As to the chirches ne Religyoues, they kept  
not theyr priuyleges ne none other fraunchyses / but were taken fro 12  
them alle<sup>1</sup> that mocht be founden, as wel meobles, rentes, and  
other thynges / ye the crosses, chalyces, & the sensours, they toke  
fro the chirches / and molte them for to selle / yf ony fledde to the  
chirche for to warante and saue hym / he was taken & drawn out 16  
vylaynously, as out of a tauerne or an other place / To Monkes and  
clerkes were doon wronges, and all the shames they myght / Ther  
was no iustyce / but on them that trespaced<sup>2</sup> not ne forfayted  
nothyng / The contrees were ful of theues & of murdriers / In 20  
cytees ne in good townes was noman sure / There regned custom-  
ably dronkenhip / lecherye / playeng at dyse & robberyes / ther  
was no mariage kepte / ne lignage / And<sup>2</sup> also as of euyl lyf were  
the clerkes or werse / as the other / The bysshops ne the other 24  
prelates durst not reprehende ne chastyse none for theyr euyl  
werkes / The Rentes of holy chirche they gaf ne payd none / but<sup>2</sup>  
solde the benefices / And fynably I saye yow, that alle euyl werkes  
had surprysed<sup>2</sup> alle crystiente / in suche wyse, that it semed<sup>2</sup> that 28  
eueryche dyde payne for to serue the deuyll /

Of a bataylle that themperour Romaine of Constantynople  
had ayenst a puissaunt prynce of thoryent  
named Belphet.

ca<sup>o</sup> x<sup>o</sup> 32

o Wr lorde, that by his pyte chastyseth in this world for to spare  
in that other / and<sup>2</sup> can wel bete his children that he loueth,

1-1 Fr. "As yglises n'as religyous ne gardoient nul privilege, ne nul franchise einz leur tollient," etc. Caxton seems here to have translated the French *as* (à les) by the English *as*. It should read—They protected none of the privileges or franchises of the church, or of the religious orders, but took away, etc.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig. bnt.*

<sup>1</sup>for to saue them, suffred a grete flawe<sup>2</sup> to come in to the contre,  
 for to chastyse the peple / ffor in this tyme, whan themperour  
 Romain was lord in constantynoble / yssued out of the partyes of  
 4 thoryent a puissant hethen prynce named Belphēt, whiche brought  
 with hym so grete plente of peple out of perse & surye, that they  
 couerd alle the contre / & the multitude was so grete that it myght  
 not wel be nombred / they brought with them cartes / Charyottes /  
 8 horses, camels / beuffes / kyen / & other smale beestys, so grete  
 plente / that vnnethe it myght be byleuyd / & with this grete  
 apparayl / This grete force & strengthe he brought in to thempire  
 of constantinoble / & began to take & waste alle that he fonde / &  
 12 where as they fonde fortresses / cytees or castellis, they toke it al  
 with assault / ffor nothyng myght resiste them, but that they smote  
 alle down to therthe / alle the peple hool<sup>3</sup> fledde to fore hym / this  
 tydynge cam to themperour that this grete lord had supprised &  
 16 taken alle his contre / anon without taryeng, he sente alle about in  
 thempire, & dyde thenne somone alle his hoost, & assembled as  
 moche peple as he coude gete / & as moche good<sup>4</sup> as he myght fine  
 for this werke that was so grete / whan his peple were comen, he  
 20 yssued with as many men of armes and of warre as he myght haue /  
 & drewe to that parte where this belphēt cam / he fonde hym to  
 sone, as he that was ferre entred in to the londe / whan they knewe  
 that eche of them was so nygh other / they ordeyned theyr bataylles  
 24 for to fyghte / & assembled so cruelly & of so grete angre / as peple  
 that had eche to other grete hate. The hethen foughte for tenhaunce  
 theyr lawe, & for tencrece theyr power / & the cristen men defended  
 theyr fayth & the lawe of Ihesu criste, & to saue and kepe theyr  
 28 liues & franchyses, & theyr wyues / childeren, & theyr contree /  
 The bataylle was moche grete & cruelle, moche peple slayn, & blode  
 shadde here & there. Atte laste the grekes myght not suffre the  
 faytes<sup>4</sup> ne the grete plente of the mescreauns / and fledde as dis-  
 32 comfytet so fowle that none retorneð agayn, but<sup>5</sup> ranne away with-  
 oute ordenaunce, eueryche where he myght best saue hym; they  
 that folowed them<sup>6</sup> dyde alle that they wolde.<sup>6</sup> They slewe many,  
 & toke grete plente a lyue, And emonge alle other, Themperour was

At this time  
came from  
the East a  
Prince named  
Belphēt.

He began to  
devastate the  
Empire of  
Constanti-  
noble.

The Emperor  
marched out  
against him.

The battle  
was fierce,  
and many  
were slain.  
Finally the  
Greeks fled.

Their Em-  
peror was  
taken  
prisoner.

<sup>1</sup> leaf 17.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *fléu*, scourge.

<sup>3</sup> Fr. *entièrement*, entirely, i. e. to a man.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. *faits*. Caxton has evidently confounded this word, which means burden, weight, force, with *fait*, feat.

<sup>5</sup> Orig. bnt.

<sup>6</sup> Fr. "*en faisoit presque leurs volontés*," i. e. had pretty nearly their own way with them.

taken hym self / whan tydinges cam in to the contre that the batayl  
 was loste, and<sup>r</sup> themperour taken / ther was grete sorowe of alle  
 tholde men, wyues / & childeren that had not ben there / belphet,  
 this prynce of myscreauntes, seeyng<sup>r</sup> that he had thus playn 4  
 victorie of the cristen men, mounted & aroos in to grete pryde /  
 ffor he thought wel that he shold fynde no barre that shold lette  
 hym to doo his wille in <sup>1</sup>thempyre. whan he was lodged, & his hoost  
 aboute hym / he commanded themperour to be brought to fore hym, 8  
 which had be taken in the bataylle / & he sette his foote vpon the  
 necke of themperour / & this dyde he ofte, & whan he shold<sup>r</sup>  
 mounte vpon horsbak or descende / in shame and despite of the  
 fayth of our lord and<sup>r</sup> of the cristen peple. Whan he had thus a 12  
 whyle shamed, reuyled, & despyted themperour, He lete hym goo,  
 & delyuerd hym & som of his barons / that had be prisoners / &  
 whan themperour was come agayn in to constantynoble / <sup>2</sup>the  
 barons of the londe reputed<sup>r</sup> hym as ouermuche dishonoured / as he 16  
 that had shamefully conduyted<sup>r</sup> the bataille,<sup>2</sup> & toke hym & raced  
 out his eyen, & lete hym vse his lif in sorowe & shame. This  
 prynce belphet began to take alle the londe, in suche wyse, that in  
 a lytil whyle he conquerd fro the<sup>3</sup> lystes of surye, vnto the see 20  
 called the braas of seynt george / which is wel xxx iourneyes of  
 lengthe / & x of brede / & in som place xv, & whan he cam to the  
 braas / he wold haue passed<sup>r</sup> in to constantinoble / whiche is on  
 that other side of that litil see / but he myght not finde shippis 24  
 ynowgh / Thus the cristen peple of that londe, for theyr synnes<sup>4</sup>  
 were vnder this cruell peple / emong the other, the noble and hie  
 cyte where saynt peter was,<sup>5</sup> & made fyrst as chyef of cristente /  
 that is, antioche, was taken in the ende, and subgette vnto the 28  
 turkes / thus had this belphet in his seygnorie & demayne the  
 londes named celessurye / the two cilices / pamphylee / lyce,  
 lycaine / cappadoce, galace / Bethyne, & a parte of the lasse asye /  
 alle thise countrees ar moch fertile & ful of peple / this hethen 32  
 peple began to bete down the chirches & greue the cristen peple, as

Belphet  
treated him  
shamefully.

After a time  
he set him  
free.

Belphet con-  
quered all  
the land as  
far as Con-  
stantinoble,

Including  
Antioch.

The Turks  
began to  
maltreat the  
Christians.

<sup>1</sup> leaf 17, back.

<sup>2-2</sup> Caxton's translation is here incorrect. "Les barons de la terre tinrent à trop grant deshonneur se celui qui ainsi honteusement les avoit conduitz (var. avoit este menéz), demoroit plus seur dedans le povoir et la haultesce de l'empire." <sup>3</sup> Fr. *Latiche*, i. e. the town of Laodicea. <sup>4</sup> *Orig.* syunes.

<sup>5</sup> It is hard to understand whether Caxton means here that *Saint Peter* was "*made chyef of Cristente*," or the city of Antioch. The Latin original has—"Inter quos nobilis et eximia provinciarum multarum moderatrix et princeps civitas principis apostolorum sedes prima capta est."

it plesyd them / ffor so grete affraye & drede was in the hertes of  
 the cristen peple / that they alle fledde vj iourneyes fro the said  
 belphet / this was a thyng that greuyd merueylously the holy cyte  
 4 of Iherusalem & the peple of the countre / ffor whyles themperour  
 of constantynoble was in good pees & in his grete power / many  
 grete socours, grete comfort of ryche yeftes & of large almesses cam  
 vnto the peple of surye, and also fro the londe of antioche. But  
 8 thenne they had loste alle, & had none hope that euer ony ayde ne  
 socours shold come to them / wherfor they supposed euer to be in  
 seruage & captyuite without ony raunsom.

Jerusalem  
 especially  
 suffered by  
 this change  
 of masters.

Of many maners of tormens that the cristen peple  
 12 suffred for theyr synnes / in that time /

The Chris-  
 tians suffered  
 all these  
 torments on  
 account of  
 their sins.

capitulo xi<sup>o</sup>

w Hyles that this tyme was so peryllous for the seynorye of  
 thyse hethen men / cam oftymes in pylgremages the grekes  
 16 and the latyns in to Iherusalem / ffor to praye oure lord and crye  
 hym mercy / that he wold not forgete thus his peple. yet many  
 cam theder in grete perylle, ffor alle the countrees by whiche they  
 shold passe were ful<sup>2</sup> of theyr enemyes / and ofte they were robbed  
 20 and slayn / And whan they myght escape and come to the holy  
 cyte / they myght not entre therin. But eche persone muste paye  
 a besaunt for trybute, wherof happed ofte that they that were  
 despoyled, had not wherof they myght paye this tribute / &  
 24 myght not entre in to the town / And for this they suffred Colde /  
 hungre / and grete mesease / And many deyde. And herof the  
 Cristen men of the toun were moche greued / For they susteyned  
 them that lyued / And muste burye them that were dede / and  
 28 seche such thyng as was nedeful to them self & other / <sup>3</sup>They that  
 myght entre in the town were yet more greued<sup>3</sup> / ffor som were  
 mured in the holy places of the cyte secretly / & was doon to  
 them moche shame & reproof openly. Ther was fylthe caste in  
 32 their visage / & other spytte in the myddes of theyr visage / & som  
 men bette them / wherfore the cristen men of the town, that had  
 som acqweyntaunces with the hethen men, conduyted and ladde  
 them<sup>4</sup> to theyr pylgremages, for to kepe them to theyr power.

The Greeke  
 and Latins  
 made pil-  
 grimages  
 often to  
 Jerusalem.

Each pilgrim  
 had to pay a  
 besant to  
 enter the  
 Holy City.

The pilgrims  
 suffered all  
 sorte of  
 shame from  
 the heathen.

<sup>1</sup> leaf 18.<sup>2</sup> *Orig. fnl.*

<sup>3-3</sup> Caxton has misunderstood his French, which reads "*Ceux qui  
 pouoient entrer dans la ville les greuoient encore plus,*" that is, gave them  
 (the Christians of Jerusalem) even more trouble.

<sup>4</sup> *i. e.* the pilgrims.

There was a hospital for them near St. Mary de la Latyne.

They were insulted even in the holy places.

The Christians of Syria endured this slavery for 490 years.

The Lord at last heard their prayers, and delivered them.

There were in the cyte of them of Malfe, which is a cyte of puyell, which had a chirche in Iherusalem named saynte marye de la latyne,(8) whereby was an hospital of poure peple, where as was a chappel that was named saynt Iohan Eleymont / This saynt Iohan 4 was a patriarke of Allexandrye / Thabbot of the chirche of our lady had in his cure & in his pourueyaunce this hospital, & pourchassed alle that was nedeful for them. There were receyuyd alle the pour pylgryms whiche had not wherof to lyue / And this hows was of 8 moche grete charyte / Thus were the cristen peple in grete disease<sup>1</sup> in the toun / But there was nothyng that displeyd them, as whan they had made theyr deuociouns atte holy places in the toun, with grete traueylles & grete costes, And whan they were in the seruyse 12 of our lord / the hethen mescreauntes cam in with grete noyse & crye, and satte vpon the aulters / threwe doun the chalyces / brake the lampes / & the tapres / & yet for more to angre the cristen peple / they toke ofte the patriarke, which was thenne, by the 16 berde, and by the heer / And threwe hym doun to the grounde, & defowled hym vnder theyr feet, of whiche alle cristente had grete sorowe & moche pyte / In thyse sorowes and meseases were the cristen men in the londe of Surye, as I haue sayd you to fore, 20 CCCC four score & ten yere / and alwey cryed vnto our lord for <sup>2</sup>mercy with syghes & teeres / & prayde hym deuoutly that he wold not alle forgete them / But the good lord, that after the tempeste & derke weder can wel brynge clerenes and fayr season, behelde this 24 peple in pyte / And sente to them comforte and delyuerance of the tormentes in whiche they had longe ben.

How aftir they<sup>3</sup> had ben four CCCC lxxxx yere in seruage of the hethen peple / our lord pourueyed 28 remedye for his cristen peple / capitulo xij.

Peter the Hermit came to Jerusalem.

He was small of stature, but great of heart.

i Haue wel said to you byfore / that out of many londes cam pilgryms in to Iherusalem / emong alle other ther was one which was of the royame of ffrance, born in the bisshopprych of 32 Amyens, That is to wete / one named peter, whiche had ben an heremyte in a wode / And therfor he was called peter theremyte / this was a litil man of body, & as a persone had in despite, & lytil preyed by semblaunt / But he was of a merueyllous grete herte / 36

<sup>1</sup> Fr. "*mesaise*," here means *discomfort, misery*.

<sup>2</sup> leaf 18, back.

<sup>3</sup> *Orig. the.*



- of moche clere engyne / and good vnderstandyng / and spak right  
 wel / whan he cam to the gate of Iherusalem / he payd the trybute  
 of a besaunt & entred in to the cyte / and was lodged in a good  
 4 cristen mans hows / This petre<sup>1</sup> alwey enquiryed<sup>2</sup> & demaunded<sup>3</sup> He made many inquiries.  
 moche of his hoost / of the gouernaunce & estate of the cyte / And  
 how the cristen men conteyned them vnder the hethen men / And  
 how theyr lord demened & gouerned them / his hoost, whiche had His host told him the story of their sufferings.  
 8 longe<sup>3</sup> ben in the towne / tolde to hym alle the maner playnly of  
 the tymes passyde, And how the cristenente haue be defowled / And  
 the holy places dishonoured / whiche was sorowful to here / And he  
 hym self, which a good while haue be in the toun for to doo his  
 12 pylgremage / sawe wel & perceyued a grete partye of the caitifnes /  
 in which the cristen men were / he herd saye that the patriarke was  
 a good wyse man, deuote & religyous, which was named symeon / (9)  
 Peter thought that he wolde goo & speke with hym / & demande of Peter took counsel with the Patriarch as to what should be done.  
 16 hym the estate of the chirches, of the clergie, & of the peple / he  
 cam to hym, & dyde so as he thought, And asked of hym alle thise  
 thynges / The patriarke apperceyued wel by his wordes and his  
 countinaunce / that he was a man that dredde god / & right wyse  
 20 and vnderstandyng / And began to telle to hym by layser / alle the  
 meseases of the cristen peple. whan peter herde thise sorowes  
 of the mouthe of this good man, whom he byleuyd wel, coude<sup>4</sup>  
 not absteine hym fro grete syghes / & wepyng many teeres for  
 24 pyte / & ofte demanded of the patriarke yf ther were ony conseil &  
 remedye for this werke / & the holy & deuote patriarke <sup>5</sup>answerd  
 hym : (10) "we haue made many orysons & prayers vnto oure lord  
 god for to receyue vs in to his mercy and grace. But we apperceyue  
 28 wel / that our synnes be not yet purge / ffor we ben certaynly in  
 the culpe and blame, whan oure lord, whiche is so rightwys,  
 holdeth vs yet in the payne. But the renomme of the contrees by The Christians of France only can deliver them,  
 yonde the montaynes is moche grete here, that the peple there, and  
 32 specially of them of ffrance, ben good cristen peple, and moche  
 stedfaste in the fayth. And therfor oure lord holdeth them at this  
 day in moche grete peas and in hys puissaunce<sup>6</sup> / yf they wolde  
 praye our lord that he wolde haue pyte on vs / or <sup>7</sup>that they toke  
 36 counseyl<sup>7</sup> for to socoure vs / we haue certaynly hope that our lord

<sup>1</sup> After "Peter" Caxton has omitted *Comme il estoit saige et enquerant*,  
 "as he was a sensible and inquiring man." <sup>2</sup> *Orig.* enquiryed.

<sup>3</sup> *Orig.* louge.

<sup>4</sup> Coude = our, "he could."

<sup>5</sup> leaf 19.

<sup>6</sup> *Orig.* puissaunce.

<sup>7-1</sup> Fr. *ou qu'ilz prissent conseil*, "or if they would take counsel,"

for the Greeks  
have not  
power  
enough.

Peter is of  
the same  
opinion,

and advises  
him to send  
letters to the  
Pope.

He offers to  
carry the  
messages  
himself.

The Patri-  
arch accepts  
this offer with  
joy.

shold helpe vs by them for taccomplysshe oure werke. ffor ye see  
wel that the grekes and themperour of Constantinoble, whiche ben  
our neyghbours and as kynnesmen, maye not helpe ne counseyle vs /  
ffor they them self ben as who sayth destroyed / And haue no 4  
power to defende theyr owne lande" / Whan peter herd this / he  
answerd in this maner / "fayr fader, <sup>1</sup>trouthe it is that ye haue  
sayd / ffor of that londe am I. <sup>1</sup> And god be thanked / the fayth of  
oure lord is moche better holden there and kepte / than it is in any 8  
other londes that I haue ben in, syth that I departed on my Iourneye  
fro my contre / <sup>2</sup>And I byleue certaynly that [if they knew] of the  
mesease and seruage in whiche thise hethen mysbyleuyd peple  
holde you Inne, <sup>2</sup> / that, by the playsyre of almyghty god, by theyr 12  
good wylls, they shold fynde counseyl and ayde in this your grete  
nede & werke / wherfor I counseyl you one thyng, yf it be aggre-  
able to you & seme good / that is, that ye sende your lettres vnto  
oure holy fader the pope, and to the chirche of rome, vnto the 16  
kynges, prynces & barons of the occident & weste parte / In which  
late them wete playnly <sup>3</sup> how it is with you / & that ye crye to  
them for mercy / that they wolde socoure you for the loue of god  
& for his fayth in suche maner, that they myght haue honoure in 20  
this world & sauacion of their soules in that other / & for that ye  
be pour peple / ye haue no nede to make grete dispencis / yf ye  
thynke I be sufficiiaunt for so grete a message / ffor the loue of  
Ihesu Criste & remysyon of my synnes, <sup>4</sup> I shal entreprise <sup>5</sup> this 24  
vyage, and offre my self to take so moche traueyl for you / And I  
promyse truly to you that I shal late them haue knowleche / how it  
is with you / yf god sende me grace to come thydre" / whan the  
patriarke herd this / he had moche grete ioye / he sente anon for 28  
the moost saddest & wysest men of the cristen peple, & for the  
clerkes & laye men / & sayde & shewde to them the bounte and the  
seruyse that this good man offryd to <sup>6</sup>them / They were right glad /  
And thanked hym moche / Thenne anon, withoute taryenge / they 32  
made theyr wrytynges and sealed them with theyr seales / and  
delyuerd them to peter theremyte /

<sup>1</sup>—1 Fr. *vray est, ce que vous avez dit de la terre dont je suy*, "that is true, what you have said of the land from which I come."

<sup>2</sup>—2 Caxton's obscurity is here due to his bad French text, which omits one of the important verbs in the sentence. A. gives the correct reading, "*Je crois certainement que s'il savoient la mesaise et li servage qu que cist mescreant voz tiennent*," etc.

<sup>3</sup> Orig. playuly.

<sup>4</sup> Orig. synues.

<sup>5</sup> Orig. euterprise.

<sup>6</sup> leaf 19, back,

How the said peter theremyte entreprised the more  
 hardyly his vyage, by thapparicion or vision  
 that he sawe in his sleep / ca xiii°

- 4 t Ruly our lord god is swete / pyteous / and merciful / ffor he  
 wylle not suffre to perysshe / ne to be loste / them that haue  
 in hym ferme and stedfast hope / And whan the men lacke helpe /  
 god sendeth to them his ayde / And this may clerely be seen in  
 8 this werke / for fro whens cometh that this pour man / whiche was  
 lytil & despysed persone, wery and brused of so grete Iourneye and  
 waye / that durste enterprise so grete a dede and werke / how  
 myght he wene that our lord wolde accomplysshe so grete a werke  
 12 by hym / as for to dilyure his peple fro the myserye and caytyfnes  
 that they had ben in, nygh fyue C yere / But this hardynesse cam  
 to hym of the grete charyte that he had in hym / And the fayth  
 wrought in hym for the loue that he had to his bretheren / In thise  
 16 dayes happed a thyng / that moche lyft vp his herte to pursue  
 his enterprise / ffor this good man, whan he had taken this message  
 and charge therof / he wente moche ofter than he was woonte to  
 doo to the holy places in the cyte, and cam on an euentide to the  
 20 chirche of the holy sepulchre, and made there his prayers deuoutly,  
 with grete plente of teeris / Aftir this he sleepte vpon the pamente,  
 & hym semed that our saueour Ihesu Criste cam to fore hym /  
 and charged hym self to doo this message<sup>1</sup> / And said to hym,  
 24 "petre, aryse vp hastely / and goo surely thedyr as thou hast  
 entreprysed / ffor I shal be with the / It is now tyme from hens  
 forth / that my holy Cyte be clenched / and that my peple be  
 socoured" / Petre awoke in this poynt, And was fro than forthon  
 28 more abandouned vnto the waye, and also sure, as his Iourneye and  
 message had be doon / he entermed<sup>2</sup> and appoynted his departyng  
 for to doo his erande / And had leue and benediction of the  
 patriarke / he descended down to the see<sup>3</sup> / and fonde there a shyp  
 32 of marchauntes that wolde passe in to puylle / he entred in to the  
 ship / the which had good wynde, & in shorte tyme arryued at bar /

The Lord  
 giveth aid to  
 those who  
 trust in Him.

Peter's  
 courage, the  
 result of his  
 great faith.

The Lord  
 appeared to  
 Peter in a  
 vision,  
 and charged  
 him to ac-  
 complish  
 speedily what  
 he had under-  
 taken.

Peter starts  
 for Rome  
 immediately.

<sup>1</sup>—1 Fr. *et lui enchargoit ce message mesmes*. Caxton translates *mesmes* as belonging to *lui*, instead of to *message*. It should read, "and charged him with this *same* message." Lat. "Et eandem injunxisse legationem."

<sup>2</sup> Caxton's original gives "*enterina son departement pour faire son chemin*," i. e. "prepared to depart on his journey." Another version gives "*atorna son virre*." Caxton read "*enterina*" as *enterma*, an easy, paleographic mistake, and then made "*entermed*" of it in English. Lat. "ad redeundum accinctus."

<sup>3</sup> Orig. see.

peter yssued out, & wente by londe to rome. he fonde in the  
 contre the pope vrbā / and salewed hym in the name of the  
<sup>1</sup>Patriarke and of the cristen peple of Surye, and delyuerd to hym  
 theyr lettres / & sayde to hym by mouthe, moche truli & wysely, <sup>4</sup>  
 the grete sorowes, the miseryes and vyletees that the cristen suffred  
 thenne in the holy londe / as he that was expert therof / and coude  
 wel saye to hym the trouthe.

He delivers  
 his letters to  
 Pope Urban.

Of the persecucions of the chirche in that tyme, and <sup>8</sup>  
 how the pope Urban was putte oute of the see of  
 Rome by the bysshop of Rauenne / ca° xiiij.

Harry,  
 Emperor of  
 Germany,  
 has a quarrel  
 with Pope  
 Gregory VII.

i N this tyme, Harry themperour of Allemayne, had a grete  
 debate ayenst the pope Gregory the seuenth, to fore this <sup>12</sup>  
 Urban / and the discorde aroos for the rynges and the croses<sup>2</sup> of  
 the bisshoppes that were dede in thempyre / For suche a customme  
 had ronne a grete whyle there, that whan the prelates were deed /  
 the rynges and croses of them were brought to themperour / And <sup>16</sup>  
 he gaf them to his clerkes and his chapylayns, or whom he wolde /  
 and sente to the chyrches, and bad them that they shoulde holde  
 them for theyr bisshops and archebisshops without other election &  
 other proof, by whiche holy chirche was adommaged sore / For he <sup>20</sup>  
 sente ofte personnes / that were not propice therto / The pope  
 gregorie sawe that this customme was ayenst the right and lawe  
 wreton, and also ayenst reason / and prayd hym amyably to leue  
 this for the loue of god, of holy chirche, and for sauacion of his <sup>24</sup>  
 sowle / ffor it apperteyned nothyng to hym / Themperour wold not  
 leue this for the pope / wherfor the pope cursed hym / herof them-  
 perour had so grete despise & so grete<sup>3</sup> desdayne / that incontinent<sup>4</sup>

The Emperor  
 encroaches  
 on the pre-  
 rogatives of  
 the Church.

The Pope  
 endeavours to  
 settle the  
 matter peace-  
 ably.

The Emperor  
 declares war.

he began to warre ayenst the chyrche of rome / & ayenst the pope <sup>28</sup>  
 he made to rise an aduersarye / Tharchiebisshop of rauenne, whiche  
 was named Gilbert, <sup>(11)</sup> & was wel lettred & moche riche / This bis-  
 shop trusted ouermuche in thayde of themperour / And in the plente  
 of his rychesse / And he cam to rome / and deposed and put out the <sup>32</sup>  
 pope of his see by fauour & force / And becam so fel, and of so  
 grete pryde that he had, that he forgate his wytte & reson that he  
 ought to haue by his clergie / And sette hym self in the see / And  
 made hym to be holden for pope, as he that wel wende to haue ben <sup>36</sup>

He deposes  
 Gregory, and  
 puts Gilbert  
 of Ravenna in  
 his place.

<sup>1</sup> leaf 20.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *croces*, crosier, or bishop's staff.

<sup>3</sup> *Orig.* gtete.

<sup>4</sup> *Orig.* incoutenent.

- it / I haue said<sup>1</sup> you to fore, that at that tyme / Cristen peple were  
 in gret paryll thurghout alle the world / & that the comandemens  
 of the gospel were moche forgotten / and<sup>2</sup> of holy chyrche / And<sup>3</sup> men  
 4 ranne faste and haboundantly to the werkes of the denyll & to alle  
 synnes / & whan this discorde and<sup>4</sup> Scysme was so grete / Thenne  
 alle trouthe was <sup>1</sup>goon & the fayth of our saueour was lyke as it  
 had ben alle perysshed<sup>5</sup> / The bysshoppes, the abbottes, and the  
 8 prouostes<sup>6</sup> were beten & sette in prison / <sup>3</sup>And alle theyr thynges  
 were taken away fro them, namely by them that helde of them-  
 perour<sup>4</sup> <sup>3</sup> / In this debate was done alle the shames and repreues to  
 the pope / Thenne the holy fader sawe that he was not obeyed as  
 12 he shold be / and that he was in paryl of his lyf / And he went in  
 to puyll / by the helpe and counseyl of Robert guichart / whiche  
 thezne was lord of the contre / This Robert dyde vnto our holy  
 fader / and to his peple, as moche of honour, of servyse, and<sup>7</sup> bounte  
 16 as they wold<sup>8</sup> take, and<sup>9</sup> yet more / at laste our<sup>5</sup> holy fader wente  
 hym in to salerne / & becam seke, and<sup>6</sup> laye down & there deyde /  
 & was there buryed<sup>7</sup> / The Cardynals that were there Chose another,  
 whiche was named<sup>8</sup> viator<sup>7</sup> / whiche endured lut one moneth or  
 20 there aboutes : After hym, they choos this vrbane that I spack of to  
 fore / This vrbane sawe that themperour was yet in his malice & his  
 angre / & durst not <sup>8</sup>abandone to hym, ne put hym in his power,<sup>8</sup>  
 but helde hym in the forteresses of some barons, that for goddes  
 24 sake reteyned hym in grete doubte / whiles he was in this poynt<sup>9</sup> /  
 peter theremyte cam to hym / and<sup>9</sup> brought to hym the message fro  
 the Crysten men in the holy londe / our holy fader the pope  
 knewe moche wel / the bounte / the wytte / and the religion that  
 28 was in this peter / And / ansuerd to hym moche swetly, and<sup>9</sup> sayde  
 that he shold<sup>9</sup> goo hastily speke to the princes and<sup>9</sup> barons of the  
 royaume of ffrance of this werke / for yf he myght escape sauely fro  
 the handes of themperour, he hym self had<sup>9</sup> Intencion to passe the  
 32 montayngnes, and<sup>9</sup> drawe hym toward<sup>9</sup> tho parties for to helpe the  
 better to this wherke / yf it were possible / Thenne peter was right

The state of  
Christianity  
at this time  
very deplor-  
able.

The digni-  
taries of the  
Church are  
maltreated  
and insulted.

The Pope  
flees to  
Robert  
Guichart for  
protection.

Here he dies.

A Pope  
Victor is  
chosen.

After him  
Urban is  
elected.

He receives  
Peter favour-  
ably, and  
advises him  
to preach the  
Crusade in  
France.

<sup>1</sup> leaf 20, back.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *provoires*, priests, not provosts.

<sup>3-3</sup> Fr. "*l'en mettoient autres evesques et autres abés en leurs leus no-  
miement à ceuls qui se tenoient devers l'empereur.*" Lat. "*Quicumque  
imperator in hac sua perversitate non erant consentientes.*"

<sup>4</sup> Orig. *themperonr.*

<sup>5</sup> Orig. *onr.*

<sup>6</sup> Orig. *aud.*

<sup>7</sup> Caxton here follows his French original, which is corrupt. The Latin  
and the better French translations give *Victor*.

<sup>8-8</sup> Fr. *s'abandonner, à son pooir*, "trust himself in his hands."

<sup>9</sup> Orig. *poyut*.

glad of this good<sup>1</sup> answe<sup>r</sup> of our holy fader / and<sup>2</sup> passed lombardye  
and the montaygnes,<sup>1</sup> and<sup>2</sup> cam in to ffrance / And<sup>3</sup> began diligently  
to gete<sup>2</sup> the barons, like as he was sent expresly to them, and<sup>4</sup> tolde  
to eche of them the shames and<sup>5</sup> disconvenyences<sup>3</sup> that the hethen 4  
peple dyde to the Crysten folke in the holy londe / And the same  
he said<sup>6</sup> to the mene peple / for he assembled<sup>7</sup> them o<sup>f</sup>tymes, and<sup>8</sup>  
tolde to them the sorouful state of the londe & Cyte of Iherusalem /  
in suche wyse that he made them to wepe many a teere / And at 8  
euery tyme he made some fruyt by his sayeng and exhortyng the  
peple to gyue socours to the holy lande / And like wise, as saynt  
Iohan<sup>9</sup> baptyste preched to fore, to make the way to fore Ihesu  
cryste / so in the same wyse this Peter brought tydynges to fore 12  
the comyng of our holy fader / wherfore he hym self, whan he <sup>4</sup>cam,  
was the better her<sup>10</sup> and byleuid<sup>11</sup> / and<sup>12</sup> the more dyde in this werke /

Peter  
preaches the  
Crusade with  
such power  
that the  
people weep  
tears of pity.

Like John  
the Baptist  
before Christ,  
so Peter pre-  
pares for the  
coming of  
Pope Urban.

Of a general counseyl that the pope vrban ordeyned  
for the reformation of holy chirche & thamende- 16  
ment of the peple / cap<sup>o</sup>. xv<sup>o</sup>.

In 1095,  
Henry  
reigned in  
Germany,  
and Philip in  
France.

i N the yere of thyncarnacion of our lord M. lxxxv. regned<sup>1</sup> the  
fourth harry, kyng of almayn and<sup>2</sup> emperour of Rome / the  
xviii yere of his regne / and the xii of his Empire, and In frannce 20  
regned<sup>3</sup> thenne philipe, the sone of harry / Thenne sawe our holy  
fader the pope vrban, that the worl<sup>4</sup> was moche empeyre<sup>5</sup> and  
torned<sup>6</sup> to evyl / and helde a counseyl ther vpon of the prelates of  
ytalye at playsance / where he made establysshemens by theyr coun- 24  
seyl, for tamende the maners of the Clergye and<sup>7</sup> of the laye peple /  
After he knewe wel that he was not sure in the power of them-  
perour, and<sup>8</sup> passed<sup>9</sup> the montaygnes and cam in to the royaume of  
frannce / he fonde the peple euyl endoctryned<sup>10</sup> and ouermuche en- 28  
clyned<sup>11</sup> to synne // Charite faylled<sup>12</sup> / and warres and<sup>13</sup> discordes were  
emonge the riche men / And thought that it was nede to doo his  
power & myght for tamende Cristiente / he ordeyned a generall  
counseyl of alle the prelates that were bytwene the montaynes<sup>14</sup> and<sup>15</sup> 32  
the see of Englande / this counseyl was sette fyrst at <sup>6</sup>Clony /  
Another tyme at puy nostre<sup>7</sup> dame<sup>6</sup> / And the thirde tyme at Clere-

The Pope  
goes into  
France.

He orders a  
Council at  
Cluny;

a second  
Council at  
Puy Nostre  
Dame;

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* montaygne.

<sup>2</sup> *Fr. querir*, search out.

<sup>3</sup> *Fr. disconvenances*, insults, not *disconveniences*, as Caxton evidently read it.

<sup>4</sup> leaf 21.

<sup>5</sup> *Orig.* montayues.

<sup>6-8</sup> Other editions give *Verzelai*, *Lat. et universis transalpinarum partibus apud Vigiliacum*.

<sup>7</sup> *Fr. Pui Nostre Dame*.

mont, in auuergne / This was in the moneth of Nouembre / There were many Archebisshops / bisshops / abbotes / and grete prelates and persones of holi chirche of thise parties. Ther were by the  
 4 general counseyl many commandements<sup>1</sup> gyuen for tamende clerkes & layetee<sup>2</sup> / for teshewe synnes / and recouere good maners / There was holi chirche al reforme<sup>t</sup>, of whiche it had grete nede /  
 8 Emonge alle other, Peter theremyte was there, whiche forgate not the werke that he was charge<sup>d</sup> with / but admoneste<sup>d</sup> the prelates eche pryuatly by hym self, & prayde the comune peple openly moche wel and wysely / Thenne toke our holi fader the wordes, and shewe<sup>d</sup> generally to alle the counseyl / what grete shame it was  
 12 to alle the cristen men, of our faith / that was so nyghe destroyed & faylled in the place where it began / and it myght be grete fere and drede whan it faylled at the heed & welle / that the ryvers shold not endure / that were rennyng thurgh the world / And saide  
 16 moche wel, that alle the very Crysten peple shold take herof grete despite of thus desheryte<sup>d</sup> by their defaulte / and his contre delyuered to his enemyes / And promysed that yf they wolde take  
 20 <sup>3</sup>vpon this pylgremage, he wolde chaunge theyr penaunce in to this werke. And yf they deyde in this waye, confessid and repentaunt,<sup>4</sup> he wolde take it on his fayth, that they incontinent shold goo in to the Ioye of heuen. On that other syde, as long as they were in the seruyse of our lord, they were in the warde and kepyng of holi  
 24 chirche, bothe they and theyr thynges, in suche wyse, that they that dyde to them ony damage, shold be acursed, & alle this commanded he to be kept of alle the prelates that were atte counseyl. This doon, he gaf euery man leue, and commande<sup>d</sup> [that he] shold  
 28 preche this pylgremage and pardon. And tolde to them that alle men shold trauallyle to gyue and make longe trewes and pees of the warres, for taccomplysshe the better this pylgremage, and to performe it.

a third at Cleremont.

Peter addresses this last Council.

The Pope himself then preached with great vigour,

promising remittance of sins to all who put on the Cross.

He commands all priests and prelates to preach the Crusade.

32 How many noble and hye men, and other of the Royame of fraunse, crossed them for to goo ouer see. ca<sup>o</sup>. xvj<sup>o</sup>.

o Wr lord gaf his grace vnto our holi fader the pope in vtterynge  
 36 of the word of god, which was said in suche wyse, that it was

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* conmandements.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* layefee.

<sup>3</sup> leaf 21, back,

<sup>4</sup> *Orig.* repeutaunt,

The preaching of the Pope successful.      fyxed and roted in the hertes of them that herde hym, and not only of them that were present, but of alle other that it was recorded and told vnto, ffor the bisshops wente in to theyr countrees and preched to theyr peple like as it was to them commanded. <sup>1</sup>How

It is a difficult thing for a man to leave his wife and children;

but by so doing he saves his soul.

All the great barons of France undertake this work vigorously.

Many join to save their souls.

Many go for more worldly reasons.

Men need this hard penance.

be it that it was a strange thyng,<sup>1</sup> and right greuous for a man to leue his contree, his wyf, his childeren / and lygnage, And leue them that he loueth by nature. But whan one thynketh what reward he shal haue of our lord so to doo, thenne he geteth a feruent loue in hym self for the charyte of our lord, and<sup>2</sup> leueth the naturel loue of his flessch, for to saue his sowle / and this myght wel be perceyued and seen, ffor the peple of the Royame of ffraunce, and the grete barons, and other lasse that were enclyned to synnes and acustomed to doo ylle, as I haue said to fore, aftir they herde this prechyng, entreprysed so vygorously the werke of our lord, and auowed them to ward this pylgremage, as ye shal here, ffor it semed that euery man ought to entreprise tauenge the wronge and shame that the hethen dyde to our lord, and to his peple, in the londe of Iherusalem. Ye shold haue seen the husbonde departe fro his wyf, And the faders fro the childeren, and the childeren fro the fadres. And it semed that euery man wolde departe fro that he louyd best in this world,<sup>3</sup> for to wynne the Ioye of that other / Ther was so grete affraye, and so grete a meuyng thurgh alle the londe, that vnneth ye shold haue founde an hows / but that som had enterprised this <sup>4</sup>viage / I saye not that alle that wente were wyse and of pure entencion toward our lord / ffor som monkes wente out of theyr cloystres without leue of theyr abbotes or pryours / and the recluses wente out of the places where they had ben closed in / and wente forth with the other / Som wente forth for loue of theyr frendes, to bere them felawship / Other wente forth for bobaunce, lest they shold be reputed for euyll and not good / And som there were that wolde withdrawe them for theyr creancers, and haue respite of theyr dettes / But how that it was theyr entencions within theyr hertes, it semyd good for the grete enterpryse that they shewed outwart / And it was of grete nede that this pylgremage was chosen at that tyme / ffor there were in the world so many synnes that they withdrewe the peple / fro our<sup>5</sup> lord / And it was well behoueful that god shold sende to them som addressement,<sup>6</sup> by whiche they myght

<sup>1-1</sup> Fr. *Bien savez, que forte chose*, "Be assured that it is a hard thing," etc.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* aud.      <sup>3</sup> *Orig.* wrold.      <sup>4</sup> leaf 22.      <sup>5</sup> *Orig.* onr.

<sup>6</sup> Fr. *adricement*, according to Cotgrave, a directing or setting in the nearest course



come to heuen / and that he gaf them som traueylle, as it were a  
 purgatorye to fore theyr deth / At this counseyl auowed presently  
 this pylgremage, the good bisshop of Puy named Aymart / whiche  
 4 aftirward was legate in the same hoost / and conteyned hym moche  
 wysely and truly / Also, the bisshop of Orenge, whiche<sup>1</sup> was an holy  
 man and relygyous, auowed there the same viage / And ynowhe of  
 other whiche were not at that counseyl that enterprised the same  
 8 vowe / Our holy fader had commanded / and made the bisshops to  
 holde it / that alle they that wolde auowe this pylgremage shold  
 sette the signe of the crosse on their right sholdre / ffor thonoure of  
 hym that bare the torment of the crosse vpon his sholders for to  
 12 saue vs / and taccomplysshe this that oure lord sayth in the gossell /  
 “Who that wil lyue aftir me / renye<sup>2</sup> hym self and take the crosse  
 and folowe me” / wel forsaketh he hym self, that leueth / that the  
 flessch loueth / for sauynge of his soule / whan one of the grete barons  
 16 was croyced so on his sholdre in a contre, alle the peple of the  
 contre that were also crossyd cam to hym, and chees hym for  
 theyr captayne, and made to hym feaulte for to haue his ayde  
 and warantise in the waye of the sayd pylgremage /

Among the  
 great men  
 were Adhe-  
 mar, Bishop  
 of Puy, and  
 the Bishop of  
 Orange.

Each Cru-  
 sader is to  
 wear a red  
 cross.

20 The names of noble men that enterprised this pyl-  
 gremage, as wel on this side as beyonde the  
 montaynes / capitulo xvij<sup>o</sup>

i N the royaume of fraunce and of Allemayne, <sup>3</sup>hughe, the  
 24 yonger brother of the kyng of fraunce<sup>4 3</sup> / Robert, therle of  
 flaundres<sup>5</sup> / Robert, Duc<sup>6</sup> of Normandy, Sone to kynge William  
 of <sup>7</sup>Englond / Stephen, therle of chartres and of bloys, which was  
 fader to erle thybauld the olde, whiche lyeth at laigny / Raymond,  
 28 therle of tholouse / and many knyghtes of that londe / The valyant  
 man Godefroy of buyllon, Duc of lorayne, with his two bretheren,  
 Bawdwyn and eustace / And one theyr cosyn, Bawdwyn, sone to  
 the counte huon de Retel / Therle garnyer de gres / Bawdwyn, the  
 32 erle of henawde / Ysoart, the erle of ye / Rembout, therle of  
 Orenge / William, therle of forests / Steuen, therle of Aubmalle /  
 Rotrout, the erle of Perche / Hughe, the erle of saynt pol / & many

In France,  
 the following  
 great men are  
 the leaders:  
 Hugh the  
 Great, Robert  
 of Flanders,  
 Robert of  
 Normandy,  
 Raymond of  
 Toulouse,

Godfrey of  
 Bologne,  
 and his two  
 brothers.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* whi he.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *renie*, “let him deny himself.”

<sup>3-5</sup> Fr. “*Hue le maine, frère au roy France*,” Hugh the great, not  
 “Hugh the younger brother.” Lat. *Hugo Magnus*.

<sup>5</sup> *Orig.* flaundres.

<sup>6</sup> *Orig.* Dnc.

<sup>7</sup> leaf 22, back.

Wm. of  
Montpelier,  
Girard of  
Roussilon.

In Italy  
Bohemond,  
Prince of  
Tarentum,  
and his  
nephew  
Tancred.

The barons  
decide not  
to go all  
together.

Every man  
provides his  
own arms and  
provisions.

The day of  
departure  
was a sad  
one.

barons and knyghtes that were not counted<sup>1</sup> / As raoul de baugenel /  
Euerard du puisat / Guy de garlande, which was steward of  
fraunce / Thomas de fferre, Guy de possesse, Giles de chaumont /  
Girard cherisy / Rogier de baruyle / Henry dansique<sup>2</sup> / Centon of 4  
beart / Guillem amanaix, Gaste the bediers, Guillem de mont-  
pellyer / and Gyrard de Roussilon / ye may wel knowe that with  
this peple were croyssed moche grete plente of knyghtes and other,  
with grete nombre of comune peple / whiche petar theremyte gadred<sup>3</sup> 8  
in the Royamme of fraunce and in thempyre of Allemaygne. And by  
yonde the montayns men croyssed them also / Buymount the prynce  
of Tarente, whiche was soon to Robart guychart, that was Duc of  
puylle, and Tancre his neuwe, his sustres sone, and many other grete 12  
barons of this londe that were not so renommed ne knowen as thise  
were. There was grete Appareyllemens, and<sup>4</sup> araye that was made  
for this pylgremage. The grete men had enterprised, that assone as  
the wynter was passed they wold putte them on this pylgremage. 16  
The mene peple, the knyghtes, the barons, and other, aftir they  
were acqeynted that one with that other / sente to eche other  
lettres and messages for taccorde to goo to gydre / and apoynted  
the tyme of departyng<sup>5</sup>, and of the waye that they sholde holde / 20  
And whan Marche was come, ye sholde haue seen horses arrayed,  
with sommyers, palfroyes, and stedes / tentes and pauyllons, and  
to make armures.<sup>6</sup> ye maye wel knowe<sup>6</sup> that there was moche to  
doo of many thynges,<sup>5</sup> ffor the barons were acorded that they shold 24  
not goo alle to gydre, ffor no contre myght suffyse ne fynde that  
which shold be nedeful for them / ffor whiche cause alle the hoostes  
neuyr assembled<sup>7</sup> (as ye shal here) tyl they cam vnto<sup>7</sup> the cyte of  
Nycene. The mene peple charged<sup>8</sup> them self not moche with tentes 28  
ne Armures, ffor they myght not bere it. And therfor euery man  
garnysshid hym aftir that he was, with moneye and goodes, as  
moche as he supposed shold be nedeful for hym. Whan the daye  
of departyng<sup>8</sup> cam, ther were grete sorowes, grete wepynges, and 32  
grete cryes at departyng<sup>8</sup> of the pylgryms / ffor there were but fewe  
howses but of them som wente / And suche howsholders ther  
were / that they wente alle, and caryed<sup>9</sup> theyr wyues, and<sup>9</sup> bare  
theyr childeren with them / It was a merueyllous thyng to see this 36

<sup>1</sup> Orig. couuted. <sup>2</sup> Fr. *Henry d'Asque. Lat. de Ascha.* <sup>3</sup> Orig. aud.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. "*faire-armeures chargier*," Caxton neglected to translate "*chargier*."

<sup>5-6</sup> Fr. "*Bien y poretz savoir qu'il sembloit commencement de tres grant chose.*" Caxton has certainly translated very freely here.

<sup>6</sup> Orig. kuowe. <sup>7</sup> Orig. vuto. <sup>8</sup> leaf 23. <sup>9</sup> Orig. aud.

meuynges / ffor it had not byfore be acustomed to see suche  
thynges in fraunce / ne neuer byfore was crosse born ne taken for  
pylgremage.

4 Of thauentures that a Rowte of Cristen men had in  
this viage / Of whome one Gaultyer withoute  
knowleche / was Captayne / capitulo xviii<sup>o</sup>.

t He yere of thyncarnacion of our lord .M. foure score xvj / The 8th of March, 1096, Walter the Pennyless passed into Germany.  
8 the eght daye of Marche cam a gentilman, a knyght right noble,  
named Gaultier,(12) without knowleche<sup>1</sup> to his surname. with

hym cam a merueyllous<sup>2</sup> grete plente of folke a foot, ffor ther were  
but fewe men a hors bak in this rowte / they passed in allemayne,

12 and drewe hem toward hongrye / The Royamme of hongrye was Hungary is a difficult country to enter.  
alle enuyronned with grete waters, and large marshes, and depe  
lakes, in suche wyse that none myght entre ne yssue but by  
certayne places and strait entrees that ben as yates of the londe.

16 In hongerye was thenne a kynge, a moche valyaunt man named  
Colemant / And was a very good cristen man / He kewe that  
Gaultier cam by londe with grete peple / and had therof moche  
grete Ioye / and helde wel with the pylgremage that he had enter-

20 prised / he receyued them debonayrly in his londe, and commanded King Coleman receives Walter kindly.  
thugh his royame that they shold haue alle maner vytaylle, good  
sheep,<sup>3</sup> and alle that they nede / The pylgryms passed alle hongrye  
in good peas, tyl they cam to the ende, where they founde a water

24 whiche was named Marce / This was the bounde of hongrye toward They reached the confines of Hungary.  
thoryent. they passed this water in good peas, and entred in to  
bongrye.<sup>4</sup> And withoute knowyng of this Gaulteer, some of his  
peple abode ouer the water / And cam to a castel named Malleuyll,

28 for to by vitaylles, of the whiche they had nede / The hongres<sup>5</sup> by  
cause<sup>6</sup> that alle the hoost was passed, sauf they which were but a  
fewe, ranne vpon them / And bette them / And dyde to them ouer-  
moche shame. They passed the water, and cam to gaultier / and  
32 shewde to hym playnly how they had ben demened without for- A few who stayed behind were badly treated by the Hungarians.

<sup>1</sup> Some of the French texts give "*Gautier sans Savoir*," which Caxton follows; others have the more correct, "*Gautier sans Avoir*," i. e. Walter the Pennyless. Lat. *Galterus cognomento "Sans Aveir."*

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* merueyllons.

<sup>3</sup> Fr. *à bon marché*, i. e. at low prices; "*good cheap*" seems to have been the ordinary translation, see p. 48; *liht cheap* is another form for the same expression. See *Ancien Rivle*, l. 398, and *Townley Mysteries*, 102.

<sup>4</sup> Bougrye, Bulgaria.

<sup>5</sup> Bougres, Bulgarians.

<sup>6</sup> *Orig.* canse.

They com-  
plain to  
Walter.

The Duke of  
Bellegrove  
will not sell  
them pro-  
visions.

A conflict  
ensues.

Walter sees  
that his men  
are to blame.

He sets out  
for a city  
called  
Stralioe.

They are well  
received here,

and given a  
safe conduct  
to Constanti-  
nople.

Here the  
Emperor  
receives  
Walter  
kindly.

faytte: They had moche grete despite, and moche sorowe herof.  
And had passed the <sup>1</sup>water agayn, yf they had not so grete peryl  
and so grete distourblyng, And thought they wold goo theyr waye,  
and leue for tauenge this thyng / So long they wente tyl they cam 4  
to belle graue, whiche is the first Cyte of bougrye<sup>2</sup> on this syde.  
Gaultier sente to the duc of the town, and requyred hym that he  
wolde late them ther by vytaylles / he wold not suffre ony to be  
sold to them. Thoost had grete disease<sup>3</sup> for lak of vytaylle / and 8  
myght not lenger kepe them, but that a grete parte of them wente  
a fowragyng for to gete vytaylles for them, and for theyr beestys /  
They founde grete plente of beestes in the contre / whiche they toke  
and brought to theyr lodgynges / whan they of the contre herd this, 12  
they armed them, and assembled grete peple of the countree, and ran  
vpon them where they droef their proyes, and fought with them / and  
toke the beestes fro them / and many of them they slewe, and hunted  
the other away. the nombre wel of Cxl of oure<sup>4</sup> men, shytted them 16  
in a monasterye for to kepe them there sauf / but the bongres cam  
there aboute / and sette fyer on the chirche, and brente alle / Gaultier  
sawe that he ledde with hym many folyssh peple, whiche he coude  
not rule ne sette alle in ordenaunce, And withdrewe hym fro them, 20  
and toke them that wold be ruled and obeye hym, and wente in to  
forestes of bougrye,<sup>5</sup> which ben large and long, and began to passe  
the moost wysely and styлле that he myght / tyl he cam to a cyte  
named stralyce / and is a contre named danemarche<sup>6</sup> the moyen / 24  
There fonde he a good man that was duke of the londe / whan this  
duke knewe what they were and whyther they wente / he receyued  
them moche debonayrly, and made them to haue vytaylles and  
other thynges good cheep. And dyde to them bountes and seruyses 28  
ynowgh for the oultrage that was doon to them at belgraue. And  
dyde redresse and yelde agayne to them as moche as he myght  
recouere / and aboue alle this / he deluyerd to them good conduyte  
and sewr tyl they cam to constantynoble / whan they were come to 32  
constantinoble, themperour sente for gaultier. he cam vnto hym, and  
sayde to hym thoccasion of his viage, and that he wolde abyde there,  
peter theremyte, by the commandemt of whom he had brought  
thyse pylgryms / whan themperour herde this / he receyued hym 36

<sup>1</sup> leaf 23, back.

<sup>2</sup> Lat. "Bulgarorum et fines alligat ad locum deveniens qui dicatur Belgravia."

<sup>3</sup> Fr. *souffrete*, lack, scarcity.

<sup>4</sup> Orig. onre.

<sup>5</sup> Bougrye, Bulgaria.

<sup>6</sup> Fr. Danemarche la Maienne. Lat. Dacia Mediterranea.

moche wel and swetly / and assygned to hym a fayr place without  
the town / where as he lodged hym with his felawship, and com-  
manded that they shold haue vytaylle and alle other necessaryes  
4 good chepe / and ther soiourned they a whyle.

How Pieter the heremyte was chyef of a grete hoost in  
this <sup>1</sup>viage toward the holy londe. capitulo xix<sup>o</sup> [1 leaf 21]

i t was not longe aftir that peter theremite cam fro his contre /  
8 with grete plente of peple, vnto the nombre of xl / M / he cam  
in to lorayne, and passed francone / bauyere, osterych<sup>2</sup> / and drewe  
hym toward hungrye. Peter sente his messagers to the kyng of  
hongrye, to thende that he myght passe his Royamme, he sente  
12 hym worde that he shold haue good leue yf they wold goo in peas  
without medlynges<sup>3</sup> and oultrages / They answerd that they were  
pylgrymys of our lord / and had no talente for to trouble the pees /  
Thus entred they the royaume of hongrye / and passed by the  
16 lande without ony debate. vytaylles and other thynges had they  
ynough good cheepe / At thende they cam to the castel of whiche I  
spak to fore / named maleuyll: There herd they saye / what was  
doon to them of the retenue of Gaultier, and the grete outrage doon  
20 to them without cause / and sawe yet the armes and despoyllis of  
theyr felawes that had be robbed there hange yet on the walles /

Peter the  
Hermit sets  
out with  
40,000 men.

They arrive  
at Malleville.  
Here they  
learn of the  
injustice done  
to Walter's  
men.

Oure pylgryms that sawe this were alle as they had ben out of  
theyr wytte, and ran to armes / and <sup>4</sup>began euery man to do wel.  
24 they toke the toun by force, and smote of the heedes of alle them  
that were within, sauf a fewe which ran in to the water and were  
drowned. ther were founde of them that were deed wel a four M /  
and of peters meyne were slayn an C / whan this was don the hoost  
28 fonde there grete plente of vytaylles / and abode wel v dayes in that  
place / The duc of "Bougric," which was named Incita,<sup>5</sup> vnderstode  
how thise pilgryms had venged their felaws ayenst them of male-  
uyll / and doubted for as moche as he had defended the vytaylles to  
32 our peple / and that he had slayn many of them. And hym semed  
that bellegraue was not strong ynough / therfor he lefte the town /  
and wente in to a strenger castel / Thus alle they of the cyte yssued  
with their goodes / and drewe them to the depe forestes / Peter

They kill  
4000 men to  
avenge their  
fellow-  
pilgrims.

The Duke of  
Hungary has  
great fear of  
them.

<sup>2</sup> ? orig. ofteryeh.

<sup>3</sup> Fr. *Meslés*.

<sup>4-5</sup> Fr. "*s'entre commencèrent à semondre et à amonester à bien faire.*"  
Caxton, misled by the recurrence of the preposition *à*, skipped a line in his  
translation.

<sup>5</sup> Fr. B. Vicetel. A. Vitira. Lat. Nichita.

Peter is in  
turn afraid of  
the duke,  
and leaves  
Hungary.

[1 lf. 24, bk.]

They arrive  
at the city of  
Nyze.

Peter asks  
that provi-  
sions be sold  
to them at a  
reasonable  
rate.

They have to  
give hostages  
to keep the  
peace.

whyles he laye yet at maleuyllle, herd saye that the kyng of  
hongrye had herd of the deth of his peple / wherof he was moche  
angry / and that he somoned and assembled alle his power for  
tauenge his men that had be slayn / And doubted herof / And was 4  
no merueyille / wherfore he made tassemble alle the shippes that  
myght be founden atte ryue of the see to hym / and made his peple  
to departe moche hastely his cartes and charyottes / and the beestes  
they had merueyllous grete praye, and lad away grete rychesses fro 8  
the castel of maleuyllle, that they had there taken whan they were  
passed ouer in to bongrye. <sup>1</sup>they cam to fore bellegraue / and fonde  
the cyte alle voyde, ffor they were alle fled / Aftir they wente eght  
grete iourneyes by many grete forestes tyl they cam to fore a cyte <sup>12</sup>  
named Nyze / This town fonde they moche stronge, and wel wallyd  
with grete towres and stronge / And within was grete garnyson,  
and the beste men of warre of alle the londe, and grete plente of  
armours aud vytaylle / Peter the heremyte and his hoost fonde a <sup>16</sup>  
brygge of stone by whiche they passed a water rennyng<sup>2</sup> nyghe to  
the cyte / they passed the brygge and lodged them bytwene the  
water and the towne, And by cause they had not mete<sup>3</sup> ynough /  
Peter sente his messages vnto the lord of the toun / and prayd hym <sup>20</sup>  
fayr for hym and for his peple that were cristen / and pylgryms  
that wente in the seruyse of our lord / that they myght bye  
vytaylles of the toun at resonable prys / Thenne the lord sende  
worde to peter that he wold not suffre / that they shold entre in to <sup>24</sup>  
the toun / But, and yf he wold gyue hym good ostages / that his  
peple shold doo no harme ne oultrage to the peple and marcheantes  
of the toun that shold come for to selle them vytaylle / he shold  
sende to them ynough at resonable prys. whan Peter and his peple <sup>28</sup>  
herd this they were glad ynough. They delyuered good ostages /  
and anon they of the toun cam out with grete plente of vytayl and  
other thynges necessarye in the hoost /

How some of the oost of peter thermyte vnwetyng <sup>32</sup>  
hym sette fyre in the subarbes of Nyz at theyr  
departyng / cap. xx°

m oche was this nyght, the hoost of the pylgryms, refresshyd of  
alle thynges that they had nede / ffor they had ben long fro <sup>36</sup>  
ony good toun. And they of the cyte were to them moche debonair

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* rennyug.

<sup>3</sup> *Fr. viandes*, food, victuals.

- and resonable. On the morne they demanded theyr ostages / And they were delyuerd gladly / And forth they wente in peas. But now ye shal here how the deuyl doth grete payne for to empresshe  
 4 and lette good werkes / In this companye had ben the euen a fore a stryf to one of the marcchautes of the town / and som of the oost / whan the hoost was departed, the duchemen assembled to the nombre of an hunderd,<sup>1</sup> and for vengeance of the stryf / they  
 8 sawe vij myllenes, whiche stode at brygge nyghe the town / and<sup>2</sup> sette them a fyre, and brente them anone / this was not ynough, but there was a litil borough without the cyte / and they sette that a fyre also, and brende hit to ashes / and syth wente theyr waye  
 12 aftir theyr <sup>3</sup>felowship, whiche knewe nothyng herof / Of this thyng the lord of the town, whiche had the euen to fore shewde to them grete debonayrte was gretely meuyd, for he sawe that they rendrid euyl for god / and was half out of his wytte for angre /  
 16 <sup>4</sup>This felonnye that this fewe dyde was *wyted* alle the hoost,<sup>4</sup> whiche was euyl and pyte. he made anon arme alle the town, and yssued on horsbak and on fote / hym self cam to fore / and prayde, and moche desyred his peple for to venge vpon thyse false rowters,  
 20 and theuys the oultrage that they had don. whan they approched the hoost / they fonde fyrst thise<sup>5</sup> thre malefactours whiche had not yet ouertaken theyr felaws / And ronned on them, and smote of their heedes / it had thenne be ynowgh, but<sup>6</sup> they were not con-  
 24 tent,<sup>7</sup> but smote in the aftirst parte of thoost whiche doubted nothyng / they fonde charyottes / sommyers / males, seruantes, wymmen, and<sup>2</sup> children / whiche myght not goo so faste as the other / They slewe many, and somme they ouerthrewe, and ladde  
 28 away the cariage. And thus retorned in to theyr cyte without hurte, and alle bloody of the bloode of the pylgryms.

In the morning they go their way quietly,

except a hundred Dutchmen, who set fire to a little town near by.

[<sup>3</sup> leaf 25]

The duke pursues the pilgrims.

He overtakes the Dutchmen, and smites off their heads.

He also attacks the rear of the main body of pilgrims.

How Peter theremyte was aduertysed of alle this.

And of the harme that ensiewed. capitulo xxj<sup>o</sup>

- 32 p Eter was goyng with the grete companye<sup>8</sup> whan a messenger cam to hym rydyng, & told to hym of this aduenture that was

Peter is informed of this.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* huuderd.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* aud.

<sup>4-4</sup> Fr. "*et la felonie que pou des gens lui avoient faicte, mist sus a tout l'ost.*"

<sup>6</sup> Fr. *Tiois*: these Dutchmen; Caxton probably mistook *Tiois* for *trois*, and translated accordingly.

<sup>8</sup> *Orig.* bnt.

<sup>7</sup> *Orig.* content.

<sup>8</sup> Fr. *companye de l'ost*, with the main body of the army. After "*l'ost*" is omitted "*qui mot ne sçavoit de cecy.*"

fallen in the taylle of thoost. Peter sente anon to them that were to fore, that they shold retourne agayn the way that they were comyn vnto the cyte of nyz / In this retorne they fonde thynges ynowgh that displesyd them, ffor they fonde their felawes byheded, 4 lyeng by the waye / they had grete sorowe herof / One fonde his fader deed / Another his brother or his sone, and another his wyf or his doughter / there were many disconuenyentes.<sup>1</sup> Peter, whiche had his entencion pure vnto oure<sup>2</sup> lord / entented not, but tappese 8 the malyce, and leye down the discorde whiche was sourded emong the peple / he sente som wyse and prudent men to the lord and to the moost hye men of the cyte, for to demaunde by what occasion they had don this euil and crueltees ayenst the peple of our lord / 12 They answerd that this was by the defaulte of the pylgryms / and that they had fyrst doon grete outrage to brenne theyr mylnes and<sup>3</sup> burghes. whan Peter and the wyse men that were with hym herd this / They thought wel that it was no place ne tyme to venge 16 4theyr shames, And therfor torned the mater vnto peas and acorde / for to recouvre the praye, the prysonners and caryage whiche they had ledde away fro thoost / ffor there were of the mene peple whiche wold not be ruled, and wold not suffre them of the towne to 20 haue pees with vs / but wolde auenge<sup>5</sup> by force the outrage that they had doon / Peter felte this thyng, And apperceyued anone the euylle that sourded / And sente of the wysest and grettest of his compayne<sup>6</sup> to make the pees / his peple wold not haue pees. 24 He made a crye on payne of deth, in his name and the name of the barons / that noman be so hardy to breke the pees that was made. And this he charged vpon their pylgremages, theyr feaulte, and on thobedyence that they had promysed hym / And whan they of the 28 hoost herd this / they<sup>7</sup> remeuyd not / But folyssh peple wente forth and made grete noyse, and wold not obeye. The messagers that were in the toun for taccorde this that was don, sawe that the noyse grewe more and more, and retourned to theyr felawshipp 32 withoute any conclusion or doying that they had enterprised / and dyde theyr best to seece the debate / but<sup>8</sup> they had no power, ffor there were moo than a thousand pylgryms, whiche noman myght

He sends to the Duke for an explanation.

When Peter hears the reason, he sees that his [4 lf. 25, bk.] own men were to blame.

His followers will not go on without revenge.

They break off the negotiations.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *disconuenues*.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. *onre*.

<sup>3</sup> Orig. *aud*.

<sup>5</sup> Orig. *aneuge*.

<sup>6</sup> Orig. *compauye*.

<sup>7</sup> Caxton's original is here corrupt. A. gives the correct reading, "*si ne le crurent pas*," they did not believe it, instead of "*they remeuyd not*," which is in direct contradiction with the next sentence.

<sup>8</sup> Orig. *bnt*.



- holde ne reteyne / But that they wold goo armed to the toun. Out  
of the toun yssued as many or moo ayenst them, ther began the  
bataylle and the medle grete and thyk, and began to slee eche other  
4 largely / Peter ne his route meuyd not / but<sup>1</sup> byhelde the bataylle.  
They of the toun that were on the walles and at wyndowes sawe  
that theyr peple had the werse, and apperceyued that the grete  
power of thoost<sup>2</sup> entermeted not of this warre, and<sup>2</sup> thought that  
8 they wold not helpe them / And<sup>3</sup> opened theyr yates and yssued  
oute by grete rowtes alle armed, and smote in the bataylle / And  
founde of our peple aboute a / V / C. vpon the brygge / <sup>4</sup>And  
addressyd to them and slewe them alle, sauf somme that were caste  
12 in the water / And alle were perysshed. whan the grete hoost  
apperceyued theyr peple thus euyl demened, they myght suffre it  
no lenger, but wente to Armes / and smote in to the bataylle / one  
aftir another, lyke as they myght be armed. the peple that had  
16 bygonne this debate were discomfyted fyrst / And began to flee so  
fast that nothyng myght tarye them / They began to bete them on  
horsbak, that cam for to helpe them / by whiche the good men were  
discomfyted / And they of the Cyte that were nygh to theyr  
20 retrayt, began to chase them moche straitly, and to slee them / At  
last, whan oure peple were withdrawen / they retorned<sup>5</sup> by the  
<sup>6</sup>caryage and harnois / And caryed alle, and ledde it with them. [<sup>6</sup> leaf 26]  
And toke wymmen and childeren that myght not flee, and putte  
24 them in prison. There were wel slayn and lost of the peple of the  
hoost / X / M / and the bongres<sup>7</sup> wan alle the harnois of thoost /  
There was a cart loste that longed to peter theremyte, alle ful of  
Rychesse, whiche had ben youen to hym in ffraunce for to socoure<sup>8</sup>  
28 and sustene the necessarytees of the hoost / they that myght escape  
fro this discomfiture, drewe them in to the forestes / and hydde them  
in the depe valeyes in the nyght / And on the morn they began to  
calle eche other / and to whystle,<sup>9</sup> and sowne trumpes and busynes  
32 in the woodes. And thus began to reassemble, and gadred them  
to gydre on a territorie.<sup>10</sup>

A great battle  
takes place.

The pilgrims  
get the worst  
of it.

Those who  
had only  
looked on  
have to come  
to the aid of  
the others.

10,000 pil-  
grims are  
slain, and  
many women  
and children  
taken  
prisoners.

Those who  
are left begin  
to assemble.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* bnt.

<sup>2-2</sup> *Fr.* "ne s'entremetoit de cele guerre."

<sup>3</sup> *Orig.* Aud.

<sup>4</sup> *Fr.* "et s'adrecièrent à eulx."

<sup>5</sup> *Orig.* retorued. <sup>7</sup> Bougres, Bulgarians. <sup>8</sup> *Orig.* soconre.

<sup>9</sup> *Fr.* *huchier*, to call in a loud voice, not "to whistle."

<sup>10</sup> *Fr.* *tertre*, a small hill. The word *territoire*, with which Caxton translates *tertre*, seems to be peculiar to him.

How Themperour of Constantynoble, beyng aduer-  
tised of thise oultrages, sente his messagers to  
peter theremyte<sup>1</sup> / ca° xxiij°

After four  
days 4000  
are collected,  
who continue  
their way.

a T the fourth daye were nyghe alle assembled aboute peter, 4

And they were about a four thousand. they were in moche  
grete meschyef, as they that had lost theyr frendes and theyr peple,  
and almost alle theyr harnois / not withstondyng <sup>2</sup>they lefte not,  
but wente forth on the waye<sup>2</sup> that they had enterprised, with grete 8  
mesease and payne for lak of vytaylle. And as they were in this  
poynt, They sawe come ayenst them the messagers of themperour of  
constantynoble,<sup>3</sup> whiche spak to peter / And anon he dyde assemble  
the heye men and Capytaynes of the hoost for to here the message 12  
that they brought. And aftir they sayd in this manere / “ffayr

They meet  
the messen-  
gers of the  
Greek  
Emperor;

who inform  
them of the  
evil reports  
that they  
hear of their  
conduct.

syr, moche euyl tydynges and renomme is comen of you to our  
lord themperour / ffor it is tolde to hym that ye goo by the countree  
of his empyre with force, and robbe the peple of suche as they 16  
haue, breke his townes, and slee his peple / and doo alle the  
oultrages and wronges that ye may / the good chere / bounte, and  
alle the seruyse that is doon to you auaylleth nothyng, ne may  
adoulce ne aswage your hertes / Therefore he commandeth you that 20

The Emperor  
orders them  
to march  
straight to  
Constantin-  
ople.

ye abyde in none of his cytees more than thre dayes / But goo  
your waye strait forth to constantynoble / ffor he hath commanded  
vs to goo with you / and that we do brynge to you on the waye  
vytayll good cheep ynowe.” (13) whan thise good men herd this, 24  
that themperour had don to them this bounte / they had grete ioye /  
and excused them of thise bataylles and fyghtyng, and shewd  
openly what the bongres had doon withoute theyr offence or culpe

[4 ff. 26, bk.]

by force and grete outrage. <sup>4</sup>The messagers dyrected them on the 28  
way tyl they cam to constantynoble / They fonde there gaultyer  
sans sauoyr / and his peple, that taryed for them / And thenne they  
wente alle to gydre<sup>5</sup> / And lodged them in the place that was  
assygned to them / And there eche tolde to other of theyr mys- 32  
auentures :<sup>6</sup> Themperour sente for peter. And he wente to hym /  
He sawe in the towne many thynges / <sup>7</sup>palaysses, many rychesses /

There they  
join Walter  
and his men.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* therempte.

<sup>2-2</sup> *Fr. mais ne laisserent mie pour ce quilz ne se meissent en la roye,*  
but this did not hinder them from starting on the journey, etc.

<sup>3</sup> *Orig.* constantynoble. <sup>5</sup> *Orig.* ggdre.

<sup>6</sup> *Fr. mesauentures*, misfortunes.

<sup>7-7</sup> (next p.) *Fr. et en ce palais maintes richesses et maintes merveilles.*

- and marueylles<sup>7</sup> / But he was a man of grete herte and courage, and  
 abasshyd of nothyng / Themperour demanded of hym of thestate  
 of his peple, and of other barons of thoccyent / that were thus  
 4 meuyd to this pylgremage. Peter answerd hym moche wel of alle  
 thynges / And said that they were pour peple, and were come to  
 fore / But the prynces and hye men cam aftir with moch grete  
 peple / which wold not long tarye / themperour and his barons of  
 8 the palays sawe alle that peter was so lytil. And so wel / so wysely /  
 so fayr and so wel appoynt of alle thynges, answerd that they  
 merueylled ouer<sup>1</sup> moche / and alowed and preysed hym moche.  
 Themperour gaf to hym grete yestes / And receyued hym in his  
 12 grace / And syth he lete hym retorne to his peple. There rested  
 the oost of the pylgryms wel at ease and in peas / And a while  
 aftir shippes were made redy by the commaundement of themperour,  
 And they passed the see named the braas of seynt george, And  
 16 cam in to the lond named bythyne / This is the fyrst partye of  
 Asye / vpon the see / And they lodged them in a place called  
 Cinintot.<sup>2</sup> -

The Emperor  
asks many  
questions of  
Peter.

He gives  
great gifts to  
Peter.

The Crusad-  
ers pass the  
Bras of St.  
George.

- Of the mayntenynge of the hoost of peter theremyte /  
 20 And how thre thousand duchemen toke a castel  
 by assault / and slewe alle that were therin with  
 the swerde / capitulo xxiiij:

- t His was in the marches of theyr enemyes / there was the  
 24 hoost about two monethes, And euery day they fonde fresshe  
 vytaylles to selle good cheep, wherof they were wel at ease, <sup>3</sup>so  
 moch that it coude not wel be suffred longe / They began to meue,<sup>3</sup>  
 and made routes for to goo en fourage in the contrey / Ther wente  
 28 wel somtyme .X. M / or more, maulgre the barons, that were  
 capytayns in the hoost. Neuerthelesse<sup>4</sup> Peter commanded and  
 sente lettres to them, that they shold abyde, and not remeue fro the  
 oost / to pylle tyl the grete Prynces were comen. On a daye it  
 32 happed that Pieter passed the braas / And cam in to Constanti-  
 noble<sup>5</sup> for to speke for vytaylles / that began to wexe dere / <sup>6</sup>The  
 mene peple sawe that Peter was not there, And were the more  
 hardy. they assembled, and were of a companye wel eght thousand

They are well  
supplied with  
provisions.

Peter forbids  
them to  
forage and  
pillage.

[<sup>6</sup> leaf 27]

<sup>1</sup> Orig. oner.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *Civitot*.

<sup>3-5</sup> "*Tant que li peuple qui à peine peut souffrir grant aise longement  
se commença à es mouvoir*," etc.

<sup>4</sup> Orig. neuethelesse.

<sup>5</sup> Orig. Coustantyuoble.

Notwith-  
standing,  
they go on a  
foraging ex-  
pedition near  
Nycene.

a fote, and thre honderd a horsback. they made theyr bataylles,  
and wente alle in ordenaunce toward the cyte of nycene, ayenst the  
wille and deffence of alle the grete men of thoost / whan they cam  
nyghe to this grete cyte, They smote in to the townes about it, and 4  
toke merueyllous many beestes, grete and smale, And brought  
moche grete gayne / And retorned sauflly withoute hurte home agayn  
in to the oost with grete ioye and feste. The duchemen, whiche  
ben a peple rude and hardy, sawe this glorye and this gayne that 8  
they had wonne / and had grete enuye therat / and were meuid  
with couetyse of good, and to haue worship / relyed them to gydre  
alle of that tongue vnto the nombre of thre thousand a foote / and  
wente straye toward Nycene / There was a / Castel at foote of an 12  
hylle, nygh vnto Nycene, at leste Foure myle of. These Duchemen  
cam theder and began tassaylle the castel moche strongly / they  
within defended them to theyr power as long as they myght, but it  
auaylled not / ffor the castel was taken by force / And the duchemen 16  
entred therin / And alle them that they fonde within, men, wymmen,  
and chylderen, they slewe without mercy / They fonde ther in  
vytaylle ynowgh, and other thynges / and sawe that the place was  
moche fayr and delectable / and garnysshed it, and sayde that they 20  
wolde it holde tyl the grete prynces, whome they abode and taryed  
for, were comen /

3000 Dutch-  
men take a  
castle.

How Solyman, lord of that contre, reprysed and toke  
agayn the castel, and slewe alle the duchemen 24  
that where therin. ca.° xxiiij°

s Olyman, (14) whiche was lord of this contre and gouernoure,<sup>1</sup>  
had herd longe to fore / that the cristen peple were meuyd of  
the Royamme of ffrance for to goo in to the londe of surye / And 28  
that they addressed them for to passe by his londe / Therfore he had  
ben in thoryent, fro whens he was come / and had brought grete  
plente of knyghtes and other peple / by whom he entended to kepe  
his londe / And greue his enemyes / that shold passe there by / he 32  
was thenne drawn toward our peple, and with his folkes was in  
the montaynes and woodes / He herde how thys duchemen had  
taken his castel and slayn his men / and cam the moost hasty wyse  
he myghte and assyeged the castel / and toke it without taryeng<sup>2</sup> / 36  
and he smote of the <sup>3</sup>heedes of alle them that he fonde / The

Solyman pre-  
pares to de-  
fend his land.

He retakes  
his castle,  
and beheads  
all the Dutch-  
men.  
[<sup>3</sup> ff. 27, bk.]

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* goneruoure.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* taryeug.

- tydynges cam in to the hoost that Solyman had slayn alle the  
 duchemen and theyr felaws / They had moche sorow / and ther  
 arroos a grete crye and grete wepyng in the lodgys / The peple  
 4 afote toke herof grete despite emonge them / And began to speke  
 hrewdly / And said that the barons of the oost ought not to suffre  
 his. But that they shold renne a horsbak and auenge blood of  
 theyr bretheren, <sup>1</sup>that so nygh was shed<sup>1</sup> / The grete men of thoost,  
 8 that knewe more of warre and of other thynges / than the mene  
 peple, wold haue holden them in peas / And sayde this may wel be  
 yet amended / And also themperour counceyllid / And it was  
 trouthe / that they shold abyde the comyng of the grete barons,  
 12 whiche shold not longe tarye / The peple and the folyssh folke were  
 not content with thyse wordes / But they had a Capytayne named  
 godefrey bureau, whiche brought them in suche reuerie<sup>2</sup> and  
 murmur that they spake largely and rudely ayenst the knyghtes /  
 16 And sayde alle clerly that they were vntrewe and euyl, and that  
 they lete not to auenge this by wysedom / but for grete cowardyse /

The pilgrims  
lament their  
loss, and are  
bent on  
revenge.

The wiser  
ones wish to  
await the  
coming of the  
great barons.

But the  
people are  
obstinate.

How oure men armed them for tauenge the duche-  
 men, and of a recountour that they had ayenst  
 20 Solyman / ca. xxv.

- i T' happeth oftyme that the werse counseyl ouercometh the  
 better / And it is no meruaylle, ffor there ben more fooles than  
 wysemen. Thyse mene peple, and without reson, meuyd them so  
 24 moche and cryed that the barons and other men that were with  
 hem ran to armes, an horsbak<sup>3</sup> and on foote. There were wel /  
 XXV / M. on foote / and / V / C / a horsbak, alle wel arrayed /  
 They made theyr bataylles / and wente forth in ordenaunce toward  
 28 the montaynges by the woodes strait toward Nycene / They were  
 not departed thre myle whan Solyman, whiche had moche peple  
 with hym, apperceyued<sup>4</sup> them : ffor he cam alle couerd and secretly  
 in the wode / ffor to make an assaylle / in the oost of the pylgryms /  
 32 But whan he herd the noyse and thaffraye in the foreste, he wyst  
 wel that thei were the cristen men that cam ayenst hym, and  
 suffred them to passe. he hym self with alle his peple drewe hym  
 incontinent oute of the wode in to the playn where as they shold

Often bad  
counsel pre-  
rails over  
good.

25,000 foot-  
men and 500  
horse start  
for Nycene.

<sup>1-1</sup> Fr. "*qui ainsi pres d'eulx estoit expandu*," viz. "*which was thus shed so near them*."

<sup>3</sup> Orig. borsbak.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *enrederie*, rage, fury, obstinacy.

<sup>4</sup> Orig. apperceyned.

[1 leaf 28]

A fierce contest ensues.

The Turks are victorious.

passe / whan oure peple were yssued, they sewed them sodenly /  
 they toke none hede of hym, and anon with their felawship ran  
 vpon our men with their speres <sup>1</sup>and swerdes for tauenge theyr  
 bretheren. The hethen men sawe on that other syde that certaynly 4  
 they wold fyghte / and that euery man dyd his beste / receyued  
 them moch fiersly / the bataylle began moche cruelle / and many  
 were dede on bothe sydes : and the bataylle dured longe / But  
 solyman had moche more peple on horsbacke, whom the pylgryms 8  
 a fote myght not lenger suffre / But began to flee without  
 ordenaunce / and were discomfyted / The turkes folowed them  
 aftir, sleeing alle them that they myght atteyne, tyl they cam to  
 theyr lodgyng / There were slayn Gaultier sans sauoyr / Reynald 12  
 de broyes and ffoucher dorleans, whiche were good and valyaunt  
 knyghtes / and almost alle were slayn and brought in to prison /  
 ffor of / XXV / M men / and fyue honderd men on horsbak, coude  
 not be founden thre to gydre / But that they were taken or slayn / 16

How peter theremyte beyng in constantynoble. was  
 aduertysed of this disconfyture / and saued thre  
 thousand cristen men, beyng in grete daunger.

capitulo xxvj: 20

Solyman attacks the Christian camp.

3000 of the Crusaders flee to an old fortress.

The Turks assail them.

Word is sent to Peter in Constantinople of these reverses.

t His vycторыe brought Solyman in in grete pryde, and in grete  
 sewrte he smote in to the lodgis of the Cristen men / where as  
 wer lefte thauncyent peple, men, wymmen, clerkes, and monkes,  
 whom he put alle to deth / he fonde maydens and smale childeren, 24  
 whiche he ledde with hym, for to be euer aftir in seruage. On that  
 one side of the tentes nyghe vnto the see / was an old fortresse for-  
 leten and beten down, in whiche no man dwelled, nether was fonde  
 therin dore ne wyndowe / Theder fledde of the pylgryms aboute a 28  
 thre thousand, one aftir another for to kepe theyr lyuess / They  
 stopped thentrees the best wyse they myght with grete tymbre and  
 trees, and with grete stones / The turkes knewe therof / and cam  
 and began tassaylle it on alle sides moche anguysshously / They 32  
 defended them the best wey they myghte, ffor they had grete nede.  
 whyles they were thus assaylled / a messenger wente hastily to peter  
 theremyte, which was in constantynoble, as is said to you to fore.  
 This message said to hym that alle his men were perysshyd / sauf 36  
 a lytil remenaunt, whiche were at grete meschief in an old hows  
 asyged, whiche were in moche grete daunger / yf they had not

- hasty socoure. Peter was moche abasshed / And had meruayl-  
 lously grete sorowe / Neuerthelesse, anon he ranne to themperour,  
 and fyld doun at his feet, and prayd hym for goddes sake and <sup>1</sup>for
- 4 the sauacion of his sowle, that he wold sende socoure to this poure  
 peple that were in so grete peryll / that yf he hasted not / they  
 shold be alle deed / Themperour that moche louyd peter sente anon  
 his messagers theder / and commaunded the turkes that essaylled
- 8 them / shold leue thassault / and departe thens / They wente awaye  
 anon whan they had herde the commandement of themperour, But<sup>2</sup>  
 they ledde with them prisonners ynowe / horses, mules / and other  
 beestes / tentes / pauyllons, and gonnys. and wyth alle they
- 12 retourned in to nycene / here ye maye here how so moche peple  
 was loste / by the folye of the moyen peple / whiche wold not  
 haue ne endure the gouernaunce of the wyse men aboute them.  
 Here may men wel see that it is grete peryl to truste to the bataylle
- 16 or warre of them / that knowe not of it /

[ l. 28, bk.]  
 Peter begs  
 the Emperor  
 for help.

The Emperor  
 orders the  
 Turks to  
 withdraw.

All these dis-  
 asters were  
 caused by the  
 folly of the  
 common  
 people.

How a preest named godechan made hym self cap-  
 tain of / xl / M / duchemen in this viage, and  
 of theyr oultrages / ca. xxvij<sup>o</sup>

- 20 s Yth that Pieter was passed in to bythme as I haue said / it  
 was not longe aftir that a priest named Godechan<sup>3</sup> had prechyd  
 in duchelonde / lyke as peter theremyte had doon in ffraunce. And  
 cam with his peple for to goo in this pylgremage, ffor he had wel
- 24 assembled<sup>4</sup> / xl / M / of duchemen, They entred alle in to the  
 londe of hongrye / ffor the kyng had comaunded that they shold be  
 receyued debonayrly, by cause it were his neyghbours, and that<sup>5</sup>  
 they shold vytaylle and other necessytes<sup>6</sup> at prys resonable. <sup>7</sup>They
- 28 that fonde the londe right good began to abyde there alle the  
 wynter<sup>7</sup> / and for the ease that they had they began to wexe prowd  
 In suche wyse that they toke away the vytaylles and other thynges,  
 and ledde away the beestes oute of the feeldes / they toke wyues /
- 32 bete theyr husbondes and slewe them / and for noman wold they

Godechan,  
 with 40,000  
 Dutchmen,  
 starts for the  
 Holy Land.

They remain  
 in Hungary  
 all winter.

They rob and  
 kill and  
 insult the  
 Hungarians.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* Bnt.

<sup>3</sup> Lat. *Godescalcus*.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. *et* Lat. XV m, instead of XL M.

<sup>5</sup> Caxton has omitted the verb in this clause. Fr. "*l'en leur vendoit viandes*," etc.

<sup>6</sup> *Orig.* *uecessytus*.

<sup>7-7</sup> Caxton here translates *s'enyvrer*, i. e. *to become intoxicated*, by "*to pass the winter*," evidently mistaking it for a derivation of *yver*, winter. Fr. "*ceux que trouvoient la terre moult bonne, se commencerent à enyvrer*," etc.

The King of Hungary loses his patience,

leue this outrages / The kynge of the londe herde the tydynges of this peple, and was moche displaysyd, and was moche sory therfore / And myght not wyth his honour no lenger suffre it, lest it shold torne to ouermoeche hurte of his londe and of his subgettes. 4

and proceeds against the Dutchmen.

And dyde do assemble moche peple on horsbak, and on fote for tauenge on this duchemen. he began to poursyewe them so ferre, that he fonde them right in the mydle of his royame by a castel named bellgraue / the kyng had seen and also herd of thoultrages 8 that they had doon in his londe whyles he siewed aftir them / The duchmen knewe that the kynge cam vpon them and was nyghe.

[1 leaf 29]

1 and they knewe wel that they had not ben wel gouerned toward hym / But had doon many ylle tornes and wronges in his londe, 12 wherfor they had not deseruyd his grace and his loue<sup>2</sup> : Neurtheles

They are determined to defend themselves unto death.

they ran to armes, and sayde that they wolde defende them fro the hongers / and wold neuer deye for nought / but erst wold they selle theyr lyf moche dere / whan the kyng and the hongers sawe this, 16 they thought that this peple were moche stronge and<sup>3</sup> hardy / and there as alle dispayred / And sawe that he myght not ouercome

The king has recourse to stratagem.

them without grete losse of his peple in that maner / and lefte the force of bataylle / and toke hym to subtilite and falshed / as peple 20 that is ful of barate deceyte and trycherye. The kynge and the hongers<sup>4</sup> sente message to godechan and to the grete men of the companye for to deceyue them by fayre wordes of peas / and sayd to them in this manere :

He sends false messengers to Godechan,

24

“ Ouer grete complaynte and moche fowle renomme is comen to the kyng of you, fayr syres / whiche hath sente vs hether / ffor as he hath herd saye / ye haue not had to none of youre hoostes no fayth ne trouthe, But haue taken fro them that they hadde, and 28 haue beten And slayn them / ye have taken their daughters and wyues, and doo suche outrages to them as it ought not to be sayd. The marcheantes and other peple that ye fynde by the wayes, be not sure, and goo not quyt fro you, but be robbed and pyled / Of 32 whiche thynges the kyng hath grete clamours aftir him / Neurtheles the kyng knoweth wel / that ye be not alle in this defaulte. but ther ben emong you many<sup>5</sup> good men and wyse to whom this folye moche displaysyth / And the outrage of the malefactours 36 whiche haue so angred the kyng and his peple / Therfor the kyng wil not put the defaulte of one partye vpon alle / ne it is not right

who tell him that the king does not think them all guilty,

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* lone.

<sup>3</sup> *Orig.* aud.

<sup>4</sup> *Orig.* hougiers.

<sup>5</sup> *Orig.* mauny.



- that the trewe pylgryms shold bye<sup>1</sup> the trespas of the bad / and  
 he doubteth to take vengeance on you alle / wherfore we counseyle  
 you that ye appese the kyng in this maner / And we promyse  
 4 you in good fayth that ye shal neuer haue damage / Offre, and  
 putte<sup>2</sup> your bodyes / your armes, and alle your thynges in his  
 wylle and in his mercy, without makynge of any appoyntement  
 with hym / for yf ye wil not so doo ye see wel, ye haue not the  
 8 puyssance ayenst hym / for ye be in the myddle of his royaume,  
 And may not escape hym." Godechan and the grete men of his  
 hoost to whom this outrages moche displeyd. and the folyes of  
 the mene peple trusted wel in the wordes that they had brought to  
 12 them, And had grete hope in the hyenes and mercy of the kyng.  
 They called the peple / counseyled<sup>3</sup> and prayde them that they  
 wolde rendre theyr harnoys / and put them in the mercy of the  
 kyng / they wold not doo it, and sayde ther shold neuer come good  
 16 to them to put them under so vntrew peple. Neuertheles, atte  
 laste they dyde by the counseyl and wylle of the wyse men. Theyr  
 harnoys, and alle that they hadde they delyuerd atte commande-  
 ment of the kyng, whan they supposed thereby to haue gotten  
 20 theyr lyf / They ran to the deth / <sup>4</sup>for the hongers assaylled them  
 anon in the mydle of them alle armed / And of this poynt toke  
 none hede / they began to slee<sup>4</sup> and smyte of heedes without de-  
 mandyng who was good ne who was euyl. They slewe so many  
 24 that they waded in the blood vnto the half legge / it was sorowe  
 and pyte to see theyr bodyes of so fayr peple slayne in the stretes,  
 wayes and feeldes / som happed tescap that wente among the  
 other, and retorned in to theyr contre, and tolde this meschyef and  
 28 trayson / by whiche they taught alle the pylgryms that they fonde  
 that they shold not truste to the peple of hongrye /

and that the  
 good ought  
 not to suffer  
 with the bad ;

that they  
 would better  
 throw them-  
 selves on the  
 mercy of the  
 king.

If not, they  
 will all be  
 destroyed.

[<sup>3</sup> If. 29, bk.]

The pilgrims  
 agree to give  
 themselves  
 up to the  
 king, expect-  
 ing mercy ;

but the  
 Hungarians  
 slaughter  
 them all, un-  
 armed, with-  
 out pity.

- How / C.C / M. cristen men a foote and thre. M. a  
 horsbak withoute<sup>5</sup> captayn assembled in this  
 32 pylgremage / and of theyr mayntene /  
 capitulo xxviij<sup>o</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *comparent*, pay for, i. e. to be punished for.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. *pntte*.

<sup>4-4</sup> Fr. "*quar li Hongre saillirent el milieu de cels qui de ce ne se gardoient et les commencerent à oïr.*" Caxton's translation is very obscure here : as can be seen from the French, it was the Crusaders who were off their guard.

<sup>5</sup> Orig. *withonte*.

Another  
company of  
pilgrims  
starts with-  
out a captain, i N a litil tyme aftir this grete occisyon that I haue said to fore  
assembled moche grete peple a foote without capytayne. Neüer-  
theles ther were among them hye men and good knyghtes, But<sup>1</sup> the  
comune peple obeyed them not / ne byleuyd them of nothyng / 4  
There was emonge them Thomas de fere, clerembault of vendueyl /  
Guillem Carpenter. And the counte herman / These peple that  
were a foote dyde many ylles and oultrages by the waye / And ther  
arrose emong them a madnesse and a rage of whiche they coude not 8  
kepe them fro sleynge of alle the Iewes in alle the wayes and townes  
by whiche they passed / They slawe merueyllous grete nombre at  
Coleyne, at Magonce / and in other places (15) / In thise partyes as  
they wente was an erle, a right noble lord named Emycon / whan 12  
he sawe this peple / he put hym self in theyr companye for to goo  
with them in this pylgremage / he chastysed not ne blamed the  
mysruled peple / but entysed them to doo euyl tornes / They passed  
by francone and by baupere so ferre that they drewe in te hongrye, 16  
and cam in to a toun named meeszebors. wel supposed they to  
haue passed in to hongrye withoute ony gaynsayeng / but whan  
they cam to the brygge / it was deffended them and <sup>2</sup>closed. There  
was a fortresse whiche was closed on that one syde with the ryuer 20  
of the dunoe / and on that other syde with the ryuer named lintans /  
The remenaunt was enuyronned with a depe mareys / within the  
fortresse was grete plente of peple wel armed, wherfore it was not  
lyght for to passe that toun by force / ffor the kynge of hongrye 24  
had wel vnderstande of the comyng of this peple / whiche were  
withoute faylle wel / CC / M / on fote. And on horsbak were  
nomoo but thre thousand / And doubted moche that they whan  
they were entred in to his londe, wolde auenge thoccision<sup>3</sup> that was 28  
doon by falsehed and trayson vpon the peple of godechan, ffor the  
rumoure and speche was moche yet of that fowle and vylanous  
fayte thurgh out al the londe / They that sawe that they myght not  
passe in to the londe, prayd them of the fortresse that they wold 32  
suffre them to sende messagers to the kyng of hongrye, for to requyre  
his grace that they myght passe in good peas / and they wold lodge  
them ther whylest in tho places that were ful of pastures to fore the  
paas.

who slay all  
the Jews that  
they meet,

especially in  
Cologne and  
Mayence.

[<sup>2</sup> leaf 30]

They were  
not allowed  
to enter  
Hungary,  
which was  
defended by  
a strong  
fortress on  
the Danube.

There were  
200,000 foot-  
men and 3000  
horsemen in  
this com-  
pany.

They begged  
to be allowed  
to send mes-  
sengers to  
the King of  
Hungary.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* Bnt.

<sup>3</sup> *Fr. occision, slaughter.*

How this peple began to destroye the londe of the  
kyng, by cause he wold not graunte to them leue  
for to passe / ca<sup>o</sup> xxix<sup>o</sup>

- 4 a Lytil whyle taryed they that wente to the kyng / but retorned  
anon / ffor they myght not spede of such thynges as they  
demanded. The kyng answerd that for yefte ne for prayer shold  
they entre in to his londe / whan they of the oost, grete and smale,  
8 herd this / they were moche angry / ffor they had trauaylled and  
despended moche good to come thedyr / <sup>1</sup>And now they had loost  
their waye<sup>1</sup> / They concluded among them that they shold brenne  
and destroye the contreye of the kyng / as moche as was on this  
12 syde the mareys / They sette fyre on townes, and toke the men,  
and destroyed alle the contrey whyles they dyde thus / the peple of  
the fortresse cam out,<sup>2</sup> and with other peple of the kynges to the  
nombre of / vii / C / what<sup>3</sup> of knyghtes and other peple wel  
16 armed, and passed by shippis er euer the pilgrims<sup>4</sup> knewe of it ony  
word, and they sette them for to deffende the pylgryms at a paas  
that they shold not entre. whan the pylgryms sawe this / they ran  
vigorously vpon them in suche wyse, that er they myght saue them  
20 self they were slayn alle / sauf a fewe of them that withdrewen them  
in to the mareys / and hydde them in the reed / whan thyse pyl-  
gryms thus had the victorie / they mounted in moche grete  
hardynes / and said that by force they wold <sup>5</sup>take the fortresse of [<sup>5</sup> fr. 30, bk.]  
24 hongrye / and withoute leue they wold passe thurgh the londe.  
Thenne they began to somonne and recomforte<sup>6</sup> euery man to doo  
wel / <sup>7</sup>They toke poles and made scaffholdes moche grete plente<sup>7</sup> /  
whiche they sette to the walles / And mounted vp couerd with  
28 theyr sheldes and targes, and assaylled it moche hardely many  
pyked with pykoys, and myned the walles with grete force that  
<sup>8</sup>thentre semed al redy for to entree,<sup>8</sup> they that were within were  
nyghe deed for despayre, ffor they defended slowly as men affrayed  
32 in their hertes, ffor they supposed anon to be slayn / and sodenly  
cam a fere and a drede vpon the hertes of the pylgryms that wened

The king  
would not  
allow them to  
pass.

The Crusad-  
ers desolated  
the whole  
country in  
revenge.

They conquer  
the Hunga-  
rians.

The Crusad-  
ers then  
assail the  
fortress,

but are not  
successful.

<sup>1-1</sup> Fr. *or avoient leur voye perdu*. A good example of Caxton's literal translations, the meaning being, "now they had had their journey for nothing." <sup>2</sup> *Orig. ont.* <sup>3</sup> Fr. "*tant chevalier que sergenz*."

<sup>4</sup> *Orig. pligrims.*

<sup>6</sup> Fr. *entrencherforter*.

<sup>7-7</sup> Fr. *Ponz et eschieles firent à moult grant plenté*. They made a great number of scaffolds and ladders. Lat. *pontibus fabricatis*.

<sup>8-8</sup> *entre* should read *entrée* and vice versa.

The Hungarians are much astonished at the unexpected flight of the Crusaders.

The great sins of the Crusaders make them cowardly.

They were obliged to take a round-about way.

This was a lesson to those who came after, to go more peaceably.

anon to be slayn / And neuer was knowen wherfore it was, and anon fyl donn fro the scaffoldes / and taryed not / but fledde sodeynly / and none wyste why they fledde. The hongers whan they sawe this / myght wyth grete payne byleue it, that this was <sup>4</sup>trouthe / ffor they sawe no rayson why. Neuertheles, whan they apperceuyd they descended down / and began to folowe the chaas in <sup>1</sup>suche wyse that them next to fore them were almost alle taken and slayn.<sup>1</sup> In this auenture was fonden none other reson / sauf <sup>8</sup>that the peple was so ful of synne / that they had not deseruyd the loue of our lord / ne thonoure of the world / And therfor theyre synnes<sup>2</sup> acowarded them in suche wyse that they myght not doo ne accomplysse this grete werke / whiche they had nyghe achyeued. <sup>12</sup>The erle Emycon cam agayn in to his contre with grete nombre of peple disconfyted / The other barons of ffraunce that I fore haue named wente in to lombardye, and so in to puylle / There had they knowleche that somme of the grete barons were passed in to duras, <sup>16</sup>and fro thens in to grece / They wente aftir and folowyd them. In this manere were the peple of ffraunce disperpled and of the contrées ther by / The waye of hongrye was moche more strayte and ner yf they myght haue goon it / <sup>3</sup>And had not be destrowbled by <sup>20</sup>theyr folye<sup>3</sup> / But the other that cam aftir peyned them moche for to goo more wysely and more in peas.

How the duc godefroy of boloyne beyng with a grete hoost cam vnto hongrye, sente his messagers to <sup>24</sup>the kyng for to demande passage /

capitulo xxx<sup>o</sup>

Godfrey of Boulogne started the 15th of August, 1096.

[<sup>4</sup> leaf 31]

c Omen was the moneth of anguste, in the yere of thyncarnacion of our lord / M / lxxxxvj / the xv / day of the same moneth, <sup>28</sup>The valyaunt godefroy of buyllon, duc of loraygne, assembled them <sup>4</sup>that shold be his felawes in this iourneye / And cam fro his contrey with so grete apparayllement as it apperteyned to his estate / with hym Bawdwyn his brother / Bawdwyn, the Erle of <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1-1</sup> Fr. "*telement que ceux qui ung pou devant estoient presque mors on prins occioient ores les autres.*" Caxton has not at all understood his French here. He seems to have mistaken *devant* for a preposition, and to have translated the rest of the sentence accordingly.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. synues.

<sup>3-3</sup> Fr. "*si ceux qui avant estoient allés ne l'eussent si destourbé par leur folie,*" if those who had gone in advance had not by their folly closed it.

- henawde / Huge, the Erle of seynt pol / Euerard his sone, which  
 was a moche valyaunt<sup>1</sup> yonge man. Garnyer the Erle, surnamed of  
 grees / Bernard, the Erle of Toul / Pieter his brother / Bauwdwyn  
 4 de bors, cosyn to the duc / Henry dasque / godefroy his brother,  
 And many other good knyghtes with them / Thise men were so  
 good frendes emonge<sup>2</sup> them, and so wyse men, that in no wyse they  
 wold departe that one fro that other / they cam alle hool with their  
 8 thynges in to Osteryche the / xx. daye of septembre vnto a town  
 which is named tayllenborch, there renneth a ryuer named lyntans,  
 and departed thempyre of allemayne fro the royaume of hongrye /  
 whan they were comen theder, they had herd by the waye euyl  
 12 tydynges of the grete mesauentures, that Godechan and his peple  
 had in hongrye / They assembled and toke counseyl emonge them /  
 how they myght passe this contre in peas / They alle acorded that  
 they shold sende messagers & lettres vnto the kyng of hongrye  
 16 for to demande first / by what reason theyr felaws, the pylgryms  
 whiche were theyr bretheren were thus perysshed in his power and  
 his londe / Aftir this they encharged the messagers that they shold  
 entre with hym in to comunicacion,<sup>3</sup> that they myght passe his  
 20 Royamme seurlly and in peas / And that herin they put them in  
 deuoyr and payne / ffor this waye was for them moche shorte / and  
 more couenable yf they myght haue it / than for to passe by see /  
 In this message wente godefroy dasque, brother of henry, by cause  
 24 he had long to fore ben acqueynted with the kynge of hongrye /  
 with hym they sente other wyse men / They wente so<sup>4</sup> fer that  
 they fonde the kyng, And salewed hym in the name of hem that  
 sente them, And delyuerd their lettres of credence / And aftir sayd  
 28 to hym thyse wordes.

They arrived  
in Austria  
the 20th of  
September.

They sent  
messengers  
to the King  
of Hungary.

Godfrey  
d'Asque had  
charge of the  
embassy.

They saluted  
the king and  
delivered  
their mes-  
sage.

How the messagers of the duc godefroy declared their  
 message vnto the kyng of hongrye / And ther  
 vpon his answeere / ca. xxxj.

- 32 "t He wyse man & noble Godefroy, Duc of lorayne, And the  
 other prynces that with hym come in pylgremage / haue sente  
 vs now vnto you, And by you wolde knowe by what occasion the  
 other pylgryms, whom they helde for felaws and bretheren / haue  
 36 so cruelly be slayn and smeton in pieces in your power / Wel they

They asked  
the king why  
he had slair  
their fellow-  
pilgrims.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* valyaaut.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* enouge.

<sup>3</sup> *Orig.* coicacion.

<sup>4</sup> *Orig.* fo.

knowe and sende you<sup>1</sup> worde that they haue ben so slayn, ffor  
 [? If. 31, bk.] <sup>2</sup>they haue fonden many of them that ben escaped / Moche they  
 They marvel that good Christians could so destroy those who had left their homes to enhance the faith of Christ.  
 They wish to know if it were the fault of the pilgrims.  
 meruaylle how ye and your peple, which ben cristen as ye saye /  
 haue thus destroyed the good companye, whiche for to enhauyse the  
 fayth of Ihesu Crist ben departed out of theyr contre / in suche  
 wyse that the most mortal enemyes that they haue, had not don  
 werse / They desire moche to knowe yf it were by the defaulte of  
 the pylgryms; ffor yf ye haue doon it by Iustyce, or in deffendyng  
 you and youre londes / or other wyse that they wold enforce and  
 take ony thyng away yf it were so / The duc and his felaws wold  
 take it more lightly / But yf it be doo without their trespass, or for  
 hate that ye had to them / and thus muredred them, they that sente  
 vs hether, lete you wete by vs that they haue lefte theyr owne  
 countreyes for tauenge the wronges and the oultrages that haue ben  
 don to the peple of oure lord / And yf they finde that ye haue so  
 doo / they be not in wylle to passe ferther, tyl they haue to theyr  
 power auenged the deth of the pylgryms of our lord." And herwith  
 godefroy, that accounted to the kyng, made an ende of his wordes.

The king, surrounded by his barons, answers:  
 "It pleaseth me, Godfrey, that thou art come, and I am glad to have you hear my excuse."

The kyng was in his palays, where he had grete plente of  
 barons of his Royamme and of other peple, thenne answerd and  
 sayde: "Godefroy, it plesyth me moche that ye be come in to this  
 contrey for to speke to me / It is a moche good thyng for me for  
 two causes / that one is that ye be of myn acqueyntaunce and my  
 frende longe syth / And we shal afferme and renewe our loues and  
 our acqueyntaunces in this youre comyng. That other cause is that  
 I knowe you to be a man wyse, resonable, & of good wille / and  
 am moche ioyous of this that ye shal here my excusacion / trouthe  
 it is that we haue the name of the cristiente / it were & shold be  
 moche fayr to vs yf we had the werkes / But<sup>3</sup> they that ben passed  
 tofore with peter theremyte and with godechan, haue not the  
 werkes of pylgryms ne of cristen men / ffor we receyuyd peter  
 theremyte & his peple in oure londes and in our<sup>4</sup> townes with  
 grete debonayrte, And departed with them oure vytaylles: and  
 other thynges we gaf to them / But they, lyke as the serpent that  
 prycketh or styngeth hym that kepeth hym warme in his bosomme /  
 hath guerdonned & rewarded vs for our good dedes / for in  
 thende of the royaume of hongrye / whan they ought to thanke vs  
 and rendre graces to god & to theyr frendes / They toke by force  
 one of oure best castellis / And put to deth alle that were therein,

We received Peter and his men kindly.

They repaid us with ingratitude.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig. you.*

<sup>3</sup> *Orig. Bnt.*

<sup>4</sup> *Orig. onr.*

- and caryed the beestys with them / they toke alle the maydens of  
the town lyke rowters & theues. The company of godechan cam  
after them / they abode not <sup>1</sup>to forfaytte til the ende of our [1 leaf 32]  
4 Royamme / but assone as they were entred and passed the yates of The company  
of Godechan  
did even  
worse.  
hongrye, they began to make alle thoultrages they myghte / They  
brente the townes, slewe the men / enforced the wymmen / and  
bare away alle thynges / they dyde so moche, that for theyr  
8 trespasses were wel worthy to haue hate of god & of the world /  
we that be here in the place & in the dygnyte / by whiche we  
ought to kepe the peple / as long as it shal please god / and our  
barons that haue sworn the feaulte of the Royalme, myght not wel  
12 endure<sup>2</sup> thus to destroye our peple and our contrey, but haue put  
to the hand by force in vs defendyng / The thyrd companye cam  
also with folke a foote / we doubted the noyse and debate in suche The third  
company we  
would not  
allow to enter  
our land."  
16 emonge vs / Our lord, that Ingeth alle the wordes & knoweth alle  
thyng, wote wel that it is thus, and that I haue lyed to you no  
worde. Now we praye you that ye excuse vs oueraal where ye shal  
here speke of it" / whan he had said this, he sente the messagers  
20 in to theyr Innes / where they had moche grete honour and grete  
feste / The kyng toke counseyl of his barons / and ordeyned his  
owne messagers, whiche he sente to the duc godefroy and<sup>3</sup> to the The king sent  
return mes-  
sengers to  
Duke God-  
frey,  
prynces that cam. He had spoken ynowgh to godefroy dasque /  
24 and made hym grete chere / and gaf to hym and his felawshippe  
yeftes / And<sup>4</sup> aftir toke leue of him and<sup>5</sup> retorned al to gydre with  
the messagers / whan they were comen to fore the duc godefroy /  
one of them sayd the message in this manere: "The kyng of  
28 hongrye saleweth you, my lordes / And sendeth yow worde that he  
knoweth certaynly by renomme that ye be a man of moche hye  
lygnage, puyssaunt<sup>6</sup> of peple, wyse and trewe of herte, prudent and  
valyaunt of body / in suche wyse that your prouesse is born in to  
32 many londes / ffor thyse thynges our lord the kyng, whiche neuer  
sawe yow, preyseth and loueth yow moche in his herte / And hath  
moche grete desire to doo you honoure / These pylgryms that ben begging God-  
frey and his  
valiant com-  
panions to  
visit him.  
with you / And that haue enterprysed so hye a pylgremage he  
36 preyseth moche / and desyareth moche to see them, and to worshippe,  
and to haue theyr acqueyntaunce: ffor he holdeth hym self ewrous  
and gracious that our lord hath sette hym in such a poynt, that he

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* eudure.<sup>3</sup> *Orig.* aud.<sup>4</sup> *Orig.* Aud.<sup>5</sup> *Orig.* aud.<sup>6</sup> *Orig.* pnyssaunt.

may doo seruyse and bounte to one so valyaunt<sup>1</sup> a man. Therfore vnto you, fayr lord, and to the hye men of your companye he prayeth, requyreth and demandeth for a synguler<sup>2</sup> yefte, that it wold plese you<sup>3</sup> to come see hym at one his castel named Ciperon / 4 ffor he desireth moche to speke to you at leyser / and doo that ye wille demaunde."

He begs them to come to his castle of Ciperon.

\* If. 32, bk.] <sup>4</sup>How the said kyng sente for to fetch the duc godefroye / And how he wente / and of the 8 deuyses that they had to gydre / cap<sup>o</sup> xxxij

w Han the duc and his barons had herd the messenger thus speke, he drewe them a parte and toke counseyl / They acorde<sup>d</sup> wel that the duc shold goo. he sente for suche companye as he wold<sup>12</sup> haue / And wente forth with thre honderd horse, withoute moo, on his way / hit was not long but he cam to aperon / he passed the brygge / and fonde the kyng, whiche made to hym grete ioye and moche honour. And long they spak to gydre / And the kyng 16 excused hym of the deth of the pylgryms / vnto the duc / lyke as he had doon to the messagers / At thende the kyng cam so to poynt that they were appeased goodly / The kyng acorde to hym the passage thurgh his royaume / yf he wold sette hym suche hoostages 20 as he shold chese for to kepe the pees / Alle this was graunted / And he demanded in hostage Bawdwyne, brother of the sayd duc, his wyf and her maygne / they were delyuerd to hym gladly. Thus entred they with alle theyr peple in to the lond of hongrye / The 24 kyng helde to them wel his couenauntes / ffor he dyde doo crye in alle the townes as they shold passe / and also thereby that they shold selle to them vytaylles good cheep / and<sup>5</sup> that noman shold meue to them no debate / The duc commanded also and made to be 28 cryed, that none on payne of his lyf were so hardy to take on thyng fro the lond ne fro no man / ne for to doo no wronge, but holde them for felawes and bretheren / Thus it happed that they passed alle hongrye without any maner stryf or noyse. The kyng 32 rode alwey nyghe to thooste, on the lyfte syde / ledyng his hostages with hym, redy for tappese yf any noyse arroos / Atte laste they cam to malleuylle, wherof ye haue herd to fore, whiche stondest on the ryuer of the dunoe / There they taryed tyl alle the hoost were 36

The duke goes with 300 horsemen to visit the king.

The king accords them safe passage through his land.

But demands Baldwin and his wife as hostages.

They arrive safely at Malleville, on the Danube.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* valyaunt      <sup>2</sup> *Orig.* singuler : Fr. *singulier don*, as a special favor.

<sup>3</sup> *Orig.* yon.      <sup>5</sup> *Orig.* aud.



passed by shippes / wherof were but fewe / But to fore he had don  
 sette ouer / a thousand men wel armed for to kepe the arryuyng on  
 that other syde. whan the hoost of the comyn peple were passed,  
 4 the kyng cam to the duc and to the barons, and brought the  
 hostages <sup>1</sup>that were delyuerd to hym <sup>1</sup> / he made to them moche  
 ioye and honour at departyng, <sup>2</sup>and gaf to euerych grete yettes and  
 ryche. Aftir he toke leue, and retorned home ageyn / The duc  
 8 and the barons passed ouer with their peple / and cam to belle-  
 graue, a cyte of bougrye, of whiche we haue spoken to fore / And  
 there they lodged <sup>3</sup>them / After they passed thurgh the wodes / til  
 they cam to the cyte of nyz, and after to stralyce /

When the  
 pilgrims had  
 ail crossed  
 the river,  
 the king re-  
 turned their  
 hostages.

[<sup>3</sup> leaf 88]

12 How the duc godeffroye sente his messagers to them-  
 perour of constantinoble, to thende that he shold  
 delyuer huon le mayne and other, that he helde  
 in prison. cap. xxxiiij.

16 h Ere may be knowen the euyl disposicion and deceyte of the  
 grekes / ffor syth themperours latyns faylled in constanty-  
 nople / and thempyre cam vnto the grekes / of whom the fyrst was  
 nycofores. <sup>4</sup>Anon the barbaryns that were aboute them, the blacz  
 20 and the comans, <sup>5</sup>they of bougrye, <sup>6</sup>whiche ben toward the eest, <sup>6</sup>  
 supprised and toke thyse londes that were so good, plentyuous /  
 and delytable / And conquerd alle fro the dunoe vnto constanty-  
 nople, And on that other parte vnto the see Adryane / <sup>7</sup>There is  
 24 a cyte in lombardy, nygh to the londe of the marquys, <sup>8</sup>named  
 Adre / & is right a litil cyte / But by cause it is nyghe the see of  
 venyse and of Ancone, hath this see the name of the see Adryane  
 in wrytyng. <sup>7</sup>This see goth right nygh constantynoble / vnto a /  
 28 xxx / myle. This euyl peple of thempyre of constantynoble had  
 wel wonne <sup>9</sup>vpon the grekes / xxx. journeyes of lengthe, And x of

The Blacz,  
 Comans and  
 Bulgarians  
 had con-  
 quered all  
 the land,  
 from the  
 Danube to  
 Constanti-  
 nople.

There is a  
 city in Lom-  
 bardy called  
 Adre.

From this  
 city the Adri-  
 atic sea takes  
 its name.

<sup>1-1</sup> Fr. *quil leur rendit*. Caxton has here exactly reversed the meaning of his French text.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. departyng.

<sup>4</sup> Lat. *Nycephorus*.

<sup>5</sup> These two nations inserted by the French translators. They are not in the Latin original.

<sup>6-6</sup> Fr. *qui leur sont devers bise*,—towards the North; Lat. *septentrionalis*.

<sup>7-7</sup> This whole sentence is an insertion by a French translator.

<sup>8</sup> Caxton has spoiled the sense by his omission here. The French text gives "*pres de la terre le Marquis d'Este, qui a non Adre*," viz. near the land of the Marquis of Este, which is called Adre.

<sup>9</sup> Orig. wonue.

The chief  
city of Epirus  
is Duras.

In this land  
are also Arcadia,  
Thessaly,  
and Macedonia.

The Emperor  
Basilius re-  
conquered  
these coun-  
tries.

The duke  
passed  
through  
Moesia.

At Asinople  
they heard  
that the Gre-  
cian Emperor  
had impris-  
oned Hugh  
the Great.

brede / ffor aboute this see that I haue spoken of, is <sup>1</sup>a countre  
named Epyre.<sup>1</sup> The chyef cyte is named duras / of whiche pyrrus  
was somtyme kynge. <sup>2</sup>An other is named Mayene<sup>2</sup> / that is in the  
myddle of the londe<sup>3</sup> / where ben also noble Cytees / Nyz and <sup>4</sup>  
stralyce / In this londe was Archade / Thessale / and machedone /  
<sup>4</sup>Of thyse thre landes euerych was called Trace<sup>4</sup> / And alle thise  
were conquerd vpon the grekes / But afterward ther was an  
Emperour named Basilie recouerd thise londes, <sup>5</sup>And brought the 8  
blacz and the bougres longe afore this tyme / in suche wyse that  
the two danemarches were comen agayn to his power<sup>5</sup> / but yet  
wold not the grekes suffre to repayre agayn the townes / ne laboure  
the londes, which shold be right good, to thende that none shold 12  
enhabyte there, By cause they holde it for a strengthe / And that  
nothyng shold be fonde therin / Also in espyre, whiche extendeth  
fro duras vnto a mount named bagulars / And endureth foure  
iourneyes : by that passed the other barons / But the Duc and his 16  
companye passed by danemarche la Mayen / whiche is named  
otherwyse Mese / They cam by a destrayte, whiche is named the  
Cloystre of seynt Basyle / And syth they descended in to a playne /  
Where they fonde grete <sup>6</sup>plente of vytaylle and of pastures / And 20  
cam vnto Asine pol, whiche is a moche fayr cyte and good / There  
herk they saye and trouthe it was / that themperour of constanty-  
noble had enprisonned huon le mayne / broder of the kynge of  
ffraunce, and many other barons that cam with hym ; ffor thise 24  
noble men were hasty, and cam by lombardye in to puylle / ffor  
thens they passed to duras / And sojourned for tabyde the other  
barons / whiche ought to come in to tho partyes / ne they supposed  
to haue doubted ony thyng in the londe of the grekes, that were 28  
cristen as they were / But the baylly of duras toke alle the moost

<sup>1-1</sup> Fr. *a deux terres, de quoi chascune a non Epire. Lat. super Adriaticum enim mare erat utraque Epirus, cujus alterius metropolis est Durachium.*

<sup>2-2</sup> Fr. *"en la terre ou ces pelerins passoient avoit deux Danemarches. L'une avoit non de Ripe (Lat. Dacia Ripensis) qui est à senestre sur la rive de la Dunoe l'autre est nommé la Maienne."* Caxton has ruined the sense here by his omissions. <sup>3</sup> Lat. *"Dacia mediterranea."*

<sup>4-4</sup> Fr. *"et trois terres dont chescun avoit non Trace,"* Caxton's translation again faulty.

<sup>5-5</sup> A *"il chaca les Blas et les Bougres bien loin si que les Danemarches li remestrent."* The text B that Caxton followed gives *achata*, which is evidently a corruption of *chaça*, and the *"brought"* may be a misreading for *"bought."* The Lat. gives *"eodem Bulgarorum subjugato populo per Basiliū."*

grete barons, and sente them in yrons to themperour of Constantynoble to doo his wyll with them / he helde them in prison, and abode the comyng of the other barons / by cause yf they cam with grete power he wolde delyuer them for theyr loue / and yf they cam not with grete myght he thought not lightly to lete them passe. whan the duc godefroye and the other barons herd tydynges of this prisonment / he toke good messagers, and sente them with theyr 8 lettres to themperour. And they prayde and warned hym that he shold sende to them without delaye this hye and noble man huon le mayne and alle his companye / ffor they helde hym for lordes, bretheren and felaws of this pylgremage. And herin he had don 12 more his wyll and his force than right / whan he had reteyned one so gentil and hye prynce.

The bailiff of Duras sent all the great barons, who were with him, in yrons to Constantynoble.

Godfrey sent to the Emperor and warned him to release these noble men.

How the duc godefroye constreyned themperour by force to rendre and delyuere his prisonners /

16 capitulo xxxiiij.

i N this tyme was Emperour a greke, moche fals and ful of tricherye, and was named alexes, and to his surname Conius / he was moche acqueynted and pryue with that other Emperour 20 Nychofores bothoniat, in suche wyse that he made hym his steward / And was the grettest man of the londe sauf themperour. He by his malyce purchaced euyl and harme ayenst his lorde, by thassent of grete peple that he helde aboute hym, and toke hym and helde 24 hym in his prison vj yere tofore that our pilgryms cam theder / The messagers of the Duc and the other barons demanded of this Emperoure Huon le Mayne, lyke as they were commaunded, and the other prysonners / in lyke wyse / Themperour answerde shortly 28 that he wold not delyuere them / They retourned<sup>2</sup> in to the hoost, and said to them thansuer of themperour. <sup>3</sup>whan the duc & the other barons herd this, they were moche wroth, And concluded among them by theyr counseyl / that they wold playnly make 32 warre ayenst hym / that dyde so grete outrage to holde so hye a prynce in prison, ne wolde not answere by mesure ne reason / They habandonned to the hooste to take in that contre where they were in, Alle that they coude fynde, And brente alle the townes / Thus 36 abode they in thise partyes, and destroyed alle the contre / And dyde moche grete damage and harme : and grete plente of proyes

Alexius the Greek Emperour was false and full of trickery.

He sent word to Godfrey that he wold not release the barons.

[<sup>3</sup> leaf 34]

The duke was verry angry and commenced to ravage the Emperor's country.

<sup>1</sup> Orig. aud.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. retourned.

The Emperor  
then decided  
to release  
Hugh the  
Great, and  
the other  
prisoners.

and other gaynes cam in to the hoost of the barons / Themperour  
sente vnto the duc and vnto the other barons / that they shold<sup>1</sup> doo  
holde theyr peple in pees, And<sup>2</sup> that he wold<sup>3</sup> delyuere huon<sup>1</sup> le<sup>2</sup>  
mayne and the other prisonners. They agreed<sup>4</sup> and acordid gladly, 4  
And<sup>5</sup> cam with alle theyr bataylles renged<sup>6</sup> and in ordenaunce to fore  
constantynoble, as for tassiege the toun. Anon yssued<sup>7</sup> oute huon  
the mayne, doene dancelle<sup>8</sup> / Guyllame charpentier, Clarembault  
de venduel / And entred in to the pauyllon of the Duc / And<sup>9</sup> 8  
thanked<sup>10</sup> hym moche and<sup>11</sup> alle the other of theyr delyueraunce /  
And the duc and the hooste receyued<sup>12</sup> them with moche grete ioye /  
ffor they had<sup>13</sup> moche grete angre and grete despyte of that was don  
to them. 12

The grete despyte that themperour toke, that duc  
godeffroy reffused to goo in to constantinoble<sup>4</sup>  
vnto hym. cap<sup>o</sup>. xxxv

The Duke re-  
fuses to visit  
the Emperor.

In conse-  
quence the  
Emperor for-  
bade any one  
to sell vic-  
tuals to the  
pilgrims.  
So the pil-  
grims forage  
for them-  
selves.

w Hyles they spak thus to gydre, cam the messagers fro them- 16  
perour to the duc, And<sup>1</sup> requyred<sup>2</sup> them in theyr lordes name  
that he wold<sup>3</sup> entre with a fewe of his companye in to the toun /  
And<sup>4</sup> come speke with themperour / The duc had<sup>5</sup> counseyl herupon,  
and answerd<sup>6</sup> 5 / that he wold not yet come in to the toune. whan 20  
themperour herd this, he had therof moche grete despyte, And  
deffended oueral that ther shold nomore vytaylle be sold to them,  
ne none other thynges. The noble men sawe this, and sente out  
on fouragyng ouer alle the countrey. And they brought in vytaylle 24  
grete plente, in suche wyse that they had ynowgh, poure and ryche.  
Themperour sawe that this contre shold be destroyed / and doubted<sup>7</sup>  
that they wold yet doo werse / therfor he commanded<sup>8</sup> to his  
marcheautes that they shold goo in to the hooste and selle to them 28  
suche thynges as they neded<sup>9</sup>. The daye of Cristemasse or of the  
Natyuite of oure Lord approched<sup>10</sup> / Therefore the Duc and the  
Barons dyde do crye in the hooste / that no man shold forfaytte ne  
trespace in tho foure dayes / The mene whyle cam the 6 messagers 32  
of themperour, that spak to the barons moche fayr, that they wold<sup>11</sup>  
passe the brygge and come on the syde of the palays whiche was

[<sup>6</sup> If. 34, bk.]

The Emperor  
sends mes-  
sengers again  
to the Duke.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* hnon.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* te.

<sup>3</sup> Caxton's French text gives *Doene Dancelle*, which he follows. This is, however, a corruption of *Dreue de Neele*, Lat. *Drogo de Neela*.

<sup>4</sup> *Orig.* constatinoble.

<sup>5</sup> *Orig.* auswerd.

named blaquerne, ffor there myght alle the hooste lodge in grete howses whiche were nygh the braas of seynt george. And alle this said they for tricherye and deceyte. Neuertheles<sup>1</sup> our peple byleuyd  
 4 them lyghtly / ffor the wynter was moche cold and sharpe of raynes an<sup>d</sup> snowes, in suche wyse that the pauyllons roted, and ne myght not hold out the water of the rayne / the horses and poure peple myght not endure<sup>2</sup> it. herof toke themperour his occasion for to  
 8 sende in to the hoost / and that they shold passe toward the town : and semed that he had grete pyte on them / but his entencion was alle other wyse / ffor he dyde this to thende that he shold enclose them in a place more strait, that they shold not renne in to the  
 12 contre, And that he myght haue the gretter power to constrayne them therein.

The winter was very cold and rainy, so that the army was very uncomfortable in tents.

So they accepted the Emperor's invitation and came into the town.

Of the descripcion of constantinoble / And of many countrees and londes ther aboute.

16 capitulo xxxvj<sup>o</sup>.

f Or to vnderstonde how the barons were enclosed by the desloyaulte of themperour / it is to wete how the cyte of constantinoble stondesth / the see whiche is in venyse cometh nygh  
 20 vnto / xxx myle of constantinoble / ffor thens departeth an arme like a fresshe water, And estendeth it toward<sup>3</sup> the eest, in lengthe / ij / C / xxx / myle / it is not lyke<sup>4</sup> euen / ffor in somme place it is but a myle broode, And in another it is wel xxx / of brede  
 24 or more / after the places that it renneth in. And it renneth bytwene thyse two Auncyent cytees, Sexton and Abydon, of whiche that one is in asye / And that other in europe / <sup>5</sup> ffor the arme is deuyded fro thyse two londes ; Constantinoble is in europe : That  
 28 other parte is nycene, whiche is in asye / This braas or arme, thus as it is moost brode toward the see / lyke a roode where the porte is / it is sayde that it is mooste paysible / And easier than the see is. nyghe therto stondesth constantinoble, whiche is lyke a tryangle.  
 32 The first syde is bytwene the porte and this arme / Ther standeth a chirche of seynt george / of whiche that see is named the braas of

How the city of Constantinoble is situated.

The arm of the sea runneth between Sestos and Abydos.

It also divides Constantinoble from Nicæa.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* Neuertheles.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* endure.

<sup>3</sup> *Fr.* vers midi.

<sup>4</sup> *Fr.* unie, "lyke even" (in breadth).

<sup>5-6</sup> Caxton has mistranslated this sentence by reading *divise* as a past participle instead of a substantive. *Fr.* car le bras est devise de ces deux terres, viz. for this arm (i. e. the Hellespont) is the division of these two countries.

The second side of the wall extends from the church of St. George to the Golden Gate.

[leaf 35]

The Emperor sent often for the Duke to come and see him.

The Duke would not go.

So the Emperor sent his archers, who slew many of the pilgrims.

seynt george / And this endureth vnto the new palays of blacquerne, after the porte / That other pan<sup>1</sup> of the walle dureth fro this chirche of seynt george vnto the porte<sup>2</sup> aire / The thyrd pan fro that yate vnto the palays of Blacquerne / The towne is moche wel<sup>4</sup> closed<sup>3</sup> toward<sup>3</sup> the<sup>3</sup> champayne of walles, of dyches, of towres, and of barbicans / Atte porte descendeth a fressh water rennyng / whiche is lytil in the somer / but in wynter it becometh moche grete for the rayne / This water hath a brygge, on whiche oure men<sup>8</sup> passed<sup>4</sup> ouer / whiche is enclosit<sup>4</sup> bytwene the grete see and the braas / behynde the yate / where they lodged<sup>4</sup> for tabyde that comyng of other barons. Themperour<sup>5</sup> sente ofte his messagers to the duc, And sente for hym to come and speke with hym. The<sup>12</sup> duc doubte<sup>4</sup> moche his tricherye, and wold<sup>4</sup> not goo / But to thende that he toke it not for euyl / he sente to hym thre noble men / that is to wyte, Conon de montagu / Henry dasque / and bawdwyn<sup>6</sup> de bort, and excused hym by them / that the barons that were with<sup>16</sup> hym wold<sup>4</sup> not counseyle hym to goo and speke with hym tyl that the other barons were comen. Themperour was moche / wroth, and deffended agayn that no vytaylles sold be shold<sup>4</sup> to the hoost. And dyde yet werse / ffor he sente on a daye erly in the mornynge<sup>20</sup> shippes al ful of archers, that cam sodenly by the braas right there as the duc was lodged / they shotte grete plente of arowes, in suche wyse that they slewe moche peple that was goon on<sup>7</sup> the see syde, And many they hurte<sup>4</sup> by the dores and wyndowes / 24

How our peple brente theyr lodgys and toke theyr harnoys / And of an assault that the grekes made on them / ca. xxxviij.

w Han the Duc and the other barons herd<sup>4</sup> this / by comyn coun-<sup>28</sup> seyl / they sente the brother of the duc<sup>8</sup> for to take the brigge / to thende that they of the toun shold<sup>4</sup> not sease né take it / They

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *pan*, piece, strip.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *as portes oires*, to the golden gates. Lat. *usque ad auream portam*.

<sup>4-4</sup> The French here misunderstood by Caxton, "*Si queils furent enclos entre la grant mer et le bras, selonc le port ou ilz estoient logiez, en maisons qui la estoient faictes*." they (i. e. our men) and not the bridge, were inclosed between the sea and the arm. They were not lodged "behind the gate," but along the harbour. Caxton has mistaken *port*, harbour, for *porte*, gate.

<sup>5</sup> Orig. Themperonr.

<sup>6</sup> Fr. *Baudouin de Borc*, or *Borgh*, Lat. *de Borgo*.

<sup>7</sup> Fr. *sur mer*.

<sup>8</sup> Orig. dnc.

toke / v / honderd men<sup>1</sup> what knyghtes as other wel armed, and cam fyrst to the brygge and kepte it, and sawe that alle the cyte was meued and armed for to come on them. Our men were thenne  
 4 adcerteyned that they of the towne were theyr enemyes. And sette fyrer in the howses<sup>2</sup> were they lodged in, and in other by whiche they doubte<sup>3</sup> and fered<sup>4</sup> wel a / vj / thousand or seuen in suche wyse that som of Emperours owne howses were brente<sup>5</sup> / After they  
 8 dyde do sowne theyr tompettes<sup>6</sup> / And wente them alle in ordenaunce<sup>7</sup> after the Duc toward the brygge. ffor they doubte<sup>8</sup> moche that they of the towne wolde come theder for to defende them the paas / but,<sup>9</sup> as I haue sayd, bawdwyyn, brother of the duc, had thenne  
 12 goten it vpon the grekes, whom he had ouerthrowen and chased ryght ferre. The hoost and alle the cariage<sup>10</sup> passed ouer / alle in to the contrey. And arrested there alle in ordenaunce in a fayr playn, moche fyers and courageous, by the chirche of seynt cosme  
 16 and damyan / which now is named the palays of buymont & the palays of blacquerne / whan it was come nygh the euenty<sup>11</sup> there were many slayn of them of the town / & of the other, but not so many / The grekes myght no lenger sufere, but the pylgryms dis-  
 20 comfyt<sup>12</sup> them & chassee<sup>13</sup> them, sleyn<sup>14</sup> and hewyn<sup>15</sup> alle them that they myght arreche, in suche wyse that they droof them in to the toun by force. Thenne retourned they agayne as they that had wonne the felde / And lodged in the playne / The grekes were  
 24 moche swollen and angry of that they had lost so many men and had ben so euyl demened. And<sup>16</sup> began to ordeyne thurgh the town how they myght yssue oute with moche more affraye and stronger than they had. But the nyght cam<sup>17</sup> that destourne<sup>18</sup> their  
 28 counseyl.<sup>19</sup> This was an euident thyng, that themperour had don the barons passe the brygge by tricherye and vntrouthe for to haue closed them as within barryers.

The Duke sent 500 men to seize the bridge.

The pilgrims burned many of the houses in which they were lodged.

[<sup>10</sup> If. 35, bk.]  
 The army then passed over the bridge into the country.

Then they discomfited and slew many of the Greeks.

It was evident that the Emperor had behaved very treacherously.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. "*Tant chevalier comme autres.*"

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *ou*, where.

<sup>3-5</sup> Caxton's obscurity is here owing to a corrupt French text.—The text given in the *Historians Occidentaux* has the correct reading: "*Et es autres delez qui duroient bien milles on sept, si que aucuns des mesons i firent arses, qui estoient l'empeereor,*"—i. e. they burned the houses in which they were lodged, which occupied six or seven miles of ground; and some which belonged to the emperor were burnt also.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. *trompettes*.

<sup>5</sup> Orig. ordenanuce.

<sup>6</sup> Orig. donbted.

<sup>7</sup> Orig. bnt.

<sup>9</sup> Orig. Aud.

<sup>10</sup> Fr. "*qui les destourna de ce conseil.*"

How after this our<sup>1</sup> peple began to destroye the contre.  
 And of a message of buymont vnto duc gode-  
 froye. And the answer of the duc vpon the  
 same. capitulo xxxviii<sup>o</sup> 4

Every man of a  
 both foot and  
 horse was  
 commanded  
 to arm him-  
 self.

Part of them  
 went for-  
 aging, and  
 brought back  
 corn, wine,  
 and other  
 victuals.

Bohemond  
 sent messen-  
 gers to God-  
 frey.

[2 leaf 36]

Telling him  
 to be on his  
 guard against  
 the malice of  
 the Greeks,  
 and the  
 treachery of  
 the Emperour.

Bohemond  
 offers to come  
 and aid God-  
 frey.

S sone as thoost apperceyued<sup>d</sup> on the morn the day / it was  
 cryed that euery man on payne of deth shold<sup>d</sup> arme hym / on  
 horsbak and on fote / The Captayns of som bataylle were ordeyned  
 for to lede the peple in fourage. The other sette them in ordyn- 8  
 aunce for to kepe their lodgys / ffor wel they apperceyued<sup>d</sup> certainlynly  
 that themperour pourchassed for them alle the euyl that he myght,  
 They that wente for vytaylle withdrewre them wel / lx / myle /  
 They pyllled al aboute them alle the townes that they fonde / And<sup>d</sup> 12  
 brought Corn, Wyn, Beestys, and<sup>d</sup> other Rychesses / Wherof the  
 londe was full that vnnethe myght they conduyte alle / And<sup>d</sup> they  
 were oute sex dayes / And<sup>d</sup> aftir retornned<sup>d</sup> in to the hooste with alle  
 this merueillous gayne / whyles as they conteyned<sup>d</sup> thus, Messagers 16  
 cam fro Buymont to fore the Duc / And<sup>d</sup> salewed<sup>d</sup> hym in theyr  
 Lordes name / And<sup>d</sup> delyuerd to hym lettres whiche saide in this  
 manere / He salewed in his lettres the duc as he ought to salewe  
 suche a man / Aftir<sup>2</sup> they sayde / “knowe ye, sire, that ye haue to 20  
 doo with a moche vntrewe man / whiche alwey sette his herte and<sup>d</sup>  
 purpoos to deceyue them that truste in hym / Specially he hateth the  
 Latyns to the deth. And doth his power in alle maners, that he  
 can to doo euyl to our<sup>1</sup> peple. And yf ye haue not yet apper- 24  
 ceyued<sup>d</sup> it / ye shal knowe al by tyme as I saye to you / ffor I knowe  
 wel the malyce of the grekes / And<sup>d</sup> also the trycherye of them-  
 perour / Therfor I pray you / that ye withdrawe you fro constan-  
 tinoble / And retorne to ward the playnes of andrenoble or of 28  
 sympole / and there ye may wyntre you where as is grete plente of  
 alle goodes / And<sup>d</sup> I myself, yf it please god<sup>d</sup>, assone as the sprynge  
 of the yere cometh, shal come and<sup>d</sup> hast to meue, And<sup>d</sup> shal assem-  
 ble with you / And<sup>d</sup> shal helpe you / as my lord<sup>d</sup> and frende, ayenst 32  
 the vntrew prynce that entendeth to doo euyll with alle his power  
 vnto cristiente” / whan the duc had<sup>d</sup> herd thyse lettres, by the counseyl  
 of his barons He sente to hym ageyn other lettres that after the  
 salewyng spak thus / “we thanke you gretely, And<sup>d</sup> so doo the other 36  
 prynces that ben with vs, of the loue and trouthe that ye haue

<sup>1</sup> Orig. onr.



sente vs / And knowe ye certaynly that <sup>1</sup>we haue founden on the prynce and on the peple of grekes / lyke as ye wene wel to knowe <sup>1</sup> / we knowe wel that ye saye it of wysdome and of trouthe / <sup>2</sup>But  
 4 we doubte moche the armes that we toke in our contrey for to warre on the hethen men / shold retorne and conuerte ayenst them that bere the name of cristiante as we our self doo <sup>2</sup> / we attende and desyre moch your comyng / Thenne, yf god will, whan ye shal be  
 8 comen we shal doo take you to our counseyl."

Godfrey replied that they had already found out that what he said was true.

How themperour appesed the duc godefroye and sente  
 for hym, and of the honour that he dyde to hym.  
 capitulo / xxxix.

12 t Hemperour was moche anguyssous emong his pryue counseyl, & thought how he might appese to hym the duc & his  
 peple by cause he destroyed his contre / of which he herd the clamours right grete and ofte / And by cause that he knewe that  
 16 the messagers of buymont were come / and had brought tidynges / that he wold hastely come, he sente ageyn his messagers to the duc / & prayd hym that he wold come speke to hym, & yf he  
 doubted of ony thyng he wold sende <sup>3</sup>Iohan his sone in hostage in  
 20 to the hoost / This message plesyd moche to the barons whan they herde it / and they sente conon de montagu <sup>4</sup> / & bawdwyn de borgh for to receyue the hostage / they receyued hym and <sup>5</sup>delyuerd <sup>6</sup>  
 to Bawdwyn brother of the Duc, <sup>7</sup>whiche abode / for to Reule and  
 24 gouerne the hoost and to kepe the hostage / The duc and other barons wente in to Constantynople to fore themperour which had  
 moche desyred them / The grekes made to them grete Ioye merueyllously what someuer they thoughte. <sup>8</sup> Themperour kyssed them  
 28 alle. And demanded of euerych his name / for to honoure euerych by hym self / as he that wel coude do it. they were wel beholden  
 of alle them of the palays / At last themperour <sup>9</sup>satte in his mageste, and the barons aboute hym, And sayde to the duc thyse wordes /  
 32 " we haue heret saye many tymes in this londe, that thou art of hyghe

The Emperor was now very anxious to appease the Duke and his men.

He offers to send the Crusaders his son John as a hostage for better behaviour in the future.

(7 ff. 36, bk. 3)

The Duke and other barons go to Constantinople to visit the Emperor.

The Emperor sat in his majesty and addressed the Duke thus :

<sup>1-1</sup> Fr. "*nous avons ja trouvé, et en prince et en peuple, ce que vous en soupçonnez.*"

<sup>2-2</sup> Fr. "*Nous doubtons mout les armes, que nos prêismes en nostre pais pour guerroyer la gent mescreant, torner à ceus qui portent le non de la Crestienté, si com nos fisons.*"

<sup>3</sup> Orig. seude.

<sup>4</sup> Orig. moutagu.

<sup>5</sup> Orig. aud.

<sup>6</sup> Orig. delynerd.

<sup>8</sup> Orig. thoughte.

<sup>9</sup> Orig. themperonr.

"We know  
that thou art  
a good knight  
and true,  
and we praise  
thee and love  
thee in our  
heart."

"We choose  
and avow thee  
for our son,  
and put our  
Empire into  
thy hand."

lygnage / and of moche grete power in thy contre, and a good  
knyght and trewe, in suche wyse that for the fayth of Ihesu criste  
tenhaunce, hast enterprised to warre ayenst the mescreauntes and  
hethen peple / whiche greue the cristen peple merueyllously / for  
alle thyse thynges we prayse the and loue in our herte / And wyll  
honoure the with grettest honour that we may doo / for thou art  
worthy and dygne / It playseth vs and therto accorden our barons /  
that we cheese the & auowe for our sone / And we put our  
Empyre in to thyn hande, that thou kepe it as our sone from henss-  
forth in good estate and in termes of loue"<sup>1</sup> / whan he had seyde  
this / he dyde hym to be clad with the robe of an Emperour / And  
to sytte by hym / And<sup>2</sup> thenne the barons made to hym right grete  
feste & solempnyte aftir the custom of the londe in suche thynges /  
And thus was the pees affermed bytwene the prynces / and also  
bytwene the peple.

Of the yeftes that themperour<sup>3</sup> made to duc godefroye, 16  
to the barons and to the gentilmen of his hoost.

capitulo xl<sup>o</sup>

The Emperour a  
then present-  
ed the Duke  
and his com-  
panions with  
great gifts.

None whan this was don / the tresour of themperour was  
opened & was presented to the duc / and to his felawship / 20  
so grete yeftes and so grete rychesses that it was merueylle to see /  
Ther was grete plente of gold, of syluer, and of precious stones /  
many clothes of sylk ryght ryche: vayssellys of dyuerse facions,  
whiche were merueyllous<sup>4</sup> of facions and of matere / Oure peple  
meruellyd moche of this grete rychesse / Thyse yeftes cessed not at  
the fyrst tyme / but fro the daye of the Epyphanye / vnto thas-  
sencion tyde / themperour gaf to the Duc euery weke as moche as  
two myghty men myght susteyne / of pierrye / of pens of gold, of 28  
copper, and of tyn he gaf to hym ten muyes, <sup>5</sup>euery muye is  
four busshellys.<sup>5</sup> But the duc departed alle thyse thynges vnto  
knygh = <sup>6</sup>tes and alle aboute where he sawe / that it shold be wel  
employed. Whan they had ben with themperour a lytil whyle, 32  
they toke leue & cam agayn in to the hoost / They sente agayn  
Iohan his sone, whom they had holden in hostage moche honour-  
ably / Themperour dyde do crye vpon payne of deth / that noman

But the Duke  
divided all his  
[6 leaf 37]  
gifts with  
those about  
him.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. "*en enterine amour*," in sincere or perfect love. Caxton probably read *enterine* as two words (in, terme), and translated accordingly.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig. Aud.*

<sup>3</sup> *Orig. themperour.*

<sup>4</sup> *Orig. merueyllons.*

<sup>5-6</sup> Inserted by Caxton.

shold<sup>d</sup> doo harme to the pylgryms / but shold<sup>d</sup> do selle to them alle  
 maner wares at prys resonable / The duc in lyke wyse dyde doo  
 crye, that euery man as dere as he louyd his lyf shold doo no force  
 4 ne wrong to them of the contree / Thus forthon lyuyd<sup>d</sup> they in  
 moche peas / whan Marche cam the duc knewe wel / that the other  
 barons wold come / and<sup>d</sup> apperceyued<sup>d</sup> wel that the wille of them-  
 perour was / that he wold passe with his peple the braas of seynt  
 8 george / To the same acorde<sup>d</sup> the barons and<sup>d</sup> the other of the  
 hoost / And<sup>d</sup> saide to themperour that he wold passe ouer / And he  
 anon dyde do make redy many shippes & passed wel alle and cam  
 in to bethnie, whiche is the fyrst partye of Asye. They lodged<sup>d</sup>  
 12 them aboute<sup>1</sup> the Cyte of Calcedonie / Of this cyte fynde we  
 wryten, that in the tyme of pope lyon and Marcyen themperour  
 assambled there one of the iiij grete counseyllis / where ther were  
 .iiij.C.xxxvj / prelates for to condempne an heresye, that a Monke  
 16 name<sup>d</sup> Entyses(16) had founden. And that helde a patriarke of  
 Alysandre name<sup>d</sup> discretus(17) / but<sup>2</sup> there they were dampned /  
 This cyte is so nyghe constantynoble<sup>3</sup> that there is but the braas by-  
 twene them bothe. And<sup>d</sup> there was the hoost lodge<sup>d</sup> moche easely /  
 20 ffor who so had<sup>d</sup> to doo in the cyte of Constantynoble he myght  
 passe twyes or thryes in a day / The cause why themperour made  
 the duc to passe, was for he wold<sup>d</sup> not that / the hoostes of the  
 barons that were to come / shold not<sup>4</sup> assemble<sup>5</sup> to gydre so nyghe  
 24 hym / And<sup>d</sup> in lyke dyde he to the other barons that cam aftir, ffor  
 he neuer wold<sup>d</sup> lodge tweyne to gydre /

From this  
 time on, the  
 Greeks and  
 Crusaders  
 lived in  
 peace.

In March,  
 Godfrey  
 crossed into  
 Bithynia and  
 encamped  
 around Chal-  
 cedon.

This city is  
 divided from  
 Constanti-  
 nople by the  
 Braas of St.  
 George.

How Buymont was made capitayn of a grete hoost.

And the names of many nobles of thoost & of  
 28 their mayntene. ca<sup>o</sup> xlj.

a Ffor this maner contened<sup>d</sup> hym themperour and duc godefroy.

But buymont the sone<sup>6</sup> of Robert guychart, prynce of Tarente,  
 had passed the see adryané / And was come vnto duras / whan alle his  
 32 hoost was comen he toke his waye thurgh the desertes of bougrye /  
 And wente softe and<sup>d</sup> fayr<sup>7</sup> by cause of them that folowed hym. In  
 his rowte were many noble men / of whom we<sup>8</sup> shal name to you a

Bohemond,  
 Prince of Ta-  
 rentum, had  
 arrived at  
 Duras, and  
 traversed  
 Bulgaria.

<sup>1</sup> Orig. abonte.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. bnt.

<sup>3</sup> Orig. constantynoble.

<sup>4</sup> This "not" is superfluous.

<sup>5</sup> Orig. assemble.

<sup>6</sup> Orig. soue.

<sup>7</sup> Orig. an d'fayr.

[8 leaf 37, bk.]

Many noble  
men accom-  
panied him.

They spent  
Christmas in  
the city of  
Castore; but  
could get no  
one to sell  
them pro-  
visions.

They went  
foraging in  
the country,  
and got great  
wealth and  
booty.

The Emperor  
feared the  
coming of  
Bohemond.

And sent men  
to follow him,  
and to do him  
damage if  
possible.

part / that is to wyte / Tancre the sone of graal the marquys.<sup>1</sup>  
Rychard the pryncipat sone of william fierbrace. The Brother of  
Robert guychart / Raymont his brother / Robert the hanse<sup>2</sup> /  
Herman of caryn<sup>3</sup> / Robert of sourdeval / Robert fytz cristen,<sup>4</sup> 4  
vmfrey fytz raoul<sup>5</sup> / Rychard sone of therle Ranyol erle of rousyg-  
nol,<sup>6</sup> and alle his bretheren. Ogan of chartes. Aubery of cannac /  
And vmfrey of montygneux / Alle thyse had made buymont their  
capytayn / They cam in to the cite of castore and made there the 8  
feste of cristemas and helde it moche hyely / But<sup>7</sup> by cause they  
of the contre wold selle to them / nothyng which helde them for  
enemyes / therfor by force they muste sende out on fouragyng and  
brought grete proyes and good gaynes / of whiche they dyde moche 12  
harme to alle the contrey / Aftir they cam in to the londe of  
pelagoine, whiche is moche good and fertile, and lodged them there /  
Aftir they herd saye that nygh by was a castel right strong, wherin  
alle the popeliquans<sup>8</sup> of the lande were withdrawen for the strenght 16  
of the place / And there were none but suche myshyleued peple /  
Buymont and his peple armed them and wente theder anon<sup>9</sup> / And  
founde there moche grete rychesse in the towne and grete proyes  
whiche they put out a part / And after sette fyer ther in the town / 20  
And alle them that yssued they slewe with the swerde. And the  
remenaunt bothe men and wymmen they brent alle. Themperour  
herd saye that Buymont cam with grete peple. And doubted  
moche / And had his comyng moche suspecyonous, ffor he had 24  
many debates ayenst hym and his, of whiche he had alwey the  
verse. The souldyours of themperour and alle they that enter-  
meted<sup>10</sup> of armes soiourne<sup>11</sup> and wyntred in thyse partyes by whiche  
Bumont passed / Themperour commaunded<sup>12</sup> to his conestables of 28  
alle his peple, that they shold cooste buymont with as moche people  
as they myghte gete vnto the water named bardare / in suche manere  
that yf they myght greue, ennoye, and domage in ony paas to  
them,<sup>12</sup> that they shold come on hym strongly. Thus he had 32

<sup>1</sup> There is a discrepancy here in the French texts, some giving "son of Gral," others "son of William."—Lat. "*Wilhelmi marchionis filius*."

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *Robert de Hanse*.

<sup>3</sup> Fr. *Herman de Carni*.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. *Robert le filz Custen*. Some versions give "*Turstan*."—Lat. *Robertus filius Tristan*.

<sup>5</sup> Fr. *Onfrey le filz Raoul*.

<sup>6</sup> Fr. *Ramol*.

<sup>7</sup> Orig. Bnt.

<sup>8</sup> Fr. *popeliquans*, heretics. Lat. *heretici*.

<sup>9</sup> Orig. *aun*.

<sup>10</sup> Fr. *s'entre mettoient*, had to do with.

<sup>11</sup> Orig. *commauded*.

<sup>12</sup> Fr. *en aucun pas*, at any place, or, on any occasion.

ordeyned<sup>t</sup> cautelously behynd them, but to fore as he / was moche  
 disloyal and couert, and coude wel make semblaunt of other  
 thynges than he thoughte, he sente vnto buymont of his grete  
 4 men / And by them lettres moche payssyble and of fayr wordes /  
 And of bountes moche debonayr and deceyuall which were as  
 folowen.

In this he  
 was very  
 treacherous,  
 as at the  
 same time he  
 sent mes-  
 sengers of  
 welcome to  
 Bohemond,

Messagers and letres fro Themperour to Buymont,<sup>1</sup>

8 and the <sup>2</sup>contenue of the same as foloweth.

[<sup>2</sup> leaf 88]

capitulo xliij<sup>o</sup>

t He salewyng to fore was moche fayr / And aftir sayde / "we  
 knowe certaynly that thou art an hye prynce & moch noble  
 12 sone of an noble and valyaunt man / <sup>3</sup>ffor this grete maner we  
 preyse the / and haue the in chier<sup>3</sup> / And also for thou hast  
 enterprised,<sup>4</sup> with so good herte and so good wille in this tyme the  
 seruyse of oure lord / And the pylgremage <sup>5</sup>whiche is due vnto alle  
 16 them<sup>5</sup> that byleue in Ihesu criste. we haue ferme wylle & cer-  
 taynly purpoos to honoure the / And shewe by dede our grace that  
 we haue thought / Therfor we praye and requyre the in good  
 fayth / that thou commande<sup>6</sup> to thy peple that they doo none  
 20 oultrage to oure peple, & haste / the to come to vs all surely, ffor  
 thou shalt haue ther by honour & prouffyt / Our<sup>7</sup> messagers that  
 come to the shal by our commandement doo thyn hooste haue  
 resonable market of vytaylles and of alle other thynges" / The sem-  
 24 blaunt of this wordes were fayr / but ther was ther vnder moch  
 venym and of felonnye. Buymont, which was wyse and knowyng  
 many thynges, had many tymes preuyd the desloyalte of them-  
 perour / And receyued<sup>t</sup> thyse wordes by semblaunce moche aworth  
 28 and in thanke / But he preyed them lytil in his courage.<sup>8</sup> Neuer-  
 thelesse, he thanketh hym by mouth / and by lettres that he  
 daygned to wryte to hym and sende, considered that he was so smal  
 a man ayenst hym & sente hym other curtoys wordes, &c / This  
 32 mcassagiers that were thus comen, conduyted the hoost vnto the  
 ryuer of bardre / whan the moost partye of the hoost were passed

who said,  
 "We prize  
 thee, and  
 hold thee  
 dear in our  
 hearts, be-  
 cause thou  
 hast under-  
 taken the  
 pilgrimage of  
 our Lord."

"We pray  
 thee to do no  
 damage to  
 our country,  
 and in return  
 will sell thee  
 provisions at  
 a fair price."

Bohemond,  
 who had  
 often experi-  
 enced the  
 Emperor's  
 treachery,  
 did not  
 believe his  
 fair words,

but answered  
 him courte-  
 ously.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* Buymont.

<sup>3-5</sup> *Fr.* *Por ce, de grant maniere, te prisons, et avous chier.* Caxton's French text may have omitted the "de."

<sup>6-8</sup> *Fr.* "qui est la besoigne de tous ceuz," which is the duty of all these, etc.

<sup>6</sup> *Orig.* commaude.

<sup>7</sup> *Orig.* Onr.

<sup>8</sup> *Fr.* courage, heart.

The Em-  
peror's men  
attacked  
them, as they  
were crossing  
the river  
Bardara.

The brave  
Tancred  
turned back  
and put the  
Greeks to  
flight, taking  
many of  
them  
prisoners.

[6 lf. 38, bk.]

Bohemond  
made semb-  
lance not to  
perceive the  
Emperor's  
treachery.

ouer, & the other ordeyned them for to passe after. The con-  
estables of the soldyours whiche had awayted and folowed them  
wened to haue founden theyr poynt. And launced on this partye  
of thoost whiche was not yet passed, and were many moo of them 4  
than of oures / The noyse and the crye arroos moche grete. Tancre  
whiche moche was appert & hardy, had<sup>1</sup> tho passed half the  
ryuer whiche was grete, but<sup>2</sup> whan he herd this he retorned agayn  
as hastily as he myght, and discomfyted / ij. M / of the moost 8  
noble of them vigorously and putte<sup>4</sup> them to flyght.<sup>3</sup> And many  
he toke of them a lyue / whom he brought to fore buymont, he  
demanded them in the presence of alle / wherfore they had ronne  
so on the hoost of the cristen men / whiche were also cristen and 12  
peple of themperour their lord and frende / They answerd that they  
were seruauntes and soldyours of themperour and muste<sup>5</sup> doo his  
commandement, ffor by hym they had this don / <sup>6</sup>here by myght  
alle they apperceyue that herde this, that the fayre wordes that 16  
themperour sayde were but deceyuaunce and tricherye / but buy-  
mont, whiche was wyse and knewe that he muste<sup>5</sup> passe by them-  
pyre, made semblaunt that he apperceyued not, and made good  
chere to thise men for to coure his courage / And that plesyd not 20  
som of his barons /

How Buymont approched constantinoble,<sup>7</sup> and was  
sente to come to themperour, And how by the  
prayer of duc Godefroye he wente toward hym / 24  
capitulo xliij<sup>o</sup>

b Uymont and his hoost wente so ferre by the countrees that  
they approched Constantynoble. whan themperour knewe that,  
he sente agayn grete messagers to hym / and prayde hym entierly 28  
that he wold leue his hoost and come speke with hym with a pryue  
meyne / Buymont wist not what to doo, ffor he was in the daunger  
of hym so grete a man, whom he doubted to angre / And on that  
other parte, he knewe his falsenesse and deceyuaunce, And had wel 32

As they  
approched  
Constanti-  
noble, the  
Emperor sent  
for Bohe-  
mond to  
come and  
speak with  
him pri-  
vately.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *ja*, already.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. *bnt*.

<sup>3-5</sup> This sentence seems to have been entirely misunderstood by Caxton.  
Fr. "*Et deux milles des plus preux retournerent avecques lui; Ilz se fra-  
perent en ceulx qui estoient venuz moult vigoureusement, si que ilz discon-  
frent tantost, et misrent en fuite.*"—i. e. two thousand of his own men  
returned with him, and attacked the others and discomfited them, etc.

<sup>4</sup> Orig. *pntte*.

<sup>5</sup> Orig. *mnste*.

<sup>6</sup> Orig. *coustantinoble*.

- apperceyued that he louyd hym not / And therfore, he fered to goo to hym / whyles he was thus entredeux<sup>1</sup> / The Duc Godefroye cam to hym the thursdaye afore Esterdaye, ffor themperour had so moche
- 4 prayd the Duc / by cause he doubted that he wold not gladly come to hym / that the Duc wente to hym for to make hym come to themperour / whan the duc and Buymont mette / they made moche grete Ioye to gydre, and spak to gydre of many thynges. After
- 8 entred the duc for to praye hym to come to his fader themperour / Buymont was loth tobeye his prayer and requeste / But with grete payne the duc vaynquysshid<sup>2</sup> hym by prayer / And made hym to goo. Themperour receyued hym with grete honour and ioye and
- 12 kyssyd hym / And aftir spak so moche to hym and to the duc, that Buymont by the counseyl of the duc made to themperour homage with his hondes, and swar to hym feaulte as to his lorde / Thenne
- 16 grete rychesses, gold / syluer / vessel / precious stones / and clothes of sylk so moche that vnneth myght be preysed / whyles that Buymont abode in the palays, Tancre his neuw, sone of his suster, that was right wyse and of grete herte, retched not for to see
- 20 Themperour ne to speke to hym / But made alle<sup>3</sup> the hoost to passe ouer the braas seynt george, and to lodge in bethine, nygh to calcedoine / where thooste of the other barons had ben a good whyle / whan themperour knewe that tancre had eschewed hym,
- 24 he was moche wrath, but he made no semblaunt therof, as he that wel coude couure his courage / he made moche grete feste to the barons that were with hym, & euery daye he gaf to them grete yestes and newe thynges / Aftir they departed by his leue / And
- 28 passed the braas with the other / There soiourned they, & abode the comyng of the other barons. There was brought to them grete plente of vytaylles / and<sup>5</sup> of other thynges fro the cyte of constantynoble and fro the countree aboute.

Bohemond  
hesitated  
about obey-  
ing the  
summons.

Godfrey  
endeavours  
to persuade  
him to come  
to the Em-  
peror.

And finally  
prevails upon  
him to do so.

Bohemond  
swears fealty  
to the Em-  
peror, and  
receives great  
gifts from  
him.

Tancred  
would not  
go to the  
Emperor,  
but crossed  
over to  
Chalcedon.

[<sup>4</sup> leaf 39]

Here all the  
Crusaders  
awaited the  
coming of  
the other  
barons.

32 How the erle Robert of fflaunders with his hooste  
approched Constantynoble, And how themperour  
sente for hym / And of their deuyses to gydre /  
cap<sup>o</sup> xliiiij<sup>o</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> A good example of Caxton's habit of transferring French words and expressions bodily into English.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* vaynquysshid.

<sup>3</sup> Fr. "*tout l'ost*."

<sup>5</sup> *Orig.* aud.

Robert of Flanders wintered at Duras, and in spring hastened to follow the other pilgrims.

He was received in Constantinople with great honor by the Emperor.

He joined the other Crusaders,

and they held counsel together, and were very impatient, because the rest of the great barons arrived not.

r Obert, the Erle of fflaundes, whiche was comen to fore the wynter to bar, a cyte of puylle, where the body of seynt Nicholas lieth, had passed the see, and was descended at duras / Ther in a moche fayr place and plentiuous<sup>1</sup> he had wynterd hym / 4 But assone as it began to wexe fayr tyme, he toke his Iourneye after the other / And hasted faste to folowe them / but it happed that er he cam to the barons / he receyued<sup>2</sup> the messagers of themperour that sayd to hym in his name / that he shold leue his hooste 8 and come see themperour, and speke with hym wyth a fewe of his meyne / he demaunded and knewe wel / how the other barons had don to fore hym. And therfor he cam in to constantynoble<sup>3</sup> with a fewe of his companye. Themperour<sup>4</sup> receyued hym wyth grete 12 Ioye and honour / They spak of many thynges to gydre. And after, lyke as other barons had don, he dyde hommage, and made oth of feaulte / Themperour gaf to hym grete yestes / and to alle them of his companye, whan he and his peple had abyden and 16 sojourned there, by the wyлле of themperour he made his peple passe ouer. And he hym self wente after vnto the other barons / whiche with grete Ioye receyued hym, And spak moche to gydre of theyr auentures of the waye. And ofte they were in counseyl, how 20 they shold doo fro than forthon / they were moche displesyd for taryeng<sup>5</sup> of the other barons whom they abode / It was not longe after, but that the messagers of the Erle of Tholouse and of the bisshop of puy were come. And tolde how theyr lordes cam / and 24 that they were nygh / And shold be hastily in constantynoble.<sup>5</sup>

[<sup>1</sup> If. 39, bk.] <sup>6</sup>Of the mayntiene of the hooste that therle of Tholouse and the bisshop of puy brought ouer see. cap<sup>o</sup>. xlv<sup>o</sup>. 28

The Earl of Toulouse and the Bishop of Puy were accompanied by many valiant and powerful men.

t Hyse tweyne noble men departed to gydre out of their countrees with grete nombre of peple with them / They were accompanied with many valyaunt and puyssaunt men of theyr countreyes. Ther was fyrst William, bisshop of Orenge / Raybout, 32 erle of the same cyte / Gaste de bedyers / Giralt de roussylon / Guillem de montpeliers / Guillem, erle of forestes / Raymont peles / centon de beart / Guillem de Amaneux / And many other barons

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *planteureux*, fertile.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* receyned.

<sup>3</sup> *Orig.* constautynoble.

<sup>4</sup> *Orig.* Themperonr.

<sup>5</sup> *Orig.* coustantynoble.



- moche worshipful, whiche for the seruyse of oure lord lefte theyr countrees, theyr lygnages and alle theyr delytes. They cam alle in to lombardye, and passed by the syde of aquylee. And aftir cam  
 4 in to the londe called Ister / ffro thens in to dalmace, whiche is a grete contrey bytwene hongrye and the see adryane / Therin be fore Archiebisshopps / Iadre / spalete, Antibare, and Raguse / The peple of that contre is cruel and moche acustomed to robbe and to  
 8 slee / There be montaynes, and the londe is ful of depe waters rennyng / And large mareyses in suche wyse that there is but lytil londe gaynable<sup>1</sup> / Beestes ther be grete plente in the pastures by whiche they lyue / Neuertheles they that dwelle nygh the see / ben  
 12 of other maner lyuyng of habyte & of langage / ffor they speke Rommant / <sup>2</sup> And the other speke not but as they be nourysshid<sup>2</sup> / The noble men of whom I spak / camen in to this londe, And had ther many grete trauaylls and diseases for the wynter, which  
 16 was ouer cold, And for the contre, whiche was euyl garnysshyd of vytaylles / they hadde merueyllous grete suffraunce, ffor alle the peple of the countree for feer of the pylgryms had lefte cytees, castellys, and townes for to flee and hyde them in montaynes.  
 20 They had born theder alle theyr thynges / ffrom thens they pour-siewed the pylgryms / And them that were olde / seke and feble, and taryed after the hoost, they slewe alle / The erle whiche was wyse toke hede of the hoost / The other barons he sente to fore /  
 24 he kepte alwey the rier garde with grete nombre of his peple wel armed aboute hym / the ayer of the contre was so ful of mystes and so thycke / that they byhynde myght vnneth folowe them to fore ; ffor this londe, as I said to fore, is ful of ryuers and rennyng  
 28 waters / of lakes and mareys / that a grete nyle<sup>3</sup> sourdeth euery day / it semed that it shold neuer sesse / On that other syde the sclauouns and the dalmaces <sup>4</sup>that knowe the places and the coun-trees made on them many assaultes at certayn paas / and slewe  
 32 many of them that were vnarmed. The Erle and the good men of the hoost closed them in, And slewe many of them. And many moo shold haue slayn / yf the wodes & their retraytes had not be so nyghe / Somtyme it happed that therle toke of them a lyue /  
 36 And made to smyte of theyr feet and handes / And lefte them lye

They arrived in Lombardy,

and passed into Dalmatia.

The people of this country are cruel and fierce.

These noblemen and their followers suffered greatly in crossing this land.

The air was so full of fog and mist that they could scarcely see each other as they marched.

[\* leaf 40]

The Sclavonians and the Dalmatians harassed them continually.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *gainnables*, capable of being cultivated.

<sup>2-2</sup> Fr. "*les autres ne parlent se Esclavonois, non*,"—the others speak nothing but the Sclavic tongue.

<sup>3</sup> Fr. *nisle*, fog, mist.

After three weeks of peril and discomfort, they came to a castle where they found the king of Slavonia.

Neither by prayers nor by presents could they mollify the people of this country.

in the way for to fere<sup>1</sup> with the other that cam after / In this maner they were thre wekes in that londe in grete paryl / And in grete mysease / After they cam in to a castel named serdre<sup>2</sup> / there they founde the kyng of sklauonye. The Erle that was wel be- 4 spoken / spak moche fayr to hym / and gaf to hym largely grete yeftes and Iewellys / ffor he hoped ther by that he wold haue holden his peple in peas, And haue don hem had couenable market of vytaylles / But<sup>3</sup> it anaylled not / ffor neuer for prayer, ne for no 8 seruyse / myght they aswage<sup>4</sup> his courage / ne mollyfye the peple of the countre / But they founde them more cruel and more vyllanous than to fore. Thus were they foure wekes after in this sorowe, ffor they were fourty dayes in passyng this contre / Aftir cam they 12 to duras.

Ambassadors of themperour to the sayd Erle and bisshop / And of the contenue of his lettres / And of the daunger wherin the said bisshop was 16 thenne / capitulo xlvj<sup>o</sup>.

t Hemperour had in suspection the comyng of therle / by cause that he knewe wel that he was a moche wyse man and of grete courage. And wel herd saye that he had with hym grete 20

The Emperor sent letters to the Earl of Toulouse and the Bishop of Puy,

plente of good men / Therfore he sente to them to duras noble men of his londe that delyuerd to hym lettres fro themperour, which spak in this maner after the salewyng<sup>1</sup> / "The good renomme that renneth of the thurgh the world, hath made vs to haue certayn 24 tydynges / that thou art a man of grete wytte, of grete power, and of grete prouesse / Therfore we moche desyre to see the, and honoure as hym that we loue of good herte, and preyse / And we

praying them to pass through his land without doing harm.

praye the moche acertaynly, and requyre for a grete yefte / that 28 thou doo thy peple passe our contrees without oultrages and doying<sup>1</sup> harme. And haste the to come to vs, alle sure to haue oure grace and oure bounte; we haue commanded that vytaylles and other necessytees shal be sold to thy peple at prys resonable" / whan the 32

[<sup>3</sup> lf. 40, bk.]

The Earl and barons were glad and joyous to receive these letters.

Erle and alle the barons herde thise tydynges by thyse lettres, they were glad<sup>5</sup> and ioyous / ffor they had longe suffred grete diseases / They toke theyr waye by forestes and by montaynes, and passed the londe of Epyre. Aftir they cam in to pelagonne, where they 36

<sup>1</sup> Fr. "*pour espouenter les autres*," to frighten the others.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *Scodre*.

<sup>3</sup> *Orig. Bnt.*

<sup>4</sup> Fr. "*adoucir son coeur*."

- fonde moche grete plente of alle goodes / The valyaunt bisshop of  
 puy lodged hym on a day fer fro the hoost in a fayr place that he  
 founde / and in the nyght the bougres assaylled hym in his lodgys  
 4 and toke hym / But by cause he was necessarye to cristiente our  
 lord sauȝd hym, that they slewe hym not / ffor one of the barbaryns  
 demaunded of hym gold / therfore he defended hym fro the other,  
 that they slewe hym not / In the mene whyle the noyse was herde  
 8 in the hoost. Thenne they ranne to armes / and syth ran on them /  
 And recouured the bisshop with alle his thynges / On the morn  
 they toke theyr waye and passed salenyke<sup>1</sup> / And alle macedonie /  
 And after grete trauaylles and many iourneyes they cam to a cyte  
 12 named Redost / Thether cam the messagers of themperour agayne /  
 And spak to the erle, prayeng hym in theyr lordes name / that he  
 wolde come to fore his hooste with a fewe of his companye in to  
 constantynoble / Messagers ther were also fro the barons that had  
 16 passed the braas / And requyred the same by mouthe, And by  
 lettres fro theyr lordes. The erle hym self had sente messagers to  
 fore to knowe the beyng of the cowntre / and of the barons. And  
 they were returned, whiche acorded moche to the same, and coun-  
 20 seyld hym to doo that themperour requyred.

The Bishop  
of Puy was  
assailed by  
the Bul-  
garians,  
but was  
rescued from  
danger, and  
his life pre-  
served to  
Christianity.

At Redost,  
the Em-  
peror's mes-  
sengers came  
to him  
again, also  
messengers  
from the  
Crusaders,  
begging him  
to visit the  
Emperor.

How the Erle of Tholouse beyng with themperour  
 wold not do homage to hym, and of the despyte  
 that themperour dyde / ca / xlvij<sup>o</sup>

- 24 b Y the prayer of so moche peple therle muste nedes doo soo at  
 theyr instaunce / And thus lefte his hooste / And cam in to  
 constantinoble with a fewe of his meyne / many messagers encount-  
 red hym, whiche alle cam for to fetche hym / whan he cam to fore  
 28 themperour he was well receyued with moche grete chere and ioye  
 of hym, and<sup>2</sup> alle the barons of the palays. After themperour dyde  
 to be sayd to hym / and requyred hym right swetly / that for to  
 haue alwey alyauce and amytee with hym / And also for the grete  
 32 prouffyt that he shold haue therof, he shold make homage to  
 themperour / lyke as alle the other had don / he answerd shortly  
 that he wold none make ne doo to hym. Themperour had grete  
 desdayne, and was moche wroth / he sente to fetche the conestables  
 36 of his souldyours, and for them that had the charge of his men<sup>3</sup> of

The Earl  
complid,  
and was well  
received, but

he would not  
swear fealty  
to the Em-  
peror.

At this the  
Emperor was  
very wroth,  
[leaf 41]

<sup>1</sup> Orig. saleuyke.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. aud.

and com-  
manded his  
men to do all  
the harm that  
they could to  
the Earl.

Armes / And<sup>d</sup> commaunded them secretly in counseyl, that they  
shold auyse theyr tyme and<sup>d</sup> poynt, and smyte in to the hooste of  
The Erle / And<sup>d</sup> doo to them alle the harme they myghte, And<sup>d</sup> slee  
grete plente of them / This dyde Themperour<sup>1</sup> comaunde them 4  
the more surely / by cause that he wyste wel that they that were  
on that othersyde myght not helpe them, And<sup>d</sup> by cause they were  
his<sup>2</sup> men<sup>3</sup> they wold<sup>d</sup> not sone greue them<sup>3</sup> / And<sup>d</sup> had<sup>d</sup> commaunded<sup>d</sup>  
that alle the shippes to bere ouer vytaylle, sholde come hastily 8  
ageyn in to the Cyte, So that they on that other syde shold<sup>d</sup> not  
come ouer agayn / <sup>4</sup>ffor euer he had<sup>d</sup> suspicion thassemble of oure  
peple<sup>4</sup> / And<sup>d</sup> therefore he made them to passe ouer eche after other  
as they cam / The grete chere that he made to them / And<sup>d</sup> the grete 12  
yeftes that he gaf, cam more by barate and<sup>d</sup> of drede than of loue  
or of largesse / But oure peple, and<sup>d</sup> specially the ffrenssmen, myght  
not byleue that this Ioye that he made to them / Ne the Rychesse  
that he gaf myght come of ony trayson ne of euyl / They knewe 16  
not by experyence so moche themne as they dyde afterward.

The great  
gifts, and the  
welcome that  
the Emperor  
gave the  
Crusaders,  
was nought  
but treachery  
and decep-  
tion.

How themperour, for tauenge<sup>5</sup> hym on therle / made  
his Conestables tenbusshe them / and assaylle  
the hoost of therle / ca / xlvijj° 20

The Greeks  
made an  
ambush, and  
attacked the  
Earl's army  
by night.

He conestables whiche had<sup>d</sup> commandement of Themperour,<sup>1</sup>  
t spak to gydre to theyr men / And<sup>d</sup> made a busschement nyghe  
to the hooste of the Erle of Tholouse / In the nyght, whan  
they had<sup>d</sup> supposed<sup>d</sup> alle well to be assured<sup>d</sup>, themperours peple smote 24  
in among them, and<sup>d</sup> slewe and wonnded many or they were awaked  
and apperceyued<sup>d</sup> it / But whan the crye arroos / And<sup>d</sup> the noble  
men of thooste apperceyued<sup>d</sup> the trayson, they armed them and  
reteyned theyr peple that began to flee / and after ran vpon them 28  
of themperour, And slewe many / and chassed<sup>d</sup> the remenaunt. On  
the morn they of the hooste began to be moche esmayed of the  
trauaylle that they / had suffred in the nyght / And<sup>d</sup> of the trayson  
of the grekes / and theyr hertes began to<sup>6</sup> cole / and to faylle of 32  
the purpose of theyr waye and<sup>d</sup> pylgremage. And<sup>d</sup> not only the

The pilgrims  
put their  
assallers to  
flight, but  
were much  
disheartened  
by the  
treachery of  
the Greeks.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* Themperonr.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *si homes*, his liege men, that is, they had sworn fealty to him.

<sup>3-3</sup> Fr. "*ne li nuiroient mie si legierement*," they would not for a light thing injure him.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. "*Car toujours avoit il souspeçonneuse l'assemblée de nos gens*."

<sup>5</sup> *Orig.* tauenge.

<sup>6</sup> Fr. *refraidier*.

- smal & comune peple, but many of the grete & noble men had forgotten theyr vowes and theyr honours, and wold haue retourned home vnto theyr countrey. But the noble bisshop of Puy / and
- 4 <sup>1</sup>the Bisshop<sup>2</sup> of Orenge were emonge them, and many good, wyse, relygyous men and clerkys, that prechyd to them the wordes of our lord, and recomforted them moche wel / And shewde them that yf they retourned, they shold lese thonour of this world / And also of
- 8 that other. Thus with grete peyne they retheyned them. whan the erle, whiche was in Constantynople, herde of the trayson that was don to hym in his hoost, he was as a man out of his wytte, & anon sente his men to themperour / And sente hym word that he
- 12 had betrayde hym. ffor whyles he retheyned hym and made hym good chere, he had doo slee his peple by trayson / And sente worde herof to the barons that were on that other syde, prayeng them as his bretheren that they wold come to hym to auenge it. wel may
- 16 ye knowe that yf therle had power sufficient, he wold not haue departed tyl he had auengyd hym; And that it shold haue ben dere bought / ffor he was a man of grete courage, And forgate not lyghtly shame don to hym / Themperour sawe that this thyng was
- 20 goon ouer ferre, in suche wyse that he repented hym / that he had so commaunded in his angre and hastynes, and hasted hym moche for to sette counseyl in this werke / And sente / for Buymont and therle of fflaundres to come and speke with hym / by cause he wold
- 24 sende them for to appese therle of Tholouse / They cam, whiche were moche angry of this that was don / They wente to therle in the name of themperour / But they sayd to hym more on theyr owne behalue than of themperours / They shewde hym wel that it
- 28 was not tyme ne place for tauenge his shames that had ben don to hym in the seruyse of oure lord, ffor it shold be empesshement vnto the grete werke that they had enterprised for to saue theyr sowles / And on that other syde, yf they wolde so doo, they had
- 32 not the power ne puyssaunce; therfor it were better to hyde their thoughtes / than to discouere theyr hertes, to theyr damage and shame / the Erle, thus angry, was no fool / but<sup>3</sup> souffred that his wytte vaynquysshed his angre / And said that he wold submettre to
- 36 thyse two noble men that spak to hym, and byleue them / They cam to themperour priuely,<sup>4</sup> and shewd to hym al the fowle dede and werke that was commysed / Themperour vnderstode the grete yre that they had in their hertes / & sente for therle to come to

But the good Bishops of [1 If. 41, bk.] Puy and Orenge encouraged them to continue on their pilgrimage.

When the Earl heard of the Emperor's treason he was beside himself with anger.

The Emperor saw that he had gone too far, and begged Bohemond and Robert of Flanders to help him appease the Earl of Tholouse.

The Earl, who was no fool, listened to the Emperor's excuses.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* Bisslop.*Orig.* bnt.<sup>4</sup> *Orig.* prinely.

The Emperor  
offered to

[1 leaf 42]

make good  
the damage  
done by his  
men to the  
Crusaders.

hym in to his palays / & excused hym to fore alle pryue, &  
apperte, & estrangers, that he had not comanded this fayte to be  
doon / but it displeyd hym moche / And yet he, beyng without  
culpe and blame therof, he was redy to restore to the Duc alle the 4  
dammages that were don to his hooste after his power. Thus  
every day by day / and more and more myght wel be perceyued the  
grete hate that the grekes had to the latyns, And of the desloyal  
felonnye that themperour had in his herte / ayenst oure peple / but 8  
it must be suffred / ffor it myght not thenne be amended.

How at thynstaunt prayer of the barons of the  
hooste / The Erle made homage to themperour /  
whiche gaf grete yeftes to hym and his. 12

Capitulo xlix<sup>o</sup>

Finally, the  
Earl of Tou-  
louse swore  
fealty to the  
Emperor,  
as the other  
great barons  
had done.

a Fter the counseyl of the other barons / the erle was therto  
meuyd / And by the grete prayers of themperour, that he dyde  
homage to hym, and sware to hym feaulte, lyke as the other had 16  
doon / And the pees was affermed among them. Themperour gaf  
to them so grete yeftes / that alle they were merueyllously esmayed /  
The other barons, that were come ouer agayn on the hether syde,  
receyued newe yeftes and presentes. After, they passed the braas, 20  
and retourned in to bethnie. And they prayd moche the erle that  
he shold not longe tarye and abyde there. the Erles hoost cam in  
to Constantynoble / And he made them passe ouer the braas, & to  
lodge with the other: he hym self abode in the toun, for certeyn 24  
necessytees<sup>2</sup> that he had do to doo and to ordeyne / And he, as a  
moche wyseman, prayde and Incited ofte themperour / that he  
shold enterpryse the seruyse of our lord, And that he wold be lord  
and capytayn of alle the hoost / where as were so many noble men / 28  
And he had hope that our lord shold sende to hym suche honnour  
that he shold delyuere his peple and londe by hym / <sup>3</sup>wel coude the  
Erle make to hym remonstrance / acordyng to the barons whiche  
had spoken in this mater<sup>3</sup> / Themperour answerd to them alle in 32

The Earl  
arrived in  
Constanti-  
nople, and  
his men en-  
camped near  
the others.

The Earl  
endeavoured  
to persuade  
the Emperor  
to go to Jeru-  
salem with  
them.

The Emperor  
answered  
that he much  
desired to go.

one maner / that this pylgremage<sup>4</sup> was a moche hye thyng / and  
that he moche desyred the pardon / And aboue alle other thyng the

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* uecessytees.

<sup>3-3</sup> Fr. "*Bien scauroit le conte lui monstrier, selonc ce que les autres barons lui avoient monstré qu'il parlast, et euxmesmes en avoient parlé.*"

<sup>4</sup> *Orig.* pylgrenage.

- compane of so hye noble men plesyd hym moche. And about hym and his empyre he sayd he had moch cruel peple and moch vntrew, as the Bougres, the comans, and other that gladly wold doo 4 harme to hym and to his londe, and conquere his Empyre, as moche as they myght gete / And therfore it were grete parylle for me to withdrawe fro my Countreys / well and fayre he excused hym withoute forth / But that he sayd to oure <sup>1</sup>peple was but trycherye 8 and falsehed; ne he had neuer talente to helpe our peple / But thought wel in his herte how he myght noye them to his power / They that were ouer the braas / The Duc Godeffroy / Buymont / therle of fflaundres / And the Bisshop of Puy, aduysed and ordeyned 12 theyr affayres for them / And sayde they wold drawe them to ward Nycene / ffor to abyde there the other Barons that were comyng on the waye / whan they approched a cyte which was named Nycomedede / which is the oldest Cyte of the Countre of Bythyne / Be ye 16 certayne that Pieter theremyte, with a fewe peple that had abyden there, yssued oute of the poure <sup>2</sup> place / And had ben there for the wynter. And cam ayenst thyse Barons, and salewed them. They made to them good chere / And demaunded them of theyr waye 20 and Iourneyes / They gaf to them <sup>3</sup>grete yefets, of whiche they had grete nede. <sup>3</sup> Pieter tolde to them theyr grete mesauentures, <sup>4</sup> And sayde that it cam by theyr owne oultrage and folye. Thyse noble men of whome I haue sayd, had peple ynowgh, and cam to Nycene / 24 And assieged it the XV / day of maye / They lefte places ynough for to lodge the other Barons that cam after. The Erle of Tholouse, whan he had do made suche thynges as hym neded in Constantynoble / he toke leue of Themperour / whiche gaf to hym 28 ryche yeftes alle newe / And cam after hastely to the syege of Nycene.

But his country was so surrounded by hostile nations, that it would be very dangerous for him to leave home.

[1 lf. 42, bk.]

The great barons decided to go to Nicæa and wait for the coming of the others.

On the way they encountered Peter the Hermit,

who recounts his misfortunes.

The Crusaders commence the siege of Nicæa the 15th day of May.

- How duc Robert of Normandy, and other here named, approched Constantinoble / and made 32 homage to themperour. ca. 1°

- i N the whyle that they leyde the syege / Robert duc of normandy, and other noble men with hym; that is to saye, Steuen therle of Chartres and of bloys / Eustace broder of Robert, Duke of Normandy, and other noblemen

<sup>2</sup> Orig. ponre.

<sup>3-3</sup> Caxton has translated here very freely. Fr. "*telement qu'ilz eurent grandement leurs necessités.*"

<sup>4</sup> Orig. mesauentures.

sent messengers to the Emperour.

They had spent the winter in Apulia, but in the spring had crossed to Duras,

[5 leaf 48]

and after long marches arrived in Constantinople.

The Emperour welcomed them, and demanded the oath of fealty, which they gave.

They then pursued their way to Nicæa, where they were received with great joy.

Duc Godeffroye, sente to the Emperour and to other Barons theyr  
messagers / In theyr companye were Steven<sup>1</sup> daubmable, Alayn  
fergaunt / And Conayn, two hye Barons of Brytayne; The erle  
Rotheron of Perse, Rogyer de Barneuyll / Thyse and<sup>2</sup> other ynowgh 4  
were<sup>2</sup> in the Yere to fore, in thentre of Wynter, comen In<sup>3</sup> to  
Puyllle and<sup>4</sup> in to Calabre, whiche<sup>4</sup> ben good<sup>4</sup> Countreyes / Whan  
the newe tyme was comen / they assembled<sup>4</sup> theyr peple / And<sup>4</sup>  
ordeyned<sup>4</sup> theyr passage on the see, And<sup>4</sup> cam to duras / And by 8  
cause they had<sup>4</sup> taryed so<sup>4</sup> longe, they hasted<sup>4</sup> them moche, and<sup>4</sup>  
passed<sup>4</sup> Macedomone and the two thaarses, And<sup>4</sup> by grete Journeyes  
and<sup>4</sup> grete trauaylles cam vnto Constantynople. Themperour sente  
for them to come to hym / They that knewe how the other barons 12  
had don, cam in to his palays to hym / He receyued<sup>4</sup> them with  
moche grete Ioye / Alle his Barons made to them grete<sup>6</sup> feste / He  
spak to eueryche by hym self ryght swetly, <sup>7</sup>and acqueynted<sup>8</sup> with  
hem<sup>7</sup> / After dyde do requyre of them hommage and<sup>4</sup> feaulte. They 16  
dyde as the other had<sup>4</sup> don that were passed<sup>4</sup> to fore / And<sup>4</sup> sayd<sup>4</sup> it  
was no shame to ensiewe thensample of so valyaunt men, ne to doo  
that they had<sup>4</sup> don / They becam his men, and<sup>4</sup> dyde hym hommage,  
and<sup>4</sup> swore to hym / Themperoure receyued<sup>4</sup> them in his grace / And 20  
gaf to them so grete yeftes that they were abasshed alle / ffor the  
yeftes were so ryche and<sup>4</sup> so dyuerse / that they neuer to fore had<sup>4</sup>  
seen none such / And<sup>4</sup> after toke theyr leue<sup>9</sup> of Themperour / And<sup>4</sup>  
passed<sup>4</sup> the braas of Seynt George / And<sup>4</sup> cam with grete haste to 24  
Nycene / where as the hooste of cristiente abode for them. The  
Ioye was grete whan they were comen, whiche were the laste / They  
lodged<sup>4</sup> them in the places that were kept for them.

How themperour sente for to destroye oure Cristen 28  
men one his seruaunt, faynyng to be a trewe  
Conduyteur & guyde. ca. lj.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *Etienne d'Aubemarle*.

<sup>2</sup> Caxton has here omitted "*avecques le conte de Flandres, et avec Huon le Maine*."

<sup>3</sup> Misled by the recurrence of the words "*Apulia and Calabria*" Caxton has here omitted several lines. Fr. "*en Puille et en Calabre. Mais quand les autres passèrent jusques à Duras, ceulx-ci pour la presse de l'iver y rassemblerent leurs gens, et se remiserent en Puille et en Calabre qui sont moult bonnes terres.*"

<sup>4</sup> Orig. *whche*.

<sup>6</sup> Orig. *grede*.

<sup>7-7</sup> Fr. "*et moult bien les acointa*," and received them kindly.

<sup>8</sup> Orig. *acquynted*.

<sup>9</sup> Orig. *lene*.



- Atyns<sup>1</sup> was a Greke, and wel acqweynted with themperour,  
 1 the moost fals, vntrewe man that euer was. And so he wel  
 semed / <sup>2</sup>ffor he had his nosethrellys remuled and tourned.<sup>2</sup>
- 4 This felawe, by the commandement of his lorde, wente with oure  
 men / And sayd that he wold conduyte<sup>3</sup> them, ffor he knewe wel  
 alle the Contre and the paases by whiche they wold passe and goo /  
 But Themperour dyde alle this for euyll / ffor he trusted in the  
 8 falsenesse of this fals greek / whiche counseyllid them allewey to  
 theyr dammage / And was alway as the serpent emonge the elis.  
 And themperour had charged hym for to late hym wyte euery day  
 how the hoost behaued them, and of theyr purpose / And therupon  
 12 he wold sende to hym his wyll and<sup>4</sup> entente / At this siege oure  
 people first assembled to gydre, and the Capyteyns and barons spak  
 of theyr comune<sup>5</sup> werkes and counseyls / ffor to fore they had  
 neuer ben to gydre, ne seen eche other / <sup>6</sup>ther was knowen  
 16 certaynly<sup>7</sup> by nombre and by extymacion to fore Nycene,<sup>6</sup> whan  
 they were alle assembled / sixe .C / thousand men a fote / And of  
 knyghtes and men of armes on horsbak, an hundred thousand or  
 moo / They alle had moche grete wyll for to employe them wel in  
 20 this warre / And desyre<sup>8</sup> moche at this fyrst begynnyng of theyr  
 warre to enterprise so hyely and doo so wel / that alle other peple  
 shold doubte them.

Latyns was a  
 treacherous  
 and deceitful  
 Greek,

who, by the  
 order of the  
 Emperor,  
 conducted  
 our men.

At the siege  
 of Nicæa,  
 the Crusaders  
 for the first  
 time were all  
 collected  
 together.

[<sup>2</sup> If. 43, bk.]

There were  
 600,000 foot-  
 soldiers and  
 100,000  
 knights and  
 horse men.

Of the situacion of Nycene / And how our peple  
 24 approached therto / Merueyllyng of the place and  
 of the strengthe / cap<sup>o</sup>. liij<sup>o</sup>

- o F the cyte of nycene, knowe ye that it had be vnder tharche-  
 bysshop of nychomede / But themperour constantyn made it to  
 28 be taken away fro the power of this archebysshop / and it was a  
 place of honour / by cause<sup>9</sup> the fyrst of the iiij grete counseylles  
 had be sette there / ffor in the tyme of seynt syluestre the pope /

Nicæa was  
 a place of  
 honor, be-  
 cause the first  
 of the four  
 great councils  
 had been held  
 there.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *Latins*. Lat. *Latinus*.

<sup>2-2</sup> Fr. "*Car il avoit unes narines rennilées*." Lat. "*nares habens mutilas in signum mentis perversae*." Caxton evidently read *rennilées*, and then not understanding the word, gave it an English termination, and transferred it bodily to his translation.

<sup>3</sup> *Orig.* condnyte.

<sup>4</sup> *Orig.* aud.

<sup>5</sup> *Orig.* commne.

<sup>6-6</sup> One of the important verbs is left out in this sentence. Fr. "*selonc ce quil fut certainement sceu par nombre et par estimacion ilz eurent devant Nicene*," etc., i. e. they had before Nicene, etc.

<sup>7</sup> *Orig.* certayuly.

<sup>9</sup> *Orig.* canse.

In the time of the Emperor Constantine, there was a heretic named Arrius.

318 prelates assembled at Nicæa, and condemned Arrius and his heresy.

The seventh Council of the Church was also held here, when Adrian was Pope of Rome.

The country round about is fair and fertile.

The walls of the city are strong, high, and thick,

[7 leaf 44]  
and the people fierce and hardy, and skilful in armes.

ther was a patriarke of constantinoble, named alexandre / & emperour constantin / ther was a mescreaunt named arrius / which mesprised certeyn poyntes of the fayth / & many men folowed hym. therfor assembled in the Cyte of Nycene iiij. C. xvij. 4 prelates / And there was disputed ayenst this popelican. And by wytnes of scripture, and by thaccord of holy men that were there, Arryus was condempned and his myscreaunce / Syth after, in the tyme of an another constantyn, Emperour, whiche was sone vnto 8 ayerne,<sup>1</sup> Assembled another counseyl<sup>2</sup> in the same place / whiche was the / vij / Thenne was adryan pope of Rome : And Tarest<sup>3</sup> was patriarke of constantinople. there were dampned som mysbyleuyd peple, that said / that alle the ymages that were made in 12 holy chirche were ayenst the fayth, And they were false cristen men and<sup>4</sup> vntrewe that suffred them. This cyte of Nycene stondest in a playn, but the montaynes ben nyghe / And it lacked not moche, 5but they be round aboute<sup>5</sup> / The countrey is moche fayr and 16 plentiuous / 6the grete forestes ben by a ryuer nyghe the cyte, toward the weste, moche longe and brode<sup>6</sup> / By that ryuer the shyppes brynge vytaylle and other marchandise in to the cyte; whan it is a grete wynde, the grete wawes smyte sore on the walles. 20 On that other part of the toun ben grete dyches, brode and depe, And ful of water, of a lake and other ffontaynes. The walles aboute be stronge, hye / thycke / And fulle of grete Touretys / The Peple within 7the toun were fiers and hardy, and wel aduysed 24 of armes<sup>8</sup> / And grete plente there were / whan oure men approached it, they merueylled moche of the strengthe of the toun.

How the puyssaunt Turke Solyman, with a grete hoost, aduysed tyme and houre to assayle and 28 smyte on our peple, for to reyse the siege /

Capitulo liij<sup>o</sup>

s Olyman, of whome I haue spoken to fore, whiche was a moche puyssaunt Turke, had the seynorye of this cyte / and of alle 32

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *Irone*. Lat. *Irenae*.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig. couseyl*.

<sup>3</sup> Fr. *Tareses*.

<sup>4</sup> *Orig. aud.*

<sup>5-5</sup> Fr. "*qu'elles ne soient tout entour*," but that they surround it entirely.

<sup>6-6</sup> Fr. "*Les granz forez sont delez; uns lais est pres de la cité moult lèz et moult lons devers occident*." Caxton's French text gave "*river*" (fleuve), which he has followed, but the Latin and the other French translations give "*lake*" (lais).

<sup>8</sup> Fr. "*avisés d'armes*," skilled in armes.

- the countre aboute. he was moche wyse / hardy and manly of his body. ffor the tyme that he herde of the comynge of our peple / he was garnysshed of his frendes and soldyours for to defende his
- 4 cyte and his londe. An vncler of his, named Belphet, (18) moche puyssaunt and ryche, had late conquerd alle the londe that is fro the braas of seynt george vnto surry / whiche is / xxx / iourneyes longe / In that tyme Romanus diogenes was Emperour,<sup>1</sup> whiche<sup>2</sup>
- 8 was to fore alexes / that was deposed / This belphet, soudan of perse, had gyuen the gretter parte of the londe to solyman his neuwe / in suche wyse that he had alle the londe fro the cyte of tarce, that is in Cylyce, vnto the braas of seynt george / Thus this
- 12 Solyman<sup>3</sup> had his baylles in the town of Constantinoble,<sup>3</sup> whiche resseyuyd his passages<sup>4</sup> and custommes of the marchans of the toune and of other. This solyman was withdrawn to the montaynes with as moche peple as he myght haue, a x / myle fro the hoost,
- 16 And dyde lye in a wayte and espye how he myght fynde the maner to reyse the siege / yf he had mocht /

Solyman was wise, hardy, and manly.

His uncle Belphet had conquered all the land from Constantinoble to Syria.

Belphet gave the greater part of their lands to Solyman.

- How Solyman, beyng in the montaynes, sente his messagers to them of the toun, & of the
- 20 comfort that he gaf to them. ca. liiij.

- Wre peple cam to fore the tonn, and withoute acorde and
- o without any ordonaunce began tassaylle, in suche wyse that they within myght not yssue / ne they without entre. But
- 24 the grete lake that toucheed the town destroubled moche, ffor they myghte, maulgre the Hooste, goo and come by the see as ofte as they wolde / Oure Peple had none shippes, ne myght not deffende the lake. Certaynly they had besyged<sup>5</sup> it wel by londe / Solyman,
- 28 that sawe this cyte thus enuyronned with peple, wherof he was wroth & angry / And doubted moche that they of the toun shold be abasshed of the grete multitude. ther for he sente two of his preuy messagers, And commaunded them in his name that they
- 32 shold entre in to the toun / And saye thyse wordes, " I holde you so valyaunt men, and of suche prouesse, that I byleue certaynly

The Crusaders invested Nicæa, but the inhabitants were still able to go and come by the Lake.

[5 ff. 44, bk.]

Solyman sent two messengers to the town,

<sup>1</sup> Orig. Emperour.

<sup>2</sup> Lat. "*qui ante hunc Alexium fuerat tertius.*"

<sup>3-3</sup> Caxton's corrupt French text does not follow the Latin very closely here. The text of the *Historiens Occidentaux* gives a more correct version; "*En tel manière nets quil avoit ses baillez, d'autre part, en la veue de Constantinople,*" i. e. he had his bailiffs just in sight of, not within Constantinople.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. *peages*, tolls for passage.

telling the inhabitants not to fear the Crusaders, who were weary with travel, and poorly armed;

and to be ready, for he would come the next day to deliver them.

that ye preyse and sette lytil by this peple, that ben comen fro so fer contreyes, where the sonne goth down. And they be wery, euyl ordeyned and garnysshed, and haue none horses that may endure trauayll / we ben fressh, and our horses rested in our contre / 4 wherof it is no doubte we be better than they an C / tymes. And that ye maye wel knowe, ffor it is not longe syth that we disconfyted in one day moo than / l. M / Therfor conforte you and mayntene you as noble men, fforto morn, to fore the houre of none, 8 ye shal be without<sup>1</sup> faylle delyuerd of them alle / but be ye wel aduertysed & redy, that whan we smyte in the hoost / ye opene youre<sup>2</sup> yates and yssue vpon them in suche wyse / that ye thenne be parteyners of the vycторыe of thonour / & of the prouffyt" / 12

How the messagers of Solyman were taken by our men, and by them was knowen the couyne of the cap<sup>o</sup> lv<sup>o</sup>.

Our people espied the messengers, and killed one, and took the other prisoner.

After hearing his confession, the great barons took counsel, and prepared to meet Solyman,

who arrived, as he had promised, the next morning.

[<sup>4</sup> leaf 46]

t He messagers of Solyman cam upon the lake, And arryued a 16 lytil ferre fro the toun. And after began tespye and see how they myght entre in to the cyte / Oure peple apperceyued them and ran on them, that one of them was slayn atte takynge / That other was brought a lyue to fore the barons / they made hym to be 20 drawen and payned to saye the trouthe. he confessyd and sayde that Solyman had sente them in to the cyte <sup>3</sup>ffor to garnysse them & make them redy / ffor theyr lord on the morn shold come<sup>3</sup> and smyte sodanly in the hoost / the barons byleuyd hym wel. And 24 commaunded hym to be kept / And toke counseyl among them how they shold doo. Therle of Tholouse and the bisshop of puy were not yet come vnto the hoost / The barons sente for them hastily for this thyng / They cam and rode alle the nyght, in suche wyse 28 that they cam in to the hoost to fore the sonne rysyng. The baners were displayed, and the trompes sowned. Ther was moche peple, & vnneth myght they be lodged in the places that were kept for them / Thenne Solyman at the hour of tierce / lyke as he sayd that 32 was taken / cam down fro the montayn in to the playn. Thenne our peple that were <sup>4</sup>wel aduertysed armed them. And dyde do

<sup>1</sup> Orig. wthiout.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. yonre.

<sup>3-3</sup> Fr. "*pour eulx garnir de ce que leur seigneur vendroit le lendemain,*" to warn them that their lord would come the next day; *garnir* seems here to be used in its original German sense.

sowne the trompettes. Euery man drewe hym in to his bataylle as it was ordeyne<sup>1</sup> / and moche quykely<sup>1</sup> were alle sette in ordenaunce.

4 How a grete bataylle of Solyman cam smyte vpon our peple, And of thende of the scarmuche.

capitolo lvi<sup>o</sup>

- o F the hooste of Solyman departed a bataylle fro the other, wherein where<sup>2</sup> .x.M / men on horsbak / And drewe them  
 8 toward the gate right toward the south / Ther was lodged therle of tholouse. And this yate was delyuerd hym to kepe / But Solyman that the day to fore had espyed that waye and had seen no man there lodged / And wende that no man had ben there / ffor he  
 12 knewe nothyng of the comynge of therle ne his companye / this bataylle smote in emonge the people that were comen / They receyued them moche fiersly with glayues & swerdes / & sore adommaged them / <sup>3</sup>And made them to resorte agayn bakward.<sup>3</sup>  
 16 Solyman<sup>4</sup> that ensiewed made them to retourne with hym, and assembled to the peple of the erle of fflaunders / The duc godefroye, buymont, and therle of thoulouse, aduysed and sawe that ther were so many of the turkes / that the erle of fflaunders myght not suffre  
 20 alle. And adressyd theyre bataylle to that parte / And smote in emonge them. The medle was moche harde / and aspre<sup>5</sup> / And many turkes were slayn / Ther was so moche don and so wel / that Guy de gerlande, seneshal of the kynge of ffrance,<sup>6</sup> Guy du  
 24 puysett, Rogier de barneuylle / Thyse bare away the prys to fore all other. But this bataylle endured wel an houre al hoole / In thende the turkes myght suffre nomore our peple / But were discomfyted

One of Solyman's battalions attacked the Earl of Toulouse.

Solyman driven back, returned and attacked them again.

Many Turks were slain.

After an hour's contest they were forced to flee.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* qnyckely. <sup>2</sup> *Fr. estoient*, "were," not "where."

<sup>3-4</sup> *Fr. "et firent ressortir arriere."*

<sup>4</sup> According to the Latin original Soliman on returning, attacked, not the troops of the count of Flanders, but those of the count of Toulouse, and the count of Flanders came to his rescue with Godfrey of Boulogne and Bohemond. Caxton's translation is due to his corrupt French text. *Lat. "cum ecce Solimannus, cum majoribus subsequens copiis eis, refundens animos qui jam erant dissoluti, secum iterum in nostros redire compulit. At vero dux, dominus quoque Boamundus et comes Flandrensis, cum suis expeditionibus, ad ueniam armati, videntes hostium majores advenisse cuneos et turmas densiores, [et] gravi multitudine et animosa instantia cometis exercitum supra vires fatigari, irruunt unanimiter, et hostium se inferunt legionibus."*

<sup>5</sup> *Fr. aspre*, vigorous, sharp.

<sup>6</sup> *Lat. Guido de Porsessa. A Guy de Posessa.*  
 GODFREY.

The Crusaders were greatly encouraged by this victory.

They sent a thousand heads of the slain to the Emperor.

[? If. 46, bk.]

and fledde away moche fowly / Our peple folowed them not ferre,  
ffor the montaynes and the wodes were ouer nere in which they  
fledde / But were of turkes slayn / iiij. thousand, and som ther were  
a lyue taken / Oure peple had moche grete ioye of this vycторыe, 4  
and cam ageyn to theyr siege, and besieged the toun<sup>1</sup> as wel as  
they myghte for to angre and discourage them within the toun,  
whiche awayted after socoure. They made to be caste with engynes  
to them within the toun grete plente of heedes of the turkes that 8  
had ben slayn in the bataylle / The prisonners a lyue and a  
thousand heedes of the turkes they sente to themperour / He coude  
them grete thanke and had therof moche ioye. And sente to them  
agayne newe yeftes of Iewellys, of clothes of sylk and other 12  
thynges right largely / And commaunded to the marchauntes<sup>2</sup> that  
they shold lede vytaylle ynowe vnto the hooste / and other thynges  
necessarye.

How oure barons were lodged in the sayd siege / of 16  
their mayntene / And how euery daye they en-  
forced<sup>3</sup> them tassaylle the toun / Capitulo lvii<sup>o</sup>

The great barons take counsel how to arrange the siege of Nycæa.

m Oche thought our barons how this cyte myght be assieged on  
alle partyes, ffor other wyse them semed they myght not gete it / 20  
By comyn counseyl they lodged them alle / They sette ayenst the  
sonne rysyng the duc and his two bretheren / Toward byse<sup>4</sup> were  
lodged buymont and<sup>5</sup> tancre and the other barons that were in  
theyr compayne / <sup>6</sup>The duc<sup>7</sup> of normandye and the erle of fflaunders 24  
lodged by them to ward the south / The erle of tholouse,<sup>6</sup> hue le  
mayne, the bisshop of puy, therle of chartres, and other barons,  
many with alle their peple, were so lodged that alle the cyte was  
enclosed sauf the lake whiche was in the weste / And after sente 28  
they hastily in to the forest. And made to come grete plente of  
tymbre for to make engyns / Alle the carpenters of the hoost<sup>8</sup> and

They sent for timber to make machines.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* tonn.

<sup>3</sup> Fr. "*ilz s'efforcoient*," they exerted themselves.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. "*deuers bise*," toward the North. Lat. *Septentrionalis*.

<sup>5</sup> *Orig.* aud.

<sup>6-8</sup> Caxton has altered the sense here, by wrongly dividing his sentence, misled probably by his original, in which it is difficult to decide which is the correct division. A. gives the clearer and more correct reading—"li quens de Flandres et li dus de Normandie se logierent lèz aux: deuers midi fu li quens de Toulouse," etc.

<sup>7</sup> *Orig.* dnk.

<sup>8</sup> *Orig.* hoost

- sawyers cam forth / of whom was grete nombre. In a lytil whyle  
 reysed they engynes and slynges. And made in therthe wayes and  
 caues couerd for to fylle the dyches and to myne the walles,
- 4 Ther was grete caste of grete stones at the walles and tourettes / so  
 that in many places the walles were clefted and broken in many  
 partes / ffor to doo thyse thynges / they were wel .vii. wekes.  
 There were in this whyle many assautes and fyghtes ofte to fore
- 8 the yates / On a day the barons acordeð that the toun shold be  
 assaylled; but this assault endamaged lytil the tounne ne them  
 within. But ther were lost two valyaunt men / that one was  
 named Bawdwyn handeron,<sup>1</sup> a ryche man and a good knyght of
- 12 berry / That other was of fflaunders named Bawdwyn of gaunt,  
 noble and hardy / <sup>2</sup>Thyse two wente so ferre to fore daye, that<sup>2</sup> the  
 one was slayn with a stroke of a stone / <sup>3</sup>And that other with an  
 Arowe / Guyllem, Erle of forest / And Galles de lylle,<sup>3</sup> thyse two
- 16 were hye noble men / and assaylled moche that day. In this tyme  
 deyde of sekenes in the hoost guy de possesse a moche good knyght.  
 The hooste were sorouful of the deth of thyse noble men / but
- every man<sup>4</sup> that our lord wold gwerdone them perpetually in
- 20 heuen ffor the good seruyse that they deyde in. They were  
 honourably buryed / And after entended vnto theyr werke /

They soon  
raised engines  
and slings

They cast  
great stones  
at the wall,  
and broke it  
in many  
places.

They assault-  
ed the town,  
but damaged  
it but little.

The army  
was very  
sorrowful,  
because of the  
death of two  
noble men.

<sup>5</sup>How our barons made theyr castellys of tree and ap- [3 leaf 47]  
 prouched the toun. And how they within the

24 toun brake one of them and slewe them with  
 Inne. Capitulo lviij.

o N a day the capytaynes of the hooste were acordeð that the  
 castellys that they had made shold be drawn forth and aproche

28 the walles / ffor eche of the greet men had commaunded to make

They decided  
to move their  
engines up to  
the wall.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *Bandoïn Chanderon*. Lat. *Calderon*.

<sup>2-2</sup> Fr. "*ces deux s'estoient moult tirés avant, ce jour, tant que,*" etc., these two had gone so far in advance (of the others) that day, that, etc.—Caxton has mistaken "avant" for a preposition governing day, instead of an adverb modifying "tirés."

<sup>3-3</sup> Fr. "*li autres d'une sajete, et remest li assaux, un autre jour fu recommenciez li assaux par acort des barons et fu occis d'une sajete,* Guil-laums li quens de Fores, et Galles de Lyle. Caxton has ruined the sense here, by his "bourdon." He has omitted all between the two "sajetes."

<sup>4</sup> Fr. "*tos avoient ferme esperance que nostre Seigneur, qui en son service les prenoit, leur guerredonnoit moult hautement à tousjours.*" Caxton has omitted, "had a firm hope," just before "that our Lord."

Herman of  
Germany and  
Henri  
D'Asque  
devised a pow-  
erful engine.

The Turks  
broke this  
engine and  
killed all the  
knights  
within.

Our men  
could not  
prevent the  
enemy from  
entering the  
city by the  
lake.

an engyne hastily in his parte / The erle herman of duchelond  
and<sup>1</sup> henry dasque, that were good knyghtes and<sup>2</sup> enterprisers, had  
deuysed a thyng of a<sup>3</sup> grete tronke of an oke, and had sette thereon /  
xx / knyghtes alle couerd aboue / And vnder they had men ynough 4  
for to myne the walle / They approuched the castel that it ioyned  
to the walle / The knyghtes aboue began to deffende them, And  
they vnder persed the walle. The turkes within had dressed the  
grettest part of theyr engyns to this castel, and many strokes had 8  
smeton so longe that wyth the strok of a grete stone they brake  
alle and fylle down to gydre<sup>4</sup> in suche wyse that neuer one<sup>5</sup> escaped  
aboue ne vnder, but alle were deed, There was grete sorowe in the  
hoost / And moche more shold be, ne had not be the grete com- 12  
forte that they had in our lord / They lefte not herfore, but euery  
man payned hym more and more to greue them with Inne / And  
gaf to them so many assautes day and nyght / that they lete them  
haue but lytil reste / but one thyng ther was that greued our peple 16  
moche / And that was that ther cam euery day in to the toun  
fresshe vytailles and newe men / Armour and artyllery by the  
lake / And they coude not defende it, wherof they were moche  
marryd. 20

Of the counseyl that our men toke for tassiege the  
toun by watre for to constreyn them not for to  
entre ne yssue / cap<sup>o</sup> lix<sup>o</sup>

h Erof wold our barons haue counseyl how they myght dis- 24  
trouble this comyng by water / They assembled and acorded  
that they wold sende of theyr knyghtes grete plente, wyse men,  
and men a fote and take alle the shippes at the see syde that they  
coude fynde,<sup>6</sup> and sette them vpon charyottes of the hoost and 28  
brynge suche as they myght brynge hoole. And the other they  
shold parte in two pyeces or thre. And also they wold sende to  
thempour and praye hym that he wold delyuer to them shippes /  
They that had charge of this werke cam to the see without taryng<sup>3</sup> 32  
and fonde shippes grete plente, suche as they had nede of. And  
by<sup>7</sup> the commaundement of themperour, whiche graunted gladly,

<sup>1</sup> *Orig. amd.*

<sup>2</sup> Fr. "*entrepreneurs*," enterprising.

<sup>3</sup> Fr. "*de gros trës de chêne*," of large timbers of oak.

<sup>4-5</sup> Fr. "*Il deffroisa et chëut tout ensemble*," it broke in pieces, and fell down in a heap.

<sup>6</sup> *Orig. oue.*

<sup>6</sup> *Orig. fynde.*

The barons  
decided to  
bring ships  
overland on  
carts from  
the sea to  
this lake.

[7 ff. 47, bk.]



drewe out of the water ynowgh, Thenne coupled they to gydre  
 four<sup>1</sup> cartes or fyue after that the shyppes were, and sette them  
 theron by force of peple al hole, and with many men drewe them  
 4 forth with cordes and with trayse of the cartes in one nyght / vij.  
 longe myle or more / Thise shippes were taken of and launched in  
 to the lake moche hastely, ffor many hondes make light werke.  
 And the peple wente therto with a good wylle. They had emonge  
 8 them many maronnars that coude wel shippecrafte / And they were  
 sette therin, moche peple offerd them self to entre alle armed / they  
 toke as many as neded, and garnysshed wel thyse shippes / Somme  
 shippe had in an honderd / and other / l. or xxx. or xx / after theyr  
 12 gretenes / in suche wyse that the waye that they had in the lake,  
 Oure men hadde taken from them, whan they of the hooste sawe that  
 this waye of the laken was take from them,<sup>2</sup> they had grete Ioye.  
 And hoped that the siege shold not endure / The turkes of the  
 16 toun whan they apperceuyed that oure men had don so grete a  
 werke and so stronge, They fyll in despayre and were abasshed and  
 merueylled of the vygour of our peple that had don this in so short  
 tyme / And thenne were they enclosed on alle sydes, and had loste  
 20 the waye for theyr shippes.

In one night  
 they drew  
 the ships  
 seven miles  
 overland.

They soon  
 launched  
 them in the  
 lake,

and  
 garnished  
 them with  
 sailors.

How after the Cyte was asseyged by water and by  
 londe, oure men assaylled it / And of a Shotte  
 that Duc Godefroye dyde. Capitulo / lx°

24 w Han the Barons sawe that theyr shippes were in the lake in  
 suche wyse that no man myght greue them, Anon they dyde  
 do crye that alle men shold arme them and come to thassault, And  
 it was acorded that eche of the barons shold assaylle in that parte  
 28 where he was lodged / they admonested and enforced theyr peple  
 to doo wel / Thassault was more<sup>3</sup> / than euer it had be / There  
 somme threwe out of thengyns grete nombre of stones / Euery man  
 dyde his part: toward the south in the partye that was delyuerd<sup>4</sup>  
 32 to therle of thoulouse / there was an hye toure more grete than any  
 of the other / by that tour was the palays, In whiche Solymans wyf  
 was. Therle had sette alle his entent for to breke this tour longe  
 tyme / <sup>5</sup>ffor he had doo throwen ther at grete stones<sup>5</sup> / And had

The barons  
 now ordered  
 a second  
 assault.

The palace in  
 which Soly-  
 man's wife  
 lived was  
 near the Earl  
 of Toulouse,

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* four.

<sup>2</sup> *i. e.* the towns-people.

<sup>3</sup> Fr. *greindre*, greater.

<sup>4</sup> *Orig.* delynerd.

<sup>5-5</sup> Fr. "*Car il y avoit fait jeter deux grosses perrières longuement,*"

The Earl of  
Toulouse at-  
[1 leaf 48]  
tacked this  
tower vigor-  
ously.

The troops  
mined the  
walls, and  
threw such  
large stones  
at it,  
that they  
weakened it.

Those within  
made a new  
wall of lime  
and stones.

A huge Turk  
damaged our  
men greatly  
with his bow.

Duke Godfrey  
shot the man  
through the  
body, so that  
he fell down  
dead.

The Saracens  
were much  
abashed of  
this feat.

not broken one stone of the tour / And by cause he wolde not for  
shame so leue it without takynge of it. And ordeyned gretter  
1 stones alle newe, 2 which began to breke the creuaches of the same  
tour 2 / & with the strokes of the stones moche powdre cam out 4  
of the clyftes / The peple of the hoost apperceyued it / And sawe  
that the toure began to falle / they passed the dyche / and brought 3  
engyns vnto the walles. Ther began they with grete exploit to  
myne the walle and to perse it, they within caste grete stones upon 8  
the engyns / And with shotte of handbowes and arbalestres they  
hurted 4 many of them that they sawe discouerd / And by cause  
they sawe that the 5 closynge of the toure began to faylle / they walle 1  
it within forth with stones and chalk, and made a right stronge 12  
wall good and thycke / 6 Our men that were atte tour 6 had made an  
hole in the walle, that two men myght wel entre attones frely /

On the walle in the parte where Duc Godeffroye assaylled, ther  
was a turke stronge, grete, & hardy, which dyde grete damage 16  
to oure men / And hurte many with a stronge bowe turquoys that  
he had / And with a lytil of oure langage that he coude / cessed not  
to saye euyl and discourage them that assaylled and called them  
Cowardes. hit happed that duc godeffroye saw it / And auysed 20  
hym many tymes and was merueylously displesyd with hym / 7 And  
thought how he myght chevysse to be at his ease, 7 he toke in his  
hand a arbaleste good and myghty / and helde it bent til the turk  
cam agayn and abandouned 8 hym / The duc toke his syght and 24  
marke and shotte at hym, & smote hym right thurgh the bely,  
that he fyl down to the ground fro the walle / The crye and the  
showtyng began grete in the hooste and the ioye / The duc had  
grete honour and many good prayers therfore. the other sarasyns 28  
that were on that other parte of this deffence were moche abashed

Caxton mistakes here : "*perrières*" (machines for casting stones) for "*pierres*" (stones).

2-2 Caxton's translation here does not make sense. Fr. "*Le jour de l'assault on commença à veoir crevaces, en celle tour, qui se longuement s'estoit tenue,*" i. e. they commenced to see the crevices, instead of "*breaking*" them.

3 Fr. "*menèrent un chat,*" brought a cat, i. e. a covered shed.

4 Orig. hurted.

5 Fr. *closture, barriere*, that which encloses.

6-6 Fr. "*nos gens, qui estoit ou chat,*" our people who were in the shed.

7-7 Fr. "*se pensa comment il porroit ce venchier,*" and devised a plan for revenging himself.

8 Fr. "*s'abandonna,*" exposed himself.

- and ferd that they deffended them the more cowardly. The other that were in the other partyes of the toun caste fro the tours stones vpon oure peple that were atte assault and hurte many with castyng, 4 shotyng, and throwyng vpon oure engyns pytche / Oyle and grece alle boylling / And threwe also brondes and other thynges brennyng moche thycke in suche wyse, that somme they brente. They that assaylled on the partye of therle of tholouse at the tour that I 8 sayd to you to fore, laboured sore for to myne the walle / But one thyng destroubled them sore, what someuer they brak on the day / they within made it agayn in the nyght / in such wise that they were in wylle to leue it / And wrought more slowly than they 12 dyde byfore,<sup>1</sup> wherfore a moche valyaunt knyght of <sup>2</sup>the hooste of the Normans cam right theder and admonested the assaylles<sup>3</sup> for to goo forth, he passed the dyche tofore with his helme laced / the shelde vpon his heed and brake vygorously<sup>4</sup> the walle, where as 16 the turkes<sup>5</sup> had made agayn / But ther was none that folowed hym. And they of the wallys threwe so grete stones on him and so thycke, that they slewe hym in the presence of the other that were by / And after with hookes and crochettes they drewe the bodye vp to 20 them on the walle / And there disarmed hym, and threwe the bodye to our peple. Thenne our men that were there toke the body, and buried it worshipfully / he was moche bewaylled in thoost of cristen men.

They threw down oil and boiling grease upon our men.

They rebuilt by night what our men destroyed by day.

[<sup>2</sup> If. 48, bk.]

A valiant Norman assailed the walls, but none followed him, and he was killed.

- 24 How after many assaultes, oure men beyng in Counseyl, A lombard cam to them, whiche offred to make an engyne that shold destroye the toun.

capitulo / lxj<sup>o</sup>.

- 28 t Henne sawe the Barons that they loste moche peple with thassault / And dyde but litil harme with theyr engyns<sup>6</sup> vnto<sup>7</sup> the toun and theyr enemyes / Assembled for to make counseyl how they myght doo / There cam a man to them, a lombard, 32 which had seen the grete hurte & losse of our peple / & sayd to the barons that he was a good maister to make engyns, yf he myght haue stuff & maters therto propice & necessary / which with goddes helpe shold in short tyme ouerthrowe the tour where 36 to they had don so moche payne / and wold make large waye for to

A Lombard offered to build some engines of war for the Crusaders.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* byforee.

<sup>5</sup> *Orig.* turkes.

<sup>3</sup> *Fr.* assaillours.

<sup>6</sup> *Orig.* eugyns.

<sup>4</sup> *Orig.* vygoronsly.

<sup>7</sup> *Orig.* vuto.

The barons  
agreed to give  
him material  
and men,  
and to pay  
him well.

He finished  
his engine,  
and fastened  
it to the wall.

[3 leaf 49]

About mid-  
night the  
tower fell.

entre in to the toun who so wolde / They that herde hym promysed  
hym that he shold haue alle that shold be nedeful / And yet a  
good reward and ryche for his laboure / This maister toke werkmen  
and made them to werke as he commaunded, that in short tyme he 4  
had made his engyn, whiche was merueillously<sup>1</sup> strong and grete /  
And ioyned it to the walle alle ful of men of armes & footemen /  
they that were on the walles vpon the tour threwe with grete myght  
grete stones and fyre brennyng<sup>1</sup> moche thycke / but thengyne was 8  
so stronge and rude, that the strokes dyde it no harme / ne the fyre  
myght not fastne on it: whan they of the toun apperceyued that  
they coude not noye this engyn, they were sore a ferde, and dis-  
courageed merueyllously,<sup>2</sup> and alle in despayre. Our men traueylled 12  
to theyr power to take oute the grete stones atte fote of the walle  
of the toure / And vndersett it with strong stanchons and grete /  
whan they had so moche myned that them semed that it was  
ynowgh. They <sup>3</sup>toke <sup>4</sup>theyr habyllemens and sette them ferre fro 16  
the walle / and thenne put fyre on alle sydes vnder the toure, &  
wythdrewe them to their habyllemens and to thengyne alle in  
saufte, whiche were a grete way of.<sup>4</sup> About mydnyght the fyre had  
soo brente and wrought that this tour fyller down to therthe with so 20  
grete a noyse and tempeste that it semed that alle therthe trembled /  
And ther was none, but he had grete horreur and feer in his herte /  
Oure peple made hastely do sowne the trumpettes, and crye to armes  
for to come dilygently to thassault. 24

How after that this engyn had so wel wrought / The  
wyf of solyman, with two of her childeren, wente  
out of the toun and were taken by our men /

cap<sup>o</sup> lxiij<sup>o</sup> 28

Solyman's  
wife endeav-  
ours to escape  
with her two  
sons.

t He wyf of Solyman, that longe had be in mesease of drede /  
had so grete feere that almost she deyde for drede, and sayd  
she myght no lenger see it ne suffre / and made sodanly make redy  
a vessel, and put it on the lake for tescape by nyght / But oure 32

<sup>1</sup> Orig. merueillously.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. merueyllously.

<sup>4-4</sup> This passage seems not to have been entirely understood by Caxton.  
Fr. "Il mistrest leur atret, boiz et grant merrien, por le mur qui iert fortement  
estanconez, puis bouterent le feu de toutes parz et se trestrent arrières dedanz leur  
engins tot sauvement."—Lat. "Et sustentaculis qui murum casurum sustenta-  
bant igne supposito et nutriendis ignibus apta subjecta materia machinam relin-  
quunt ad suos cum omni celeritate se conferentes."

peple that were in the shippes for to kepe the water fro theyr  
 enemyes cam ayenste her, and toke the lady with her two sones  
 that she had with her thenne in her companye. They presented  
 4 them in the mornyng to fore the barons. They made them to be  
 kept right surely with the other prisoners that they had / The  
 Turkes in the toun<sup>1</sup> were thenne in grete meschief, as wel for  
 thentre that was so grete and brode / as for their lady that they  
 8 had loste / thenne they axed trewes for to speke to the barons to  
 gyue ouer the toun and them self in to theyr handes. Taciuss, the  
 greek of whom I haue spoken to fore, whiche was moche double  
 and malycious, spak to the noble men that had the gouernaunce of  
 12 the toun in counseyl, And shewd to them that thyse pylgryms were  
 straungers<sup>2</sup> of ferre countrees and euyl and cruel men / And shold  
 doo to them alle the harme they myght, And destroye the peple  
 and the londe, yf they yelded the cyte to them. But and yf they  
 16 wold aduowe and take themperour to theyr lord / And yelde them  
 to hym theyr lyues sauf, and theyr goodes in to his hande, he shold  
 kepe them well and saufly<sup>3</sup> / and shold doo to them grete good /  
 ffor he was theyr neyghbour / So moche sayd he and dyde, that  
 20 they of the toun toke theyr counseyl<sup>4</sup> & cam to the barons, and  
 sayd to them that they wold put in the handes of themperour theyr  
 lyues sauf / theyr bodyes the cyte and theyr godes / This displeyd  
 not moche to <sup>5</sup>the barons / ffor theyr entencion was for to passe  
 24 forther / & hoped that themperour wolde departe the gayn / proye  
 and goodes of the toun<sup>6</sup> generally in thoost, neuertheles, to fore  
 that they wold graunte them this thyng / they sayde that they  
 shold delyuer entierly, and doo come in to the hoost alle the  
 28 prisonners of pieter theremyte that were in the castel of counthot<sup>7</sup> /  
 And in lyke wyse alle the other that they had taken in the siege,  
 and them to fore that Solyman helde. And this don they acorded  
 that they shold yelde them to themperour / Thenne the barons,  
 32 prynces and knyghtes, and also the comyn peple sente by one  
 acorde messagers to themperour for to sygnefye hym how they of  
 the cyte had yelded them to hym / Therefore they sente to hym /  
 that he shold sende of his hye and noble men with grete nombre of

They were  
taken prison-  
ers by the  
Crusaders.

The Turks  
ask for a  
truce.

Taciuss the  
Greek per-  
suades the  
townspeople  
to surrender  
to the Em-  
peror, instead  
of to the  
Crusaders.

[<sup>5</sup> If. 49, bk.]

The Cru-  
saders agree  
to the sur-  
render, on  
condition that  
all Christians  
be delivered  
to them.

They send  
messengers  
to the Em-  
peror to an-  
nounce that  
the city has  
yielded.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* tonn.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* strauugers.

<sup>3</sup> *Orig.* sanfly.

<sup>4</sup> *Orig.* connseyl.

*Orig.* tonn.

<sup>7</sup> Caxton's French text gives "Cunthot." In the different French MSS. of our text, there is a remarkable row of variations for this word. *Ocrinchot*, *Syniloth* *Couthot*, and *Tunchot*. Lat. *Civitat*.

peple for to resseyue the toun, And the persones of whom they had many / ffor they alle acorde<sup>d</sup> that the honour shold be his, And that the toun shold come in his demayne, And the prisonners at his wyll / They that had enterprised<sup>d</sup> theyr vowe for taccomplysshe, 4 had<sup>d</sup> purposed<sup>d</sup> for to departe fro this place, and to goo forth vnto the lande of surye.

How themperour sente grete barons for to receyue the sayd toun after that our peple had acerteined 8 hym that they wolde yelde it / Capitulo / lxiii

The Emperor was greatly rejoiced, and took possession of the city.

g Rete ioye had themperour of thyse tidynge / he taryed<sup>d</sup> not / but sente of his moost priue men, as wel barons as knyghtes, with grete quantite of men of armes that resseyued the cyte in his 12 name / And garnysshed<sup>d</sup> it of alle thyng that was nedeful, & dyde repayre the walles and alle that was broken of the torettes. Alle that euer they founde in the toun of Armures of Rychesses and of vytaylles they seased for themperour / And sente the 16 prisonners in to Constantinoble / Themperour sente to euerych of the barons special lettres, presented<sup>d</sup> to them grete yeftes / And thanketh them moche of thonour / that they had<sup>d</sup> don to hym / And of this that they so wel kepte theyr promesse / <sup>1</sup>ffor that toun 20

He sent thanks and special gifts to each of the barons.

But the common soldiers complained bitterly,

had<sup>d</sup> don grete gryef and anyauce<sup>2</sup> to thempyre<sup>1</sup> / The mene peple that moch had<sup>d</sup> trauaylled in the siege and<sup>d</sup> had<sup>d</sup> holpen with grete courage / compleyned<sup>d</sup> sore / ffor they had<sup>d</sup> hoped<sup>d</sup> that alle the hauoyr and<sup>d</sup> goodes of the toun shold<sup>d</sup> haue ben departed<sup>d</sup> emonge them / 24 But themperours men bare it alle away, And they that trauaylled<sup>d</sup> for it were not rewardid<sup>d</sup> / the worde that was moche grete cam <sup>3</sup>vnto the barons / & they sayd<sup>d</sup> that they had grete wronge / ffor the couenautes made bytwene themperour & them were suche 28 that yf they gate in theyr waye, ony cytees that had<sup>d</sup> ben to fore themperours, they shold deyluere the cyte & the londe to themperour / but the proyes & gayne shold<sup>d</sup> be departed<sup>d</sup> in thoost. Ayenst thyse couenautes dyde themperour, but it was not tyme 32 thenne ne place to make argument ne debate ayenst the Grekes, therfor the noble men made the comyn peple to tarye,<sup>5</sup> to thende

because they received none of the spoils.

[<sup>3</sup> leaf 50, sig. 61]

→ Caxton's French MS. is faulty here. A. gives the correct reading:—

"*que grant accroissement avoient ja fait a l'empire.*"

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* anyauce.

<sup>4</sup> *Orig.* drparted,

<sup>5</sup> *Fr. taire, to keep still, not "to tarye."*

that they shold not enpesshe this pylgremage / thus was suffred  
 that the wyf of soliman & his ij sones & grete plente of prisoners  
 were ledde in saefte vnto themperour / which made moch grete  
 4 feste to the lady & her childeren, & as longe as they were in the  
 toun he helde them moche honorably / after in short tyme he  
 sente them agayn to solyman, alle quyte delyuerd, without demand-  
 yng of ony raunson. this dyde he to thende, to haue the loue and  
 8 grace of the turkes / in suche wyse that ther was bytwene them  
 a counseyl & acorde to greue our peple / & also for another  
 rayson / that is to wete yf they were in such poynt of another cyte  
 or place, that the cristiens constreyned so by force, that they shold  
 12 not be aferd to yelde them frely in the hande of themperour / thus  
 was taken the cyte of nycene, the yere of thyncarnation of our lord,  
 a / M / lxxxxvij, the xx day of the moneth of Iuyn.

Solyman's wife and children were delivered up to the Emperor, who sent them safely back to Solyman.

The city of Nicæa was taken on the 20th day of June, 1097.

How our<sup>1</sup> hoost<sup>2</sup> departed on theyr iourney / & how  
 16 som departed fro theyr felawship / and how soly-  
 man determyned tassayle them /

### Capitulo lxiiij<sup>o</sup>

t He hoost of the pylgryms departed by the commaundement of  
 20 the barons, the iij daye to fore thentree of Iuylle, fro the place  
 where they had holden siege / they wente two dayes to gydre moche  
 peasybly / & after lodged them by a brygge for the ease of the  
 water / On the morn, after they customme atte spryngyng of the  
 24 day, they passed the brygge duryng the derknesse of the nyght, ffor  
 it was not wel day / Or, perauenture,<sup>3</sup> they departed wetyngly the  
 one fro the other, ffor buymont, the duc of normandye / Therle  
 steuen of chartres / Tancre and therle of seynt pol torned away on  
 28 the lyft syde / And descended in to a valeye named Gurgom / And  
 lodged them there aboute none by a ryuer, where as was grete  
 plente of water / There rested they al that nyght in peas. But,  
 neuertheles, they made theyr hoost chaunge<sup>4</sup> theyr watche diligently /  
 32 alle the other torned on the right honde alle the day / & went  
 thurgh a fayre Countre / & lodged them in fayre grete medowes  
<sup>5</sup> vpon the water syde. And that one hoost was fro that other more  
 than two myle / Soliman had his herte swollen, and was felly an  
 36 angred that he had thus loste his wyf with his children and his

The Crusaders marched forth out of Nicæa,

and encamped a two-days' march from the city.

Here they separated into two divisions.

[<sup>5</sup> 1f. 50, bk.]

<sup>1</sup> Orig. onr.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. hoost.

<sup>3</sup> Orig. perauenture,

<sup>4</sup> Fr. *exchauguaitier*.

Solyman followed the left division to see how he might harm them.

He attacked them at day-break.

They placed the women and children in a safe place,

sent messages to the rest of the army, and prepared to defend themselves.

Solyman had 200,000 horsemen, our people were but few in number, and mostly on foot.

noble cyte / he commaunded<sup>t</sup> to folowe oure peple on the lyfte  
 syde / And dyde grete peyne to see how he myght greue them, he  
 had<sup>t</sup> with hym a moch grete nombre of men of armes on horsbak /  
 his espyes were with the pylgryms, whiche toke heede of alle theyr 4  
 couyne, they dyde hym to wete that oure hoost was deuyded in two  
 parties / And that the lasse partye was tord<sup>t</sup> toward<sup>t</sup> the lyfte side  
 ner to hym than that other parte / he was moche glad and Ioieful  
 whan he herde thyse tydynges / he sawe that he was wel in poynt 8  
 for to venge hym / And had his men al redy, and ordeyned his  
 bataylle to poynt at the day sette / departed for to befyghte oure  
 men, thus as the spryngynge of the day began to clere / the men  
 that made the watche this nyght that were withdrawen a lytil fro 12  
 thoost, apperceyued them, and cryed<sup>t</sup> to Armes, And blewe hornes  
 and trompettes moche affrayedly / the hoost awook sodenly, and  
 our men armed them right hastely / And ordeyned theyr bataylles  
 as they had deuysed. The wymmen / sekemen and childeren were 16  
 ledd<sup>t</sup> a part besyde a water al ful of reed<sup>t</sup>, by whiche men myght  
 not come to them, to fore were they closed<sup>t</sup> with cartes and  
 charyottes / wherof they had grete plente. And after sente mes-  
 sagers vnto the grete hooste, ffrom whiche they were folylly 20  
 departed<sup>t</sup> for to praye them that they dylygently wolde come  
 socoure them, ffor they were in moche grete paryll / whan theyr  
 bataylles were thus renged, euen right the first day of Iuyll at the  
 houre of pryme / be ye certayn that Solyman, with a grete nombre 24  
 of men of armes, estemed<sup>t</sup> at two honderd thousand wel armed to  
 poynt and horsed, arryued. ther was not one of them, but he was  
 on horsbak. Oure<sup>1</sup> peple were but fewe / And the moost part of  
 them on foote / And it was no merueylle though they doubted the 28  
 comyng of theyr enemyes.

Of the bataylle that solyman had ayenst som of our  
 peple that were departed fro theyr felawship  
 folylly / ca<sup>o</sup> lxxv<sup>o</sup> 32

Han the Hooste of the Turkes smote in on our men, the noyse  
 w was moche grete of busynes / of trompes / of men, and of  
 horses that none myght be herd / and was grete hydour to  
 here the fyrst comyng on of the turkes / They shotte so thycke 36  
 vpon our peple that there was neuer rayn ne hayl so like, in so

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* onre.



- moch that ther were many hurte of our peple. whan the first route  
 1 had<sup>1</sup> made theyr shotte / The second route cam after where moo <sup>[<sup>1</sup> leaf 51,  
sig. 62]</sup>  
 Archyers were than to fore / & began shote moche more thycke than  
 4 may be recounted<sup>2</sup> / Our knyghtes sawe that they loste theyr horses  
 & them self by the shotte, And smote in to the turkes vygor- <sup>Our men,  
seeing their  
losses, re-  
turned the  
attack of the  
Turks vigor-  
ously.</sup>  
 ously, But the multitude of the turkes were so grete / that our men  
 had grete dammage, whiche were but fewe. They that had theyr  
 8 sheldes & targes they kept them som what, But they that were  
 without armour muste flee / or ellys they had be slayn among the  
 horses. And many were slayn and hurte / There were slayn of oure <sup>2000 of our  
men were  
slain.</sup>  
 peple, as wel of footemen as of horsmen, two thousand. Ther was  
 12 slayn a moche valyaunt yong man, noble and hardy, whiche had  
 don wel alle that day, Guyllam, sone to the Marquys, Brother of<sup>3</sup>  
 Tancre / he was smoton with an arowe and deyde in the place /  
 And another valyant man in like wise named Robert of Paris. He  
 16 deyde by his prowesse / Tancre that was hardy made merueylles of  
 Armes / And abandouned hym self, as he that sette not by his lyf / <sup>Bohemond  
rescued Tan-  
cred, who was  
in great  
danger.</sup>  
 Buymont sawe hym / & he brake alle the prees / And cam there as  
 he was / And toke hym by the brydle and brought hym bak / the  
 20 turkes sawe oure men moche hurte and trauaylled and toke theyr  
 bowes on the lyft Arme, And after ran on them with swerdes and  
 maces in suche wyse that they ouerthrewe<sup>4</sup> them and<sup>5</sup> put them a  
 bak vnto theyr caryage. There they helde them And hydde them <sup>Our men  
retreated.</sup>  
 24 by the reed, and defended them vygorously, and suffred the grete  
 plente of turkes discharge vpon them one route after another.

Of the dilygence that Duc Godeffroy made whan he  
 was aduertised herof / And how Solyman was  
 28 discomfyt & his bagage taken. Capitulo lxxj<sup>o</sup>

- o Wr barons, godeffroy, the noble duc, and the other prynces  
 herde thyse tydynges how buymont and his companye were at  
 suche meschyef hasted them sore / ther cam to gydre the duc<sup>6</sup> and <sup>Godfrey and  
the other  
barons hast-  
ened to the  
assistance of  
Bohemond.</sup>  
 32 his ij bretheren, bawdwyn & Eustace, the erle raymont / hue le  
 mayne, and many other barons ynowgh. The peple a foote<sup>7</sup> /  
 And they that were euyl horsed they left for to kepe the lodgys /  
 they wente forth / & wel<sup>8</sup> xl / m / alle armed & wel horsed /

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* reconnted.<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* of of.<sup>4</sup> *Orig.* onerthrewe.<sup>5</sup> *Orig.* aud.<sup>6</sup> *Orig.* dnk.<sup>7</sup> *Orig.* fooote.<sup>8</sup> Caxton has omitted "*estoient*" here.

When Bohemond's men saw assistance arriving [2 lf. 51, bk.] they took heart and fought more bravely.

The Turks soon fled discomfited.

Our men found great booty in the tents of Solyman.

The Crusaders rested themselves and their horses three days.

<sup>1</sup>whan they approched the place where the batayll was / & sawe them so put a bak / & herde thafraye of trompes & hors / the peple of buymont espyed them, anon their herte cam agayn<sup>1</sup> / & were entierly refresshyd / & smote in to their enemyes as they <sup>4</sup>that nothyng doubte / & began to doo well. The <sup>2</sup>good bisshop of puy was there, & comforted ofte the barons & the knyghtes for tauenge the blood of the cristen men whiche thenemyes of our fayth had there shedde. Incontinent the barons that cam smote <sup>8</sup>in to the turkes so vygorusly <sup>3</sup>that it semed that euerich myght abyde the burthon<sup>4</sup> of the batayle.<sup>3</sup> they slewe so many, and bete down in theyr comynge / that the other durst not abyde, But fledde away discomfyt / the nobles folowed them, & chaced them wel <sup>12</sup>iiij / myle, sleying al them that they myght atteyne. & they founde many of our<sup>5</sup> men prisonners that the turkes ledde with them / whom they delyuerd. after they wente to the tentes of solyman, and there they founde so grete plente of rychesses / of vytaylles / of <sup>16</sup>sheep, of horses, & other beestes that it can not be recounted / Robes, vayssel, & pauyllons of dyuerse colours & of straunge facions in suche wyse that ther was none, but he was ryche. ffor ye may well knowe that / ij C.M / men that solyman had / behoued <sup>20</sup>grete plente of lodgys & of other estorementes.<sup>6</sup> our peple cam agayn in to oure tentes with grete ioye & honour. ther were lost wel in that batayll of our men a foote<sup>7</sup> aboute a .iiij. M., & of horsmen but fewe. Of the turkes were founden dede / iij / M., & <sup>24</sup>there were of them many grete men / this batayll endured fro the hour of pryme vnto nygh none / & ofte our peple had the werse, ffor as I haue said, solyman had / ij C / M / men alle on horsbak. our peple were but / l. M / on horsbak whan they were alle <sup>28</sup>assembled the one with the other / whan our lord had thus gyuen this victorie to his peple / they rested them in this fayr place where the tentes were / thre / dayes / theyr horses refresshed them right wel in this whyle. of the armures & other gayne that they <sup>32</sup>had conquerd vpon theyr enemyes, they arrayed & apparaylled them right wel / that to fore were euyl armed / Moche wel dyde

<sup>1-1</sup> Caxton has mistranslated his French. Fr. "*quant ilz aprouchierent, et les gens de Buymont, qui estoient si audezoubz, oyrent les trompes et l'effroy des chevaux qui venoient, si leur, revint le cuer à tous.*"

<sup>2-3</sup> Fr. "*qu'il sembloit à ung chascun d'eulx que l'en s'atendoit à lui de toute la besoingne,*" that it seemed to each one of them that he was expected to take the whole burden of the battle on himself.

<sup>4</sup> Orig. burthon.

<sup>5</sup> Orig. onr.

<sup>6</sup> Fr. "*estorements,*" equipments.

<sup>7</sup> Orig. foete.

they in this bataylle, & grete honour had they and shal euer haue, and in especial they that here be named / Bawdwyn le borgh / thomas<sup>1</sup> de fedre / regnault de beauvays / Gale<sup>2</sup> de chamont / gaste de bedyers / & geart<sup>3</sup> de cherysy / thenne was ordeyned & acorded by the barons & cryed in thoost / that no man shold ryde fro thens forth by hym self without leue of the captayns.

They will ever receive great honour for this battle.

How the iiij day after this victorie our peple went forth on their waye / & of the grete mesease of thoost the same day / cap<sup>o</sup> lxxvij<sup>o</sup>.

a<sup>4</sup> Fter this, whan they had abyden there thre dayes / the fourth daye folowyng, by tymes to fore day, they dyde doo sowne<sup>5</sup> theyr trompettes, & wente forth on theyr waye / Syth they passed<sup>6</sup> bythyne / And entred in to the londe that was named piside. They trauaylled so long, that at the laste they fonde a contre moche drye & infertile, without waters / The tyme was moche hoot and brénnyng, as it falleth ofte in Iuyll / They had so grete thurst / that they wist not what to doo. the peple on fote specially faylled and faynted, alle for the duste / for the heete / and<sup>7</sup> for thurst / ther deyed wel this same day of mysease fyue honderd men & wymmen. And knowe ye certaynly that ther happed a merueyllous thyng that day in the hoost, that we fynde nowher in none other historye / ffor the wymmen with childe, that yet were not come to theyr terme / by thanguyssh of the heete, & of the mesease of thurst, that they were delyuerd of theyr children & childed / & not only the pour wymmen / but the ryche also / this was a grete sorow, & pyte to see / The men, that ought to be more hard & stronge ayenst trauaylle, wente theyr mouthes open / & sought thayer and moysture therof, whiche they myght not haue : the heete, and also the swote destroyed them / ye shold haue seen the horses and other beestes, that myght not goo<sup>8</sup> forth, in suche wyse that they muste leue them, whiche deyde in the waye / houndes for the chace & huntyng / fowles for the flyght, as ffawcons / hawkes / & sperhawkes, ye shold haue seen that day abyde & deye. & in lyke wyse the grete stedes & cursours,

The fourth day after this victory they went on their way.

[<sup>6</sup> leaf 52, sig. 63]

They suffered so from thirst in this march that 500 died in one day.

Hounde, falcons, and hawks died by the way,

<sup>1</sup> Fr. "Thomas de Fere."

<sup>2</sup> Fr. "Gale de Chaumont."

<sup>3</sup> Fr. "Girart de Cherist."

<sup>4</sup> Orig. Fter.

<sup>5</sup> Orig. sowue.

<sup>7</sup> Orig. aud.

<sup>8</sup> Fr. "aller avant," go further.

and horses  
ran mad for  
lack of water.

Our Lord had  
pity on His  
people,  
and led them  
to a running  
stream.

They arrived  
at Antioch  
the Less,  
and quartered  
the army  
there.

whiche were moost peryllous / becam alle araged and wood for  
thurst<sup>1</sup> / & with grete payne were ledde forth / whan they had  
ben long<sup>1</sup> in this mesease / Our<sup>2</sup> lord beheld them in pyte, &  
made them to adresse in to a valeye, where they fonde<sup>3</sup> a rennyng<sup>4</sup>  
water, fayr & grete. thenne ranne oure peple to the brynke or  
ryuage with grete haste. many ther were that drank so moch that  
they deyde vpon the place; ffor som of them that had eschewed  
the deth / fonde it there, by cause they kepte no mesure. & this<sup>8</sup>  
fyllē vnto knyghtes & other men, and beestes, whiche<sup>4</sup> dranke as  
moche as they wolde / whan they were escape<sup>t</sup> this euyl aduenture,  
they cam in to a londe moch fayr and fertile, ful of woodes, of  
ryuers, of medowes, and of good<sup>t</sup> felde labourable / This was by<sup>12</sup>  
antioche the lasse / whiche is the chyef cyte of the londe of  
pisside; and there lodged they with theyr hoost.

How somme of the grete Barons of thoost, after to  
haue approuched Antyoche the lasse, departed<sup>16</sup>  
for to goo vytaylle them. Capitulo lxxij<sup>o</sup>.

Some went  
farther on,  
because it was  
difficult to

[<sup>1</sup> If. 52, bk.]  
find pro-  
visions for so  
many.

Baldwin,  
Godfrey's  
brother, led  
one party,  
and Tancred  
another.

f Ro thens departed / som of the barons of thoost / & helde  
their waye, by cause it was a greuouus thyng<sup>t</sup> to fynde vytaylles  
<sup>5</sup>to so moche peple to gydre / The fyrst was Bawdwyn, Brother to<sup>20</sup>  
the duc; with hym was peter<sup>6</sup> therle of scaruay, Reynart therle of  
toul / Bawdwyn de borgh, & guyllebert de montcler / ther wer  
wel v / C / on horsbak / & ladde with them men a fote largely /  
The second<sup>t</sup> was tancre / & with hym Rychard<sup>t</sup> du pryncipat,<sup>24</sup>  
Robert danse,<sup>7</sup> & other knyghtes<sup>8</sup> grete nombre, that they were /  
v C / on horsbak, & had also many men a foote as the other had.  
theyr entencion and purpose was to ride about the thoost in the  
contre, for to<sup>9</sup> seche somme aduenture and vytaylle; <sup>10</sup>& yf they<sup>28</sup>  
had founde ony paryll / grief, pas, or plente of theyr enemyes,<sup>10</sup> that  
they wold<sup>t</sup> lete thoost haue knowleche therof / they wente strayt

<sup>1</sup> Orig. thurst.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. Onr.

<sup>3</sup> Orig. foude.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. "si l'en les laissoit tant boire comme ilz voulerent."

<sup>6</sup> Caxton has here misread his French, which gives "*Pierre conte de Starnoy*." This, in turn, is a corruption for *Stadenois*, which is the reading of A. Lat. comes de Stadenes.

<sup>7</sup> Fr. "*Robert d'Anse*."

<sup>8</sup> Orig. kuyghtes.

<sup>9</sup> Orig. so.

<sup>10-10</sup> Fr. "*Silz eussent trouue aulcun peril de grief pas, ou de plentē de leurs ennemis*," if they should get into any trouble, either from a dangerous place, or on account of the great number of their enemies.

theyr waye, & passed by syde ij cytees: that one was named  
 lychonie, and that other Eraclee. after, they torned on the right  
 honde, and passed toward the see side. The duc Godeffroy & the  
 4 other prynces abode in theyr lodgys, for the plesaunt & delyt-  
 able places that they had founden, by cause they wolde playe &  
 refresshe them of the trauaylles & annoyas that they had suffred.  
 thenne said they that they wold goo hunte in to the forestes, which  
 8 were nygh to them on alle sydes, & were ful of wilde beestes /  
 On the morn they entred in the woode / eche helde his way at his  
 will. the duc, as he wente a path thurgh the foreste, herde a man  
 crye / & he drewe thederward / & he sawe a poure man, that  
 12 was goo for to fetch wode for to bere in to the hoost, fledde,  
 strongly cryeng, to fore a grete bere / The duc ran vpon hym, &  
 drewe his swerd for to delyuere the pour man fro the beeste / thenne  
 the bere adressyd hym vnto the duc, and lefte the pour man, that  
 16 fledde fro hym / he hurte the dukes hors so sore, that he caste the  
 duc to therthe. The duc leep a foote, & drewe oute his swerde.  
 the beeste was nothyng aferd of hym, but made a felonnous crye,  
 horryble & hydous, & syth ran vpon the duc, & bote hym  
 20 right cruelly in the thyne. after, he adressyd hym right vp, &  
 embraced hym with his potes, or feet to fore, for to haue caste hym  
 to grounde. the duc, thus hurt as he was, was yet moch strong,  
 & fyl not to the erth thenne / but caught hym by the skyn about  
 24 the necke with his lyfte hande, for to put away his heed from hym ;  
 & with that other hand he put his swerd in to his body, thurgh  
 bothe the sydes vnto the crosse, and so slewe hym. After, he  
 wente and sette hym down on therthe right by / ffor he had so moch  
 28 bledde of his wounde that he had in his thyne, and was so mer-  
 ueyllously sore hurte<sup>1</sup> that he myghte not stonde longe on his feet.  
 The poure man, whiche he had delyuerd fro deth, ran hastely in to  
 the hoost / and tolde them this tydyng<sup>2</sup> of the <sup>3</sup>duc. Alle they  
 32 that herde it were so effrayed that they ranne with grete haste  
 theder / The barons, and alle the other that myght goo. they  
 founde hym lyeng on the ground, pale<sup>4</sup> and discoloured ; and after  
 toke hym in a lyttier, and bare hym in to the hoost. But neuer  
 36 man was more demened, ne more sorow made, ne<sup>5</sup> noe moo pytyous  
 cryes and lamentacions thurgh alle the lodgyses, As wel ryche as  
 poure / and men as wymmen / Anon were sette alle the maistres

They passed  
by the cities  
of Lycaonia  
and Heraclea.

Duke God-  
frey, while  
hunting, saw  
a man fleeing  
from a great  
bear.

The Duke  
attacked the  
bear, and  
was severely  
wounded.

The man  
whom he had  
[<sup>3</sup> leaf 53,  
sig. 64.]  
rescued ran  
to the camp  
with the  
tidings.

The barons  
came and  
carried God-  
frey home  
in a litter,  
with great  
lamentations.

<sup>1</sup> Orig. hnrte.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. tydyuge.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. "vain," weak, faint.

<sup>5</sup> Orig. nr.

and cirurgens for to dychte hym & to hele hym; there were many / ffor euerych of the prynces had of them, for to awayte on them in the hoost.

Here recounteth thystorye of somme aduentures that  
thenne<sup>1</sup> fyllen in the hoost of cristen men /

cap<sup>o</sup> lxix<sup>o</sup>

At the same  
time, Ray-  
mond of Tou-  
louse was  
very ill.

i N this sayson, the same tyme, it happed that another valyaunt  
man, named Raymont, Erle of tholouse, laye down seke of a 8  
maladye moche greuous and peryllous / Neuerthelesse, the hooste  
wente forth alwey / Therfor he must be caryed forth in a lyttier.  
On a day it happed that he was so deteyned of his maledye / that  
certeynly they supposed that he shold deye / They that kepte hym 12  
made the littier to be sette down to the grounde, ffor they sawe hym  
so feble that they thought certaynly that the sowle shold departe.  
The bisshop of Orenge, whiche was a moche holy man and a  
religions, sayd the commendacion for the sowle and the seruyse, as 16  
of one deyng, sauf syngyng masse. Alle the hoost was ouermuche  
discomforted / by cause they supposed alle, that anon and sodanly  
to lese thise two grete men, whiche were of moche grete counseyl<sup>2</sup>  
and of grete ayde / They made prayers and orysons thurgh alle 20  
thoost, Where as they songe masses. The ryche and the pour  
prayde moche humbly, and with good herte, that our lord wold  
rendre them hool and sauf / for to socoure and counseyle them / as  
they had nede. The barons departed in charyte largely almesse 24  
vnto the pour peple / so moche dyde they, one and other, that oure  
lord, whiche is ful of pyte, herde them, and gaf helthe to the two  
noble men in short tyme, in suche wyse that they rood al hool, &  
in good poynt with thooste they passed al pissyde. And after 28  
entred in to a lande named lycaine, And cam vnto<sup>3</sup> a Cyte called  
licoine / they founde it alle voyde, and nothyng therin / they had  
grete meseases of vytaylle, ffor the Turkes, whiche had herde the  
tydynges that oure peple cam / trusted in none of theyr fortresses / 32  
but voyded them, and fledde in to the forestes and<sup>4</sup> montaynes /  
[\* ff. 53, bk.] men, wymmen & childeren, <sup>5</sup> horses, beestes, vytaylle, & alle  
other thyng they caryed with them / They<sup>6</sup> suffred moche disease

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* theune.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* counseyl.

<sup>3</sup> *Orig.* vuto.

<sup>4</sup> *Orig.* aud.

<sup>6</sup> Fr. "*Car ilz se hastèrent moult de passer cellui pays,*" they hastened, not  
"suffered."

The army  
was in great  
grief, for they  
expected to  
lose both of  
these great  
men.

The sick  
and the poor  
prayed hum-  
bly that God  
would spare  
them, and He  
heard their  
prayers.

to passe that contre. They cam in to Eraclee / And after cam in to  
 a cyte named Marase / There they lodged and sojourned thre dayes /  
 Bawdwyn, brother of the Duc, that was departed fro the hoost, left  
 4 his wyf with his two bretheren / She deyde there of sekenesse /  
 She was an hye lady of Englonde, valyaunt,<sup>1</sup> wyse, and good /  
 gutier<sup>2</sup> was her name / She was buryed and entereed moche  
 honorably in the same place / She was moche bewaylled in the  
 8 hoost.

They went on  
 to Eraclee,  
 and from  
 thence to  
 Marase.

Here Bald-  
 win's wife,  
 Gutiera, was  
 left, and here  
 she died.

How Tancre, that was departed fro the hoost, as-  
 sieged Tarse / And toke it by certeyn couenaunt.  
 cap<sup>o</sup> lxx<sup>o</sup>

12 t Ancre, whiche was a wyse a man, and of grete courage, rode  
 thurgh the londe sekynd auenture, in suche wyse that he fonde  
 in his waye a cyte called Tarse. This londe of Scylce is a countre  
 of thoryent, toward the sonne gooyng down. In this londe ben  
 16 two grete cytees, whiche ben Archebisshoprichs, that one named  
 Tarse, of whiche I said to fore / Therin was born seynt poul  
 thapostle / That other was named anauazie / And eche of these two  
 cytees haue other cytees vnder them / Tarse founded one of the  
 20 childeren of Noe Ionen, whiche was sone of Iaphet / the sone of  
 Noe. Neuerthles, (19) solins sayth that perseus founded it / but it  
 maye be wel that one founded it / And that other repayred and  
 amended it / Tancre assieged this cyte, and constreyned them  
 24 within, what by menaces and fayr wordes / that they yelded it to  
 hym in a manere / They sette this banere vpon the hiest toure of  
 the toun. And he swar and affermed to kepe them from damage  
 and hurte; ne non shold be put out of his hows, ne lese ony thyng  
 28 that apperteyned to them vnto the comynge of the grete hoost.  
 And thenne shold they yelde the toun vnto the grete prynces of  
 thoost without ony debate / Thus was it acorded bytwene hym and  
 them of the toun. In this toun were cristen men, hermyns, and  
 32 grekes / And in alle the londe about.<sup>3</sup> But the turke helde alle the  
 fortresses that medled with armes / And had the seynorye vpon  
 this peple / And wold not suffre them of nothyng, sauf to occupye  
 and laboure therthe, and for to marchaunte to bye and selle.

Tancred's  
 party arrived  
 at Tarsus,

where St.  
 Paul was  
 born.

Tancred  
 besieged it,  
 and com-  
 pelled it to  
 surrender.

In this city  
 were Chris-  
 tians, Greeks  
 and Ar-  
 menians,  
 but the Turks  
 were the lords  
 of the land.

<sup>1</sup> Orig. valyaut.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. Gutiere, Lat. Gutuera.

<sup>3</sup> Orig. about.

How Bawdwyn, brother of Godeffroy, sechyng<sup>1</sup> his  
 auentures, sawe tancre & his peple to fore tarse,  
 & adressed hym to them / ca° / lxxj

[2 leaf 54] 2b Awdwyn, Brother of the Duc, and the peple that he ledde 4  
 with hym, were entred in to a countre moost barayn, where  
 they suffred grete peyne for vytaylle. After, they cam vpon a  
 montayne, where they myght see alle the londe of Scilice / and  
 the cytees vnto the see. They sawe tarse nygh them, and<sup>3</sup> the 8  
 pauyllons, And they supposed that they had be turkes / that had  
 assieged the cyte / They descended down for to knowe what peple  
 they were / And also for tenquere the beyng of the countre about /  
 They that were with tancre, in thauaunt garde, sawe thyse men of 12  
 armes approuche, And lete theyr lord haue knowleche / Tancre  
 wende certaynly that they had be turkes, that cam for to soccure  
 them of the toun, and made eche man to arme hym dylygently /  
 and sette them in ordenannc; And after yssued oute ayenst them / 16  
 The baners displayed. But whan they approuched that one to the  
 other / And knewe eche other by the armes / they opened theyr  
 helmes and embraced eche other, and made moche grete ioie, And  
 after cam to the cyte. And thenne bawdwyn was by tancre right 20  
 wel and honourably lodged, ffor tancre had grete plente of vytaylles,  
 of whiche bawdwyn and his peple had grete nede.

Baldwin's  
 party, after  
 many hard-  
 ships, arrived  
 at a moun-  
 tain from  
 whence they  
 could see  
 Tancred's  
 tents.

Tancred mis-  
 took them for  
 Turks as they  
 approached,

and went out  
 against them.

They soon  
 recognized  
 each other  
 as friends.

Of thenuye that bawdwyn & his peple had to see  
 the baner of tancre vpon the walle of the toun / 24  
 & how tancre departed. ca° / lxxij°

i N the morne whan the sonne was vp, and cleer daye, bawdwyn,  
 and they that were with hym, sawe the baner of tancre vpon  
 the hiest tour of the toun. And had therof moche grete enuye; 28  
 and began to murmure and speke maliciously of that they had  
 gretter power, and moo peple and better, & said that they ought  
 to haue the worship of this toun / It is trouthe that vnto this day  
 there / bawdwyn and Tancre had ben lyke two bretheren, in moche 32  
 pryue acqueyntaunce and trewe loue / But bawdwyn, by enuye of  
 his herte and by euyl wordes that som of his men made hym to  
 vnderstonde, was thus of this thyng meuyd. Tancre, whiche  
 was moche wyse, attemperat and resonable man, vnderstode thise 36

Baldwin and  
 his men were  
 jealous when  
 they saw Tan-  
 cred's banner  
 on the tower.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* sechyug.

<sup>3</sup> *Orig.* aud.



- wordes,<sup>1</sup> And dyde moche payne for tapesse hym. And cam in  
 persone to bawdwyn, and shewde hym / how to fore that he was  
 comen / ne that noman knewe of his comynge, were thyse couen-  
 4 aunes made bytwene hym and them of the toun / And his baner  
 sette vpon the toure. And herin he vnderstode not that he myght  
 haue ony shame ne dishonour. Bawdwyn was not <sup>2</sup>content of [s. 1f. 54, bk.]  
 thise wordes, and he founde somme that attysed hym in his folye /  
 8 he spak grete wordes, yll<sup>e</sup> and iniuryouses, to tancre / in suche  
 wyse / that with lytil more they wolde haue<sup>3</sup> don armed theyr men,  
 for to haue destroyed eche other. thenne sente bawdwyn for them  
 of the toun / And whan they cam, he menaced them strongly, and  
 12 saide that they shold throwe down the baner of Tancre to therthe /  
 And sette vp his on the tour:<sup>4</sup> And yf they dyde not, they shold  
 wel knowe that he wold destroye them, and alle that they had  
 without the toun / and take the toun and caste it to therthe,  
 16 maulgre alle that tancre myght doo / They of the cyte sawe that  
 tancre myght not waraunte ne deffende them ayenst bawdwyn,  
 made with hym suche couenauntes as they had made to fore with  
 tancre / And sette his baner where as he commaunded<sup>5</sup> / Tancre  
 20 saw the force that was don to hym, and was gretely desplesyd, and  
 had grete yre in his herte / But he couerd his thought wysely, And  
 wold not suffre the peple, that were comen in this pylgremage for to  
 make warre ayenst thenemyes of the fayth of Ihesu Crist, shold  
 24 slee eche other for thoccasion of hym. he departed fro this place /  
 ffor he doubted that somme noyse or medle myght sourde herof.  
 And cam to a cyte nygh by, named adane / There myght he not  
 entre / ffor a noble man of burgoyne, named gelpes, was parted fro  
 28 thoost with a grete route of men of armes as the other dyde, for to  
 seke auentures, and he had taken this cyte by force / And had  
 caste out the turkes / And helde it entierly. Tancre herde that  
 somme of our peple helde it, and sente good messagers to gelpes,  
 32 And<sup>6</sup> prayd hym to opene the yates, and suffre his men that they  
 myght goo in to the toun for to bye to them suche as they neded /  
 This Gelpes dyde it debonayrly / And hym self gaf to them  
 largely for nought / ffor he had founde the toun ful of gold and  
 36 syluer, of Robes, of beestes / of whete / of wyne / of oyle / and of  
 alle good that a man had nede of /

Tancred tried  
to appease  
Baldwin.

Baldwin answered him  
insultingly,

and com-  
manded the  
citizens to set  
his banner in  
the place of  
Tancred's.

Tancred, to  
avoid a con-  
flict, left  
and went to  
Adana.

The lord of  
Adana, Gel-  
phes, received  
Tancred  
kindly, and  
gave him  
everything  
that he  
needed.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* wrodes.<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* hane.<sup>4</sup> *Orig.* tonr.<sup>5</sup> *Orig.* commanuded.<sup>6</sup> *Orig.* Aud.

How, a lytil after, tancre cam to the cyte of anamystre, whiche the turkes helde it, and toke it by assault / cap<sup>o</sup> lxxiiij<sup>o</sup>

Tancred took t leave of his host the next morning, and went on to Anamystre. Ancre on the morn toke leue of his hooste, And toke his way 4 with his peple / And rode so fer that he cam to a Cyte, named anamystre<sup>1</sup> / This was one of the beste cytees of that londe / It was fayr / and moche delytable. Tancre cam theder, and knewe certeynly that the turkes helde it / he assieged it al aboute, And 8 fro <sup>2</sup>the tyme that he cam he assayled<sup>2</sup> the toun. thus he dyde the first, the second, and the thirde day / so many assaults he made to them, and hurted them of the toun,<sup>3</sup> that they were strongly greuyd. and abasshed. they without toke <sup>4</sup>the toun, and entred vnder the 12 walles,<sup>4</sup> And thus was the toun taken by force / And alle them that he fonde therin of hethen peple, he put to deth without mercy. The toun was ful of rychesses, and alle maner of vytylles were grete plente. Tancre departed al the gayn and the goodes of the 16 toun to his men, as he that wel knewe how that he shold<sup>5</sup> doo / and to eche man after that he was / in suche wyse that alle his men were ryche. They refresshed<sup>6</sup> them moche wel, and theyr beestes, of the mesease that they had suffred<sup>6</sup> in theyr waye. They soiourned 20 there a grete whyle with moche grete deduyt.

[<sup>2</sup> leaf 55]

He took this city after a three days' assault.

They refresshed themselves and their horses here.

How bawdwyn entred in Tarse. And how / iii.C of our pylgryms were slayn of the turkes to fore the same toun. ca<sup>o</sup> lxxiiij, 24

After the departure of Tancred, Baldwin commanded the inhabitants of Tarsus to admit him into the city. b Audwyn sawe / that Tancre was departed fro Tarse, And sente for them of the toun<sup>3</sup> and sayde to them that they shold<sup>4</sup> lete them entre in to the toun, ffor hym thought<sup>5</sup> shame to lye long and abyde there ydle without doying ony thyng, tyl the comynge 28 of the grete hoost / They sawe and aduysed wel that they had not power ynough to resiste them, and thought yf they lete them not entre with theyr agreement / that they wold entre ayenst theyr wylle & without force<sup>6</sup> / thenne they opened their gates / & wold 32

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *Anamistre*, Lat. *Mamistrane*.

<sup>3</sup> Orig. tonn.

<sup>4-4</sup> Fr. "*prinrent eschieles et entrerent pardessus les murs*."

<sup>5</sup> Orig. thought.

<sup>6</sup> Fr. "*et à force*," and by force. Caxton has said here exactly the contrary of what he intended, probably.

that bawdwyn shold haue two toures where he shold lodge, & other of those in the howses in the toun alle peasibly, the turkes that had the seynnorye of the toun helde yet the other towres in  
 4 theyr puissaunce / they had in moche grete doubte and suspicion bawdwyn and his men that were lodged in the toun / And they thought that they shold haue no socours / And aboute this they had moche grete drede of the grete hoost that shortly shold arryue  
 8 there / and sought emonge them the moyens and maner / How they myght yssue oute of the toun, and lede with them theyr wyues<sup>1</sup> and childeren<sup>2</sup> with theyr pryncipal bageus and Iewellys / It happed that this same nyght thre honderd men afote that were  
 12 departed fro Buymont for to folowe tancere arryued alle to fore this Cyte of Tarse, where they thought to fynde hym / whan bawdwyn knewe what peple they were / and that they wente in thayde of tancere / he wold not<sup>3</sup> suffre them to entre in to the toun / They  
 16 were wery and<sup>4</sup> traunylled and prayd hym moche swetly, and cryed hym mercy many tymes, that for the loue of god he wold doo so moche that they myght this nyght be lodged in the toun / ffor they wold no thyng but<sup>5</sup> good. herof the fotemen<sup>6</sup> of this companye  
 20 prayd hym in lyke wise / But he wold in nowyse here them / Neuertheles by cause they without<sup>7</sup> had mesease / the mene peple in the toun aualed down with cordes, breed ynough,<sup>8</sup> and wyn in barellys, and other vytaylles, with whiche they myght wel passe  
 24 this nyght / whan our peple were a slepe in the toun, And they without began theyr first sleep it happed that the turkes that were within the toures / opened the yates of whiche they had the keyes secretly withoute noyse, & ledde out theyr wyues, theyr childeren,  
 28 & alle their thynges, And all the hethen men of the toun thought they were not sure with theyr ghestes, and yssued out of alle the toun : whan theyr wyues and childeren were withdrawen a lytil fro the toun / they wolde leue tokenes cruell and ylle of theyr depart-  
 32 yng / they cam vnto the thre honderd pylgrims that laye withoute gate & slepte strongly as they that doubted of nothyng / And put them alle to deth and slewe them / yf any of them escaped he was happy.

They agreed to let him have two towers.

The Turks were much afraid of Baldwin.

300 of Tancere's men arrived that night, but were very inhospitably received by Baldwin.

[\* 1f. 55, bk.]

That very night the Turks secretly left the city with their families and property.

and slew the 300 outside of the walls.

<sup>1</sup> Orig. wyues.

<sup>2</sup> Caxton's French text, which is corrupt, gives : "*avec leurs aultres principales bages*," which he has followed by translating "bageus and jewellery." The Lat. gives "*et omni mada substantia sua*," which the better French texts translate, by "*toutes leurs choses*."

<sup>3</sup> Orig. uot.

<sup>6</sup> Orig. bnt.

<sup>6</sup> Fr. "*de sa companye*," of his own army. <sup>7</sup> Orig. withont. <sup>8</sup> Orig. ynough.

How the peple of bawdwyn knewe the departyng of  
the turkes, and of the slaughter of the cristen  
men. cap<sup>o</sup> lxxv<sup>o</sup>.

In the morn-  
ing Baldwin's  
men dis-  
covered the  
flight, and  
the dreadful  
slaughter  
that had  
taken place.

The common  
soldiers put  
the blame on  
Baldwin.

The knights  
begged the  
soldiers to be  
quiet  
[3 leaf 56]  
until Baldwin  
could address  
them.

One morning  
they saw a  
fleet in the  
sea near  
them,

from  
Flanders,  
Holland, and  
Friesland.

o N the morne erly whan oure men awoke in the toun they sawe 4  
the toures where the turkes had be lodged open and the howses  
voyde / They knewe wel that they were fledde. They serched the  
walles and<sup>1</sup> yates for to enquire how they were goon. they wente  
so ferre that they fonde this grete occision<sup>2</sup> and slaughter at the 8  
gate. Thenne began a sorow and a moche grete crye in the toun,  
Alle men put the blame and culpe on Bawdwyn and hys knyghtes,  
ffor they wold auenge the deth of theyr bretheren, whom the  
sarasyns had so shamefully and vylaynously slayn. By cause that the 12  
knyghtes of bawdwyn and also he hym self wold not suffre them  
to come in to the toun. And in dede the men of foote sayd this  
was don by grete outrage & grete falshede. And yf they had  
not lyghtly withdrawen them in to the toures / they had smyten 16  
them alle to deth / The knyghtes helde them alle styll tyl that  
the footemen were cooled / and after sente messagers whiche spak  
to them and requyre them to forbere so long / tyl that Bawdwyn  
had spoken to them / they were content to here Bawdwyn speke. 20  
Bawdwyn excused hym to fore alle / and swar and affirmed that  
for none other thyng thentre was deffended them, but for that he  
had sworn to them of the toun / that by hym shold none entre tyl  
the grete hooste cam / By thyse wordes and by cause other enter- 24  
meted to make the peas and spoken debonayrly to the mene peple,  
was bawdwyn acorded to the foote men and his knyghtes also. In  
this toun they sojourned and abode a certayn whyle, vntyl a morn-  
yng / they sawe in the see nygh them<sup>4</sup> a shippe aboute iij myle fro 28  
them / They yssued oute of the toun and descended to the see /  
they that were in the ship approched to them in suche wyse that  
they spak to gydre / they of the ship sayde that they were cristen  
men, they demaunded of what contre, and they answerd of flaun- 32  
dres / of holande / and of ffryselande / And trouth it was they  
had be escumours<sup>5</sup> of the see and robbers the space of viij yere.  
Now they repented them / And by penaunce cam in pylgremage to  
Iherusalem / they desyred them to come a londe / And they cam 36

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* aud.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* occisiou.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. "*une navie*," a fleet, instead of a single ship. Lat. *classis*.

<sup>5</sup> Fr. "*escumeurs*," pirates, corsairs.

- and made to gydre grete ioye / they had a maister ouer them named guynemer.<sup>1</sup> And was born of boloyne vpon the see in the londe of Erle Eustace, fader of the said duc Godeffroy / whan he herde that  
 4 Bawdwyn the sone of his lord was there, he lefte his ship, And said he wold goo with hym to Iherusalem / he was moche ryche of this euyl gayne. And had many men with hym / that he ladde in his ship / thenne Bawdwyn lefte / v.C men of armes for to kepe the  
 8 toun wel in poynt. And after he toke his waye for to seke somme auentures as he dyde to fore / he helde the right way til he cam to the cyte of anamyster, whiche tancre had gotten by force of armes vpon the turkes, as I haue sayd you to fore / Bawdwyn thought  
 12 wel that he wold not lete hym entre in to the cyte. And therfor he lodged hym in the gardyns about / <sup>2</sup>Tancre knewe that bawdwyn whiche loued him not<sup>2</sup> was so nygh hym / And he had not forgotten the wronge and the oultrage that bawdwyn had don to hym.  
 16 Thenne he dyde do arme his men, and sayde that thenne was tyme for to venge hym / ffor he was nygh his retrayt, & bawdwyn was fer fro his. They sente Archiers to fore in grete nombre for to hurte and slee theyr horses, whiche they had sente in to the  
 20 pastures. Tancre had with hym fyue honderd men of armes in good poynt and wel horsed. And smote in sodanly in to the peple of bawdwyn whiche were not aduysed of them / they slewe many and moo they hurted, the men of bawdwyn ran hastely to  
 24 <sup>3</sup>arme them & cam & fought with them that ran by the tentes / [<sup>3</sup> If. 56, bk.] there began a bataylle bytwene them moche grete and fiers, but it endured not longe, ffor tancre had not so grete plente of peple that myght endure ayenst the men of bawdwyn, therfor they wold with-  
 28 drawe them in to theyr toun / but theyr enemyes enchassed them strongly so moche that they muste flee / there was a brygge ouer a water bytwene the hooste and the cyte / the peple of tancre entred so thyeck that many were lost and slayn vpon the brygge and  
 32 drowned in the water / whan they were put in to the toune agayn they were moche angry in their herte / and wold take more peple and retorne agayn; but the nyght cam that destroubled it<sup>4</sup> / In this scarmuche was taken Rycharde le pryncipal, cosyn germayn of  
 36 tancre, and robert danse, both two were noble men, by their counseyl and atysement tancre had ronne vpon Bawdwyn. Of that

The captain's name was Guy Nemer of Bologne.

Baldwin now started out in search of further adventures.

Tancred armed himself to go against Baldwin to avenge the insult of Tarsus.

Baldwin's army chased Tancred and his men back into the city.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. "guynemers."

<sup>2-3</sup> Fr. "Tancre savoit que Baudouin qu'il n'aimoit mie."

<sup>4</sup> Fr. "le conseil," i. e. their plan.

In the morning messengers of reconciliation were sent between the armies.

The two barons kissed and became friends.

other syde was taken a moche noble man, named Gylbert de Mountcler. they were moche angry on that one syde and on that other for them that they had loste, ffor they doubted that they had ben slayn or drowned / whan it cam on the morn and theyr hertes a lytil aswaged / they sente messagers eche to other / And knewe certaynly that thyse men that were taken lyued of whom they dredde that had ben deed, and good men wente bytwene / And medled for to speke of pees in suche wyse that they cam agayn to 8 entier concordance and parfyght loue by the grace of the holy ghooost that adressyd theyr hertes / They amended theyr trespaas eche to other / And kyssed to gydre as frendes in good fayth /

How the sayd Bawdwyn retorned to the grete hooste / 12  
And how Tancre mayntenyd hym moche wel in  
conqueryng contrees. Capitulo lxxvi°

Baldwin returned to the main army to see his brother.

Tancred and his men went on through Cilicia,

[2 leaf 57]  
and took Alexandria the Less by assault.

b Awdwyn had counseyl whan he was come to ~~Marase~~, as I have recompted that he shold goo no farther forth / But 16 retorned in to thoost of the barons, By cause he herd saye how the duc his brother had be hurte ~~peryllously~~ / And wold see and knowe of his estate and how he ferde / theyr counseyl was that tancre shold goo forth. Bawdwyn lefte with hym guy neuers (20) / And them 20 that were in his companye comen fro the shippe / They passed all sylyce and bete doun alle the forestes<sup>1</sup> of the hethen men that they myght fynde. they brente the townes, and slewe theyr enemyes. And after cam vnto a cyte called Alexandrye the lasse, <sup>2</sup>that they 24 toke by force, and conquerd al the contre about. The hermyns and turkes that dwellyd in the montaynes of this contre, herde tydynges that Tancre and his men were so valyaunt and so myghty that nothyng myght holde ayenst them / And sore dredde that lyke as 28 he conquerd the playne, he wold come vpon them in the montaynes / And destroye the londe entierly and the peple, ffor tappease his courage they sente to<sup>3</sup> hym good and certeyn messagers, whiche brought to hym grete yeftes, as gold / syluer / precious stones / clothes of sylk / horses / and mulettis / they sente hym moche largely / ffor whiche cause Tancre<sup>4</sup> lefte them in peas. Thus dyde he wel his honoure and his prouffyt<sup>5</sup> in alle places that he went by / in suche wyse that it seme<sup>6</sup> wel to euery<sup>6</sup> man / 36

<sup>1</sup> Fr. "fortresses," not "forests."

<sup>5</sup> Orig. prouffyt.

<sup>3</sup> Orig. ta.

<sup>4</sup> Orig. Taure.

<sup>6</sup> Orig. enery.

that oure lord god adressyd his way and mayntened his werkes  
vertuosly.

How bawdwyn conquerd a grete contre vpon the  
4 turkes by the counseyl<sup>1</sup> of a knyght hermyne,  
named pancraçe<sup>2</sup> / ca<sup>o</sup> lxxvij<sup>o</sup>

n Ow ye haue herd how Tancre mayntened hym in sylce / the  
grete hoost that folowed hym cam vnto marase / Bawdwyn

8 that had seen his brother the duc hool and sound, had herd  
agayne tydynges of Tancre,<sup>3</sup> how he dyde by the contre where he  
wente / he had moch grete desire to gadre to gydre peple, & goo  
serche the contre lyke as he dyde to fore / But he had lost moche  
Baldwin, hearing of Tancred's success, had a great desire to go and do likewise.

12 the good wyl and grace of thoost, for they of thoost had herd tolde  
thoultrage that he had don to tancre and to his men. And ther-  
fore many doubted for to entreprise the way with hym / Buymont  
and his men also had not lyghtly suffred this thyng vnauenged, ne  
But he was much disliked,

16 had it ben for the loue of the duc his brother / Therfor bawdwyn  
founde but few felawes that wold goo with hym / Godeffroy the  
duc, whiche was a moche wyseman / and of good wyl / blamed and  
repreyde moche his brother of this werke / he brought hym herto  
and few men would accompany him.

20 that he knowleched his folye to fore alle the peple, and sayde that  
he had made amendes to tancre / after his will & yet wolde  
amende it vnto his playsyr / & swar that he had doon it more by  
the counseyl and atysement of other / than of hym self. By thyse  
Finally, he acknowledged his fault before all, and made amends to Tancred.

24 wordes he appeasyde the hertes of many men ; for he was a moche  
valyaunt man and moch curtoys / & neuer was perceyued in hym  
vylonye. he had an hermyne with hym moche pryue / named  
pancrace / he was right wyse and an hardy knyght. But he was

28 ouermoche trycherous and vntrewe, he was escaped oute of the  
prison of theemperour of constantynoble. And cam in to the hoost  
at nycene, where he acqueynted hym with bawdwyn / And he  
prayde hym and admonested that he shold take men and goo in to a  
[\* If. 57, bk.]

32 countre where he shold lede hym to / whiche was moche plentyuous  
and ful of goodes / And yf he wold goo / he shold conquere<sup>5</sup> it  
lightly / so ofte he said to hym herof that he began to take his way  
and departed with two honderd knyghtes and other men of armes

36 ynough and feotemen grete nombre / They folowed pancrace alle /  
Baldwin and two hundred knights departed under the guidance of Pancratius.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig. couuseyl.*

<sup>2</sup> *Lat. Pancratius.*

<sup>3</sup> *Orig. Taucre.*

<sup>5</sup> *Orig. couquere.*

In a short  
time he con-  
quered all  
the land, as  
far as the  
Euphrates.

The Chris-  
tians of the  
country  
helped him.

whiche brought them toward byse in a moch ryche lond / they that dwellyd in this londe were alle cristen men, sauf a fewe turkes which helde the fortresses / they were lordes of the contre / and suffred not the cristen men shold meddle with ony armes in no wyse / whan they that were of oure<sup>1</sup> fayth sawe bawdwyn and his men, they were glad and ioyeful / ffor they loued not the turkes, they delyuerd ouer the contre where they had puyssaunce / in suche wyse that in a short tyme that he had conquerd alle the londe vnto the flood eufrates: Bawdwyn was moch drad & doubted thurgh alle the contre ther about in such wyse that for drede / they lefte hym alle the fortresses wel garnysshed, and toke them without debate / the cristen men whiche had receyued hym in to his londe, bycam so fiers and hardy / that they hunted alle the hethen men out<sup>2</sup> of the contre. ther were somme barons of the contre that seruyd bawdwyn with alle theyr puyssaunce / and heelped hym to brynge alle thyng to his wyll /

16

How they of rages sente theyr messagers to bawdwyn,  
prayeng hym that he wold come to them.

cap<sup>o</sup> lxxviii<sup>o</sup>

The Chris-  
tians of Rages  
send word to  
Baldwin to  
come and  
deliver them.

Saint Jude  
the Apostle  
converted  
this city to  
the Christian  
faith.

[<sup>6</sup> leaf 58,  
sig. 71.]

t He renomme of this grete man, of whom his prowessse & wytte spredde oueral, cam vnto the cytezeyns of rages,<sup>3</sup> hopying by hym to be delyuerid of the seruage in whiche they had ben long. The grettest men that had the gouernaunce of the toun sente certayn Messagers to Bawdwyn, and prayd hym for the loue of God, for his honoure and prouffyt, that he wold come vnto theyr cyte, whiche was named rages<sup>4</sup>(21) / as is founnen in the byble / Thether sente thobye his sone, yong Thobye, for to demaunde the moneye that Gable his cosyn ought hym / and on the way wedded sara his wyf / the Cytezeyns of this cyte receyued cristen fayth anon after the deth of oure lord Ihesu criste / by the prechyng of seynt Iude appostle, brother of seynt Symon<sup>5</sup> / as it is founde wretton the book of Eusebee of cesaire / they helde yet fermly this lawe that tyme / 32

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* onre.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* ont.

<sup>3</sup> *Fr.* Rohdes. *Lat.* Rhages.

<sup>4</sup> *Lat.* "est autem Edessa nobilis Mesopotamia, quæ, alio nomine, Rhages appellatur."

<sup>5</sup> *Fr.* "Si comme l'en treuve ou premier livre (*A.* inserts here 'de l'estoire') de sainte Eglise, que Eusebec de Cesaire, etc."—as is found in the first book of the *Ecclesiastical History of Eusebius of Cesarea*.



but<sup>1</sup> the turkes that were about<sup>2</sup> them constreyned<sup>3</sup> them so moch that they made them paye greuous and grete tributes euery<sup>3</sup> yere, in so moche / whan tyme cam for to gadre theyr fruytes, of  
 4 theyr vynes and other / they raunsouned<sup>4</sup> them and muste paye at theyr wylle / or ellys they wolde destroye alle / Neuertheles in the toun<sup>5</sup> durst noman<sup>6</sup> dwelle but he byleuyd in Ihesu criste, ffor this only toun was holden hool and<sup>7</sup> entierly in the fayth. the hethen  
 8 peple had<sup>7</sup> conquerd<sup>7</sup> the other townes / and<sup>7</sup> therfor they greued moche the cristen peple of this toun / ne wold not suffre them yssue out of the toun for to doo theyr nedes, ffor on alle sydes of them was the puyssaunce of the turkes / In this toun had the seynorye  
 12 a greek that was moche oold<sup>(22)</sup> / and had<sup>7</sup> no childeren, he had<sup>7</sup> ben there syth the tyme that this londe was vnder themperour of Constantynoble, ffor he was sente thyder by themperour for<sup>8</sup> to be baylly. And<sup>7</sup> whan the turkes toke alle the countrey / he departed  
 16 not thens, but abode alwey in his baylliage / Neuertheles he was that made neyther hoot ne cold / ne kept not the peple / but at theyr wyll / whan the Cytezeyns were acorde<sup>7</sup> for to sende for bawdwyn he knewe it wel and was content / whan Bawdwyn herde  
 20 that they of rages had<sup>7</sup> sente for hym by comyn counseyl and acorde / he toke counseyl with his men & fonde by his counseyl for to goo theder. he ordeyned lxxx horsmen without moo for to goo with hym / he passed the ryuer of eufrates / and lefte the  
 24 remenaunt of his peple in the fortresses that he had conquerd<sup>7</sup> in the contre to kepe them surely / the turkes that dwellyd in this lande knewe the tydynges how bawdwyn shold<sup>7</sup> come to rages with a fewe men, & made an embussment by the waye where he  
 28 shold passe / and sette there grete plente of men of armes / thyse tydynges wer sayde to bawdwyn, & therfor he torned to a castel by, whiche an hermyne helde / he receyued hym gladly & al his men moch honorably, & was lodged there ij days / the turkes that  
 32 were ennoyed to be so long so embusshed, yssued out and cam with baners displayed to fore the castel where bawdwyn was inne / none yssued<sup>7</sup> out for ther were ouer many men / The proye that they founde in the pastures / they brought alle with them. And<sup>7</sup> after

This was the only Christian city in all this country.

The lord of this city was an aged and childless Turk.

Baldwin went with eighty horsemen to the city.

The Turks set an ambush, to attack him on the way.

<sup>1</sup> Orig. bnt.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. about.

<sup>3</sup> Orig. enery

<sup>4</sup> Caxton has omitted, "*estovoit*," they were obliged, to ransom their lands and fruits.

<sup>5</sup> Orig. tonn.

<sup>6</sup> Orig. uoman.

<sup>7</sup> Orig. conqnerd.

<sup>8</sup> Orig. fro.

Baldwin  
escaped and  
went on to  
Rages,

where he  
was received  
with great  
honour.

[<sup>3</sup> ll. 58, bk.]

torned in to theyr countrey<sup>1</sup> / On the thirde daye Bawdwyn yssued  
out and toke his waye and cam to Rages / The duc of the toun<sup>2</sup> that  
was a greek, as I haue said to fore, cam ayenst hym. And alle the  
other on horsbak & a foote with trompes and busynes / The peple<sup>4</sup>  
of the toun receyued hym<sup>3</sup> with procession the moost honorably  
they myght, euerych peyned hym to make hym feste after his  
puyssaunce.

How the duc that was at rages varied for to holde<sup>8</sup>  
this that he had promysed to Bawdwyn /  
capitulo lxxix<sup>o</sup>

g Rete suspicion had the duc in his herte whan he sawe this  
Ioye that alle made to Bawdwyn. thenne by enuye he began<sup>12</sup>  
to fynde occasions by whiche he myght / parte fro the couenautes  
suche as he had sente, whiche were suche / Bawdwyn shold haue  
half the Rentes of alle the Cyte and of alle thexploytes / as long as  
the duc lyued / After his deth, whiche was olde, he shold haue alle<sup>16</sup>  
the seynorye entierly and hool. Now the duc wold not holde  
this / But sayde, that yf bawdwyn wold deffende the cyte fro the  
strengthe of the turkes, and fro theyr gryeues that they made in  
the countre he wold gyue to hym, and his men resonable souldye<sup>20</sup>  
and good wages / whan Bawdwyn herd this that he was come  
theder for to be a souldyour / he had moche grete desdayne, and  
sayd that he wold not abyde there so / but wold ordeyne for hym  
& his men for to retorne / the Cytezeyns of the toun sawe that<sup>24</sup>  
this thyng wente not wel / And cam to the duc / and shewde hym  
that grete euyl & peryll shold folowe yf he lete this noble man  
departe / ffor by thayde of hym they and alle theyr thynges shold  
be kept in peas and deffended<sup>4</sup> / and they shold be in grete fran-<sup>28</sup>  
chyse. The duc sawe wel by thyse wordes that he shold do folye /  
yf he sette hym ayenst them of the toun / therfore he couerd his  
herte for that tyme / not withstondyng he considered many thynges  
and thought / But sayde that he wold acorde therto / and made<sup>32</sup>  
semblaunt that he dyde it with good wille in the presence of alle  
them of the toun,<sup>2</sup> and avowed bawdwyn to his sone / and graunted  
hym the half of alle that he had and shold haue his lyf duryng /  
And after his decees to haue alle as his heyr / Grete ioye had they<sup>36</sup>  
in the cyte whan this was made / And had moost ferme hope for to

Baldwin is  
to have half  
of the income  
of the town  
at present,  
and the whole  
after the old  
Duke's death.  
The old Duke  
did not keep  
this agree-  
ment.

The people  
of the town  
were so in-  
dignant, that  
the Duke  
was forced to  
abide by his  
bargain.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* countrey.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* tonn.

<sup>4</sup> *Orig.* deffended.

recouure<sup>1</sup> the franchyse of the tributes<sup>2</sup> that the turkes had charged them with. ffro that day forth they began to remembre in theyr hertes the wronges and gryefs that theyr duc<sup>3</sup> had don to them  
 4 in tyme passed / And thought moche that yf tyme and place cam to poynt / they wold suffre it no lenger / But thought how they myght auenge this that they had suffred alle the tyme that he had be duc.

8 'How Bawdwyn wente to assaylle famosette, the cyte  
 nyghe to Rages / Capitulo lxxx<sup>o</sup>

a Cyte was there nyghe by / moche stronge and wel garnysshed / Blanduc  
 named famosette. An vntrew turke named blanduc<sup>5</sup> was lord of Famosette, a  
 12 therof / he was a trychour / but he was noble and hardy in armes / neighbouring  
 This sarasyn had don moche harme to the cytezeyns of Rages : he sette on them trybutes and dyuerse demaundes ofte, as they had ben his bondemen / And for to haue thyse thynges he had good  
 16 ostages. he helde theyr childeren so fowle as they had ben in He held the  
 seruage, he made them to bere donge and fylthe, and doo fowle children of  
 werkes / herof they of rages were moche greuyd. They cam to fore Rages as  
 bawdwyn, and kneled to hym at his feet, and prayd hym with hostages,  
 20 ioyned haundes right humbly, wepyng grete teres / that he wold and treated  
 delyuer them fro this turk forsayd, in suche wyse that they myght Baldwin to  
 recouure theyr childeren / whom he helde so shamefully / Bawdwyn recover their  
 wold fayne doo theyr requeste, after theyr desire at this theyr first children.  
 24 requeste / And to gete theyr loue and thanke / he dyde do arme  
 hym and alle them that he myght haue / And yssued with them  
 out of the toun / And cam to fore famosete / And assaylled the  
 toun moche vygorously / But they within deffended them as men  
 28 wel garnysshed and in a strong place / whan Bawdwyn had ben  
 there, I wote not how many dayes, and sawe it coude not lightly  
 be taken. he lefte in a fortresse nyghe by lxx knyghtes / and put Baldwin left  
 in it garnyson of men of armes and vytaylles, And commanded them a party of  
 32 that euery day they shold renne to fore the toun of famosete, And men to be-  
 suffre to yssue of the toun neyther man ne beste. and after he cam and returned  
 agayn to rages / the Cytezeyns of the toun sawe wel that bawdwyn himself to  
 was a moche curtoys man / wyse, noble, and valyaunt in alle his Rages.  
 36 thynges / And had despyte and grete desdayne, that this old duc

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* recouure.<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* tributes.<sup>3</sup> *Orig.* dnc.<sup>5</sup> Fr. *Baudus.* Lat. *Balduc.*

They decided  
to slay their  
duke, and to  
make Bald-  
win their  
lord.

[\* 1f. 59, bk.]

whiche was nought worth, and that had don to them moche sorowe / <sup>1</sup>and was not his felaw, but his lord in the toun<sup>1</sup> / therfor they toke counseyl emonge them / and sente for a puyssaunt man, whiche had many fortresses by<sup>2</sup> them in the montaynes, named<sup>4</sup> constantyn, & acorded alle to gydre for to slee their duc, & wold make bawdwyn duc & lord vpon them. ffor they moch hated this old man, that without fayll had greued<sup>3</sup> them long tyme in many maners / for he toke fro them gold & syluer, & all that s plesyd hym in the toun, & ther was none so hardy that durst withstande hym ne displese hym, ffor yf they dide, anon by the turkes with whom he was acqueynted, made them to destroye theyr vygnes<sup>4</sup> and fruytes, and brenne theyr whete and corne / and lede<sup>12</sup> away theyr beestes / And yf any of them went out of the toun, they had fere for to lese theyr heedes /

How they of the toun of rages slewe theyr duc, and  
chees bawdwyn for to be theyr lord / cap<sup>o</sup> lxxxi<sup>o</sup> 16

They went  
all armed  
to the tower  
where the  
Duke lay.

Baldwin tried  
to appease  
the people,  
but in vain.

The Duke in  
descending  
from a win-  
dow was  
pierced with  
arrows, and  
fell down  
dead.

t Hey had not forgeten the wronges and Iniuries<sup>5</sup> that they had suffred of theyr duc / they hoped al, that yf he were deed / that bawdwyn shold deffende them better than he. Therefore they wente al armed, as it was enterprised, vnto a tour where as he laye. 20 And began strongly tassayle it, and enuyronned<sup>6</sup> round about / The duc sawe that the peple was so sore meuyd and angry on hym / And called bawdwyn, and prayd hym to take of his tresour as moche as he wolde, and repease the peple / Bawdwyn cam among them, 24 and trauaylled moche by prayers and menaces for to haue supposed to haue repeased them / but he myght doo nothyng, ffor al way ther cam moo and more, in suche wyse that the companye encreced / Bawdwyn departed thus fro them, and spak to the Duc, and said<sup>28</sup> that he shold take to hym suche counseyl<sup>7</sup> / that he myght eschewe the furye of the peple / ffor<sup>7</sup> he myght not remedye it. thenne the duc, as a man despayred, bonde a corde to a wyndowe and descended doun therby / But whan they apperceyued he was thurgh 32 smeton with arowes er he myght come to therthe. Thenne they toke hym al deed / And drewe hym thurgh the toun / And after

1—1 "and" should be omitted, and "not only" supplied here, to make the translation correspond with the original. Fr. "*estoit non mie seulement son pareil mais son seigneur.*" <sup>2</sup> Fr. "*pres d'eulx,*" near them.

<sup>3</sup> Orig. grened.

<sup>5</sup> Orig. Ininryes.

<sup>6</sup> Orig. ennyronned.

7—7 Fr. "*comme il pourrait pour mieulx chevir avecques eulx.*"

- smote of his heed / And coude not doo ynowgh to satisfie theyr  
 crueltees. On the morn they toke bawdwyn by force; ayenst his  
 will in deffendyng hym self / and lyft hym vp as theyr kyng<sup>1</sup> and  
 4 lorde / They made to hym oth of feaulte / And after delyuerd<sup>1</sup> to  
 hym the grete fortresse of the toun / And<sup>2</sup> gaf to hym at his will  
 Rychesses and moche grete tresours that the grekes had assembled  
 by long<sup>1</sup> tyme / Thus was the cyte of Rages delyuerd withoute con-  
 8 tradiction to bawdwyn / Banduc, that was lord of ffamosete / sawe  
 how Bawdwyn conquerd alwey the londes and contrees, and  
 encreced his puyssaunce / And sente to hym messagers whiche lete  
 hym wete how that his Cyte was moche stronge / and myght not  
 12 lightly be wonne, but he wold selle it hym yf he wold gyue  
 hym .x / M / besautes / Bawdwyn aduysed hym herupon / &  
 by counseyl acorded to bye it, and payd to hym that somme, &  
 receyued the toun entierly / & Bauduc rendred thostages that he  
 16 had holden alle thenne / And thus he conquerd the hertes and  
 loue<sup>3</sup> of them of the toun / that they called hym theyr fader / And  
 they dyde alle that plesyd hym to theyr power, and redy to beye  
 hym to the deth.

They made  
Baldwin king  
by force.

Banduc sold  
ffamosete to  
Baldwin for  
ten thousand  
besants.

[<sup>3</sup> leaf 60,  
sig. 73]

- 20 How bawdwyn wente and assieged the toun of serorge,  
 nygh to rages, and toke it / And of his orden-  
 aunces. cap<sup>o</sup> lxxxij<sup>o</sup>

- i N this londe was a Cyte named serorge,<sup>4</sup> wherein dwellyd none  
 24 other peple sauf hethen men / The lord of the toun was named  
 balak. the turkes that were therin dyde many traueyls and vylayn-  
 ous oultrages / so many that they prayde bawdwyn their lord for  
 the loue of god / and for thaffection that he had to them / that he  
 28 wold take counseyl and sette a remedye of this thyng / he answerd  
 curtoysly / And sayde that he wold doo it gladly. thenne he com-  
 maunded that euery man shold arme hym dylygently / And whan  
 they were redy / they shold yssue out of rages, and goo strait for to  
 32 assiege the cyte of sororge / Thenne dressyd they their engyns, and  
 began to leye the siege / And brak the walles on<sup>d</sup> torettes. The  
 Turkes that were within the toun were moch abasshed, ffor they  
 thought wel that bawdwyn ne his peple wold not leghtly departe  
 36 fro the siege / ne they vnderstode of no socours fro noo syde / wher-

Balak was  
lord of the  
city Serorge.

Baldwin be-  
sieged this  
city.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* delynerd.  
GODFREY.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* Aud.

<sup>4</sup> *Sororge.*

The Turks  
yielded the  
town to him.

By this con-  
quest all the  
way from  
Rages to An-  
tioche was  
taken from  
the Turks.

fore they sente theyr messagers to bawdwyn / And so entreted that,  
theyr lyues saued, they wolde yelde the toun to hym. Bawdwyn  
receyued the toun / And put in the grettest fortresse, one his bayly,  
that shold doo his commaundement in that countrey / And ordeyned  
a moche grete tribute on them of the toun,<sup>1</sup> and lefte hem therin /  
ffor he had not other peple ynough<sup>2</sup> for to people the toun yf they  
wente theyr waye / By the prise of this cyte, was alle the way  
delyuerd of the hethen, fro rages vnto anthyoche / ffor to fore myght 8  
none goo vnto the ryuer<sup>3</sup> of eufrates for the peple of sororge / Thus  
cam<sup>4</sup> Bawdwyn to grete honour and to moche ioyous feste in the  
cyte of rages / Now we shal leue to speke of Bawdwyn / And shal  
speke now of the grete hooste that cam be hynde after. 12

How the grete hoost cam to fore marese.<sup>5</sup> And how  
the turkes that were within fledde. And how  
our peple payned them to conquere countrees /  
capitulo lxxxiiij<sup>o</sup> 16

[\* If. 60, bk.]  
Godfrey and  
his army ar-  
rived before  
the city  
Marese, from  
which the  
Turks fled.

t He duc godeffroy & the grete plente of the barons & knyghtes  
and noble men and other with them, they passed moche  
greuous wayes, and were comen by valeyes and montaynes vnto  
a Cyte named Marese. this is not that toun that I spak of to 20  
fore, ffor that is named Maraze / This cyte named Marese was  
enhabyted with Cristen men. Neuerthelesse the Turkes helde the  
fortresses, And had the seignorye of the toun. And euyl entreted  
the cristen peple. thyse hethen peple herd of the comyng of our 24  
peple, & fledde by nyght for fere of them / And ther abode none  
of the toun sauf they of oure fayth / whan the hooste approuched,  
the barons knewe the trouthe of this toun. Thenne they deffended  
generally that none shold doo no harme to them of the toun ne to 28  
theyr thynges / They lodged them in a moche fayre place and  
delytable / And had vytaylles ynough and good cheep. They of  
the countre lete the barons of thooste haue knowleche / that ther  
fast by / was a ryche Cyte and ful of goodes named Artaysse / 32  
And dwellyd in the fortresses of the toun none other but hethen  
men. The prynces toke counseyl herupon / And sente Robert the  
Erle of fflaundes theder / he toke with hym Robert de Rosoye

There was a  
rich city near  
by, called  
Artayese.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* tonn.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* ynongh.

<sup>3</sup> *Orig.* ryner.

<sup>4</sup> *Fr. revint*, returned.

<sup>5</sup> *Orig.* marese.

And Gossolyn the sone of aconon<sup>1</sup> de montagu / they were wel a  
 thousand men of armes whan they cam to fore the toun / Anon  
 they assieged it. The turkes that were within trusted not the  
 4 walles of the toun / And wold haue withdrawn them to the gretter  
 fortresses of the toun. But the hermyns and the other men of our  
 fayth / to whom the turkes had don long tyme grete shames &  
 moch harme in the toun / whan they sawe oure men they had grete  
 8 affyaunce and truste in them / And toke vnto them moche grete  
 hardynesse / And ranne to armes / and er the turkes myght with-  
 drawe them in to the fortresses<sup>2</sup> and toures / they slewe them / and  
 threwe their heedes ouer the walles to our men / & aftir opened  
 12 the gates & receyued them in to the toun with grete ioye, &  
 therin they fonde al that they had nede of / ffor the cyte was  
 merueyllously ryche. ffor thens vnto Anthyoche was but xv myle /  
 this cyte of whiche I speke is vnder the patriarke of anthyoche /  
 16 & for fere of oure peple were the moost parties of the turkes fledde  
 in to anthyoche. whan they herd saye that artayse was thus  
 taken / & they had slayn them that were lordes, they toke counseyl  
 emonge them for to aduyse how they myght hurte thoost. they  
 20 choos out / x m / to whom they comanded tacomplysshe this  
 thyng / they wente forth / and whan they approched thoost / they  
 put<sup>3</sup> them all in a busschement sauf / xxx. wel horsed and lightly  
 armed, whom they sente forth for to drawe men fro thoost. they  
 24 approched so nygh / that the hooste of the toun sawe them / ffor  
 they made semblaunt for to take fourriers<sup>5</sup> and the horses nyghe  
 them / oure peple ran to armes / & began to folowe so ferr that  
 they fought to gydre folylly vpon theyr watche / they sprange out,  
 28 and wold haue ronne bytwene them and the toun for tenclose them  
 in, but our men assembled them and ran to gydre / and cam def-  
 fendyng them / vntyl they cam into the toun in suche wyse that  
 they loste noman / The turkes sawe wel that they myght not  
 32 recoure the toun, and began to assiege it / ffor they had peple  
 ynowgh, and after began tassayle it. they within deffended them  
 wel that they without loste more than wan. whan the turkes sawe  
 that the grete hoost made them redy and approuche / And that  
 36 they proufftyed not, they toke counseyl / and returned in to  
 anthioche / But<sup>6</sup> the brygge that was bytwene they garnysshed  
 moche wel / The Erle of ffaundres and the other that were with

Robert of  
Flanders  
went to be-  
siege this  
city.

The Chris-  
tians in the  
city opened  
the gates to  
our men.

The Turks  
resolved upon  
vengeance,  
and planned  
an ambus-  
cade.

[4 leaf 61,  
sig. 74]

But our men  
escaped, and  
reached home  
safely.

The Turks  
then re-  
turned to  
Antioch.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *Conon*, not *Aconon*.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* fortresses.

<sup>3</sup> *Orig.* pnt.

<sup>5</sup> Fr. *forriers*, foragers.

<sup>6</sup> *Orig.* Bnt.

Goselyn, son of Conon of Montagu, died, and was buried with great lamentation.

hym within artayse went not out, but kept the toun / but that day a maladye toke goselyn, the sone of aconon of montagu, a yong man, curtoys and moche valyaunt. he deyde of that maladye / And was buryed in that toun with moche worship and grete 4 lamentacion.

How it was commaunded vnto alle the barons to  
come vnto thoost for to goo vn to anthyoche,  
and of som recountres that they had in the 8  
waye / cap<sup>o</sup>. lxxxiiiij<sup>o</sup>.

vv Han the turkes that were come fro anthyoche for to recouure  
artayse were departed from thens / at the spryngyng<sup>i</sup> of the  
day / tydynges cam that the grete hooste was lodged nygh by, ffor 12  
they had herd saye / how therle of fflaundes was besieged / And  
therfor by comyn counseyl they had sente xv / C / horsmen to  
fore to socoure them yf they had nede. They commaunded them  
that yf the siege were departed / they shold leue peple resonably to 16  
kepe the toun / And shold saye to therle of fflaundes, and to them  
that were with hym, that they shold come agayn in to the hoost.  
Tancre, whiche had conquerd alle syllyce, had in commaundement  
to come agayn / and he retorned, and alle the other also that were 20  
departed fro the hooste generally were comen agayne / sauf Bawd-  
wyn, whiche abode aboute Rages, where he did wel his thynges.  
1 whan the hoost was thus counseyllid & ordeyned,<sup>1</sup> they dyde  
do crye thurgh out al thoost that noman shold departe without 24  
leue. Thenne toke they al theyr way for to goo strayt vnto  
[\* H. 61, bk.] Anthyoche / they herd 2 wel saye that ther ran a water whiche  
they muste passe. But the brygge vpon this water was moche wel  
garnysshed of theyr enemyes, to thende thenne that the hoost 28  
shold not be destroubled for to passe whan they shold arryue  
there / by comyn counseyl of them alle, Robert, the duc of  
normandye, shold goo to for to knowe yf he myght delyuere the  
passage / and to sende worde to the barons what he founde. with 32  
hym wente euerard du puyaut and Rogyer de barneuyll, thyse  
two he made conestables of his hooste, and had thauaunt garde /

The great barons were all ordered to the siege of Antioch.

Baldwin alone stayed at Rages.

Robert of Normandy went in advance, to see if the bridge could be passed.

<sup>1-1</sup> Fr. "*Se fu rassemblez enterinement*," viz., "when the army was again entirely assembled."



- ffor they were bothe moche cheualrous and proued in armes. thus departed they fro the hooste and cam to the brygge / <sup>1</sup>the brygge was lift vp whiche is named esenclaues / And in scripture
- 4 Orontes<sup>1</sup> / Also it is called in the contre helle.<sup>2</sup> The brygge was moche strong / And had at thentre on this syde hye towres and stronge / In euery tour were .l / men of Armes for to deffende with bowes and arabalestres the entree of the brygge and the passage of
- 8 the water. On that other syde toward antyoche were comen seuen honderd horsmen for to kepe that syde of the water toward them / this ryuer of helle renneth on the syde of Antyoche, And cometh by another cyte named cesaire / But it souldeth by another cyte
- 12 named Eliopee, And is called mallec,<sup>3</sup> and descendeth in to the see by there as I haue sayd / whan our peple were comen to this brygge / thentre was wel denyed them, ffor grete plente of turkes were descended doun to the bariers / The other toures rested not
- 16 to caste stones and shote so sore that it was a moche grete scar-muche and fiers. they fought so moche to gydre that tydynges cam in to the hoost which alwey meuyd, and was thenne not fer fro the brygge. they auanced theyr paas and sowned trompes and
- 20 busynes / and smote on them that held ayenst them the paas / they that were in the toures durst holde them no lenger there for fere of the grete peple that they sawe come with the grete hoost / ffor they thought they shold not be there sure. The other also descended /
- 24 And were put alle to flyght / in suche wyse that oure men toke the brydge / the other knyghtes of oure peple that myght not come to the baryers for the prees whilis the scarmuche was, were moche anguysshous and descended doun, where as there was a place to
- 28 passe whiche they of the contre knewe not of, And passed ouer and discomfyted the seuen honderd sarasyns that kepte the bancke /
- So moche dyde one and other that alle the hooste passed delyuerly ouer, And caryage after / they lodged them in a moche / fayr place,
- 32 a / vj / myle fro the toun / On the morn they <sup>4</sup>approched alle the

This bridge was over the Orontes.

It was well defended, and there was a sharp skirmish here.

Our main army came up, and soon took the bridge.

Our men all passed safely over.

[<sup>4</sup> leaf 62]

<sup>1-1</sup> Mistake arising from a corrupt text. The correct French is, "*li pont estoit sur l'eau qui a non es anciennes escriptures, Orontes.*"—In Caxton's French text, "*esanciennes*" is written as one word.—Caxton read it "*esenclaues*," and then left out part of the sentence in order to make an intelligible sentence with his new word.

<sup>2</sup> Caxton follows his French text, and translates "*l'Enfer*" by *Helle*. The correct form is "*El Fer*," the Fer. Lat. "*Orontes appellatur, verbo vulgari, Fer dictus.*"

<sup>3</sup> Fr. *Maubec*, Lat. *Malbec*.

grete waye bytwene the montaynes and the ryuer, in suche wyse that they lodged but a myle fro the cyte.

How Antyoche, by succession of tyme, had dyuerse names, and of the noblesse of auneyente / 4  
cap<sup>o</sup> lxxxv<sup>o</sup>.

Antioch is a noble city, whose patriarch is third after that of Rome.

a Nthyoche is a moche noble cyte / which conteyneth the third place among the patriarches, after the chirche of Rome. This cyte was named somtyme Esencianes<sup>1</sup> / after that the wrytynges 8 witnesse / Nabugodonosor, kyng of babylone, brought sedechyas, kyng of Iherusalem, theder, whan he had taken hym / And slewe his sones to fore hym / And after put out his eyen, as is founden in the fourth book of kynges. whan Alysaundre, kyng of macedone, 12 was dead, Anthyochus had this part of the londe, & enforced moche the cyte of grete toures and wallys / And wold haue it named after hym Anthyoche, and ordeyned it chyef of alle the Royame / the prynce of thapostlys, seynt Peter, was first bisshop 16 there, in a chirche that theophilus made to hym of his hows, which was a noble and a myghty man in the toun / Seynt luke, the holy euangelyste, was born in this toun<sup>2</sup> / to the same theophle wrote he thactes of thapostles / whiche was the .vij / bisshop in anthyoche / 20 ther was the first counseyl of them that byleuyd in Ihesu Criste after his deth. And thenne was establysshed that they shold be called crysten men of crist ; ffor byfore they were called nazaryens, of the cyte that he was of / this cyte was conuerted<sup>3</sup> by the prechyng 24 of Seynt Peter, therefore he gaf it the name of theopoble / whiche is as moche to saye as of god oure lord / vnder Antyoche ben .xx. grete cytees / of whiche ben / xiiij Archebisshopriches / The sex haue two Primates, whiche ben called catholicos / that one is in the 28 cyte whiche is named Amene, And that other is at bandras.<sup>4</sup> <sup>5</sup> And alle this claymeth thoryent<sup>5</sup> /

Saint Peter was the first bishop here.

The first council was held here.

Saint Peter converted it with his preaching.

<sup>1</sup> Caxton's text has the same corruption here as in p. 133. The correct sentence reads "*ceste ot non es anciennes escriptures Rebladu*."

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* tonn.

<sup>3</sup> *Orig.* connerted.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. *Baudas*, Lat. *Baldacenses*.

<sup>5-5</sup> Fr. "*et tout ce clame en l'orient*," viz. "and all this is called the Orient."

Of the situation of Anthyoche. capitulo lxxxvj<sup>o</sup>

- t His cyte, of whom I haue spoken, is anthyoche / And stondeth  
in the londe of this Surye / And is parte of the londe of the  
4 grete surye. It stondeth in a moche fayr place and delytable / Antioch has a fine situation.  
Now I shall recounthe to you how it stondeth / It is a moche grete  
towne / And aboute moche good<sup>e</sup> londe, for to bere habondance of  
<sup>1</sup> whete, of corn, of fayr fontaynes and smale rennyng waters / and [ 1<sup>st</sup> 1<sup>st</sup> 62, bk.]  
8 it is among the montaynes toward the eest, whiche contre dureth North of it is a lake; on two other sides are mountains.  
wel xl myle of lengthe, & wel vj myle of brede / aboute ther is a  
lake or mere, assembled of sprynges & wellys, that renne therin /  
whiche is ful of fysshe / Of this lake yssueth a rennyng<sup>e</sup> water,  
12 whiche cometh nygh the cyte, And renneth in to the ryuer that  
renneth by the toun / the montaynes closed the two sides of the  
toun. Neuertheles, ther ben vnder them fressh waters and erable  
londe. The mount whiche is toward the south is named Oronte / One mountain is named Orontes;  
16 lyke as I sayd you of the ryuer; ffor seynt Gregoire sayth that  
antyoche is sette bytwene oronte the ryuer & oronte the montayne /  
one partie of this montayne, that goth toward the see, is moch hye,  
in such wyse that it hath a name by hym self. Somme peple wene  
20 that this hylle be pernasus, a montayne of whiche scripture<sup>2</sup> speketh  
moch / by cause of a fontayne that is atte the foote of the same  
hylle, which is named leschielle buymand / But, without faulte,<sup>3</sup>  
this is not the mount<sup>4</sup> of whiche the auctors<sup>5</sup> speke: ffor this  
24 montayne pernasus stondeth in the lande named<sup>e</sup> Thessaylle / That the other one is called The Black Mount.  
other montayne, whiche is toward the south, is named<sup>e</sup> the black  
montayne, fulle also of sprynges and wellys / of wodes and of  
pastures / There were wonte aunciently thermytes for to dwelle /  
28 thurgh this valeye renneth the Ryuer that I spak of to fore / And  
renneth to ward the see / In the montayne toward the south,  
begynneth the walles of Antyoche, and come vnto the Ryuer<sup>6</sup> / hit  
is a grete espace within the closure. ther ben enclosed within the The enclosure of the city is very large,  
32 walles two montaynes<sup>7</sup> / vpon the hiest stondeth a fortresse, so  
stronge that it is not prenable, but by famyne. Bytwene thyse two  
montaynes, whiche ben moche hye, is a valeye right depe, but it is containing two mountains, a valley, and a river.  
strayt / in that renneth a litil water, right faste and swyfte, and  
36 entred in to the toun: <sup>8</sup> and doth moche good to the toun / In the

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *escriptures*, the books, the ancient writings, not "*the Scriptures*."<sup>3</sup> Fr. *sans faulte*, without doubt. <sup>4</sup> *Orig.* mouut. <sup>5</sup> *Orig.* anctors.<sup>6</sup> *Orig.* Ryner. <sup>7</sup> *Orig.* montaynes. <sup>8</sup> *Orig.* tonn.

All the walls  
are marvel-  
lously thick,  
and there are  
many towers.

[2 leaf 63]  
The town is  
two or three  
miles long.

Cyte ben many fontaynes / but<sup>1</sup> the beste is the fontayne whiche is  
named the fonteyn of seynt poul, And<sup>2</sup> is nyghe to the eest gate /  
ther is another fontayne without the toun, which by crafte and  
conduytes is brought in to the toun right subtylly / Alle the walles 4  
of the toun / that is to wete, they that ben on the montaynes, and<sup>3</sup>  
they that ben hangyng / And also they that ben in the playn, ben  
merueyllous thycke, ffor they ben of ouer stronge werke / Ther ben  
toures moche hye and<sup>4</sup> wel defensable, that is toward<sup>5</sup> the sonne 8  
goyng<sup>6</sup> down / The ryuer renneth so nygh the toun / that the brygge  
on whiche men passe ioyneth to the walles and to the gate of the  
cyte / The lengthe <sup>2</sup>of the toun is wel two or thre myle / hit is  
nyghe vnto the see / xij myle of.

12

Who that was thenne lord of antyoche / And in what  
manere he was comen vnto this seynorye /  
cap<sup>o</sup> lxxxvij<sup>o</sup>

Ancean was  
lord of  
Antioch.

Belphet, son-  
dan of Persia,  
had con-  
quered all  
this country.

He had given  
Nicaea to  
Solyman, and  
Damasus to  
Ducar.

o F this cyte of Anthyoche was lord<sup>3</sup> a turk, named Ancean of 16  
the mesque / ther ha<sup>4</sup> ben a puyssaunt sowdan of perse<sup>5</sup> / of  
whom we haue spoken to fore, named belphet, which had conquerd  
alle thyse londes. And<sup>6</sup> after, whan he wol<sup>7</sup>d retorne agayn in to his  
contrey / he departed<sup>8</sup> entierly his conquest to his neuens, and to 20  
somme of his meyne / by cause that he wol<sup>9</sup>d that they that were  
his trewe men and frendes, shold holde peas, eche in his partye /  
and<sup>10</sup> shold<sup>11</sup> be as defendours and<sup>12</sup> the closyng<sup>13</sup> of the londe / he gaf  
to his neuew solyman, nycque, or nycene, with alle theyr ap- 24  
pertenantes, as ye haue herd to fore / to another neuew, named  
dutar,<sup>4</sup> he gaf the Cyte of damaske / And<sup>5</sup> alle the countre about /  
and<sup>6</sup> wol<sup>7</sup>d that eche of them shold bere the name of soudan / and<sup>8</sup>  
lyke dygnyte / Solyman,<sup>5</sup> by cause he marchet<sup>9</sup> on the grekes, had 28  
euery day debate ayenst themperour of Constantynoble / Ducar was  
ayenst them of Egypte / And<sup>10</sup> ofte made warre eche to other, ffor  
they louet<sup>11</sup> not to gydre / To thende thenne that thyse two, Solyman  
and ducar, myght the better mayntene theyr warre, he wol<sup>12</sup>d that 32  
they were puyssaunt and hye men as soudans. To one his seruauant,

<sup>1</sup> Orig. bnt.

<sup>2-3</sup> Caxton has spoiled the sense by dividing his sentence incorrectly. Fr.  
"*un Turc qui avoit non Ancean; de la maignie avoit esté d'un puissant Soudan  
de Perse.*" <sup>4</sup> Fr. Ducar, Lat. Ducac.

<sup>5</sup> Fr. "*Soliman parce qu'il marchissoit aux grecs,*" i. e. "because he was  
neighbor to the Greeks."

named assougur, which was fader of sangum, And graunt fader of  
 Noradyn, of whom ye shal here here after / he gaf the renommed<sup>1</sup>  
 cyte, called halappe / To this Ancean, of whom I spak to fore, he  
 4 gaf this hye and noble cyte antyoche, and lytil lond about / ffor To Ancean  
he gave  
Antioch.  
 the Calyphe of Egypte helde alle the countrie vnto the boundes of  
 Surye. this ancean, whan he herd that the grete hoost of cristen  
 men cam, he sente messagers and lettres to the barons of thoryent /  
 8 and hym self spak to them by mouth expressedly, and requyred the  
 caliphe of bandras and the soudan of perse, which was more  
 myghty than any other / that they wolde socoure his londe and  
 hym. They beleuyd al this lyghtly / ffor Solyman was comen to  
 12 them / that had wel assayed what oure men coude doo / therfore<sup>2</sup>  
 he also requyred moche to greue oure cristen men, And that they  
 wold auenge<sup>3</sup> hym / Ancean requyred that they wold deffende  
 hym / The grete barons of thoryent, and other hye and noble men,  
 16 promysed hym that they wold helpe hym certaynlye / Ancean [4 lf. 63, bk.]  
he also  
gathered  
men, and got  
together  
everything  
necessary for  
a siege.  
 forgate not in the <sup>4</sup> mene whyle / but gadred as moche peple as they  
 myght haue in the contreye aboute hym / as they that fro day to  
 day abode the siege, he assembled vytaylles, Armures, engyns, and  
 20 alle other thynges necessarye to peple assyeged / And prayd moche  
 ententify the cytezeyns of the toun that euery man shold make  
 prouysyon and garnyson for hym self as moche as he myght.  
 Thenne wente the cytezeyns of the toun to vyllages and other  
 24 places ther aboute / And brought alle in to the cyte, whete, wyn / He was so  
diligent that  
the town was  
soon well  
garnished.  
 Oyle / and alle maner of beestes / so moche that the toun<sup>5</sup> was  
 merueyllously garnysshed. many hye, puyssaunt and noble men,  
 were comen fro the contrees that oure peple had passed / whiche  
 28 were fledde in to this stronge toun for to kepe them self / in so  
 moche that it was sayde / and was trouthe / that ther were in the  
 cyte / vij. M / horsmen, alle armed and wel in poynt / And of  
 footemen there were, that bare harnois, moo than / xx. M /

32 Dyuerse oppynyon of our men to fore they assieged  
 Anthyoche / And how they acorded alle for  
 tassiege it / cap<sup>o</sup> lxxxviij<sup>o</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* renommed.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. "*pour ce, s'entre semonaient moult efforcement de grever nos xpiens.*"  
 Caxton has also omitted "*that they would avenge*  
*him.*"

<sup>3</sup> *Orig.* aueuge.

<sup>5</sup> *Orig.* tonn.

o Vre men were approached so nygh the cyte, that they sawe it  
 nygh to them. After, they assembled for to take counseyl  
 how they shold procede forth / ffor there were somme of the barons  
 that counseyllled<sup>1</sup> / that they shold tarye the siege vnto the newe 4  
 tyme of the yere / ffor the wynter cam on / whiche shold be moche  
 greuous to lye out / On that other parte, ther were many of thooste  
 that were sprad about in the cytees and castellys, whiche myght  
 not lyghtly be assembled tyl after the wynter. And ferthermore, 8  
 they sayde that themperour of constantinople shold sende grete  
 peple for to helpe them / Therfor it were wel reason that they  
 shold abyde them / Also, on the other syde of the montaynes, they  
 sayde they shold haue peple al fressh, of whom they had grete 12  
 nede for tassiege suche a toun.<sup>2</sup> And, in the mene whyle, myght  
 the peple and theyr horses sojourne alle the wynter in the cowntre  
 about, And shold be the fressher, and harder, and strengre for  
 tendure<sup>3</sup> tranaylle and payne whan it shold nede / The other 16  
 barons acorded that they shold sette the siege forth with withoute  
 delaye / ffor yf thenemyes that were in the Cyte had the respyte /  
 they shold garnysse them better of men / of Armures, of Engyns /  
 and of other estorementes than they had therne : They also that 20  
 were comyng, shold haste them the more yf the cyte were beseged  
 for to helpe 4them / To this counseyl acorded fynably alle. they  
 ordeyned theyr bataylles / & cam to fore the toun / there they  
 lodged them the x day of octobre. In oure hooste were men wel 24  
 armed to the nombre of C / C. C / M. / without wymmen / chil-  
 deren / and other men that bare no harnoys. And yet myght not  
 alle they besiege alle the cyte / ffor without the montaynes / where  
 was thought to leye no siege, <sup>5</sup>was at the foot of the hylle vnto the 28  
 ryuer, a grete part of the walle in a fayr playn, which myght not  
 be leyd about with peple<sup>5</sup> / In the comyng of this grete hoost /  
 was a moche grete bruyt and noyse of buysyns / of horses, of peple,  
 of Cartes and charyottes / But this daye, ne on the morn folowyng, 32  
 was no noyse / but semed that the toun had ben alle voyde, and  
 noman therin ; but<sup>6</sup> this was don by cause they had moche grete  
 garnyson of peple & of other thynges.

Our men were  
 not agreed  
 about besieg-  
 ing the town.

The winter  
 was coming  
 on, their  
 number was  
 not large  
 enough, and  
 they needed  
 help from  
 Constantin-  
 ople.

[\* leaf 64]

Finally they  
 encamped  
 before the  
 town the 10th  
 October.

The town  
 meanwhile  
 was very  
 quiet.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* counseyllled.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* tonn.

<sup>3</sup> *Orig.* tendre.

<sup>5-5</sup> Fr. "*avoit il grant partie des murs, des le pie du tertre jusques au fleuve, en beau plain, qui ne peut estre acaint de gens,*" a large part of the walls, from the foot of the hill to the river, were exposed, which could not be surrounded by the army.

<sup>6</sup> *Orig.* bnt.

How, after the situacion of the toun, eche of the hye  
barons of the hoost were lodged at the sayd  
siege. cap<sup>o</sup> lxxxix<sup>o</sup>

- 4 a Nthyoche had, conteynyng in the cyte / v / yates / toward<sup>t</sup> Antioch had  
thoryent / ther was one, & was named the porte seynt poul, five gates  
& that was by cause it was vnder the monastery of seynt poul towards the  
whiche is hangyng<sup>t</sup> on the territoire<sup>1</sup> / the second<sup>t</sup> was toward<sup>t</sup> Orient.  
8 thoccident. And<sup>2</sup> the lengthe of the toun<sup>3</sup> is bytwene both thyse  
yates, and that is named<sup>t</sup> the porte of seynt george / On the syde  
toward<sup>t</sup> hyse ben thre yates, whiche alle yssue toward the Ryuer / On the side  
that yate aboue is named<sup>t</sup> the porte of the hound<sup>t</sup>. ther is a yate toward the  
12 to fore this yate<sup>4</sup> / by whiche men passe the mareys which is vnder North were  
the walles of the cyte / The seconde is named<sup>t</sup> the porte of the duc : three gates.  
the ryuer is ther wel a myle long fro thyse two yates. The thirde  
is named the yate of the brygge, by cause the brygge is there / by  
16 whiche men passe the Ryuer / ffor bytwene the port of the duc,  
whiche is in the myddle of thyse thre / and<sup>t</sup> this that is the laste on  
that syde, approuche so the flood<sup>t</sup> of the toun, that fro thens it  
renneth costeyng<sup>5</sup> the toun alle ioynnyng to the walles. wherfor it  
20 was that this yate, ne the yate of seynt george, our men myght not  
assiege, ffor noman myght come theder but yf he wente ouer the  
Ryuer / Buymont<sup>6</sup> assieged<sup>t</sup> this yate aforsayd<sup>t</sup>, with them that were  
comen in his companye. beside hym, in<sup>7</sup> aualyng<sup>t</sup> down, were Bohemond  
24 lodged<sup>t</sup> Robert the duc of Normandy, Robert therle of fflaundres / besieged the  
Steuen therle of bloys, and huon<sup>8</sup> le mayne / Thyse had<sup>t</sup> pourprised<sup>t</sup> upper gate.  
fro the lodgys <sup>9</sup>of buymont vnto the yate of thounde / ffor the [? If. 64, bk.]  
frensshemen / the normans and<sup>t</sup> the bretons, were with them to fore  
28 this gate / thenne were lodged<sup>t</sup> therle Remont of tholouse, and the  
bisshop of Puy, with them that were come in theyr companye ; that  
were the prouynceaulx, the gascoyns, and<sup>t</sup> the burgoyons / ther  
was moche grete peple / They toke alle the place, vnto the gate  
Raymond of  
Toulouse and  
the Proven-  
cals were  
next below  
the North  
Frenchemen.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. "*qui est ou pendant du tertre*," viz. "which is on the slope of the hill," Lat. "*posito in clivo montis*."

<sup>2</sup> Orig. Aud. <sup>3</sup> Orig. tonn.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. "*il y a un pont devant la porte*."

<sup>5</sup> Fr. *cotoiant*, extending along the side of.

<sup>6</sup> Fr. "*Buymont assiege la porte dessus*," (i. e. the upper gate, of the three) instead of "*the gate aforsaid*."

<sup>7</sup> Orig. Buymout.

<sup>8</sup> Fr. *en avalant*, as you go farther down.

<sup>9</sup> Lat. *Hugo Magnus*, Hugh the Great.

Godfrey and his friends extended almost to the Gate of the Bridge.

The townspeople watched the encampments of our men with great curiosity.

They were much alarmed at the preparations.

next after / At this gate were lodged the duc Godeffroy / Eustace his brother / Bawdwyne therle of henawd / Reynold therle of Toul / Guemes<sup>1</sup> de montagu / And other barons, many whiche alwey helde them with thyse prynces. ther were the loraynes, the henewers, 4 they of sessougne / they of bauyere, and they of francoine / They toke vp alle the place almoost to the yate of the brygge / And helde the Ryuer that ranne there. In this partye, toward the toun, was grete plente of apple trees / of fygtrees, and of other trees 8 beryng fruyt / whiche our peple cut, & hewe of alle for to lodge them. they of the toun<sup>2</sup> byhelde, by the hourdeys<sup>3</sup> and batyllemens of the walles, the manere and contenance of thooste / And meruaylled moche of the Armes / of the tentes / and of the facion 12 and manere that they had for to lodge them / They were in grete doubte / ffor they were wel adcerteyned / that so moche and grete peple wold not lightly departe fro this siege without doyng them grete dammage and harme / Ther were many that were so gretely 16 effrayed for theyr wyues, theyr childeren & theyr other frendes, that they wold that they had ben deed and buried long to fore / to thende that they shold not see the destruction which they doubted for to see. 20

How our peple assembled in counseyl for to fynde the moyen, for to sende for vytaylle / & of a brydge that they made. ca.<sup>o</sup> / lxxxx.

Our men had great difficulty in finding food for their animals.

The Turks killed many of them while foraging.

o Wr peple, that were thus lodged, founde not about them 24 pastures for theyr horses ne for theyr other beestes / Therefore them behoued ofte to passe the ryuer / and to renne thurgh the contrey / thus dyde they many tymes / by cause they of the toun meuyd not yet / And it was a noyous and greuous thyng to passe 28 the Ryuer / ffor<sup>4</sup> ther was no brygge / but feried ouer<sup>5</sup> in botes bothe horse and man. whan the turkes of the Cyte apperceyued<sup>6</sup> this, they sente secretly ouer theyr brygge theyr peple, which toke and slewe our men, that they fonde so sprad in the contre. And 32 this dyde they surely ynowgh / by cause they myght not retourne

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *guennes de Montaignu*. Lat. *Conon de Montaculo*.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. tonn.

<sup>3</sup> Fr. "*Archieres et hordeis*," i. e. from the openings for the archers, and from the palisades.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. "*Car il n'y avoit point de gué*," for there was no ford there.

<sup>5</sup> Orig. oner.

<sup>6</sup> Orig. apperceyned.



but by <sup>1</sup>the ryuer / & they of thoost myght not socoure them. <sup>[1 leaf 65]</sup>  
 wherfor our barons conseyllled them to gydre, and concludet<sup>2</sup> that  
 they wold<sup>3</sup> make a brygge in somme maner by whiche they myght  
 4 passe without daunger<sup>3</sup> of them of the toun / they fonde shippes in  
 the laye, and<sup>4</sup> aboue in the ryuer they toke and<sup>5</sup> ioyned them  
 to gydre, and sette planks on them, and nayled them in suche  
 wyse that thre or four men myght passe on a front / this brigg  
 8 dyde moche ease to alle thoost / This brygge was nygh the lodgys  
 of duc godeffroy, right ayenst the yate that he kepte ; And therfor  
 the yate was named<sup>6</sup> the yate of the duc<sup>4</sup> / ffor this brygge of tree  
 vnto the brygge of stone was a grete myle, as I sayd to you to fore /  
 12 by this yate & by this bryge was moche harme don to our peple /  
 And by the yate named<sup>7</sup> the porte of the hounde, they greued<sup>8</sup>  
 moche our peple ; ffor<sup>5</sup> they had<sup>6</sup> a brydge of stone by the toun, of  
 dyuerse waters gadred to gydre, that ran there / by that brygge  
 16 they made theyr assaylles day and<sup>7</sup> nyght vpon the peple of therles  
 of tholouse, which kepte the gate. Oftymes they opened<sup>8</sup> the yates /  
 and<sup>9</sup> yssued<sup>10</sup> out vpon theyr lodgyes, and dyuerse they hurted<sup>11</sup>, and  
 slewe many. And whan they had<sup>12</sup> don, they retorned<sup>13</sup> in to the  
 20 toun / ffor oure men myght not poursiewe them but by the brygge.  
 therefore hit happed<sup>14</sup> that the bisshope of puy, therle of tholouse,  
 and the other barons<sup>15</sup> that were there / were more hurte in theyr  
 mounture<sup>16</sup> than alle the other of thoost.

Our barons  
made a bridge  
of ships

near God-  
frey's camp.

The people  
of Antioch  
made sallies  
from the town  
through the  
gate of the  
Hound.

24 How our peple stopped a yate of the toun without  
 forth / And of a castel of tree that they made.  
 cap<sup>o</sup> lxxxxj<sup>o</sup>

t His peple had grete despyte & grete shame of the damages  
 28 and harmes that were thus don to them / And toke counseyl  
 that they wold bete down the brygge. And theder they cam alle  
 Armed<sup>17</sup> vnder theyr targes and sheldes of yron and grete plente of

Our men  
took counsel  
how to put a  
stop to this  
damage.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. concluded.

<sup>3</sup> Fr. "*Sans dangier de ceulx de la vile.*"

<sup>4</sup> Orig. dnc.

<sup>5</sup> Caxton's text is corrupt here, the sense being ruined by omissions. A. gives the correct version : "*Car il y avoit ung port de pierre, pour passer le paluz qui estoit fetz de diverses eaues,*" etc.

<sup>6</sup> Orig. barous.

<sup>7</sup> Fr. *monteures*, i. e. their mounts (horses, mules, etc.). Lat. "*in equis et mulis.*"

<sup>8</sup> Fr. "*Et sous leur escuz granz marteaulx eurent de fer, et grant planté de pis.*" Caxton has spoiled the sense here by his omissions.

pyquoyes / And began to smyte for to breke the brydge, but the walles were so strong and harde that they myght not hurte it. And on that other syde they of the toun were on the walles and tourettes, whiche threwe grete stones and thycke on them that so 4 pecked to breke the brygge, that they were fayne to leue their enterpryse and retorne fro thens / After this they thought of another thyng and made a newe castel of tree / And sette it ayenst the brygge for to kepe it that they shold not passe ouer it / on them / 8 it was moche werke and payne to make it / whan it was <sup>1</sup>sette and dressyd / Therle garnysshed it with his men / they of the toun adressyd theyr gounes and engyns at this castel, and smote it with grete stones / And they in the toures shotte ther at grete plente of 12 Arowes, so many in such wyse that none durst abyde in this castel ne about<sup>2</sup> it / On a day it happed that our men withdrewe them fro the brydge and fro ther about / And they within opened the yate and yssued out<sup>3</sup> by the rowtes / They that were in the castel 16 of tree fledde / And the other sette fyre on it / And brent it to ashes / Our men sawe wel thenne<sup>4</sup> that they warred not wel thus, And ordeyned thre gounes<sup>5</sup> for to shote stones at the brygge, whyles they shotte none of the turkes yssued oute there / But as 20 sone as they cessed, they cam oute & made theyr assaylles as they dyde to fore. It displeyd moche to oure barons that they myght not sette no remedye ayenst the comynge oute of thyse turkes / Atte laste <sup>6</sup>they acorded that they wold take grete stones of the 24 Roche, such as were conuenient<sup>7</sup> for a gate, and stoppe the passage.<sup>6</sup> They toke an honderd men and more, and stopped the gate ouer the brydge. ther were so many that it was doon in suche wyse that it coude not be lightly broken agayne / They had grete 28 trauaylle and payne to make it / But they that were lodged there kepte alle armed them that brought the stones. Thus was the gate stopped in suche wyse that thoost abode alle in peas there / ffor the Turkes myght nomore make theyr assaylles there. 32

They made  
a wooden  
engine, and  
set it against  
the bridge.  
[1 lf. 65, bk.]

The Turkes  
burnt it to  
the ground.

Our men then  
stopped up  
the bridge  
with big  
stones.

How our peple were in grete meschyef for as moche  
as they of the toun yssued and entred in and  
oute with grete rowtes. Capitulo lxxxxij<sup>o</sup>

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* about.    <sup>3</sup> *Orig.* out.    <sup>4</sup> *Orig.* thenue.    <sup>5</sup> *Orig.* gounes.

<sup>6-6</sup> Fr. "ils s'accorderent à ce qu'ils prinrent grans roches, tels qu'il conuenoit bien à l'une porter, C hommes en plus, et estouperent la porte."

<sup>7</sup> *Orig.* conueuyent.

o Nn a day it happed that ther wente out of thoost as wel on  
foote as on horsbak a thre honderd men / and passed ouer  
the brydge of tree. And sprad the contreye<sup>1</sup> as men that wente  
4 on foragyng / It is the custome of an hooste for to goo out<sup>2</sup> so  
oftymes & retorne without dammage or hurte / Therfor they had  
supposed to hane ben sure / They of the toun apperceyued it and  
yssued out with grete plente of peple / And wente ouer the brydge  
8 of stone and ranne on them that they sawe goo so folylly / And  
somme they slewe / And other fledde to the brydge<sup>3</sup> of shippis  
where they supposed to haue passed / But thenemyes were there  
to fore. And defended them the waye / in suche wyse that many  
12 of them were drowned in the water that supposed to haue passed  
ouer / other of oure men recountrd the turkes that had slayn &  
discomfyted our men & bare away with them their proyes and  
despoilles, And ran on them / The Turkes fledde / and our men  
16 poursiewed them sleynge and<sup>5</sup> betyng them vnto within the brydge  
of stone / They of the toun<sup>6</sup> that sawe theyr men so poursiewed  
sprang out with grete prees and passed the brydge, & ran on our  
men / whiche wold haue defended them / but they myght not  
20 suffre so grete nombre of peple and fledde. they folowed them  
doyng to them grete dommage, til they cam to the brydge of  
shippis / there they assaylled them so harde<sup>7</sup> / that many men  
armed fyll in the water whiche were there drowned and loste  
24 Oure<sup>8</sup> men lost there many men on foote and on horsbak / In this  
manere were they of thooste in grete mesease / ffor they were better  
besieged than they of the toun / There were many of theyr enemyes  
in the woodes and montaynes whiche ofte ranne vpon our peple  
28 whan they sawe them goo without ordenaunce, and they of the toun  
yssued out whan it plesed them / in suche wyse that our<sup>9</sup> men  
durst not goo fer fro thooste for to fourage ne for none other thyng /  
And also in theyr lodgys were they not assured, ffor the tydynges  
32 was that the turkes assembled moche grete plente of peple for to  
smyte in thooste on that one side / & they of the toun on that  
other side shold yssue on them /

One day 300  
men went  
forth from  
the army to  
forage.

The towns-  
people fol-  
lowed and at-  
tacked them.

[4 leaf 66,  
sig. 81]

The Turkes  
fled, and our  
men in turn  
pursued.

More of the  
townspeople  
came out to  
assist their  
fellows.

After this,  
our men did  
not dare to  
go far from  
the army,  
foraging.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. "et s'espandirent par le pays."

<sup>2</sup> Orig. ont.

<sup>3</sup> Orig. brydye.

<sup>5</sup> Orig. aud.

<sup>6</sup> Orig. tonn.

<sup>7</sup> Fr. s'entassèrent, i. e. they crowded on so thickly.

<sup>8</sup> Orig. Onre.

<sup>9</sup> Orig. onr.

Of the famyne and mortalyte of thoost after that  
they had be at the sayd siege the space of  
two monethes. cap<sup>o</sup>. lxxxxiij<sup>o</sup>.

Victuals began to fail  
our men.

Both men  
and beasts  
suffered  
greatly.

[? 1f. 66, bk.] Parties of  
men went  
forth into the  
country to  
find pro-  
visions.

The Turkes  
slew many of  
these parties,  
so that they  
dared go no  
more.

Many died  
for hunger.

f Or to recouthe alle thauentures that were in so grete a siege 4  
shold be ouer greuous and a moche long<sup>t</sup> thyng / Therfor<sup>1</sup> I  
shal saye to you this that longeth to the comyn / thooste had  
holden siege vnto the thyrde moneth, vytayll began to faylle /  
And was grete suffrete and scarsenes in thoost / they had in the be- 8  
gynnyng<sup>t</sup> largely and grete habundaunce both for men and horses ;  
but they made grete waast & more than neded, & so by their  
oultrage & folye they lacked in short tyme / which myght haue  
long susteyned them yf they had kepte it wel & gouerned<sup>t</sup> by 12  
mesure. they suffred<sup>t</sup> grete penurye in thoost of vitayl for men  
& beestes, in such wise that the pour peple were in grete peryl /  
euery day assembled / ij / or iij / C men of armes to gydre for to  
serche the contrey and fetche vytaylles / they swore to gydre that 16  
alle the gayne that they myght fynde & conquere / they shold<sup>t</sup>  
departe egally emonge them. They wente forth <sup>2</sup>fer fro thoost /  
and fonde the townes moche wel garnysshed by cause they were  
fer fro thoost / they thought that noman shold robbe ne take 20  
nothyng fro them / And thus brought wytayll to thoste. But  
whan the Turkes of the toun, and also other in the countrey, had  
apperceyued this / they made embusshementes and ranne vpon our<sup>3</sup>  
men whan they retorned, or other whyle whan they went forth, & 24  
slewe them somme tyme alle that none retorned<sup>t</sup> for to brynge  
tydynges to thoost / And therfor durst they goo nomore a four-  
agyng / The derthe was moche grete in thoost / & euery day grewe  
the famyne<sup>4</sup> in suche wyse that a man ete wel at a mele in 28  
brede<sup>5</sup> four / & / a cowe was worth<sup>6</sup> four marc weyght of syluer,  
which a man myght haue at begynnyng<sup>t</sup> <sup>7</sup>for<sup>8</sup> echt or ten shylyngis /  
A lambe or a kyd was at sex shylyngis, whiche to fore was worth  
but thre or four pens / the mete for an horse for a nyght cost .xvj / 32  
pens / ther deyde many for honger in suche wyse that at the  
begynnyng<sup>e</sup> of the siege the horses were nombred<sup>t</sup> at .lxx / M /

<sup>1</sup> Lat. "unde omissis specialibus, generalia prosequemur."

<sup>3</sup> Orig. onr. <sup>4</sup> Orig. fanyme. <sup>5</sup> Fr. "pour deux soulz de pain."

<sup>6</sup> Lat. duabus marcis.

<sup>7</sup> Orig. legynnyng<sup>t</sup>.

<sup>8</sup> Fr. V. B. à v livres ou iiij. A à cinq soulz, ou iiij. Lat. quinque solidus.

And at that tyme were scarce / ij.M. And they were so poure;  
 feble, and lene that vnneth they myght helpe ony man / the tentes  
 and pauyllons roted / ffor it rayned continually a rayne so thycke  
 4 and grete that no cloth myght susteyne it, wherfor moche peple in  
 the hooste deyde for colde and mesease. Theyr clothes roted on  
 theyr backes by cause they myght fynde no place to drye them,  
 ther was one so grete mortalite in thoost / that vnnethe myght be  
 8 fonden men for to burye them that deyde / Many that sawe this  
 grete daunger and peryll in thooste wente and departed pryuely to  
 Rages where bawdwyn was / & in to Scilice where other cytees  
 were also / Thus were many slayn. And grete plente deed of  
 12 famyne and of other maladyes / And the hoost was so mynuysshid  
 that ther were not half so moche peple as they were at begynnyng.

The pavilions  
and tents  
rotted be-  
cause of the  
continual  
rains.

Many men  
left the siege,  
and went to  
Rages.

How our peple ordeyned grete rowtes for to goo for  
 vytayll, & to reteyne the peple which fled for  
 16 hungre / ca<sup>o</sup> lxxxxiiij<sup>o</sup>

o Ftymes assembled the barons for to fynde counseyl how  
 they myght reteyne the peple that thus departed / & also in  
 what maner & how they myght aduyse & ordeyne for vytayll for  
 20 thoost, & they concluded that one partye of the barons shold haue  
 grete plente of men with them, & go right depe in to the londe  
 of the paynems for to brynge vytaylles and alle that they myght  
 fynde and gete on theyr enemyes / to this were chosen buymont  
 24 & the erle of fflaundes, Thoost was delyuerd to therle of thoulouse  
 and to Huon le mayne to gouerne, ffor the duc of normandye was  
 not there, And duc godeffroy laye seke moche greuously / They  
 departed for to goo on fourage, many folowed for to gete somme  
 28 gayne / whan the turkes of the toun<sup>2</sup> sawe thooste thus voyde  
 and waxe lasse, And knewe for certayn that therle of fflaundes<sup>3</sup> /  
 Buymont / and the duc of Normandye went not there / And that  
 the duc godeffroy laye in his bedde seke / They preysed and doubted  
 32 moch the lasse the remenannt. And toke counseyl that they wold  
 make an assayllyng by the brydge / but they that kept thoost had  
 knowleche herof / And were aduertysed<sup>4</sup> / And were al armed on  
 horsbak and cam ayenst them and slewe many of the turkes that  
 36 were come to fore and were many grete men of the toun / whan  
 the other barons sawe this what for sorow and for fere were discom-

The barons  
took counsel.

They sent  
large forag-  
ing parties  
out for food.

[<sup>1</sup> leaf 67,  
sig. 82]

The Turks  
sallied forth,  
and attacked  
those who  
were left  
behind.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. tonn.  
GODFREY.

<sup>3</sup> Orig. fflandres.

<sup>4</sup> Orig. aduertysed.

By mistake  
the Crusaders  
fled and lost  
the day.

fyted<sup>t</sup> and<sup>d</sup> fled agayn in to the toun / But a grete mesaventure  
happed<sup>t</sup> to oure peple / ffor as the turkes fledde dyscomfyted<sup>t</sup> one of  
them was beten doun of his hors / And his hors fledd toward<sup>t</sup> the  
lodgys / And many of our men ran after to wynne hym / The mene 4  
peple and other that sawe the horse supposed that our men had  
been disconfyted and<sup>d</sup> that they had<sup>d</sup> fled to fore theyr enemyes /  
And they began to flee / And other that sawe them flee / fledde  
also in suche wyse that alle turned to discomfyture ouer fowle / 8  
whan the turkes behelde this and sawe that our men disconfyted<sup>t</sup>  
them self, anon they retorned<sup>t</sup> and passed<sup>t</sup> the brygge / And began  
to chace them that so fledde, and bete and slewe them fro the  
brydge of stone vnto the brydge of the shippis / there were slayn 12  
of our men on horsbak a / xx / And a foot yet moo. the turkes  
retorned in to theyr cyte demenyng grete Ioye and<sup>1</sup> feste for this  
iourneye.

How buymont and therle of fflaundres mayntened hem 16  
beyng in fourage / Of theyr recountrees and of  
the gayne that they made. Capitulo lxxxv<sup>o</sup>.

Bohemond  
and his com-  
panions  
found a rich  
town full of  
provisions.

b Vymont And therle of fflaundres that were sente by comyn  
counseyl in fouragyng<sup>t</sup>, entred<sup>t</sup> fer in to the lande of theyr ene- 20  
myes. And founde<sup>2</sup> a moche Ryche toun good and<sup>d</sup> ful<sup>3</sup> of  
thyng that they had<sup>d</sup> nede of in thoost; they toke all / ffor they  
fonde neyther man ne woman that empessed<sup>t</sup> ne letted<sup>t</sup> them /  
Thyse two barons had<sup>d</sup> sente theyr espyes in dyuers partyes of the 24  
londe for tenquyre & serche where they myght gete more vytayl  
for to lede the hooste / Now it happed that one of the spyes cam  
to buymont & sayde that a grete company of turkes were em-  
bussshed<sup>t</sup> in a place nyghe by them, for to renne on them whan 28

[\* R. 67, bk.] 4 they wente on fouragyng<sup>t</sup>. Thenne they ordeyned<sup>t</sup> that therle of  
fflaundres shold goo forth with his men, & buymont<sup>5</sup> shold<sup>t</sup> come  
fer after. And so was doon / Therle of fflaundres fonde thyse men,  
And assembled<sup>t</sup> to gydre fiersly, the batayll was long & cruel / 32  
ffor the turkes had mo men than therle of fflaundres. At the laste  
our men were discomfyted<sup>t</sup>, for the flemynge myght not endure  
but fledde er buymont cam / And so were lefte of our men there  
wel an hunderd or more in the place / And thenne our men retorned 36  
in to thoost with grete good and gayn that they had<sup>d</sup> gadred to

The Earl of  
Flanders was  
discomfited  
in an engage-  
ment with  
the Turks,  
and fled.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig. aud.*    <sup>2</sup> *Orig. fonude.*    <sup>3</sup> *Orig. fnl.*    <sup>5</sup> *Orig. buymout.*

gydre / whyles they were there cam to them other espyes of an  
 other contre / that aduertysed them of other turkes that wayted to  
 hurte them whan they sawe theyr aduantage / they were thenne  
 4 moo men and better armed than they had ben to fore / they were  
 in counseyl / & therle of fflaundes wold that noman shold enter-  
 prise the batayl but he. But he toke mo men with hym than he  
 dyde tofore / Buymont<sup>1</sup> cam after with as many as he myght  
 8 haue. Therle of fflaundes hasted hym and surprised the Turkes  
 in a valeye strait, in suche wyse that they myght not renne hether  
 ne theder for to shote. But were constreyned to defende them  
 strongly with theyr swerdes and maces / whiche was not sure for  
 12 them / By cause whan oure meyne dischargd on them they myght  
 not susteyne it, but fledde anon / Oure men folowed them in hew-  
 yng & sleynge them / and ouerthrowe many of them, They wanne  
 horses / mules / Armoures and robes grete plente, & after retorned  
 16 in to the hoost with grete victorye & grete gayne. Grete ioye  
 was made theen in thoost whan they were comen / alle they were  
 refresshyd & alleged of their meseases that they had longe suffred /  
 They had vytaylles resonable a certeyn tyme. But it endured not  
 20 longe that whiche they had brought with them /

The Earl of  
Flanders de-  
termines to  
retrieve his  
defeat.

He surprised  
the Turkes in  
a narrow  
valley,

and routed  
them.

How a grete rowte of Cristen men were in this tyme  
 slayn by the turkes bytwene fynemyne and  
 terme / cap<sup>o</sup>. lxxxxvj<sup>o</sup>

24 i N this tyme cam tydynges fro Rome<sup>2</sup> that<sup>3</sup> doubled theyr  
 sorow and anguysshis<sup>4</sup> and theyr mesease doubled, it was  
 sayd & trouthe it was that an hye noble man & puyssant of  
 denmarke, named guennes,<sup>5</sup> of moch fayr beaulte & of good maners,  
 28 herd say that the barons of ffrance & the valyaunt men of that  
 londe were goon in pylgremage ouer the see for to make warre to  
 the sarasyns / this noble man to fore named whiche had a valyaunt  
 herte and hye<sup>6</sup> had grete wylle for to goo after them / he toke of  
 32 his fader certeyn good / and ledde with hym wel / v / C / knyghtes  
 and other men yong and wel armed, he hasted moche for to ouer-

Sad news  
came from  
Roumania.

[<sup>6</sup> leaf 68,  
sig. 83]  
Guennes of  
Denmark,  
with 500  
knights,

<sup>1</sup> Orig. Bnymout.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *Roumanie, Roumania*, not *Rome*. Lat. "*interca de partibus Ro-  
manie.*"

<sup>3</sup> Fr. "*qui moult leur mist grant douleur et grant angoisse escuers, et leur  
meseise doubla.*"

<sup>4</sup> Orig. angnysshis.

<sup>5</sup> Fr. *guennes*. Lat. *Danorum regis filius Sueno nomine*.

had encamped between the cities Fyncmine and Terme.

Here he was attacked

and slain by the Turks.

take thoost of the ffrensshemen, but he myght not ouertake them / ffor he cam ouer late / And had none in his companye sauf men of his countrey / he cam by constantinoble<sup>1</sup> / where themperour dyde to hym honour / and after he wente to Nycene with alle his com-  
 4 panye / And lodged hym bytwene<sup>2</sup> two cytees / that one was named fynemyne / And that other terme, there they dyde not as they ought to doo, by cause they were in the londe of theyr enemyes / but they assured them ouermache / in suche wyse that on a  
 8 nyght a grete partye of the turkes that had espyed them smote in sodanly on them and began to slee them in theyr beddes / Neuertheles somme ther were that apperceyued them and ran to theyr armes / & cam ayenst the turkes and sold theyr lyf dere / but in  
 12 thende they were alle slayn, and none escaped of alle thoost except a thre or<sup>3</sup> foure atte moste.

How the vntrew greek latyns(23) departed fraudelously fro the hoost. And other moo by thensample of 16  
 hym / cap<sup>o</sup> lxxxxvij.

Latyns, the deceitful Greek, had carefully watched our army.

Seeing how matters stood, he advised our men to leave the siege,

and promised to bring aid from the Emperor, in the spring.

1 Atyns this disloyal greek of whom we haue spoken to fore, whom themperour had delyuerd to oure peple, for to lede and conduyte them had foynously taken heede of the gouernaunce of  
 20 thoost vnto this day / and of the rewle of the barons, & alway peyned hym for to deceyue them in alle the maners that he myght. Now apperceueed he wel, that thaffayres of thooste were not in  
 24 good poynt / ne in good disposicion and doubted moche, for he was ful of cowardyse, and thought the pylgryms shold somme day be  
 28 surprised of the turkes of the toun, and shold alle be slayn, therfor he spak secretly to one and other, and counseyllid them to leue the siege. And that al thooste shold departe in to the cytees that  
 32 our men helde vnto the newe tyme, ffor it was certayn he sayde that themperour had sente for the grettest hooste, that he myght assemble for to come and socoure them as sone as he myght fynde grasse on the erthe for the horses / And he hym self / By cause he loued  
 36 the werke of oure lord with the noble men that he had, wold enterpryse vpon hym for the comyn prouffyt a grete traauayll, And he hym selfe wold goo dylygently to themperour for to haste hym with his hoost and alle the vytaylle that he myght fynde / And to make  
 40 hym come / Many of the Barons knewe vpon this poynt his

[4 If. 68, bk.]

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* constantinobl.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* bytwnee.

<sup>3</sup> *Orig.* on.



- falsenes / And apperceyued that he sought manere by this waye for  
to flee. And byleuyd hym not / but acorded that he shold goo his  
waye; he made semblaunt for to retourne and come sone ageyn,  
4 and lefte his pauyllons and som of his men to whom pereadventure  
he had sayd that they shold folowe and come after / or ellys *that*<sup>1</sup> he  
neraught what myght come of them. Thus departed he whom the  
deuyll had brought, And lad hym away agayn; ffor by the wordes  
8 that he had sown / and by thensample of his departyng, began  
many men to departe fro thoost / And toke no regarde to theyr  
auowe ne to the oth that they had promysed / but wente secretly  
one after another / The famyne was moche grete in thooste. The  
12 barons coude<sup>2</sup> fynde no remedye ne counseyl therfore. Trough it  
was they sente ofte two and two of the grettest lordes with grete  
companye<sup>3</sup> of men for to pourchasse vytaylles, They wente moch  
surely in the landes of theyr enemyes right deep and ferre. And  
16 sleynge many of them that wold haue deffended theyr passage / but  
vytaylles brought they none, ffor the turkes of the contre that had  
apperceyued that oure peple wente for to seche vytalles had do  
ledde away alle theyr beestes and theyr vytaylles vnto the mon-  
20 taynes and deserte places where none myght come, & somme had  
they hydde in the wodes and caues vnder the erthe, whiche our  
men coude not fynde.

The Barons  
generally  
believed him  
not.

He departed,

and many  
followed his  
example, thus  
breaking  
their oath.

The Crusad-  
ers were now  
in great  
straits,

and could  
obtain no  
victuals.

- How the prelates of the hoost counseyllled to doo  
24 penaunce for tappese god, And of thorden-  
aunces that were made teshewe synne /

Capitulo lxxxviii<sup>o</sup>.

- f Amyne / mortalyte / and many other perylls cessed not to  
28 renne on the peple of oure lord / The noble and wysemen of  
thoost that were trewe, good, and relygyous as the bisshop of puy,  
that was legate for oure holy fader the pope, and other spak to  
gydre thenne / And sayd it was moche to drede and doubte that  
32 our lord were angry with his pylgryms for their synnes. therfor  
they aduysed that they wold speke with the barons for to make  
peas and acorde vnto our lord. And was ordeyned by the consente-  
ment of alle them of thoost, that they shold faste in prayers and in

Famine and  
death were on  
all sides.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. "*ou peut estre ne lui en chaloit ce qu'ilz devenoient*," or perhaps it made no difference to him what became of them.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. conde.

<sup>3</sup> Orig. compaue.

They cried  
for mercy  
unto the  
Lord for  
three days.

[<sup>1</sup> leaf 60,  
sig. 84]

Great reforms  
were institut-  
ed in the  
army.

Duke Godfrey  
now suddenly  
recovered, to  
the great joy  
of all.

penaunce for to crye mercy vnto our lord by the space of iij dayes,  
to thende that he wold pardone theyr trespasses & beholde them  
in pyte. this was don with grete wepyng & wayllynges of herte /  
after this they commanded that alle the comyn wymmen of euil lyf 4  
shold be voyded & cast out of thoost / & was cryed thurgh out  
al the hooste / that who that after that were taken in adulterye or  
in <sup>1</sup>fornycacion shold haue his heed smeton of / Incontinent the <sup>2</sup>  
droncardys of the tauernes, the players of dyse, and the grete othes 8  
were deffended vpon the same payne, fals mesures and thefte / alle  
suche thynges were commaunded to be lefte and eschewet / there  
were choosen wise men and trewe, that shold take heed for to  
punnysshe the malefactours<sup>3</sup> / After thyse ordenaunces and statutes 12  
were somme founden culpable in the same / where were so pun-  
nysshed therfore / that the other were<sup>4</sup> chastysed therby / whan  
the peple were amended vnto our lord, the mercy of our lord cam  
without taryeng on them / ffor the duc Godeffroy, whiche was all 16  
the surete of thoost / And as theyr estandart / had ben longe seke  
by thoccasion of his hurte, that he had taken in the londe of  
pysside by a bere, as it hath be sayd to fore, nygh by lytil  
Anthyoche, and was now sodenly come to good helthe / wherof alle 20  
they of thooste had moche grete ioye / and byleuyd fermely that  
theyr penaunce and prayers had lengthed his lyf and respyted it.

How Buymont fonde a subtil remydye for to delyuer  
and purge the hoost of the espyes of the turkes / 24  
cap<sup>o</sup> lxxxxix<sup>o</sup>

The news of  
the siege of  
Antioch by  
the Crusaders  
spread all  
through the  
East.

g Rete renommee was spradd thurgh out al thoryent / and  
toward the contrees of the south / that ouer grete nombre of  
peple of the contrees where the sonne goth down were comen, and 28  
had besieged the noble cyte of Anthyoche / hit was a grete thyng  
in trouth / But the tydynges were moche more gretter withoute  
comparyson / Eueryche of the puyssaunt<sup>5</sup> lordes of that countrees  
and londes had sente theyr espyes in to the hoost / and ther were 32  
so many that they cessed not to come and goo, and continually /  
& vnnethe myght ony thyng be don or sayd in thooste ne in the  
lodgys, but that it was anon<sup>6</sup> knowen in the panemye<sup>7</sup> / It was a

<sup>2</sup> Fr. "*les beuveries, les tavernes*," etc.    <sup>3</sup> Orig. malefactonrs.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. "*que les autres s'en chastierent*."    <sup>5</sup> Orig. puyssannt.    <sup>6</sup> Orig. auon.

<sup>7</sup> Fr. *paienne*, heathendom.

light<sup>1</sup> and easy thyng<sup>1</sup> for them to be with our peple in thost / Ther were of the turkes that coude speke greek / and the langage of Ermenye / And toke thabyte of the surreyens, of grekes / and of them of hermeny / ther were many of suche maner of peple / the barons toke counseyl among them how they myght voyde & purge thoost of this pestelence of espyes, ffor they helde them in grete paryll & grete daunger / that theyr couyne & purpoos shold be knowen in the lordes of theyr enemyes, and it was no light thyng to knowe them that were suche espyes / Emonge<sup>2</sup> alle other thynges they coude<sup>3</sup> fynde none other remedye / but to holde theyr counseyl secrete / and fro them forthon saye lasse to the peple than they were woont to doo / Buymont, whiche was of moche grete wytte and hye herte, spak to the barons, and sayd in this manere / "ffayr lordes, I praye you that<sup>4</sup> ye wil late me cheuysse with this matere / ffor I haue remembryd how we shal be delyuerd of this peryl<sup>4</sup> / wherfor, I praye you, gyue to me the charge therof" / The barons helde Buymont<sup>5</sup> for a moche wyseman, and prudent / And gladly sette the charge therof on hym, and departed fro the counseyll / Buymont<sup>6</sup> forgate not this that he had promysed / whan tyme of soupper cam / he disposed and ordeyned hym for to soupe / he made the knyghtes<sup>7</sup> of his contre to take out somme turkes that he had in prison, And made theyr throtes to be cutte / And after smote them in pyeces and arrayed them for to be rosted. Thenne began they to demaunde what he wold doo / Thenne Buymont<sup>8</sup> sayd to his men / And bad his men also to saye to other / "that alle the barons had thus ordeyned and sworn, that alle the espyes that myght be taken in thost shold be rosted and seruyd at the tables of the barons / And the barons shold ete them by their oth." thyse tidynges were anon spred thurgh out thoost / that suche Iustyce was don in the lodgys of buymont. Alle men ran theder for to see this merueylle / The turkes them self that were comen in to thoost for to espye, were moche affrayed, And euerych of them thought longe<sup>9</sup> or he was departed fro the lodgys, by cause they doubte that they shold be seruid in lyke wyse / Aftir whan

Greek, Syrian and Armenian spies were present in our army in great numbers.

It was a difficult thing to get rid of them.

[<sup>3</sup> If. 69, bk.]

Bohemond took charge of this matter.

He threatened to roast and eat all taken as spies.

The Turks were greatly frightened at this, and many left the army.

<sup>1</sup> Orig. lihgt.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. ewonge.

<sup>4-4</sup> Fr. "*vous me laissez convenir et chevir de ceste chose, car j'ai pensé une delivrance, de ce peril*," viz., let me settle this matter for you, for I have thought of a way to deliver us from this danger.

<sup>5</sup> Orig. Buymout.

<sup>6</sup> Orig. Bnymont.

<sup>7</sup> The correct French text gives "*bouchiers*" (butchers), instead of "*chevaliers*." Lat. *carnifices*.

<sup>8</sup> Orig. Bnymont.

<sup>9</sup> Orig. louge.

They went  
home and

reported that  
the Crusaders  
surpassed all  
men in  
cruelty.

After this no  
men were  
willing to go  
as spies to the  
Christians.

they were retorned home to their lordes / that had sent them. they  
sayd to them, And tolde al aboute the countrey / that suche men  
as were come for tassiege Anthyoche suffred moche mesease / And  
were harder ayenst trauayll and laboure than stone or yron / Of  
cruelte they passed alle beres and Lyons / ffor the wylde beestes etc  
men alle Rawe, But thyse men roste them afore, & after deuoure  
them. This tydyng was in suche wyse knowen and publysshyd  
in alle paynymye / that after the Soudan and the grete admyrals  
myght neuer fynde man wolde come and espye the hoost. They that  
were in the cyte assyeged were so effrayed and had so grete hydour  
of this / that fro that tyme afterward the counseyl of the barons was  
better kept and more secretly than it was to fore.

12

How the Calphe of Egypt sente his messagers with  
grete yeftes vnto our hoost / Capitulo C<sup>o</sup>

[<sup>2</sup> leaf 70] <sup>2e</sup> Mong other mescreauntes grete lordes and prynces, The caliphe  
of Egipte was the moost myghty of men and moost ryche of  
goodes; he sente his messagers vnto the barons that were in thoost,  
And I shal saye how and by what occasion / (<sup>24</sup>) Grete hate and moche  
fiers hath ben bytwene the Turkes<sup>3</sup> of thoryent and the Turkes<sup>3</sup> of  
Egypte / And hath, be of auneynt and long tyme, By cause they  
discorde in theyr creaunce and mysbyleue / And eche sayd to other  
and yet doo that they be fals sarasyns / as I haue sayd to fore in  
the begynnyng of this book, And therefore they ben ofte in warre /  
Somtyme one partye is aboue / And another tyme that other / In  
the tyme that our peple were to fore Anthyoche / this caliphe of  
whom I speke now, helde alle the londe of Egypte vnto the Cyte<sup>4</sup>  
of Sureye / whiche conteyneth wel / xxx / Iourneyes longe / The  
Soudan of Perse, a lytyl tofore that oure peple cam, had conquerd  
the toun of Anthyoche, whiche is by the Royame of egypte / and  
alle the londe entierly vnto the braas of seynt george, as I haue  
sayd to fore / Now had the calyphe of egipte in moche suspection  
the Sowdan of Perse, and moche plesyd hym his destruction and  
dommage / And had moche ioye that Solyman had lost Nycene,  
whiche Solyman was neuw to the sayd Soudan / and was so  
enfebled of his men. And also he was plesyd that our cristen  
peple had besieged the Cyte of Anthyoche / Therfor he sente good

There has  
long been  
great hate  
between the  
Tarks of the  
Orient and  
those of  
Egypt.

The Caliph of  
Egypt was  
much pleased  
that Solyman  
had lost  
Nicea.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *Amirault*, i. e. Emirs.

<sup>3</sup> Orig. Tnrkes.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. *La Liche de Surie*. Lat. *usque Laodiceam Syriae*.

messagers to speke to them whiche brought right grete yeftes / And moche ryche presentes / yf they wold receyue them / And they sayde that the Caliphe was redy for to gyue to them socoure and  
 4 ayde right largely of men / of good<sup>t</sup> and of vytayll, and prayd them moche derely that they wold mayntene and conteneue theyr siege. The barons of our hoost receyued<sup>t</sup> the noble men that were comen, and sent from hym honorably, and made them to soiourne with  
 8 them / And they that were wyse knewe anon the wytte & vygour of our barons, and begonне to haue moche grete doubte & suspicion that our peple were so valyaunt / & that yet they sholde do grete dommage in theyr londe / so that they deuysed in this thyng<sup>t</sup> as ye  
 12 shal nowe here in redyng hoolly this book.

He sent rich presents to the Christians before Antioch, and promised to help them.

How Ancean, the lord of anthyoche, and his barons sente vnto the turkes, theyr neyghbours, for to demaunde socours<sup>1</sup> / cap<sup>o</sup> Cj<sup>o</sup>.

16 t He lord of Anthyoche and the other grete and noble men of the toun, seying that our<sup>2</sup> men suffred so moche famyne and  
 3 mescase / as we haue sayd to fore / and fore alle thyse thynges wold in no wyse leue theyr siege, but shewed<sup>t</sup> by theyr counten-  
 20 aunces that this trauayl greued<sup>t</sup> them not / wherfore they were moche abasshyd<sup>t</sup>. And thenne Ancean, by the counseyl of his men and them that were moost pryue with hym, sente messagers and  
 24 lettres to his moost ryche neyghbours / And prayd hym right derely for the honour of theyr lawe, for the sauynge of them self /  
 And for his loue, that they wold come and socoure them without taryeng. And he sente them word in what maner they shold  
 28 approche secretly to Anthyoche. And after they shold couere them in a busschement nygh by / And there abyde the pylgryms as  
 they had ben acostumed<sup>t</sup>, and at suche tyme as they shold come to the brydge / ffor there shold they sprynge out of the toun / And  
 32 shold assaylle them, & whyle they were besy in fyghtyng, they that were embusshed shold sodenly breke & come by hynde on  
 them & fyght, And so shold they be enclosed<sup>t</sup> bytwene them within And them withoute, in suche wyse that none shold escape /  
 They that herd thise lettres and thyse messagers doubted<sup>t</sup> them  
 36 moche of oure peple / wherfor they acorded gladly to this counseyl. they assembled them of hallape / them of cezayre, them of haman /

The Lord of Antioch was much astonished at the  
 [3 lf. 70, bk.] persistence of the Christians, notwithstanding their sufferings,

and sent to his neighbours for help.

They devised a plan for attacking the Christians on all sides.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig. soconrs.*

<sup>2</sup> *Orig. onr.*

A large number assembled, and approached Antioch.

The native Christians revealed this plan to the Crusaders.

The Crusaders took counsel.

and of other cytees about, tyl they were a grete nombre of peple /  
 And this dyde they the moost secretly they myght, as was to them  
 commaunded, and began to departe and approuche Anthyoche /  
 And cam to a castel named harant, whiche is fro thens a .xiiij / 4  
 myle. there they lodged and thought on the morn as sone as the  
 scarmuche shold be bytwene the pylgryms and them of the toun /  
 they shold smyte in with theyr spores vpon oure men. And oure  
 cristen men were in grete peryl / But one thyng ther was thenne / 8  
 that tho and other tymes dyde them grete good / ffor ther were  
 cristen men, hermyns and surryens in the cytees of whiche the  
 turkes were departed, whiche anon lete the barons of thooste haue<sup>1</sup>  
 knowleche how it was concluded bytwene the turkes / They 12  
 assembled anon for to take aduys herupon, And was acorde<sup>d</sup>  
 emonge them / that alle they that had<sup>d</sup> any horses to ride on shold  
 be arayed And<sup>2</sup> on horsbak as sone as it were nyght / And that  
 euery man shold drawe in to his bataylle lyke as they were 16  
 assygned / And after shold yssue out of thoost without any noyse.  
 the peple on foote shold abyde styll alle, and be redy to deffende  
 the lodgys, yf any thyng sourded ayenst them.

How oure peple knewe the couyne of the turkes / of 20  
 thenbusshe<sup>3</sup> that they made, and of their victorye  
 and gayne that they had. Capitulo Cij<sup>o</sup>

[3 leaf 71]

At night, they went out to meet the enemy, secretly.

In the morning they arranged themselves in six battalions,

and the battle commenced.

a S sone as it was nyght they yssued out lyke as they were com-  
 manded / They passed the brydge of shippes, And they were 24  
 not passyng / vii / C / men on horsbak / they that wente cam to a  
 laye, whiche was bytwene the laye of whiche I haue spoken to fore /  
 And the Ryuer named<sup>4</sup> helle / whiche ben that one fro that other,  
 nyh a myle / there they rested them this nyght. theyr enemyes that 28  
 knewe nothyng of theyr comyng / were this nyght passed the  
 brydge, whiche is vpon the Ryuer of helle. In the mornyng, as  
 sone as our men apperceyued the day, they armed them and made  
 vj bataylles of<sup>5</sup> them / The turkes had sente by fore their corrours / 32  
 which cam & sayde that the grete peple cam ayenst them / they  
 sente to fore ij of theyr bataylles, & affir cam the grete peple /  
 whan they approuched they were in grete desraye / the Archers  
 approuched first, whiche shotte thycke; But oure men smote in 36  
 with the speres moche asprely in suche wyse that they made them

<sup>1</sup> *Orig. hane.*

<sup>2</sup> *Orig. Aud.*

<sup>4</sup> *Orig. named.*

<sup>5</sup> *Orig. ef.*

to flee, and chased them to theyr grete bataylles. There were they  
 in suche a destrayt bytwene the Ryuer, and the laye that they  
 myght not shote ne flee after theyr customme. There was the  
 4 medlyng grete and fiers / And the barons and men of armes dyde The conflict  
was great  
and fierce.  
 moche wel, But the turkes that had lost the maner of fyghtyng /  
 myght not deffende them, ne endure the strokes of oure peple, but  
 fledde theyr way al that they myght. Thenne whan our barons  
 8 sawe this / they began to doo wel, And commaunded that noman  
 shold faygne, but folowe the chaas asprely / The turkes fledde vnto The Turks  
fled, and our  
men followed  
for ten miles.  
 hernant. Oure men folowed alwey, sleynge and hewyng of heedes  
 and armes, that al the waye that they passed by was sown with  
 12 dede men / This chaas endured wel .x / myle / The turkes that  
 were within the castel of hernant sawe that that theyr men cam  
 alle discomfyted / They sette fyere on the castel, & they them self  
 fledde / But the hermyns and the other cristen men of whom were  
 16 many in the castel recouerd the fortresse / and yelded it to oure  
 men whan they cam. This daye were slayn of the turkes moo More than  
2000 Turks  
were slain  
this day, and  
our men  
gained great  
spoils.  
 than / ij / thousand / They toke .v / C / heedes of them that were  
 best arrayed, And brought with them in signe of vycorye. They  
 20 war there wel a / M / horses for Armes, grete and myghty, wherof  
 they had grete nede. Thus retorned they to theyr lodgys charged  
 ful of prayes of armures & of dispoilles, makyng grete ioye, and  
 thankyng oure lord that had comforted <sup>1</sup>them in theyr meseases. [<sup>1</sup> If. 71, bk.]

24 How the turkes of Anthyoche<sup>2</sup> sprange out<sup>3</sup> and  
 assayled the lodgys of oure peple. Capitulo Ciiij<sup>o</sup>

t He cytezeyns and habytantes of Anthyoche had herd tydynges /  
 how the turkes that had ben so discomfyted were departed, and  
 28 meuyd fro theyr contrees for to come socoure them, Therfor they  
 had theyre eres opene to here tydynges of theyr comyng / And The inhabit-  
ants of An-  
tioch, in the  
mean time,  
 were alle armed and redy for to make thassaylle by the brydge alle  
 incontinent<sup>4</sup> whan they shold see them / but whan they sawe that  
 32 the nyght passed, and that the day cam without hauyng<sup>5</sup> ony  
 knowleche of theyr approuchement / Theyr espyes made them  
 certayn that our men were goon on horsbak ayenst them, Therefore assailed our  
encamp-  
ments.  
 they toke herte / And yssued vnto the lodgys, for our men

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* Anthyoche.<sup>3</sup> *Orig.* ont.<sup>4</sup> *Orig.* incontinent.<sup>5</sup> *Orig.* hauyng.

From the towers they saw our men returning victorious, and were very sorrowful.

Our men threw 200 heads of Turks into the town.

This was done the 6th day of February, 1097.

were not yet comen agayn in to thooste. <sup>1</sup>They assaylled them moche asprely and harde / so longe that somme of them that were in the playnes within the toun wente vpon the toures and vpon the walles, by cause that oure<sup>2</sup> men that fought<sup>3</sup> shold be abashed by <sup>4</sup>thoccasion of theyr peple that shold come<sup>1</sup> / And as oure peple approuched the turkes / they apperceyued that the other that they abode / were discomfyted, by cause oure men cam ioyously with alle theyr despoilles. Thenne aroos the sorow grete thurgh alle the <sup>8</sup>toun. Our men approuched the toun / And dyde do throwe ij. C / heedes of the turkes that they had brought with engyns in to the cyte for to make them certayn of theyr victorie, And yet to thende that they shold not forgete theyr sorowe that was entred in to theyr <sup>12</sup>hertes. The other iij C / that were lefte they pyght them on stakes at the foote of the walle / And sette there men for to kepe them / By cause they shold be alwey in theyr syght. whan they cam to the deffence / the nombre of them that were discomfyted <sup>16</sup>were / xxviij / M. Thus<sup>4</sup> were somme grete turkes taken & brought prisonners / This was don in feurer the / vj / day the yere of thyncarnacion of our lord / M / lxxxviiij<sup>o</sup>.

Of a castel that our men made of somme pylgryms <sup>20</sup>that arryued at the porte, and how they were discomfyted by a busschement of turkes /

cap<sup>o</sup> Ciiij<sup>o</sup>

a lle the barons of thoost toke counseyl, and acorded that vpon <sup>24</sup>a territoire, whiche was at the tentes of Buymont,<sup>5</sup> shold be <sup>6</sup>made a fortresse, which shold be wel garnysshed with good men of armes, to thende that yf the turkes made theyr assayllies, as they were acustomed / they of this fortresse shold renne on hem. And <sup>28</sup>this towr was a barbycane of thooste / like as they had deuysed

[<sup>6</sup> leaf 72]  
The barons decided to make a fortress near Bohemond's tent.

<sup>1-1</sup> Caxton has exactly followed his original here, which is very faulty ; A. gives the correct reading : "*Durement i assaillirent, et longuement, tant que cil qui estoient sur les beates les virent, lors leur firent signe qu'il s'en retor-nassent, car il veoient ventr genz. Cil entrerent en la vile, et monterent sur les tors, et sur les murs por connoistre si c'estoit leur gent qui venoient.*" Lat. "*pene tota die nostris gravissima intulerunt certamina, quousque de superiori-bus civilatis significantibus excubiis nostrorum adventum in urbem se recipiunt, ubi super turres et moenia et loca eminentiora constitui adventare quidem considerant legiones ignari, tamen nostrorum an suorum essent, castra que accederent.*" <sup>2</sup> Orig. onre. <sup>3</sup> Orig. fought. <sup>4</sup> Orig. Thns.

<sup>5</sup> Orig. Bnymont.



- & ordeyneke, so was it made without taryeng<sup>1</sup>: and valyaunt men and hardy were sette in this fortresse largely. thenne was alle thost assured as they had ben within the walles of a good Cyte /
- 4 The<sup>1</sup> siege had endured thenne .v. monethes / A shippe of genewes cam theder, whiche had brought pylgryms and vytaylles. they aryued at the porte, & sette them in the Ryuer of helle, as it falleth in to the sec / they had sente ofte messagers in to the hoost /
- 8 that they shold fetche them by som of the grete barons, with so good company that they myght be sauflly conduyted in to thoost. they of the toun had thenne apperceyued that messagers wente and cam fro the shippe in to thoost / And sente out men, that slewe
- 12 somme of them ; And therfor durst none goo more without grete companye. Our barons had aduysed to make a grete fortresse at thende of the brydge, in a mahommerye<sup>2</sup> / that the turkes had, and wold sette men of armes there for<sup>3</sup> to kepe and deffende thyssue of
- 16 the brydge, yf the turkes wolde come / But by cause that there were peple yssued out of thoost for to goo to the ship, were chosen somme of the barons, whiche shold goo and fetche them, ffor they were peple that were goon for to here tydynges of theyr contrees /
- 20 and wold haue comen agayn, but they durst not. therto was chosen buymont / the Erle of tholouse, Euerard du puyssat, And therle garnyer of grece, whiche also shold conduyte the messagers of the calyphe vnto the port of the sec, and at retornyng shold brynge
- 24 agayn and conduyte them of thooste / they of Anthyoche herd saye that the sayd Barons were departed fro thoost, and descended toward the see / And sent out four / M / knyghtes<sup>4</sup> of the moost noble that they had, for to lye in a wayte at theyr retornyng. It
- 28 happed that the fourth day that our men sette them on the way for to retorne, and brought Armures and many horses laden with vytaylles and other thynges / And toke none heede of them that laye in a wayte / The turkes brake sodenly on them / And surprised
- 32 oure men at a paas. The erle of tholouse had the vaward<sup>5</sup> / And Buymont cam after. The crye began moche grete. <sup>6</sup>whan the Turkes sawe thyse noble men, they held them al styll<sup>6</sup> / And

The siege had now endured five months.

Messengers were sent between the town and the sea, to a Genoese ship.

Bohemond and a party of men were chosen to protect those going to the sea.

As they were returning the Turks attacked them.

<sup>1</sup> After city Caxton has omitted "*Car devers Orient estoit celle garnison venue. Devers midy les murs de la palus qui estoient le mur. Devers occident et devers bise le gardoit le fleuve, qui se espanloit vers la mer.*"

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *Mahomerie*, Lat. "*ubi erat quoddam eorum superstitionis oratorium.*"

<sup>3</sup> *Orig. sor.*    <sup>4</sup> *Orig. kuyghtes.*    <sup>5</sup> Fr. *l'avantgarde.*

<sup>6</sup> Fr. "*quand les Turcz vindrent, les preudhommes se tindrent tout coyeement.*"

[1 If. 72, bk.]  
Many of our  
men fled.

At least 300  
were slain.

Duke Godfrey  
assembled  
five battalions  
to aid those  
who had been  
thus sur-  
prised.

He exhorted  
them either  
to die as  
Christians, or  
to avenge  
their fellow-  
soldiers.

"As for my-  
self," said he,  
"I would  
rather die  
than not be  
revenged."

began tenseigne the peple on foote, that they shold holde them to  
gydre. They of the grete affraye that they herde, ffor drede that  
they had, hydde them <sup>1</sup>in the bussches, and fledde in to the  
montaynes and woodes, and toke none heed to that they brought / 4  
whan our barons sawe this, they knewe wel that theyr strengthe  
was not lyke theyres, And began to come to the lodgys dylygently  
with as many men as they myght conduyte. The other, that wold  
not folowe, ne myght not, were alle there slayn / there were slayn 8  
wel of men and wymmen to the nombre of iij C. / this duryng  
tydynges cam to the hoost, that alle they that were comyng were  
al slayn & put to deth by the turkes, that had espyed them / Of  
the barons<sup>2</sup> them self, that conduyted them, was not knowen<sup>3</sup> 12  
whether they were a lyue or deed. the duc Godeffroy, that was  
not ydle, had grete anguyssh in his herte for the peple of our lord  
that was thus lost, And lete do crye that alle men shold arme them  
in thoost on payne of deth / and that none shold abyde behynde 16  
in so grete a werke / alle assembled, & passed the brygge of the  
shippis / and they made .v / bataylles / robert, duc of Normandy, e,  
lad that one ; The .ij / lad therle of Flaundes / the thyrde, huon le  
mayne / The forth, Eustace / brother to the duc<sup>4</sup> Godeffroy / And 20  
the duc<sup>4</sup> hym self had the fyfthe. whan they were all ordeyned,  
the duc<sup>4</sup> called them ; And alle they heryng, sayde in this manere /  
" Fayr lordes, yf it be trouthe thus as the tydynges renne, that for  
oure<sup>5</sup> synnes<sup>6</sup> thise cruel houndes and fals / haue<sup>7</sup> slayn so valyaunt 24  
men, and of so grete counseyl, whom ye sente to the see side / And  
with them be perysshed also our felows, whom they shold haue  
conduyted / I see not but of two wayes that one / or that we deye  
with them as good cristen men in this world, and certeyn to receyue 28  
the reward of Ihesu Criste, whom we shal serue vnto the deth / Or  
yf oure lord wyl that oure seruyce be to hym acceptable / that we  
take vengeance on thise mastyfs, that haue thus enpayred cristi-  
ente, and endommaged and destroyed thise valyaunt men. As for 32  
my self, I saye to you<sup>8</sup> certaynly / I had leuer to deye presently,  
than to lyue without to be aduenged on them / Now vnderstonde  
ye what I shal saye to you ; me semeth that thise turkes, yf they  
haue the victorie vpon oure men, as it is sayd / they shal be now 36  
mounted in grete pride / And by grete bobance, for to angre vs, wyl  
come to the cyte / And brynge theyr proyes and fardellys to fore

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* barous.

<sup>3</sup> *Orig.* kuowen.

<sup>4</sup> *Orig.* dnc.

<sup>5</sup> *Orig.* onre.

<sup>6</sup> *Orig.* fyunes.

<sup>7</sup> *Orig.* hane.

<sup>8</sup> *Orig.* yon.

vs / And ye shal wel see that they shal not kepe them wel in  
ordenaunce, but shal goo folylly ; And this shal be grete auantage to  
vs / Therefore, <sup>1</sup>by my counseyll, yf it be so / that<sup>1</sup> we hold<sup>t</sup> vs al  
4 redy for to doo the seruyse of oure lord, ffor whiche we departed<sup>t</sup>  
oute of oure countrees / late vs haue in hym stedfast hope, ffor he  
<sup>2</sup>guerdonneth right wel his souldyours / whan our enemyes shal  
come to vs, late vs receyue them vygorously with glayues / speres  
8 and<sup>t</sup> swerdes / late eueryche of you remembre wel in his herte of the  
wronge and shame that they haue don oure lord<sup>t</sup>, and<sup>t</sup> to oure self."  
This worde, that the duc sayde, was wel vnderstande of alle / And  
plesyd them merueyllously well. They began to warne eche other,  
12 and somone to doo well / As<sup>3</sup> there they knewe to gydre, And<sup>t</sup>  
there helde them al redy / And<sup>t</sup> thenne buymont aryued<sup>t</sup>, & cam  
among them / And<sup>t</sup> a lytil whyle after cam therle of tholouse : And<sup>t</sup>  
they tolde to them of theyr mesaventure. They had moche grete  
16 ioye of their comyng, and that they were escaped / They moche  
comforted eche other / And after sayd<sup>t</sup> to them the counseyl of duc  
godeffroy / They acorded therto / and sayd that it ought so to be  
doo ; And so abode there alle they to gydre / Ancean, Capytayn of  
20 the Cyte, by thyse semblaunces that he sawe, knewe that his peple  
had discomfyt<sup>t</sup> the oures. Moche doubted he of theyr comyng<sup>t</sup>  
agayn, by cause that our men were yssued ayenst them / therfor he  
dyde do crye in the toun / that alle men shold<sup>t</sup> arme them and<sup>t</sup>  
24 come to the yate of the brydge, for to be redy in araye for to  
socoure their peple, yf nede were / Our men had sente their espyes  
and theyr courreurs in dyuerse partyes, for tenquyre and<sup>t</sup> knowe  
whan the turkes shold come, and fro what parte.

"We must hold ourselves ready to do the service of our Lord."

[<sup>2</sup> leaf 73]

The Crusaders then began to exhort each other to do their best.

Just then Bohemond arrived, and there was great joy at his safety.

Ancean stationed soldiers at the bridge, to aid his men if they should need it.

28 Of a batayll, where our men auenged them of the  
turkes / and of a stroke that duc godeffroy gaf  
in this bataylle. cap<sup>o</sup> Cv<sup>o</sup>

i T was not longe after, but whyles as they taryed<sup>t</sup> there, and<sup>t</sup>  
32 had<sup>t</sup> theyr hertes desyryng to doo prowesse, yf they had<sup>t</sup> tyme  
and<sup>t</sup> place, that theyr messagers arryued<sup>t</sup> alle rennyng<sup>t</sup>, whiche told<sup>t</sup>  
to them that the turkes were nygh / They began to recomande them  
self to oure lord<sup>t</sup>, and<sup>t</sup> wente forward<sup>t</sup> in theyr bataylles like as they  
36 were ordeyned / whan they sawe tyme and<sup>t</sup> place, they smote theyr

<sup>1-1</sup> Fr. "Pour ce c'est mon conseil, si vous voyez qu'il soit bon, que," etc.

<sup>3</sup> Fr. "si comme ilz se cognoissoient."

Our men  
attacked the  
arriving  
Turks  
fiercely,

so that they  
retreated to  
the bridge.  
[<sup>1</sup> lf. 73, bk.]

Duke Godfrey  
was ready for  
these, and  
slew them or  
drove them  
back.

All of the  
barons did  
great feats  
of arms.

Ancean sent  
his men to  
attack ours  
in turn.

hors with theyr spores / And cam to so fiersly that the turkes were  
al abasshed / thenne they began to smyte asprely on the right syde  
and lyft, And flewe in to the presse in suche wyse that eucry man  
wold be the best and moost valyaunt / in so moche that they gaf 4  
to theyr enemyes no leyser to aduyse them what they shold doo /  
They myght not endure the grete strengthe of oure men / but wold  
haue drawn toward the brydge / <sup>1</sup>But the duc godeffroy / that  
moche knewe of suche thynges, was<sup>2</sup> pourueyed therof to fore / And 8  
had taken a lytil territoire, welche was ayenst the brydge / And  
there he helde hym in his bataylle / Alle the turkes that they  
chaced toward hym / he slewe them, or he made retorne ayenst  
them fro whens they cam, where they slewe them alle and hewe 12  
them / the erle of fflaundres dyde right wel this day, as a good,  
valyaunt & hardy man in armes / the Duc of Normandye brak  
the presse, that no turke durst<sup>3</sup> approche hym / the Erle of tholouse  
hym self wold auenge this / that they had made hym to spore his 16  
hors the daye to fore / huon le mayne forgate not to shewe of what  
lygnage he was, and of what contre / <sup>4</sup>but<sup>5</sup> semed that he dyde to  
his enemyes / that alle the werke and charge had ben his / thenne  
eustace, brother of duc godeffroy ; Bawdwyn, erle of henawd / 20  
hughe, therle of seynt poul ; And alle the other barons, knyghtes  
and noble men, in theyr countrees dyde meruaylles of armes, ther  
was neuer man lyuyng that sawe any werk better enterprised and  
more valyauntly achyeyd, and that comunely of alle / Ancean 24  
sawe this bataylle so grete / <sup>6</sup>And sawe his peple yssue out<sup>7</sup> for to  
gyue them herte and courage<sup>6</sup> / And to put away thesperaunce of  
theyr flyght, commaunded to shette the yates after them. they  
cam pryckying ayenst oure men / & wold haue made theyres to 28  
retorne welche were discomfyted, but the affraye and the drede was  
so grete in them that they neuer made semblaunt therto / they them  
self, that frely cam on, whan they sawe the prowesse of our men,

<sup>2</sup> Fr. "*s'estoit par avant moult prevu*," i. e. he had thoroughly prepared himself in advance.

<sup>3</sup> Orig. durst.

<sup>4</sup> Caxton is very obscure here, although he seems to have understood his French. Fr. "*aincois sembloit à ce qu'il faisoit sur ses ennemis que toute la besoigne estoit sienne*," viz. it seemed, to judge from what he did to his enemies, that the whole burden of the fight lay on him.

<sup>5</sup> Orig. buf.

<sup>6-6</sup> Fr. "*si fist ces gens issir hors, et pour eulx donner cuer*." Caxton seems to have read *vist* (saw) instead of *fist* (made).

<sup>7</sup> Orig. ont.

and the<sup>1</sup> grete strokes that they gaf, tordned theyr backes with the  
other / ne neuer made grete resistance / there was the fyghtyng  
grete, and merueyllous<sup>2</sup> betyng<sup>3</sup> doun of the turkes, that men myght  
4 not but with grete payne passe / ther was so grete noyse, so grete  
crye, & so terryble neyhyng<sup>4</sup> of horses oueral, that a man shold  
not haue herd thondre. they that had made the yates to be shette  
after them, <sup>3</sup>were ofte this day in peryl to lese theyr lyues.<sup>3</sup> the  
8 wyues of the turkes, the maydens and feble peple of the toun, were  
vpon the walles and tourettes, where they sawe theyr peple torne to  
meschyef and to destruction / ye may wel thynke that they had  
grete sorowe / wepynge, and moche crye and noyse. wel cursed  
12 they that tyme, that they so longe had lyued that they shold see  
suche meschyef happen to them / Ancean sawe that he loste alle his  
men, and had none hope for to recoure them / commaunded that  
that yate shold be opened for to receyue in to the toun them that  
16 were lefte / whan the turkes sawe the yate opene / they had so  
grete wyll to entre in to the toun / that vpon the brydge they  
pressyd so euyl for haste, that they fylle in to the water of them  
grete plente. The Duc Godeffroye, that al that day had so wel  
20 don, And whan it cam for to departe to fore the bridge / he gaf a  
strook<sup>4</sup> moche valyaunt / and suche one / that it shal perpetually  
and euermore be spoken of in wele and in honour / ffor I trowe  
ther happed neuer none suche to fore / ne neuer shal happen here  
24 after. There were this daye many heedes smeton of / Armes and  
sholders at one stroke / he wel apperceyued one of his enemyes,  
whiche helde hym nygh to Godeffroy, And auaunced hym ofte, and  
peyned to greue hym / The valyaunt Duc smote hym with his  
28 swerde by suche myght and vertue, that he smote hym in two  
pyeces in the myddle / in suche wyse that the ouerste part of hym  
fyl to the ground / And that other parte abode styll syttyng on the  
hors / whiche entred in to the Cyte with the other / And knowe  
32 ye certaynly that this sayd Turke was armed with a good hauberk,  
and moche stronge / Alle they that sawe this merueylle / were  
gretely abashed; And the Turkes them self had grete fere and  
drede. <sup>5</sup>O mercyful God, what myght and strengthe gyuest thou  
36 to thy seruantes, that haue their fayth and truste in the / Suche a  
stroke hath not<sup>6</sup> be herd of to fore this tyme<sup>5</sup> / That same daye

The conflict  
was terrible.

The Turkes  
were worsted,

and Ancean  
opened the  
gates of the  
city to receive  
the fugitives.

[<sup>4</sup> leaf 74,  
sig. 91]

Duke Godfrey  
smote a man  
in two with  
one stroke of  
his sword.

All who saw  
this marvel  
were greatly  
abashed.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *sentirent*, left out by Caxton.      <sup>2</sup> *si* omitted.

<sup>3-3</sup> Fr. "*firent à maintz, le jour, perdre les vies*," he caused many, that day, to lose their lives."      <sup>5-5</sup> Inserted by Caxton.      <sup>6</sup> *Orig. uot.*

The Turks  
lost great  
numbers of  
men,

and twelve  
great emirs.

they of Anthyoche loste moo than two thousand men. And yf the nyght had not comen so sone on, they shold haue ben so enfebled of men / that with payne shold they haue conne holden and kept the toun ayenst oure men. It semed wel that at the brydge were 4 many Turkes slayn, ffor it was thicke there of deede bodyes. The ryuer that descended to the see / was alle bloody vnto the See / Somme Cristen men of the londe yssued oute of the toun, And cam to our peple / that told them that .xij / grete admyrals had the 8 Turkes loste in the bataylle / For whom they were ouermuche sorouful ; For they were so endommaged / that neuer in theyr lyf shold they be therof restored.

How the Cristen men thanked oure lord of this 12  
vyctorye / And made a Castel in theyr mahom-  
merye, where there they fonde grete gayne.

Capitulo Cvj°

[1 ff. 74, bk.] 1

The barons  
give thanks  
for this great  
victory.

He next day, whan the daye was wel cleer, the barons 16  
assembled alle, for humbly to thancke our lord of the victorye  
that he had gyuen to them ; And after, spak of the comyn besynes.

The common  
soldiers un-  
buried the  
Turks, and  
plundered  
their graves.

Comynly was deuysed and acorde of alle / that there shold be  
made a tour, as they had enterprysed at thende of the brydge, for 20  
to take away the yssue fro them of the toun / And for to kepe and  
warante oure peple whan they ranne to fore it / There had the  
Turkes buryed by nyght the dede men that had ben slayn in the  
bataylle to fore / whan the peple afoote knewe this, they ranne, 24  
And there vnburyed them / And toke them out of theyr sepultures  
and graues / And toke and bare away Gold / Syluere / And theyr  
robes, the whiche they had buryed with them in their sepultures,  
after theyr customme / They of the toun had moche sorowe, by 28  
cause they sawe to fore theyr eyen the corsen taken vp of theyr  
frendes, whiche they had buryed with grete costes and despenses.  
And it displesyd them moche that the nombre of theyr deed men  
shold be knowen / whom they had supposed to haue kepte secrete / 32  
ffor without them that fylle in the flood or Ryuer, And withoute  
them that were buryed in the toun / And them that were hurt  
vnto the deth, and buryed in the toun, were taken vp oute of  
theyr graues in the mahommerye a thousand and fyue honderd. 36  
They smote of thre honderd heedes, and sente them to Themperour,  
for to late hym haue certayn tydynges of the bataylle that they had

1500 men  
were thus  
taken up out  
of their  
graves.

ayenst<sup>1</sup> the turkes / The messagers of the Calyph of Egypte were  
 not yet departed fro thens. And whan they sawe this, they were  
 ioyous of the deth of theyr enemyes / But they were alway after  
 4 afeerd, and dred oure peple / There were many of oure owne men  
 that had fledde in to the woodes and montaynes, whiche after  
 retourned in to thooste / There cam many in to thooste / that men  
 supposed had ben deed / the barons commanded that the fortresse  
 8 shold be made, & adressyd moch hye and stronge, hastely. It was  
 made of such stones as they drewe out of the tombes & sepultures  
 of the turkes / & after, the barons began to aduyse to whom the  
 keypyng of this tour shold be delyuerd, which was fayr & strong ; &  
 12 to fore was made a dyche, moche depe. ther were Barons ynowe,  
 whiche excused them by many reasons why they myght not kepe it /  
 But the valyant Erle of Tholouse prouffed hym self / And prayde  
 that it myght be delyuerd to hym ffor to gouerne / ffor by the grace  
 16 of God he shold kepe it wel / Alle the Barons coude hym moche  
 good thancke / And <sup>2</sup>by this recouerd<sup>3</sup> he the grace and loue of the  
 comyn peple / whiche he had alle loste / ffor fro the somer to fore,  
 by thoccasion of a sekenes and maladye that he had / <sup>4</sup>he had don  
 20 none auancement of ony werkes and nedes of the hoost.<sup>4</sup> Eueryche  
 of the other barons had don his power / But he dyde right nought /  
 therfore thempyre coude hym thank / ffor it was supposed that he  
 was the rychest. but for tentreprise of this thyng, they sayd wel  
 24 alle that he was not a ferd, ne euyll. And on that other syde, yet  
 he dyde more, ffor he leyd out .v / C / marck weyght of syluer in  
 the hand of the Bisshop of puy, and other good men, for to helpe  
 to restore the dommages of the horses that the poure men had  
 28 taken in the bataylle. there were many after, that were the more  
 hardy for to goo ayenst theyr enemyes, for hope to haue, and  
 recouere theyr horses / ffor thyse thynges was therle of tholouse  
 moche louyd and preysed, in so moche that they callyd hym fader  
 32 and wardeyn of thoost.

The messen-  
 gers of the  
 Caliph of  
 Egypt had  
 great fear and  
 dread of our  
 men.

A fortress  
 was now  
 made by the  
 Christians of  
 stones, high  
 and strong.

The Earl of  
 Toulouse  
 offered to  
 garnish and  
 keep this  
 fortress.

[<sup>2</sup> leaf 75,  
 sig. 92]

He was, on  
 this account,  
 called the  
 "Father and  
 Warden of  
 the Host."

Of a fortresse that Tancre made ouer the Ryuer and  
 deffended it valyauntly. capitulo C / vij<sup>o</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Orig. ayeust.

<sup>3</sup> Orig. reconerd.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. "*s'estoit si forfait* (var "*soustrait*," which is the correct reading),  
*de toutes les besongnes de l'ost.*" Lat. "*Nam ab aestate practerita, per totam*  
*insequentem hyemem, occasione cuiusdam aegritudinis, ita remissus jacuerat,*  
*et pene inutilis.*"

By this new fortress, the Turks were kept from going in and out of the town.

They decided to build a second fortress,

[§ 17. 75, bk.]

of which Tancred should be placed in command.

On the river side of the town were fair pastures, filled with horses.

The Crusaders made a sally, and captured many of these.

i N this newe fortresse of the brydge therle of tholouse sette  
 thyryn / v.C. men of Armes, hardy and valyaunt knyghtes and  
 other / And by cause of this fortresse the yssuyng and goyng out  
 of them of the toun was deffended / Oure men thenne wente surely 4  
 in the countre / the turkes myght not yssue but by the west yate /  
 whiche is bytwene the foot of the hylle, And the ryuer of helle.  
 And this yssue myght not moche greue ne hurte oure men / ffor  
 alle the lodgys were ouer the ryuer / but alway by that waye cam 8  
 vytaylles and fresshe metes to them of the toun<sup>1</sup> / And thus they  
 were not ynowgh constreyned / by so moche as they had this  
 yssue / The barons assembled and counseyll<sup>2</sup> how they myght  
 take this waye fro them / they acorded wel that this myght not be, 12  
 But yf ther were a fortresse made ouer the Ryuer whiche muste be  
 delyuerd to one of the Barons for to kepe. They acorded well alle  
 that the fortresse shold be made / But none proferd ne sayde that  
 he wold kepe it / Many of them sayde that Tancre was ryght pro- 16  
 pyce to this thyng. But he excused hym, And sayd that he  
 was ouer poure for tendure and bere so grete dispence. Therle of  
 Tholouse sterte forth to fore / and gaf to hym an / C / marck of  
 syluer for to make it with. And It was ordeyned that he shold 20  
 haue euery moneth .xl marke of the comune. Tancre, whiche was  
 moche valyaunt and wyse, dyde do make this tour, in a lytil tertre  
 nygh ynowgh to the gate, And after receyued it in to his warde and  
 keypyng. And god gaf to hym so moche worship / that he loste 24  
 nothyng / But kepte it al hool vnto the ende of the siege. In the  
 syde bynethe by the Ryuer was a moche fayr playne in whiche  
 habounded many fayr pastures<sup>4</sup> / And grete plente of trees a / iij /  
 or four myle fro the Cyte. They of the toun by cause they had not 28  
 pastures ynowgh / they had sente grete plente of theyr horses and  
 mounture in to that place / whan they of thoost apperceyued it /  
 They assembled knyghtes ynowe and other valyaunt men of  
 Armes / And wente theder / but not by the right waye / but by 32  
 pathes and hyd wayes, so longe that they assayed them that kept  
 them and slewe them. They brought in to the hoost / ij / M.  
 horses for men of Armes grete gente, and fayr / besyde the mules  
 and other beestes, wherof they had largely. Of this gayne had 36  
 they grete ioie / ffor they had of nothyng so grete nede in thoost as  
 of horses / ffor they had ben mynnysshed moche and lassed in the  
 bataylle / And many deyed that tyme for hunge and mesease.

<sup>1</sup> Orig. tonn.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. connseyll.

<sup>4</sup> Orig. pastatures.



How thenne the turkes of the toun began to haue  
mesease and sorowe / And our peple ease /

Capitulo Cviiij<sup>o</sup>.

- 4 t Han<sup>1</sup> the Cyte was thus on alle sydes assyged<sup>t</sup> that the turkes  
myght not yssue oute / they began within to haue mesease,  
<sup>2</sup>ffor the Turkes had<sup>t</sup> not vytayll ynowgh,<sup>2</sup> wherof it happed<sup>t</sup> that  
they myght not helpe them in theyr nede / ffresshe mete ffaylled<sup>t</sup>  
8 them, whiche greuyd<sup>t</sup> them moche / Oure men had<sup>t</sup> bandon to goo  
vnto the Porte of the See / <sup>3</sup>By whiche they had<sup>t</sup> so moche to suffre  
as they had<sup>t</sup> endured<sup>t</sup> all the wynter<sup>3</sup> / ffor the pryme<sup>4</sup> temps and  
swete tyme was come in suche wyse that shippes myght goo and<sup>t</sup>  
12 come by the See / whiche brought vytaylles ynowgh. There were  
many of oure people that had<sup>t</sup> sojourned<sup>t</sup> all the wynter in the  
Townes, whiche thenne cam agayne in to thooste alle fressh & wel  
armed. / bawdwyn the brother of duc Godeffroy / of whom ye  
16 haue wel herd<sup>t</sup> speke to fore / whiche had<sup>t</sup> so moche rychesse / had  
herd tydynges<sup>5</sup> that the barons <sup>6</sup>had suffred many meseases in  
thoost / And sente to them alle grete yeftes and presentes / not  
only to the grete prynces / But also to the moyen peple / And to  
20 the leste gaf he also ynowgh of his owen, wherfor had the loue &  
grace of alle this companye / he gaf to his brother the Duc alle  
thyssues of his londe that he had<sup>t</sup> on this syde the Ryuer of  
Eufrates / with which he gaf to hym the Cyte of torbesel & the  
24 contre ther about<sup>7</sup> wherin was moche whete / wyne & oyle. And  
yet aboue al this he gaf to hym / L / M. besautes / And there  
was a noble man of hermonye whiche was named<sup>t</sup> Nycose, whiche  
was wel acqueynted with bawdwyn. And for his loue sente vnto  
28 duc Godeffroy a pauyllon, the moost fayr and<sup>t</sup> moost ryche, that  
myght o wher be seen / It was of ouer straunge facion and<sup>t</sup> mer-  
uellously grete / But whan his messagers bare it in to the hooste<sup>8</sup> /  
One pancrace a moche ryche man of Hermonye / Of whom I haue  
32 spoken to fore, dyde do espye them by the waye / And dyd<sup>t</sup> to take

The Turks  
now suffered  
great discom-  
fort from the  
siege.

Ships brought  
our men  
provisions by  
sea.

[<sup>6</sup> leaf 76,  
sig. 93]  
Baldwin sent  
great gifts to  
the Cru-  
saders.

He sent his  
brother God-  
frey 50,000  
besantes.

Pancratius  
seized the  
pavilion sent  
to Godfrey,

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *Quand*.

<sup>2-2</sup> Fr. "*car leurs chevaulx n'avoient mie assez viandes*—" for their horses  
—(not "the Turks") had not food enough.

<sup>3-3</sup> Fr. "*dont ilz n'avoient mais tel souffrete comme ilz avoient enduree  
tous l'yer*." Lat. "*Nude et ni castris ex parte plurima relevata erat illa  
victus inopia qua periculose nimis per totam hyemem laboraverat exercitus*."

<sup>4</sup> Fr. *doulx temps*, spring time.

<sup>5</sup> Orig. tydyuges.

<sup>7</sup> Orig. about,

<sup>8</sup> Orig. huoste,

and gave it  
to Bohemond.

Godfrey was  
very angry at  
this,

and de-  
manded the  
pavilion from  
Bohemond.

Bohemond  
finally, to  
keep the  
peace, sur-  
rendered it  
to Godfrey.

it from them /. And after sente the pauyllon to Buymont. And  
was presented to hym in his name. whan the seruantes of Nycose  
cam to Duc Godeffroy / And had told hym alle this that pancrace  
had don to hym / he had therof moche grete desdayne / Syth he 4  
toke with hym the Erle of flaundes, to whom he had more loue  
and acqueyntaunce than to ony other of the barons / And wente to  
buymont and demaunded his pauyllon that was gyuen to hym /  
Buymont answerd that therof he knewe not / that it was longyng 8  
to hym / ffor a noble man of the countre had gyuen it to hym.  
But whan he knewe that the duc wold not suffre it / By hys cur-  
tosye and atte. prayer and requeste of the other barons he rendred  
and delyuerd to him his sayd pauyllon, to thende that no noyse 12  
shold sounde ne arryse betwene them and myght lette the werke  
of oure lord / Thus were they good frendes / Many men merueylled  
them how that so valyaunt a man as the Duc Godeffroy was / In  
whom was no thyng founden to be reprehended was so meuyd / 16  
ayenst so hye and noble a man for so lytil a thyng as was a pauyllon.  
Ne I can see none other reason, But that a noble herte maye not  
suffre shame / And it was late hym vnderstande that it shold be  
to hym a grete shame / And also it shold be ayenst his honour yf 20  
he suffred it to be taken away from hym, ffor couetyse he dyde  
it not /

How the Erle Estyeuen of Chartres and of Bloys fledde

[1 lf. 76, bk.]

<sup>1</sup>fro the hooste shamefully /

Capitulo Cix<sup>o</sup> 24

It was re-  
ported that  
the Soudan of  
Persia was  
coming with  
a vast army.

t He renommee soulded<sup>2</sup> moche grete / & grewe euery day how  
the Soudan of Perse, whiche was so ryche and puyssaunt,  
by the requeste of them of Anthyoche had doo somone his peple  
of alle his power for to come socoure this cyte / he had assembled 28  
merueyllous grete peple, ffor the tydyng cam not only to them of  
thooste / But it was sayd of many men that yssued out of the  
Cite for to come in to thooste as hermyens and surryens, whiche  
were cristen / wherof it happed that Steuen, therle of chartres & of 32  
bloys, whiche was so noble puyssaunt and wyse, that for his  
wysdom the other barons of thooste named hym the fader of coun-  
seyl,<sup>3</sup> made hym self seke as was sayd / he toke leue of his frendes.  
By cause he sayde he wold goo in to Allexandrye the lasse / whiche 36  
was nyghe to the porte / And wolde abyde there til he were deed

Steven, Earl  
of Chartres  
and Blois,

left the Cru-  
saders, and  
went to  
Alexandria  
the Lesse.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* soulded.

<sup>3</sup> *Fr.* se fist malade, fell ill.

or ellys hool / Thus he departed and lað away with hym grete  
 good / & with hym departed .iiij/M. men, whiche were of his  
 companye and of his countreye, he wente strait in to Allexandrye  
 4 the lasse / And there helde hym to thende / that yf our peple had  
 vycторыe of the bataylle whiche they awayted dayly, he wold  
 retorne in to thoost as guarysshid and hool of his maladye; and yf  
 it had meshapped them, anon he wold haue entred in to shippis  
 8 whiche were all redy for to retourne in to his country / Of this  
 thyng all the barons of thooste were so abasshed & angry that  
 they wepte hoothe teeris for pyte, that they had of so hye and noble  
 man that toke none hede to his gentillesse,<sup>1</sup> to his wytte / ne to  
 12 the worschyppe that men dyde to hym / But departed so euyl in  
 poynt / (25) that many men had no shame to withdrawe them after  
 hym / Thus departed many / The Barons had counseyl to gydre /  
 And dyde do crye thurgh the hooste, that noman shold be so hardy  
 16 to departe withoute leue / ffor yf ony wente, they shold be holden  
 for murdyre, And Iustyce shold be doon to suche men / By this  
 ordonaunce for teschewe the payne and for to kepe theyr honour  
 they held them in peas in thoost / And obeyed alle in pees in the  
 20 hooste, And obeyed debonayrly to the barons of thooste, <sup>2</sup>As  
 Monkes or Cloystrers to theyr Abbot, withoute departyng any of  
 theyr company.<sup>2</sup>

There he  
 stayed to see  
 the result of  
 the siege of  
 Antioch.

All the barons  
 were so  
 ashamed of  
 this cowardly  
 behaviour,  
 that they  
 wept tears of  
 pity for  
 Steven.

The great  
 barons finally  
 brought the  
 army to  
 obedience.

How a Cristen man, Emyrferius, whiche was in An-  
 24 thyoche, <sup>3</sup>acqueynted hym with Buymont /  
 ca. Cx°

[<sup>3</sup> leaf 77,  
 sig. 94]

a Nthyoche, this holy cyte that I haue spoken of to fore,  
 was conuerted by the prechyng of seynt peter thappostle /  
 28 alway it helde wel this fayth, and yet holdeth certaynly, god be  
 thanked. Whan the disloyalte and falsenes of mahomet ran thurgh  
 thoryent this cyte wold neuer<sup>4</sup> receyue his lawe,<sup>5</sup> and whan the  
 myghty men of the countre wold constrayne them by force to this  
 32 euyl lawe, they deffended them well ayenst alle suche, wherof it  
 happed that whan the deuyl had sette this false byleue thurgh alle  
 the londe of Perse vnto the braas of seynt George / and fro Inde  
 vnto spayne / this cyte abode alway in the fayth of the trouthe of  
 36 Ihesu Criste / Trouthe it is that fourteen yere to fore that our peple

Antioch was  
 converted by  
 the preaching  
 of Peter the  
 apostle,

and abode  
 always in the  
 faith of Jesus  
 Christ.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. "*sa gentillesse*," etc., to his rank, etc.

<sup>2-3</sup> Fr. "*comme moines cloistriers a leur abé, sans partir nullement de leur compagnie*." <sup>4</sup> Orig. *nener*. <sup>5</sup> Fr. *loi*, religion, faith,

The Christians had no power in the city, but were ruled by the Turks.

There was among the Christians a noble family of Armenians.

The eldest was called Emirferius.

He sent messengers to Bohemond to [<sup>a</sup> l. 77, bk.] reveal to him the plans of the Turks in the city.

cam theder / the grete Soudan of Perse had conquerd alle the londes  
vnto Anthyoche / And by cause they were not myghty to hold it  
ony lenger, they yelded it vnder the puyssaunce of this grete man.  
Thenne after cam oure men for tassiege it. Almost alle they of the 4  
toun helde the fayth of oure lord. But withoute faylle they had  
no power ne noo seynorye in the cyte, ffor they medled of nothyng  
sauf theyr craftes and theyr merchaundyses to wynne theyr breed /  
1 the turkes had the bataylles / and wente to armes whan it was 8  
nede.<sup>1</sup> ther was none so hardy of the cristen men that durst arme  
hym / and specially syth our peple cam to fore the toun The cristen  
men that were therin were holden suspect that they durst not yssue  
ne goo oute of theyr howses / there were many of suche cristen men 12  
that were of grete lygnage, to whom was don moche shame. there  
was a lygnage of noble men that were heremyens. They were  
named in theyr langage Bam and Cyrra<sup>2</sup> / that is to saye the<sup>3</sup> sones  
of haubergyers / And for certeyn of the same langage were descended 16  
theyr lygnages, and yet ben ther somme that make hauberks / they  
had a toure whiche was named the tour of the two sustres. In this  
toure were / ij / bretheren that were lordes of this lygnage. The  
oldest<sup>4</sup> had to Name Emerferyus,<sup>5</sup> a moche sage and prudent man / 20  
Acqueynted he was and pryue with the lord of the toun, in suche  
wyse that he had made hym his notarye within the palays / This  
man herde men speke moche good of Buymont fro the begynnyng  
of the siege. And wel vnderstode by the comyn renomnee that he 24  
was a wyse man, And trewe of grete herte and enterpryse / Ther-  
fore he sente to hym his Messenger / And acqueynted with hym  
moche<sup>6</sup> pryuely, and lete hym knowe alle the beyng & state of the  
Cyte / and the purpoos of the turkes / but they were bothe two 28  
wysemen, therfor coude they wel couere theyr counntenances /  
There were but few peple about buymont that knewe hym.

<sup>1-1</sup> Mistranslation owing to corrupt original. A. gives the correct reading. "*Les Turcs avoient les baillies et aloient as armes quant mestier estoit*," "The Turks possessed all administrative power, and went to war when necessary." Lat. "*solis Turcis et infidelibus militare licebat, et majores civitatis administrare dignitates*."

<sup>2</sup> B. gives "*Bam and Cyrra*;" followed by Caxton. A. gives *Bar. zarra*.

<sup>3</sup> "sons of the cuirass makers." Lat. "*Qui dicebatur Beni Ferra, quod in lingua latina interpretatur, filii loricatoris*."

<sup>4</sup> Orig. oldesc,

<sup>5</sup> Fr. *Emirferius*. Lat. *Emirfeirus*.

Of somme deuyses that the sayd Emyrferius sente  
to buymont, & in what maner he acorded to  
delyuer to hym the toun. ca° Cxj°

- 4 s Euen monethes had tho endured the siege to fore the toun /  
Buymont the wyse and subtil / had many tymes essayed his  
frende of the toun / how the cyte myght be yolden to the cristen  
men. So ofte he sente to hym by his sone that sayd thus to hym  
8 in this manere / "fayre swete syre, I trowe certaynly that our lord  
Ihesu Criste wold that I had this acqueyntaunce with you and this  
loue; <sup>1</sup>ffor euer syth I haue be acqueynted with you, myn herte  
neuer rested to drawe and acorde every day more and more in  
12 your bonnte,<sup>1</sup> and your maner plesyd me moche / I haue veray  
ferme & fast hope that I and the myne shal be yet in tyme  
comynge moche holpen and honoured by you<sup>2</sup> of this thyng that  
ye haue discoverid to me / of which I haue ben merueylously  
16 pensyf / syth I haue herd of it / I haue moch counterpeysed<sup>3</sup> the  
wayes of that one side and of that other, ffor I thynke wel certeynly  
that yf I may delyuer my countrey fro the peple that ben enemyes  
of oure lord, and rendre and delyuere it to the seynnorye of my  
20 fayth, I shal haue grete guerdon of oure lord and grete honour in  
the world / But yf it so happed thus that this werke were des-  
couered that I haue enterprised, to fore er it cam to an ende or  
conclusion / I shold be delyuerd to alle the tormentes of the world /  
24 & alle my lygnage effaced and destroyed, that it neuer shold be  
spoken of after. <sup>4</sup>And neuertheles many thynges be put in aduen-  
ture,<sup>4</sup> therfore I wylle discouere to you alle my herte, as to hym  
that I hold for a trewe frende / yf the barons that be in your com-  
28 panye wylle graunte as trewe men as they be, that this Cyte shal  
be youres for euermore and your heyres yf it may be conquerd /  
<sup>5</sup>I shal put me in aduenture<sup>5</sup> so that I shal delyuer to you this tour  
that I holde / whiche is moche strong and wel garnysshed / And  
32 this I shal doo for goddes loue and yourres / But yf they entende  
that euery men shal haue his part / as of thyng goten by warre /

Emirferius  
kept sending  
friendly mes-  
sages to  
Bohemond,

and promis-  
ing to deliver  
the city to  
him,

notwith-  
standing that  
he would be  
put to torture  
if discovered.

This he  
would do for  
God's love,  
and for love  
of Bohemond.

<sup>1-1</sup> Fr. "*Car oncques puis que je fus de vous acointe, ne me fina le cuer de  
traire à accorder chacun jour de plus en plus a vostre bonté.*"

<sup>2</sup> Orig. yon.

<sup>3</sup> Fr. *contre pensées*, carefully weighed.

<sup>4-4</sup> Fr. "*et neant moins de plusieurs choses se met l'en aventure*"—viz. "in  
several respects great risks are to be run."

<sup>5-5</sup> Fr. "*je me mettrai en aventure.*" "I will take the risk on myself (*i. e.*  
of delivering the city to you)."

[<sup>1</sup> leaf 78]  
He besought  
Bohemond to  
labour earn-  
estly for the  
same object.

What they  
did must be  
done quickly,

as succour  
from beyond  
the Euphrates  
was daily  
expected.

therupon wyl I not laboure ne doo payne / ffor I wote neuer to  
what ende it shold<sup>1</sup> come. therfor I pray you, fayr swete syre and  
trew frende, that ye put you in deuoyr & payne that this toun be  
yours / not for couetyse, but for the prouffyt of the cyte Cristen / 4  
& I promyse to you that the day that I shal knowe that it shal  
be thus graunted to you, I shal delyuer to you the entree of the  
toun. Alway one thyng I saye to you for certayn, that yf it be  
not mayde within short tyme that ye shal neuer day of the world 8  
recouere it / ffor euery day come to the lord of this toun lettres and  
messagers certefyeng<sup>1</sup> that they that come to socoure the toun ben  
about the ryuer of euphrates whiche is not ferre / And they ben wel  
a .ij / C / M / men of Armes. yf they come an you on that one syde / 12  
And they of the Cyte on that other / ye may not suffre ne with-  
stande them / but ye shal be alle deed or taken / And therfore take  
ye here vpon hasty counseyl."

How buymont discouerd this thyng to duc godeffroy, 16  
to huon the mayne, to the duc of Normandye,  
and to therle of fflaundres / Capitulo / C / xij<sup>o</sup>

Bohemond  
did not reveal  
his plan im-  
mediately to  
all the other  
barons.

f Ro the day that buymont<sup>2</sup> had herd this / he began tenquyre<sup>3</sup>  
moche subtylly and examyne the hertes of the barons / And 20  
demaunded them otherwhyle what they wold doo with this Cyte yf  
it were taken / Of the ansuer somme of them thought that it was  
fer of / Therefore taryed buymont to discouere his herte and his  
thought till he sawe better his poynt and tyme / neuertheless he 24  
drewe a part duc godefroy, huon de mayne, the duc of normandye,  
and therle of fflaundres. To them he sayde that he trusted so  
moche in oure lord, that yf the cyte myght be graunted to hym it  
myght be wel in short tyme conquerd. They acorded it and moche 28  
preysed in theyr courage the wytte of this man that had in wyll  
to accomplysse so grete a thyng / By thaccord of them this thyng  
was discouerd to therle of tholouse / he ansuerd that he wold neuer  
yf the Cyte were taken / gyue his parte to another man / The 32  
barons prayd hym moche, but he wold not consente therto for  
nothyng / Therfor the thyng was in suche daunger / that almost  
the thyng was alle loste / ffor Buymont put not the payne / ne  
his frende of the toun wold not but yf the toun shold be alle his. 36  
Neuertheles for alle this, Buymont sente to hym ofte grete yestes for

All but the  
Earl of Tou-  
louse agreed  
that the town  
should be  
Bohemond's,  
if surren-  
dered.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* buymout.

<sup>3</sup> *Orig.* tenquyre,

to kepe hym in acqueyntaunce<sup>1</sup> and in the loue that was begonne  
bytvene them.

Of the grete socours that the Soudan of perse had

4 sente to them <sup>2</sup>of anthyoche, and how Corbagat [<sup>a</sup> fr. 78, bk.]  
assyged rages / capitulo / Cxiiij°

i N the whyle that thyse thynges ran thus in Anthyoche / the  
messagers that fro Ancean were goon to the soudan of perse  
8 for to demaunde ayde / were retorneð as they that had wel don  
theyr thynges,<sup>3</sup> ffor that grete prynce atte requeste of them of  
Anthyoche, And atte prayer of his men, had enterprysed to efface  
and destroye alle our pylgryms that theder were comen / And ther-  
12 fore he sente theder grete plente of Turkes and of cordyns<sup>4</sup> in to  
this cowntre / And had delyuerd all the seynorye and gouernaunce  
of the hooste to one his acqueynted<sup>5</sup> / ffor he trusted moche in his  
wytte / in his loyalte / and in his prowesse / This man was named  
16 Corbagat, he commaunded alle men to obeie to hym. he sente  
lettres pendantes<sup>6</sup> oueral his londes, and commaunded that they  
shold be delyuerd ouer all. that where he shold lede them / that  
they shold goo / And alle that he commaunded them they shold  
20 doo without contradiction / he departed fro his countrey with alle  
his peple and his power / he passed so ferre that he cam in to the  
cowntre of rages / Ther was told to hym that one of the barons of  
ffraunce helde the Cyte of Rages whiche he had conquerd, and alle  
24 the londe aboute it. He had therof grete despyte / and sayd to  
fore and er he passed the Ryuer of Eufates / he shold take the  
toun and destroye alle the frensshemen that he shold fynde within /  
Bawdwyn was not of lityl courage, And had wel herd tydynges of  
28 this peple / he had wel garnysshed his Cyte with armes, vytaylles,  
and noble men / And doubted but lytil his comynge / ne the men-  
aces, ne the grete wordes of thyse peple that were reported to hym /  
Corbagat commaunded that the cyte of rages shold be assieged / And  
32 after dyde do crye to assault / grete payne dyde they, wenyng to haue  
taken the cyte and alle them that were therein / But they that kept  
the toun deffended them moche wel, in suche wyse that they en-

Ancean's  
messengers  
now re-  
turned,

and reported  
that a great  
army was  
coming to aid  
Antioch, un-  
der Corbagat,

who ordered  
the city of  
Rages to be  
attacked at  
once.

But Baldwin  
was well pre-  
pared with  
arms and  
men,

and defended  
his town well.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* acqueyntaunce.

<sup>3</sup> *Fr.* *besongnes*, duties.

<sup>4</sup> *Lat.* *Curdinorum*.

<sup>5</sup> *Fr.* "*un sien acointe*," one of his trusted friends.

<sup>6</sup> *Fr.* *lettres pendantes*, letters with hanging seals.

After three  
weeks' fruit-  
less siege,

Corbagat was  
advised to go  
on to An-  
tioch.

[leaf 79]

But this delay  
had saved  
the Crusaders  
before An-  
tioch.

dommaged<sup>2</sup> moche them that were without, And they within loste  
no thyng. They helde them about the toun thre wekes, he had<sup>3</sup>  
no worship ne prouffyt there. At laste the grete and noble men of  
thooste cam to hym / And sayde and counseyllid hym to departe 4  
fro the siege / ffor he ought fyrst do that thyng for whiche he cam /  
that is to saye, for to take and slee alle them that were to fore  
Anthyoche. And after in his retornynge in a morowtyde he shold  
haue the toun of Rages. And Bawdwyn, yf he were not deed, 8  
they shold take and bynde <sup>1</sup>hym, And presente hym to theyr lord<sup>4</sup>  
as a sheep or a moton. he acorde<sup>5</sup> to theyr counseyl and departed  
fro thens. But allewaye the taryng that the turkes had made  
sauyd oure pylgryms<sup>2</sup> / ffor the mater was not so acorded bytwene 12  
Buymont and his frende, that yf they had comen strait to Anthy-  
oche / oure men had ben in ouer grete meschyef bytwene them that  
he brought<sup>3</sup> / and the other turkes that were in the toun.

How our men beyng aduertysed<sup>4</sup> of the grete hooste 16  
of corbagat, sente somme of theyr knyghtes for to  
esteme them / And what they reported of that  
they had seen / ca° Cxiiij°

t He tydynges began strongly to growe of this people that cam / 20  
And it was no merueyll yf they were effrayed in the hooste of  
the pylgryms / The barons assembled in counseyl / And ordeyned  
by comyn acord / that somme of theyr wysemen that understode /  
them in suche thynges as to esteme peple in the felde shold goo 24  
and knowe their couyne / to this were chosen Dreues de Nelle,  
Clarembault de venduel / Euerard<sup>5</sup> de cherys / & Renau<sup>6</sup>, therle of  
toul / They ledde with them other knyghtes, knowen and preuyd<sup>7</sup>  
in Armes / they departed fro thoost so ferre, that they approuched 28  
the turkes, whom they sawe and folowed them fro fer / Neuertheles  
they wel apperceyued, that lyke as water renneth in the see, cam  
fro alle partes grete rowtes and merueyllous plente of peple in this  
hooste of Corbagat. Thise noble men wente so ferr that they sawe 32  
and knewe alle theyr beyng and strengthe / And syth drewe them  
to the barons, and sayd to them the trouthe / The barons prayde  
and deffended them also, dere as they had the werk of oure lord /  
that they wold not descouere this thyng to the foote men of thoost 36

The Chris-  
tians sent  
some of their  
best warriors  
to inspect the  
coming ene-  
my, and  
report.

They re-  
turned, and  
reported that  
it was a vast  
army.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* prlgryns.

<sup>3</sup> *Orig.* brought.

<sup>4</sup> *Orig.* adnertysed.

<sup>5</sup> Caxton's text gives, *Everard de Cherisi*, A., and the Lat. *Girart de Cherisi*.



in no wyse / but kepe it secrete fro them / ffor it shold be grete  
peryll yf they knewe the trouthe that they shold flee away by  
nyght / And be alle in despayr /

4 Of the counseyl that our peple toke for to ordeyne  
theyr nedes whan they knewe the comyng of this  
right grete hoost<sup>1</sup> / ca° Cxv°

t He barons toke counseyl / on whom the faites and burthou of  
8 this werke laye, how they myght conteyne them in this The barons  
took counsel  
as to what  
was to be  
done.  
greuous poynt in whiche they were / som ther were that gaf coun-  
seyl that they shold departe fro the siege / And that somme of  
them<sup>2</sup> on horsbak / and they on foote shold abyde for to kepe that [2 ll. 79, bk.]  
12 they of the toun<sup>3</sup> shold not mowe ioynne to the other. And somme  
other the best horsed shold lede of them on foote a grete partye  
ayenst Corbagat, and fyght ayenst hym / The thyng was in grete  
doubte, And wyste not how to accorde. Buymont, whan he sawe Everybody  
was in great  
perplexity.  
16 them so surprised called the Duc Godeffroy, therle of fflaundes /  
Hun de mayne, the duc of normandye, & therle of thoulouse /  
And syth sayd to them thise wordes / "ffayr lordes, I see you in  
moche grete doubte, and it is no merueyl / ffor the comynge of this Bohemond  
made a  
speech, show-  
ing the des-  
perateness of  
their con-  
dition,  
20 puyssaunt man that cometh on vs and bryngeth with hym so grete  
plente of our enemyes. Ne ye be not yet accorded in what maner  
ye shal attende, ne what shal be your countenaunce whan he shal  
come / Ne I can not saye to you as me semeth thyng that by this  
24 way may moche auaylle / ffor yf we yssue alle ayenst the turkes /  
lyke as somme men counseyle, somme in one partye / And that  
other to abyde / as other counseyl, we haue loste our payne and  
oure dispencis in the siege of this toun, ffor as sone as we shal  
28 departe fro hens, or alle, or half / they that comen shal sende in to  
the toun grete plente of vytaylles, and fresshe men put in to it. yf  
noman abyde at the siege this shal be good for them to doo. And  
yf ther abyde a parte they shal not leue for them. for whan we be  
32 alle to gydre, vnnethe maye we constrayne them of the toun. thenne  
the fewe that shal abyde / how may they haue the force and myght  
ayenst them within / Therfor me thyncketh that we muste seche and declaring  
that other  
means than  
forcible ones  
must be  
sought.  
36 cyte maye be yolden to vs, And that we maye be within to fore er  
thyse turkes come. this shal be a more sure thyng / yf ye demaunde

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* hoost.<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* tonn.<sup>4</sup> *Orig.* connseyl.

He then revealed the plan of Emirferius.

This can be carried out only on condition that the city be given to Bohemond and his heirs for ever.

[3 leaf 80]

how this maye be / I shal shewe you the way and manere how it shal wel be as me semeth / I haue a frende in this Cyte, a trewe man and wyse, after that I can apperceyue. we haue couenaunted,<sup>1</sup> he and I to gydre, wherfor he ought to delyuer to me a tour moche strong and wel garnysshed of alle that nedeth, whiche he holdeth / whan I shal demaunde hym / I muste gyue to hym thus doynge a grete partye of my good and hauoyr and franchyses and other alyaunces muste kepe to hym and hys. But this maye not be / 8 but that eche of you gyue ouer his part to me, And quyte hym of ony part of the cyte, that it shal abyde to me & to myn heyres for euermore, ffor other wyse he entendeth not that shall delyuer hit. yf it plesse you, in this maner ye may haue the toun. And if 12 ye wil graunte this, I somone and warne you to fere in suche wyse, that thyse couenauntes<sup>3</sup> be wel accomplysshed by godes grace<sup>2</sup> / And yf it plesse you not / And ye maye fynde ony other maner, I am redy tacquyte alle my parte to one of you / or to another of oure 16 companye / yf he wyl delyuer to vs the Cyte / And god knoweth It shal plesse me wel, And I shal be right ioyous in good fayth."

How after that Buymont had declared his fayte to alle the hooste, they acorded that the toun shold be 20 his / sauf the Erle of Tholouse / Capitulo Cxvj°

The barons all joyfully agreed to this, except the Earl of Toulouse.

w Han the barons herd this / they had grete ioye in their hertes, and anon acorded to this that buymont requyred / euery man graunted his part that he shold be quyte therof, except only therle 24 of tholouse, whiche,<sup>4</sup> in a reuerrye wheryn he was, sayde / that he wold not acquyte his part, ne gyue it ouer<sup>5</sup> to noman lyuyng. The other barons promysed certeynly to holde it / And gaf to hym theyr fayth that they shold not discouere it to noman / They prayd hym 28 that he wold wysely brynge this mater aboute, And dylygently laboure taccomplisse it / ffor grete peryll myght come in the taryeng of it / The counseyl departed / thus. This Buymont, which was wyse and trewe, spak to the messenger<sup>6</sup> that knewe theyr 32

<sup>1</sup> Orig. couenaunted.

<sup>2-3</sup> Caxton seems to have misunderstood his French text. Fr. "*je le* (i. e. *Emir ferius*) *semondrai de convenances, tellement que la chose sera bien accompli à l'aide Dieu,*" viz., I will summon him to keep his agreement," etc.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. "*qui par une reuerie ou il estoit entré,*" i. e. who on account of a fit of obstinacy into which he had fallen.

<sup>5</sup> Orig. oner.

<sup>6</sup> Lat. "*Amicum solitis conuenit muntiis.*"

- couyne / And sente hym to his frende / And bad hym saye that  
the barons had graunted to hym that the toun shold be hoolly his  
with moche glad chere / Therfor he somoned hym by his fayth /  
4 that he shold accomplysshe this next nyght hoolly that he had  
promysed hym / One thyng happed this same day that was moche  
helpyng to this werke / & to thaccomplishyng therof / ffor this  
frende of buymont named Emyrferyus entremedled moche of  
8 thaffayres and thynges of ancean and of the toun. This same day  
whan he was besy in this werke / he sente his sone, that<sup>1</sup> was tho  
grete to his hows for to fetche somewhat / whan he cam to the tour  
hastely / he founde that one of the grete admyrals of the toun  
12 pleyed<sup>2</sup> and deled with his moder. whan he sawe this / he had  
so grete sorowe in his herte that he ran agayn to his fader /  
And told to hym lyke as he had founden it. The fader was a  
moche wyseman, And was moche sore angry, And sayd thyse  
16 wordes to his sone: "Fayr sone, it semeth not ynowgh to thyse  
fals houndes that they take fro vs alle that we haue, and kepe vs  
fowle in their seruage. But with this / they doo vs alle the shame  
that they maye / By the ayde of Ihesu criste, <sup>3</sup>in whom I byleue / [<sup>3</sup> fr. 80, bk.]  
20 I shal laboure and doo payne to fynde the maner by whiche theyr  
power and myght shal be lassed, mynnysshed, and shorted / And  
they shal haue guerdon for the euyl that they haue don to vs." he  
made thenne no semblaunt<sup>4</sup> of Angre that he had / But sente his  
24 sone to buymont anon by the maner that he was acustomed to goo,  
And badde hym that he shold be redy. ffor as to hym he wold hold  
hym this nyght alle his couenauntes<sup>5</sup> / he badde hym also that alle  
the Barons of thooste shold yssue oute about<sup>6</sup> none, euery man  
28 armed in his bataylle, And make semblaunt for to goo ayenst  
Corbagat. And after in the begynnyng of the nyght to retorne  
agayn pryuely withoute noyse / And kepe them so armed and redy  
to doo that shal be sayd to them aboute mydnyght. Buymont<sup>7</sup>  
32 was moche ioyous / whan he herd this message / And aftir ledde  
hym to fore the barons, to whom this thyng was discouerd / And  
made hym saye in theyr presence the wordes as he had brought /  
The barons, whan they herd hym, were moche Ioyous / And<sup>8</sup> sayd  
36 wel that this counseyl was good and faythful, and of grete courage  
acorded therto /

Bohemond  
sent the  
messenger,

summoning  
Emirferius  
to fulfil his  
promise, and  
deliver up  
the town.

This same  
day, Emir-  
ferius was  
especially  
wroth with  
one of the  
great emirs  
of the town.

He concealed  
his anger, but  
sent word to  
Bohemond  
that he  
should be  
ready that  
night.

Bohemond  
and the  
barons were  
joyous when  
they heard  
this message.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. "*quil avoit ja grant*," viz. "who was now grown up."

<sup>2</sup> B. *jouoit avec sa mere*. A. *gisoit avec sa mere*. <sup>4</sup> Orig. *semblannt*.

<sup>5</sup> Orig. *couenauntes*. <sup>6</sup> Orig. *about*. <sup>7</sup> Orig. *Buymont*. <sup>8</sup> Orig. *Amd*.

How they of Anthyoche had fere of treson / And  
 how they assembled in counseyl / And of that  
 whiche Emyrferius deposed there at /

Capitulo .C / xvij<sup>o</sup> 4

o Ne thyng happed in this toun / that is acustomed<sup>e</sup> ofte to come  
 in grete werkes / They that had the keypyng and charge of the  
 toun / began to haue suspection within theyr hertes, and deuyned<sup>e</sup>  
 that the Cyte shold<sup>e</sup> be by trayed<sup>e</sup> / they knewe no reson ne how / 8  
 ne they apperceyued<sup>e</sup> no grete semblaunce / But alway that one spak  
 to that other of the grete men / And them semed that it shold falle.  
 So moche aroos this murmur and wordes, that they assembled to  
 fore Ancean lord of the toun / And told to hym that his men 12  
 had such fere, & it was not without reson, ffor the cristen men  
 were in the toun, and were in doubte that by them dommage  
 myght come to the Cyte / They ledde so Ancean with wordes that  
 they made hym to be afer<sup>t</sup> also / Anon he sente for hym that was 16  
 named<sup>e</sup> Emyrferyus, And told<sup>e</sup> to hym how this worde ranne about /  
 And by cause he helde hym for a wyseman / he demaunded<sup>e</sup> what  
 counseyl he wold gyue here on / he, that was sharp of entendement  
 & apperceyuyng<sup>e</sup>, knewe anon / that his lord<sup>e</sup> demaunded<sup>e</sup> thyse 20  
 wordes for to knowe, yf he shold<sup>e</sup> answeere ony thyng<sup>e</sup>, By <sup>1</sup>whiche  
 he shold<sup>e</sup> be suspecte. And knewe wel that this assemblee was there  
 made by cause they had<sup>e</sup> suspection / he thought wel to brynge them  
 out of this wenyng by his answeere / and sayd : “ Fayr lordes, ye be 24  
 hye, noble, and wysemen, <sup>2</sup>ye ought to conne them good thancke /  
 And the lord specially of this that they ymagyne and doubte of  
 trayson<sup>2</sup> / ffor in so grete a thyng as ye haue to kepe / ought to be  
 doubted<sup>e</sup> alle that may be falle / ffor we be in peryll of our lyues of 28  
 oure franchyses / of wyues, of Chylderen / and herytages / <sup>3</sup>Thise  
 ben thynges that ought to be well vnderstanden and kepte<sup>3</sup> / But  
 me semeth that by two wayes maye be gyuen<sup>4</sup> counseyl in this  
 thyng in suche wyse, that yf ony were vntrew & suche a traytre 32  
 that wold<sup>e</sup> destroye his countrey he shold haue no power / This

The people  
of the town  
had begun  
to suspect  
treachery.

Ancean sent  
for Emirfe-  
rius, and  
asked his  
advice in this  
matter.

[<sup>1</sup> leaf 81]

Emirferius  
replied that  
in two ways  
this danger  
of treason  
might be  
averted.

<sup>2-2</sup> Caxton's translation is unintelligible. Fr. "*Moult vos doivent tous ceaulx de la vile scavoir bon gré, et le seigneur principalement, de ce que vous ymaginez et doubtez de trayson,*" etc., viz. "all the people of the town ought to be grateful to you, especially the lords, because you are on your guard against treason."

<sup>3-3</sup> Fr. "*ce sont choses ou l'en doit bien entendre a garder.*"

<sup>4</sup> Orig. gynen.

thyng myght not be don ne spoken of but by them that haue the  
 toures in keypyng / Therfor me thynketh yf ye haue suspencion  
 her of ye may wel remedye it, By ofte remeuyng them fro theyr  
 4 places, ffor this thyng may not be deuysed but<sup>1</sup> by moche grete  
 leyser. And whan ye chaunge them thus ofte / in suche wyse that  
 they that be here this nyght / shal be sette the next nyght fer  
 thens / <sup>2</sup>where he shal haue no knowleche,<sup>2</sup> & her by ye shal take  
 8 fro them alle the ease for to commune or speke of ony trayson" /  
 whan they herd this counseyl that this cristen man emyrferius gaf  
 to them / they acorded alle well therto / & by this fylle from them  
 alle the suspencion fro theyr hertes that they had ayenst them / &  
 12 thus as he had deuysed shold<sup>3</sup> haue don yf it had not ben so late,  
 for it was nyght / and so grete remeuyng<sup>3</sup> myght not be made but  
 by space of tyme / The lord commaunded them to kepe alle the cyte  
 hoolly / Thus departed they fro the counseyl / Emyrferyus that  
 16 sawe wel that the thyng that he had enterprised / yf he an<sup>4</sup> Buy-  
 mont<sup>4</sup> hasted<sup>4</sup> not / that it shold neuer take good<sup>5</sup> ende / Therfor he  
 thought moche to bryng his purpoos to effect without that ony man  
 shold perceyue it /

First, change  
the men in  
the towers  
very often;

Second, do  
not let the  
men know  
where they  
are to be  
changed.

Emirferius  
now said that  
he must make  
great haste.

20 Of the meschyf that the turkes made euery daye to  
 the cristen men that were in Anthyoche enhabyt-  
 yng with them. ca<sup>o</sup> Cxviij<sup>o</sup>.

f Ro the begynnyng<sup>5</sup> that the Cyte was assyaged / the turkes of  
 24 the toun had in great suspencion the Grekes, Surryens and  
 heremyns, and generally alle the other Cristen men that duellyd in  
 Anthyoche. wherof it happed that the poure Cristen men that had  
 not in theyr howses garnyson sufficient for longe tyme / they made  
 28 them to voyde the toun and alle theyr meyne, ffor they wold<sup>6</sup> not  
 that the Cyte were charged ne encombred with them / They reteyned  
 the ryche men within by cause they had vytayll ynowgh / they  
 kept<sup>6</sup> them strayte, and by fals occasions robbed them euery daye,  
 32 and toke fro them alle theyr thynges. They chaced them to the  
 labours and werkes of the toun / yf they had walles for to make  
 or amende / They bare the stones, the mortar, and sande; yf they  
 wolde adresse engyns for to caste stones / or other Instrumentes of  
 36 warre they muste drawe the cordes, And neuer as longe as they

In the begin-  
ning of the  
siege, the  
poor Chris-  
tians had  
been sent  
away.

[<sup>6</sup> If. 51, bk.]

The rich ones  
who were  
kept were  
daily robbed,  
and abused.

<sup>1</sup> Orig. bnt. <sup>2-2</sup> Fr. "ou ilz n'auront nulle cognoissance."

<sup>3</sup> Orig. remeuyng.

<sup>4</sup> Orig. Buyunt.

<sup>5</sup> Orig. begynnyng.

The Turks  
beat them,  
and drove  
them to  
labour.

They had al-  
ready decided  
to kill all the  
Christians in  
the city.

This very  
night was  
set for the  
massacre.

The Crusa-  
ders, this day,  
ordered their  
army forth  
out of camp—  
to return  
quietly at  
night after  
dark.

[4 leaf 82]

Emirferius  
was with his  
brother in  
the tower

fonde cristen men they sought none other for to doo suche werkes /  
And whan they had trauayllèd longe / in stede of rewardes / they  
ledde them and bete them thurgh the stretes in suche wyse, that  
they had leuer to haue ben caste out<sup>1</sup> of the toun atte begynnynge 4  
with the other <sup>2</sup>than to be receyued with thyse fals houndes,  
that thus greued them of the toun that were cristen / Thus were  
they acorded. viij / dayes to fore to speke to Emyrferyus, frende of  
Buymont / that they wolde slee alle the cristen men, and had don 8  
it<sup>2</sup> yf one of the admyrals of the toun had not letted / and empes-  
shed it / which was alway pryue and frende of the cristen men. he  
made to delaye it / vij dayes by this reason, ffor he sayd to them :  
“ Fayr sirs, I hope that the cristen men that haue assieged vs shal 12  
departe fro the siege with in viij dayes for doubte of corbagat which  
cometh / & yf they departe, why shal we slee the cristen men  
that ben in this toun / And yf they departe not, thenne maye ye  
doo as ye haue deuysed.” Thyse .viij. dayes were now passed, in 16  
suche wyse that it was commaundèd moche pryuely to them that  
had the charge, that they shold slee them the same nyght. thenne  
the same day at none it was cryed thurgh the hooste of the  
pylgryms / that alle they that had horses were armed, and to 20  
drawe euery man to his bataylle, where he was constituted and  
ordeyned / for to doo that theyr Captayns shold commaunde  
them. The men on foote knewe nothyng what they shold doo / ne  
the horsmen neyther / sauf they that buymont had aduertysed. 24  
thus<sup>3</sup> departed they fro thoost alle in ordonaunce / It semed wel  
that they wold goo ferre / They wente forth tyl it was nyght /  
whan it was derke it was commaundèd that they sholde retorne  
agayn secretly without ony noyse / And that they shold holde them 28  
armed in theyr lodgys. This valyaunt man Emyrferius, of whom I  
haue spoken to fore, had a brother with hym, But he was not of  
suche courage as he was / the good man had sayd no thyng to  
hym of that he purposed to doo / ffor he doubted moche <sup>4</sup>he wold 32  
not be agreable therto / They were to gydere in the tour at the hour  
of none whan the bataylles yssued of thooste, they behelde it by the

<sup>1</sup> Orig. ont.

<sup>2-3</sup> The wrong division of the sentence, and the omission of some words, has rendered the translation obscure. Fr. “*que d’être retenus. Ce ne souffisoit mie a ces desloyaulz chiens quilz grevoient ainsi la chrestiente de la ville, ains s’estoient accordis VIII jours avant—qu’ilz parlassent a l’amy de Buymont, quilz les occiroient tous ; et piéca il eust été faict.*” <sup>3</sup> Orig. thns.

batayllementes. Emyrferyus wold<sup>1</sup> preue and knowe the courage of  
 his broder whiche was yonger than he / And sayd to hym / "Fayr  
 swete broder, I haue moche grete pyte of thyse hye men that thou  
 4 seest there, ffor they be of oure creaunce, moche faythful and good  
 cristen men. Now ryde they also surely, As yf they ought nothing  
 to doubte, And their deth is ful nygh them, ffor it may not be that  
 they may resiste ayenst them that come / and ayenst them of the  
 8 toun<sup>1</sup> / And yf they knewe it I trowe they wold<sup>2</sup> take other coun-  
 seyl." his broder answerd / "this is a moch folyssh pyte that thou  
 hast / And<sup>2</sup> I see the in a grete musardye. Certainly it shold<sup>3</sup> plesse  
 me wel / that the turkes had nowe smeton of alle their heedes, and  
 12 slayn them alle that thou seest there departe / And alle the other  
 in lyke wyse, ffor neuer syth they entred in to this londe / we had  
 neuer good day ne one good nyght, but haue made vs suffre many  
 euilles by thoccasion of their comyng / & therfor I may not loue  
 16 them. But<sup>3</sup> I wold that they shold haue<sup>4</sup> an euyl endyng, and that  
 right soone." whan emyrferyus had herd thyse wordes he doubted  
 to fore what to saye to his broder of his purpoos. but fro this forth  
 he doubted nomore / and began to hate hym moche in his courage /  
 20 he thought wel that by hym myght be destroubled the grete  
 auancement<sup>5</sup> of Cristendom. Therfore he was in grete anguysshe  
 how<sup>6</sup> he myght delyuer hym /

as the army  
marched out.

Emirferius  
pretended to  
pity the Cru-  
saders for  
their suffer-  
ings.

But the  
brother an-  
swered that  
he should be  
glad to see  
their heads  
all cut off.

Of the dilygence that buymont made in this werke /  
 24 And how Emyrferyus slewe his brother, and  
 delyuerd the toun to the cristen men /

### Capitulo Cxix<sup>o</sup>

b Uymont slepte not this nyght, ffor he shold haue ben moche  
 28 displeyd / yf by his necligence this werke shold be taryed.  
 He wente ofte to the Barons, that knewe of this thyng, for to be  
 counseyllid / He helde in his honde a laddre of cordes, moche  
 subtylly made / Aboue, it shold be fasted to the creneaux<sup>7</sup> of the  
 32 walle, with good and stronge crochettes of yron, And for to fastne  
 also in therthe. whan it cam aboute mydnyght / he toke his  
 messenger, that knewe his secrete pryuely / And sente hym to his

That night,  
Bohemond  
prepared a  
ladder of  
cordes, with  
iron hooks.

<sup>1</sup> Orig. tonn. <sup>2</sup> Fr. "de grant musardée te voi penser."

<sup>3</sup> Orig. Bnt.

<sup>4</sup> Orig. hane.

<sup>5</sup> Orig. auancement.

<sup>6</sup> Fr. "Comment il s'en porroit deliurer," viz. "how he might get rid of him."

<sup>7</sup> Orig. creueaux ; Fr. creneaux, loop holes.

Bohemond's  
messenger  
went to  
Emirferius  
[1 lf. 82, bk.]  
to see if the  
time had  
arrived.

He waited  
until the  
watch passed  
by, then sent  
word to Bo-  
hemond.

Emirferius  
let down a  
cord and drew  
up the ladder.

Bohemond  
mounted the  
ladder first.

Emirferius  
showed him  
his brother's  
dead body.

frende to knowe / yf it were yet tyme that he shold<sup>d</sup> approuche to  
the wallys, ffor hym thought that alle the Cyte was in moche peas  
and<sup>d</sup> reste / whan this messenger cam / he had<sup>d</sup> hym abyde <sup>1</sup>there  
style, and<sup>d</sup> saye no worde tyl that the mayster of the watche were <sup>4</sup>  
departed and passyd by; ffor the custome was suche in the cyte,  
that aboue the watche that was ordeyned<sup>d</sup> and<sup>d</sup> aduysed<sup>d</sup> that a  
noble and wyseman shold serche and vysyte euery nyght the  
watche, And<sup>d</sup> amende that as they founde amys. And he wente <sup>8</sup>  
thus thre or four tymes in the nyght, with a grete companye of  
peple, that bare light. It was not longe after, that he cam & sawe  
in the tour where Emyrferyus was, and<sup>d</sup> sawe alle thynges wel  
ordeyned and in good disposicion; And it plesyd<sup>d</sup> hym wel, and<sup>d</sup> <sup>12</sup>  
passe<sup>d</sup> <sup>2</sup>forth / This man sawe thenne that it was tyme to performe  
his werke, And sayd<sup>d</sup> to the messenger: "goo thy way dylygently,  
and<sup>d</sup> saye to thy lord<sup>d</sup> that now is tyme to doo well, and<sup>d</sup> that he  
come to fore this tour; and see that he haue good companye with <sup>16</sup>  
hym and trewe" / The messenger departed<sup>d</sup> forthwith / Emyrferyus  
entred<sup>d</sup> in to the tour, and<sup>d</sup> founde his broder slepyng moche faste.  
he had<sup>d</sup> fere that he shold awake er the werke were accomplysshyd,  
and that he myght destrouble it; therfore he toke his sward, & <sup>20</sup>  
roof hym thurgh bothe sydes, and<sup>d</sup> slewe hym. The messenger cam  
to Buymont, and told<sup>d</sup> hym his erande. he cam incontinent to  
fore the tour, And<sup>d</sup> the other barons with hym, that knewe of the  
werke. Eche of them had but a fewe with them, but they were <sup>24</sup>  
good & trew. emyrferius put out his heed & salewed them, &  
they resalewed hym; and after aualed a corde down the wall. they  
toke it, & bounde it faste to thende of the laddre of cordes / whan  
it was bounden and drawen vp, fastned<sup>d</sup> & attached<sup>d</sup> with the <sup>28</sup>  
crochettes of yron aboue, there was none that was so hardy that  
wold fyrst goo vp. whan Buymont sawe this / he toke thenne the  
laddre first, as a valyaunt man & ardent taccomplysshe the werke,  
And<sup>d</sup> wente vp til he cam to the batillement. Emyrferyus<sup>3</sup> knewe <sup>32</sup>  
anon that it was buymont;<sup>4</sup> And<sup>d</sup> toke hym by the arme, and<sup>d</sup>  
kyssed<sup>d</sup> his honde. Buymont wente vpon the walle, And<sup>d</sup> kyssed<sup>d</sup>  
hym<sup>5</sup> swetly. He thanked<sup>d</sup> hym of the seruyse that he had<sup>d</sup> don /  
Emyrferyus ladde hym in to the towre, And<sup>d</sup> sayde to hym: <sup>36</sup>  
"Beholde, and<sup>d</sup> see what I haue don for god<sup>d</sup> and<sup>d</sup> you. This man,  
that ye see here deed, is my brother Germanyn / I haue<sup>6</sup> slayn hym

<sup>2</sup> Fr. "*il passa oultre.*"

<sup>3</sup> Orig. Emyrferyns.

<sup>4</sup> Orig. buymout.

<sup>5</sup> Orig. hyin.

<sup>6</sup> Orig. hano.



- by cause he wolde not acorde to this werke that ye and I haue enterprysed." Buymont<sup>1</sup> had moche grete Ioye, ffor fro thenne forthon knewe he well that his frende dyde alle in good fayth /
- 4 Thenne cam to the creneuls,<sup>2</sup> and put oute<sup>3</sup> his heede and called his peple, and sayd that they shold come vp dylygently by the laddre. They durste not go vp / But alway supposed it had be deceyu-  
[\* leaf 83]
- 8 aunce. Buymont, that was moche valyaunt and Iust, put doon his foote on the laddre / And descended down to the erthe, and sayd to them: "fayr lordes, ye tarye ouer longe / there is no doubte / ffor knowe ye certaynly that this good man hath shewde to me his brother, whom he hath slayn for loue of vs" / whan they herd this,
- 12 they all toke the laddre, he that myght best heste / And mounted vp so many, that ther were men ynowgh on the walle / Therle of fflaundes went vp, and Tancre, for touseyne the other how they shold doo / whan the fyrst towr was wel garnysshed with men, they
- 16 ranne to the other by, And slewe the watche men, and helde the toures.
- When Bohemond saw that, he no longer suspected or doubted him.
- The other barons would not follow.
- Bohemond descended, and assured them that everything was right.
- They then mounted and took the towers, slaying the watch.

Of the mayntene of the cristen men in this pryse,  
And of the affraye of the turkes of the toun.

20 Ca°. C.xx°

- a T the foote of the laddre abode somme of the Barons, for to conduyte<sup>5</sup> thooste / whan they sawe that they had vpon the walles men ynowe that myght garnysse dyuerse / towres / They
- 24 ran hastely to the lodgys for to make the peple arme them / And to drawe nerer / to thende that they myght al be redy for to entre in
- <sup>6</sup>whan our men were on the walles / they were not ydle<sup>6</sup> / but were noble and hardy / in such wise that they had anon .x / towres
- 28 taken<sup>7</sup> alle in arenge / And had slayn alle them that they founde therin, And the cyte was not yet meuyd ne awaked / ffor the grete
- men of the toun, whan they herde the noyse, had supposed certaynly that they had slayn the Cristen men / lyke as they had com-
- 32 maunded, And that this affraye had be for none other thyng: And they meued not oute of theyr beddes. In this partye, where oure
- The people of Antioch, hearing the noise, thought that it was the Christians being mas-sacred.

<sup>1</sup> Orig. Buymout.      <sup>2</sup> Orig. creneuls.

<sup>3</sup> Orig. onte.      <sup>5</sup> Orig. condnyte.

<sup>6-8</sup> Caxton has made a "bourdon" by leaving out all between the two "sur les murs." Fr. "quand leur gens qui estoient sur les murs, leur en feroient signe. Nos gens qui estoient montees sur les murs n'estoient mie oyseaux," etc.      <sup>7</sup> Fr. "toutes en un renc," all in a row.

Our men now  
opened the  
gates of the  
city.

[11. 88, bk.]

The Turks  
now awoke,  
and saw that  
they were  
taken.

Some fled,  
others were  
beaten and  
killed.

There was  
great pil-  
lage and  
slaughter:

more than  
10,000 bodies  
lay bare in  
the streets.

men were goon vp, was a posterne. Our men that were<sup>1</sup> on the  
walles descended and brake vp the lockes, and opened the yate, in  
suche wyse that many entred of oure peple. And after cam to the  
grete gate, that was called the gate of the brydge / And alle the 4  
watche that kepte it they slewe, And after opened the gate / A  
squyer of Buymontys ran til he cam to an hye towre, whiche was  
vpon the tertre by the dongeon of the toun / there he fyxed the  
Baner of Buymont his lord. whan oure peple that were in the 8  
toun apperceyued that the daye was nyghe, And the dawenyng  
appiered, thenne they made to sowne theyr trompettes and busynes,  
for to calle al the people of the hooste / The Barons <sup>2</sup>vnderstode the  
signe, and smote the hors with the spores, And entred by the yates 12  
whiche they founde opene with alle theyr bataylles. The foote  
men of thooste awooke, that knewe nothyng of this counseyll.  
They sawe the tentes empty and voyde, and apperceyued that the  
toun was taken. thenne began they hastely to renne to the gayne, 16  
in suche wyse that none abode other. The turkes of the toun  
awoke, and herde the noyse, and sawe the men of armes thurgh the  
stretes. Thenne apperceyued they in what poynt they were. They  
began to flee out of theyr howses, and lede theyr wyues and 20  
chylderen with them. whan they fledde fro one rowte of our men,  
they recountred another gretter, whiche slewe them alle. The  
surryens, the hermyens,<sup>3</sup> and the other cristen men of the toun  
apperceyued that the thyng wente so. they had moche grete ioye, 24  
and toke the armes hastely, and wente forth with our men and  
tolde to thein the places where mooste peple were, And where the  
tresours were: They them slewe the turkes moche gladly. They  
payned them moche to rendre to them the guerdon of betynges and 28  
tormentes that they had don to them. Thoost was thenne entred  
in to the toun; The barons had sette their baners on the toures;  
grete occision and slaughter had be in the toun; they spared  
noman, ne woman, ne childe / they brak vp dores and chestes; ye 32  
shold haue seen gold and syluer departed in the stretes; <sup>4</sup>It semeth  
well a thyng conquerd<sup>5</sup> and wonne by warre. what shal I make  
long deuyses,<sup>4</sup> ther were slayn of them of the toun that day moo  
than .x. M., of whom the bodyes laye alle bare in the wayes and 36  
stretes.

<sup>1</sup> Orig. wre.

<sup>3</sup> Orig. hermyeus.

<sup>4-5</sup> Misunderstood by Caxton. Fr. "*Bien sembloit choses conquises et gaignies par guerre, tant en faisoit on larges devises.*" <sup>5</sup> Orig. conquerd.

How Ancean, lord of anthyoche,<sup>1</sup> fledde by a posterne  
out of the toun, And he was recountred and put  
to deth. ca. Cxxj°

- 4 w Han Ancean sawe that the cyte was thus bytrayed, And that  
his peple that myght escape fledde an hye in to the fortresse  
of the dongeon. he doubted moch to goo theder, ffor he thought  
wel that the cristen men wold enuyroune incontinent this tour yf  
8 he entred; therfor he yssued out at a posterne out of the toun, and  
wente allone as he had be oute of his wytte / Ne he knewe not  
whether he myght goo And flee for to kepe hym. whan he wente  
thus by the feldes moche ferre fro the Cyte, Certeyne Hermyns  
12 mette hym, and knewe hym, And moche merueylled what this  
myght be; And after, thought that the Cyte was taken. <sup>2</sup> And [leaf 84]  
they approched hym / lyke as they wold<sup>3</sup> haue enclyned to hym,  
as they were woonte / but<sup>4</sup> thezne they toke hym, & smote hym  
16 down to therthe / and after, with a swerde smote of his heed, and  
bare it in to the toun / And presented it vnto the barons to fore the  
peple / one maner peple was comen in to anthyoche, which were  
not of the toun, that were come for to deffende theyr lawe / and  
20 other for to be souldyours / And other for prowesse of armes, &  
to gete honour and prys. thyse knewe not wel the beyng of the  
toun / and were mounted vpon their horses alle armed, and begonne  
to renne ayenst the hylle toward the dongeon / and by aduenture  
24 they mette a route of our men, thus as they wente sechyng in the  
toun, whiche ran on them moche hardly. Thyse maner of peple  
wold haue eschewed them, and smote theyr hors toward the valeye /  
and fylle down of a bancke in suche wyse that they were alle to  
28 brused, men, hors, harnoyes and abyllmentes / ther were deed wel  
a / iij / C. som ther were that in the toun were born / whan they  
apperceyued in the mornynge that our men were within. They toke  
their hors and rode out by the yates that our men had opened.  
32 ther were of oure men that wente aftir and sued them, and brought  
many of them agayn, whom they put in pryson / som other escaped,  
& ran vnto the montaynes / about the hour of tierce, whan the  
toun was serched. Our peple assembled, and anon apperceyued  
36 that in alle the toun was no vytayll; and it was not wondre / ffor  
the siege had thezne endured nygh ix. monethes, and moche peple

Ancean, the  
lord, fled  
through the  
fields;

his head was  
smitten off,  
and carried  
back into  
town.

A party of  
mercenaries  
were attacked  
and killed by  
our men:

some escaped  
to the moun-  
tains.

No victuals  
could be  
found in the  
town.

<sup>1</sup> Orig. anthyoche.

<sup>3</sup> Fr. *l'enclinerent*, i. e. saluted him.

<sup>4</sup> Orig. bnt.

Great wealth  
was found  
by the poor  
pilgrims, who  
were in great  
need of it.

Antioch was  
taken June  
3rd, 1098.

had ben therin duryng the sieg / but gold, syluer, preceous Iewellis,  
and vessel of dyuerse facions / clothes of sylke, & ryche tappets,  
& of other thynges they founde so moch, that eche of our men  
was all charged, as moch as they myght bere / It cam wel to poynt 4  
to oure poure pylgryms for to fynde suche rychesse / after the grete  
mesease that they had suffred / ther were founden in the toun<sup>1</sup>  
/ v / C. good hors of armes / But they were right lene and wery.  
thus was the cyte of Anthyoche taken, the yere of thyncarnacion of 8  
our lord a / M. lxxxxviii / the iij day of the moneth of Iuyn.

How after that our men made grete slaughter of  
theyr enemyes, our men helde counseyl for to  
take the dongeon / theñne beyng seased of the 12  
turkes / ca°. C.xxij°

[2 If. 84, bk.]

The donjon  
was still in  
the hands of  
the Turks.

The Crusa-  
ders saw that  
this fortress  
could be  
taken only  
by famine.

This donjon  
was on the  
top of a  
mountain;

t He pylgryms that were theder comen fro many countrees by  
grete labour, were theñne ful of shedyng of the blood of their  
enemyes / The Barons assembled in counseyl, and aduysed<sup>2</sup> emonge 16  
them that this werk was not yet parfyght, but that ther was yet  
trauayll and peryll tyl that the dongeon were taken and goten,  
whiche was right stronge / and wel garnyssed with walles of the  
toun / they sette good warde and kepers of alle the yates, And dyde 20  
do crye thurgh alle the toun to assault, and commanded that all  
shold come to the tour / that was on the montayne / whan they  
cam theder, they knewe wel certaynly that this was not a thyng  
lightly to be goten, ffor the fortresse myght not be goten but by 24  
famyne; therfor they trauaylled but lytil, but withdrewe them, and  
made the peple to retorne. this montayne, that is aboue the toun,  
is deuyded in tweyne, like as I sayd to fore, by a depe valleye /  
whiche is as stepe as it were plom down / The syde whiche is 28  
toward thoryent is moch fayrer, vpon a playne wel brode, ful of  
vygnes and londe erable. That other partye, toward the weste, is  
moche hyer,<sup>3</sup> as a man shold goo vp right / And right vpon the  
sommel, at toppe of the tertre, stondeth the dongeon,<sup>4</sup> ferme of 32  
ouer stronge walles and thycke toures / they be hye and grete  
toward thoryent; and toward northeeste, about the valeye, it is so

<sup>1</sup> *Orig. tonn,*

<sup>2</sup> Fr. "*si s'en va contremont en aiguissant,*" viz. "grows steeper and steeper towards the top."

<sup>4</sup> Fr. "*fermez de trop forz murs,*" surrounded by very strong walls.

deep that it semeth a right helle / And it is an hydous thyng to beholde ; It coude neuer be ymagyned how it myght be myned<sup>1</sup> / and fro this dongeon vnto the toun is a way, whiche is so strait  
 4 that with grete payne one man allone maye goo or come. The barons acorde<sup>d</sup> that they wold close this litil terter and waye, to thende that they of the dongeon shold<sup>d</sup> not mowe descende, ne doo euyll ne harme to oure men in the cyte / They made a walle moche  
 8 stronge of lyme and sonde, In whiche they put men of Armes ynowe, and wel in poynt. They sette on the walles<sup>2</sup> stones and engyns, redy for to caste stones yf the turkes descended & cam doun. the barons wente in to the toun for to take counseyl of  
 12 other werkes. It was ordeyned and deuysed that alle men shold retorne & abyde there about this newe walle tyl that the dongeon were taken, sauf the Duc Godeffroye, whiche by comyn counseyl of alle, shold abyde for to kepe the gate of the est / & the fortresse  
 16 that our men had made withoute the gate, that was delyuerd to buymont. They herde tydynges that this grete prynce Corbagat, of whom I haue spoken to fore, shold arryue shortly / ffor he was thenne entred in to the londe of anthyoche / It was acorde<sup>d</sup> that  
 20 they sholde sende a wyse man vnto the see, and saye to them that were goon for to doo theyr thynges / that they shold<sup>d</sup> retourne hastely, and brynge in to the Cyte alle the vytaylles that they myght fynde. They them self, that were in Anthyoche, <sup>3</sup>ran alle  
 24 the countrey about for to seche vytaylles, but they founde but litil. The laborers of the playne countrey were moche ioyous that the Cyte was in the handes of the pylgryms, for they were of our fayth. all that they had hyd they brought ; but it was not moch, For the  
 28 longe siege had destroyed the countre without, and empty<sup>d</sup> the toun within.

it could not even be mined.

The barons stopped up the path, from the donjon down the mountain, with a wall.

Godfrey was stationed at the East gate.

[<sup>3</sup> leaf 85]

But little food could be found in the country round about.

How whyles thooste garnysshed the toun,<sup>4</sup> Somme of thoost of Corbagat<sup>5</sup> cam rennyng to fore it.

32 cap<sup>o</sup>. .C.xxiiij<sup>o</sup>.

t He second day after the toun was taken, whyles oure peple entende<sup>d</sup> to garnysshe the Cyte, cam thre honderd men of the

The second day after the town was taken,

<sup>1</sup> This sentence is rendered unintelligible by omissions. After "myned" must be inserted "towards the west, the hill is lower. Between this hill and the donjon is a valley, which is not very large or very deep : in this place a path descends."

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *perrières*, not *pierres*.

<sup>4</sup> Orig. tonn.

<sup>5</sup> Orig. Crobagat.

a band of  
Corbagat's  
men appeared  
before the  
town.

Roger de  
Barneville  
went out  
against them.

He was  
smitten  
through the  
body and  
killed.

He was  
honorably  
buried,  
and there was  
great lamen-  
tation over  
his death.

hoost, al in poynt of Corbagat, wel armed and horsed vpon lyght horses, for to see yf they myght fynde ony of oure men that rode folyly by the countre. They embusshed them alle sauf .xxx., the beste horsed, whiche cam to fore the toun; They began to renne 4 nycely,<sup>1</sup> for to drawe oure men out of arraye. whan oure men sawe them, they had grete desdayne / And wende that it had be a grete shame yf they founde not to whom to speke to / syth they were come so fer to fore / A noble man of whom I have spoken 8 to fore / by whom the hooste had had many prouffytes by his wytte & prowesse, & was named Rogier de barneuylle, And was of the companye of the duc of normandye, he toke with hym .xv. knyghtes that he had of his meyne, And cam out of the 12 toun ayenst the turkes, as he that was noble, valyaunt and hardy / And acustomed to doo fayr faytes. whan he sawe them, he smote his hors with his spores toward them, And they<sup>2</sup> by cautele turned and fledde. Our men folowed hastely so ferre that 16 they launced vpon theyr watche, they sprange oute of the embusshement, And ran vpon oure men / ffor they were many, and wel proued in armes. Rogier<sup>3</sup> relyed his lytil felawship / And cam deffendyng hym toward the toun. whan they were nyghe, A turke 20 garnysshed with a stronge bowe smote Rogier thurgh the body, in suche wyse that he fyl down deed to fore his hors. Anon his felaws withdrewе them in to the toun. The turkes descended vpon hym, and smote of his heed. seeyng they that were on the walles / they 24 bare away the heed, and thus departed / they of the toun yssued oute with grete crye and lamentacion, as they that had a grete losse. They toke the body, and buried it honorably and with grete sorowe in the porche of the chirche of seynt peter / The barons<sup>4</sup> com- 28 pleyned moche aboue the other, this noble man, as they that beste knewe hym /

[<sup>1</sup> If. 85, bk.] <sup>5</sup>How the thyrde day after the getyng and pryse of Anthyoche, Corbagat with his hoost arrayed to 32 to fore it. ca<sup>o</sup> Cxxiiij<sup>o</sup>

Prince Cor- a Tte the thyrde day after that Anthyoche was taken / this bagat, the grete prynce Corbagat cam to the cyte in the mornyng at the next day,

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *nicement*, viz. in a foolhardy way.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *par barat*, i. e. to draw them on.

<sup>3</sup> Fr. *ralia*, rallied, reassembled.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. *plainnoient*, mourned.

- sonne rysyng with so grete plente of peple, that alle the countre that myght be seen fro the hiest place of the toun was couerd with them / The barons sawe moche more peple / than they herd saye of,
- 4 For theyr hoost encreced euery day / he passed the brydge / And lodged hym bytwene the laye / and the ryuer of helle, whiche is wel a myle fro that one to that other / he had so grete plente of knyghtes, and so grete nombre of tentes and pauyllons, that the
- 8 grete playne wherof I haue spoken to fore, where Anthyoche stondeth ne yet it myght not alle receyue them / But many of them lodged them in the terrytories<sup>1</sup> by / whan Corbagat had be thus thre dayes lodged hym thought that he was ouer far fro the cyte /
- 12 And by his counseyl wold be more ner the dongeon / whiche the turkes helde / for to ayde and comforte them / And thought for to put men in to the toun by the yate that was vnder the dongeon. whan he was lodged on that partye, he comprysed fro the yate of
- 16 the eest to the west yate all the syde of the toun toward the south / by syde the parte of the eest was a fortresse, whiche oure men had made / vpon a litil tertre as I haue sayd, and was delyuerd to Buymont<sup>2</sup> / But whan the toun was taken and the yate / he
- 20 delyuerd this fortresse to other for to kepe / Therby lodged som turkes of thooste of Corbagat / They began tassaylle this tour / They that were within dyde grete payne to deffende them / But it was ouermoch charged with grete plente of peple that were there, and
- 24 also with Archers, of whom they had many. The duc, whiche was bye at the yate, sawe that his men had ouermoch to doo / & had good wyll for to helpe them / and wold haue dislodged them that were come ouer fer forth / he yssued out with al his bataylle / And
- 28 smote his hors with his spores toward the fortresse / And sawe that there were ouer grete plente of turkes to fore hym / which smote in to his men, and began to demene them euyll / ffor ayenst one of them ther were .x. turkes. the duc knewe that his strengthe was
- 32 not like theyres, and began to withdrawe hym toward the toun / But to fore that they myght reentre in to the gate / The turkes assayled them so euyll that ther were / ij C / of the batayll of the duc<sup>3</sup> taken & deed.

appeared  
with a great  
army:

the great  
plain of An-  
tioch could  
not contain  
them.

Corbagat  
attempted to  
put some  
men into the  
town by the  
gate under  
the donjon.

They assailed  
one of the  
towers  
guarded by  
the Crusa-  
ders.

The Duke  
sallied forth  
to repulse  
the Turks,

but was him-  
self driven  
back.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *tortres*, hills.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. Buymout.

<sup>3</sup> Orig. dnc.

[<sup>1</sup> leaf 86] <sup>1</sup>How after that the duc<sup>2</sup> was within the barres of  
the toun / and many of his men slayn, the turkes  
entred in to the toun / ca<sup>o</sup> C. xxv.

t He Duc cam in to the toun moche angry of this dommage. 4

The Turks  
were very  
proud of this  
victory,

But whan the turkes knewe that this had be godeffroye of  
bolyne that they had thus put abak. They<sup>3</sup> aroos in moche grete  
pryde / therfor they wente thens vnto the montayne / & entred<sup>4</sup>  
in to the toun by the yate of the dongeon / And surprysed<sup>5</sup> somme 8  
of our men that toke none hede / wyth bowes & with swerdes  
they slewe them / but whan they were apperceyued our men chassed  
them, But they put them in to the dongeon where they were sau<sup>6</sup> /  
thus dyde they ooftymes harme / ffor they knewe another way to 12

and entered  
safely into  
the town by  
the donjon.

The Crus-  
aders then  
made a broad  
ditch and a  
fortress be-  
tween the  
mountain  
and the town.

descende than that whiche our men had<sup>7</sup> garnysshed / The barons  
assembled<sup>8</sup> for to take counseyll what they shold doo of the peryll  
wherin they were. By comyn acorde it was ordeyned<sup>9</sup> / that Buy-  
mont and<sup>10</sup> The Erle of Thoolouse shold<sup>11</sup> make there a dyche moche 16  
depe and<sup>12</sup> brode ynowgh bytwene the toun and<sup>13</sup> the pendaunt of the  
montayne. they made it there as it was deuysed<sup>14</sup> / And made there  
a fortresse whiche they garnysshed wel with men wel armed. The  
turkes that were in the dongeon, And they also that were comen in 20  
by this gate descended ofte / by a way couerte vnto this fortresse,  
And assaylled<sup>15</sup> it moche fiersly, in suche wyse as they lete them  
haue no reste, that it happed on a day / that so grete plente of  
turkes descended that the cry aroos in to the toun / that and yf 24  
the other barons and knyghtes whiche were a brode in the toun  
had<sup>16</sup> not come and<sup>17</sup> ronne to them they had<sup>18</sup> slayn or taken thyse  
noble men / that is to wete Buymont / Euerard du puyssat /  
Raoul de la fontayne / Rembault crecon<sup>4</sup> / And<sup>19</sup> somme other lordes 28  
that were in theyr companye / Alle they were grete men and<sup>20</sup> good<sup>21</sup>  
knyghtes that were put in this newe fortresse for to defende it /  
But therle of Flaundres, the duc<sup>5</sup> of normandye / And huon the  
mayne ranne moche hastely theder / And<sup>22</sup> mette with the turkes er 32  
they myght entre in to the dongeon. They slewe many, and many  
they receyued<sup>6</sup> prysonners / The other turkes that escaped<sup>23</sup> cam to  
fore Corbagat / And<sup>24</sup> counted to hym that thyse men of the toun  
were ouer feers and hardye. And<sup>25</sup> it semeth whan they ben in werke 36

The Turks  
attaeked this  
often, but  
were always  
repulsed.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig. dnc.*

<sup>3</sup> Fr. "*en moult grant orgueil monterent*," viz., "they became very much elated."

<sup>4</sup> Lat. *Creton*.

<sup>5</sup> *Orig. dnc.*

<sup>6</sup> *Orig. receyued.*



that <sup>1</sup>they doubte<sup>2</sup> nothyng the deth, ne this, ne that.<sup>1</sup> Corbagat, Corbagat, who was lodged in the mountain, descended into the valley. [3 If. 86, bk.]  
 whiche was lodged in the montayne as I haue sayd, dyde not theron  
 moche his prouffyt ne his honoure, ne he founde not there pasture  
 4 for his hors, as he <sup>3</sup>dyde bynethe in the valeye / whan he sawe this  
 he commaunded that he shold be dislodged, and descended in to the  
 valeye with his men he passed the riuer of helle. there deuised he  
 the places to his barons about the toun. on the morn it happed  
 8 that I can not say how many turkes approched the cyte / and  
 descended fro theyr horses / for to shote at our peple that were on  
 the walles for to come more ner. Tancred yssued by the gate toward Tancred sallied out and slew 6 of them.  
 the eest, and stopped the way fro them in suche wyse that er they  
 12 myght take theyr horses he slewe .vj. of them / And brought them  
 in to the toun for to recomforte our peple for the deth of Rogyer de  
 berneuyll /

How our cristen men that a lytil to fore assieged the  
 16 toun / were now assieged in the same /

## Capitulo Cxxvj:

i N this tyme duryng / the peple of the cristen men that had The Christians were now, in turn, besieged themselves.  
 assieged Anthyoche but a litil to fore as ye haue had / They  
 20 were now them self assieged within. Thus goon the chaunges and  
 mutacions of the world ; they had moche grete trauayll for to kepe  
 and deffende the Cyte. It was to them ouer peryllous that the  
 24 dongeon was so strong<sup>4</sup> and so wel garnysshed as it was. They  
 made to them ofte grete assaylles by daye and by nyght, ffor they  
 of the hooste cam in by the yate vnder the dongeon as ofte as it  
 plesyd them. Our men began to be moche abasshed. Ther were They were in a critical situation, and began to fear.  
 28 many that toke no regarde to theyr oth that they had made to  
 descended doun of the walles by ropes and cordes and fledde to  
 the see.(26) And many of them the turkes toke whom they slewe  
 and brought in prison. They that myght escape cam vnto the Some ran away by night,  
 32 porte, sayeng to the marchauns and to other pylgryms that were  
 there comen, that they shold disancre theyr shippes and flee anon /  
 ffor this prynce Corbagat, whom so moche peple folowed, had taken  
 Anthyoche by force, and had slayn alle the barons and alle them  
 36 that he founde within / And that they were escaped by ouer grete

<sup>1-1</sup> Fr. "*Ilz doutent la mort, ne tant ne quant,*" i. e., they have absolutely no fear of death.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. donbte.

and begged  
the sailors to  
flee from the  
port with  
them.

[leaf 87]

Even well  
born men  
behaved  
shamefully.

Some even  
surrendered  
themselves  
to the Turks,  
out of fear.

Bohemond  
guarded the  
town dili-  
gently,

especially  
the four  
fortresses,  
which must  
be kept.

peryll and fiers aduenture / Therefore, sayd they to the maronniers,  
that they shold departe and flee withoute taryenge / ffor yf the  
turques cam serchyng the cowntre vnto the see and founde them  
there they shold be alle deliuered to deth / Thus they fledde alle 4  
for feere / And they them self that brought thise tydynges wente  
with them. And to thende that ye shold not suppose that thyse  
were but mene peple, <sup>1</sup>for the trouthe of this hystorye spareth  
noman / I shall name somme that thus departed shamefully, that 8  
is to wete, Guyllamme de Gratemeyn, a noble man born in Nor-  
mandye / whiche held grete londe in puylle, And had to his wyf  
the suster of Buymont. Aubery charpenter, Guy croseaulx (27) /  
Lambert le poure / <sup>2</sup>And many other had they with them. Somme 12  
there were that wente for pyllage, <sup>2</sup>And for the messease of hungre  
and drede for to be slayn, yolde them to the turkes / And they  
tolde the certaynte of the meschief that oure men suffred alle a  
longe to the turkes. Many abode in the toun that gladly wold 16  
haue goon / But buymont by the counseyl of the bisshop of Puy  
dyde so make wathe atte alle the gates and vpon the walles, And  
toke <sup>3</sup>kepe bothe by daye and nyght that none shold goo vp ne  
doun <sup>4</sup> / And they swore alle that they shold not departe fro the 20  
companye, ne breke the commaundementes <sup>5</sup> of Buymont. <sup>6</sup> He hym  
self wente euery nyght thurgh the toun wyth grete plente of men,  
and with grete lyght to thende that no peryll shold happe ne  
trayson. Foure fortresses had he whiche he muste nedes kepe, and 24  
better than the other. That one was on the lasse tertre ayenst the  
dongeon / And that other was lower ayenst the assaylles that they  
made. The thyrde was withoute the cest gate, the whiche was  
made to kepe thooste er the toun was take / the <sup>7</sup>fourthe was at 28  
thende of the brydge, by whiche the port of the brydge was kept /  
And therle of tholouse kept it fyrst. But whan the Cyte was taken  
he lefte it, and entred into the toun. Therle of ffaundes toke it  
and garnysshyd it with fyue honderd men of Armes, of knyghtes, 32  
and other wel in poynt, ffor he thought yf the turkes toke it our  
men myght not after yssue by the brydge, by which their strengthe  
be moche employed /

<sup>2-2</sup> Fr. "*de tels en y avoit qui en faisoient pis.*" One of Caxton's hasty translations, he seems to have mistaken *faisoient pis*—"did worse," for "*went for pillage.*"

<sup>3</sup> Fr. "*qui prenoient garde,*" who kept watch.

<sup>4</sup> Orig. donn.

<sup>5</sup> Orig. commaundementes.

<sup>6</sup> Orig. Bnymont.

<sup>7</sup> Orig. thhe.

How Corbagat dyde do assaylle a fortresse which  
therle of Flaundres kepte withoute the gate and  
of that ensiewed / ca<sup>o</sup>. Cxxvij<sup>o</sup>

- 4 o N a daye it happed that Corbagat thought that they of the  
toun had ouermuche lyberte to yssue oute<sup>1</sup> and to entre agayn.  
Therfor he commaunded to a bataylle of his peple, in whiche were  
.ij. thousand turkes wel in poynt, that they shold so longe assaylle  
8 the fortresse of the brydge tyl they were taken, and it happed so  
that therle of Flaundres was thenne wythin the same fortresse.  
Thassault beganne at sonne rysynge, moche fiers and moche grete.  
there were so many Archiers aboute it that none myghte shewe his  
12 <sup>2</sup>head atte creneulx / but that anon it was couerd with arowes / [<sup>2</sup> lf. 87, bk.]  
they that were within deffended them moche well in suche wyse,  
that they lost nothyng of the fortresse / And thassault endured tyl  
the sonne went down / The turkes departed alle wery. Therle of  
16 flaundres<sup>3</sup> doubte that they shold come on the morn to thassault /  
ffor they myght not longe suffre them there / therfor, as sone as it  
was nyght, he put out alle his men preuily / and sette fyere therin,  
and brent the fortresse without fayllyng. The turkes had deuyssed  
20 that in the mornyng erly they shold haue begonne agayn thassault  
and that two / M / men more shold haue comen than had ben the  
nyght byfore. It was not longe after that a Rouete of turkes  
departed fro thooste of Corbagat / I wote not how many poure  
24 pylgryms that wente purchasshyng yf they myght fynde ony  
vytaylles in the countre / they toke them and brought them alle  
in the state that they were in to fore Corbagat / when he sawe  
them he / moche despysed them, ffor they had no Armures / And  
28 but feble bowes of tree, Their swerdes rusty, their gownes and  
habellemens were old and roten / Thenne sayd Corbagat by des-  
dayne : " Thyse peple seme well men that shold take away fro the  
soudon of Perse his Empyre / And conquere the londe of thoryent /  
32 Thyse shold be wel content and payd yf they had breed, and<sup>4</sup> a  
gobet of bacon / their bowes ben not stronge ynowgh for to slee a  
sparowgh. Now I shal saye to you what ye shal doo / ye shal lede  
them bounden in this poynt as they now be in vnto my lord the  
36 soudan that hath sent vs hether / And telle hym that he dar not

Corbagat  
assailed the  
fortress of  
the bridge.

The Chris-  
tians de-  
fended them-  
selves until  
sundown,  
when the  
Turks de-  
parted.

At night  
the fortress  
was burnt  
down.

Many poor,  
furnished  
Christians  
were taken  
prisoners  
and brought  
before Cor-  
bagat.

Corbagat,  
in ridicule,  
ordered them  
to be sent to  
the Soudan  
of Persia,

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* onte.

<sup>3</sup> *Orig.* flaundeus.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. "*en ung toit à porceaulx*," in a pig-stye. Caxton evidently did not understand "*toit*."

to show him  
against what  
sort of men  
he was  
waging war.

This turned  
afterwards to  
his shame.

be fore aferd of thyse men that he comen hether / ffor we haue  
enterprysed and begonne warre ayenst suche men as he may see /  
late me allowe with this werke, ffor there shal not abyde many of  
them / but I shal efface and destroye them alle in suche wyse as  
there shal nomore be spoken of them, as they had neuer be born" /  
Thus ledde they thoo cristen men vnto the soudan. he wende wel  
to haue don his honour / in this that he sente them to the soudan /  
but it torneð hym afterward to his shame / hym thought a light 8  
thyng to vaynquysse the cristen men whiche had not yet wel  
assayed them /

Of the grete famyne and messeage that oure men  
suffred in the cyte of Anthyoche, beyng 12  
assyeged on alle sydes by the sayde Corbagat /  
Capitulo C. xxviii<sup>o</sup>.

[1 leaf 8<sup>o</sup>]

A grievous  
famine arose  
in the town.

o N alle partyes was the cyte thus assieged / They of the toun  
ne myght not yssue out for to pourchasse vytaill for them. <sup>1</sup>They 16  
were euyl at ease of this meschyf / A famyne aroos in the toun  
moche grete and greuous for deffaulte of vytaill / in suche wyse  
that they ete camels asses and tho horses, and yet toke they werse  
thynges / whan they myght gete it, ffor who that had founden a 20  
deed hound or Catte, They ete it delyciously in stede of grete  
delices, <sup>2</sup>ffor the hongry wombes made no daunger to seche suche  
as they myght fyll them with. the grete, hye, and noble men that  
were acustomed to be moche honoured / had now no shame to 24  
come there wher they ete suche mete / but wente oueral moche  
fowly, and demaunded playnly such as they neded / The ladyes,  
gentil wymmen and maydens, had alle langour of hongre. They  
were alle pale and lene / Many were compelled to begge, and aske 28  
with moche grete shame / There was none that myght haue<sup>3</sup> so  
harde an herte but that he shold haue had grete pyte to haue seen  
it / ther were many men and wymmen that aduysed them of what  
lygnage they were of born / that had suche courage ferme in theyr 32  
hertes / that for none anguysshe that they suffred of hongre wold  
not goo axe their breed<sup>4</sup> fro dore to dore / Thyse peple hydde them  
in theyr howses. Somme that knewe it / dyde to them yet somme

Each one  
begged food  
wherever he  
might find it.

Some were  
ashamed to  
do this, and  
hid them-  
selves in  
their houses.

<sup>2-3</sup> Fr. "*Car les ventris familleux ne faisoient dangier de guerre dont ilz  
fussent remplis,*" i. e. "the hungry stomachs did not refuse to seek that with  
which they might be filled." <sup>3</sup> Orig. hane. <sup>4</sup> Orig. beed.

socour / But ther were many that deyed for hongre that had not for  
to ete. / There myght men see knyghtes and other valyaunt men  
that had be to fore stronge and noble in theyr werkes / that now  
4 were so feble and poure that they wente by the stretes lenyng on  
their staues / and theyr heedes enclynyng doun askyng breed for  
goodes loue / There shold ye haue seen the lytil Childeren that soke  
theyr moders pappes. And the moders had nothyng to ete / But<sup>1</sup>  
8 threwe them doun in the stretes to thende that other shold norysse  
them. with grete payne shold ye haue founde one onely man emong  
so moche peple that had sufficiently that hym neded / ffor yf ony  
had be that had Gold or Syluer, It auaylled hym nothyng, ffor he  
12 founde no mete for to bye with it / the barons and the hye prynces  
that were acustomed to holde the fayr courtes / and to gyue mete  
and drynke to many men. they hydde them now / by cause none  
shold fynde them etyng ne drynkyng, they had gretter anguysshe  
16 in theyr hertes of this famyne / than had the poure peple / ffor  
they mette euery day theyr knyghtes and theyr men of theyr  
countrees that deyde for hungre, And they had no mete to gyue to  
them / It were a long thyng to recounte alle the meseases and the  
20 meschyefs that were suffred within Anthyoche whyles the tempeste  
endured / But so moche may wel be sayd, that selde or neuer shal  
ye fynde in hystorye / that so grete prynces, and<sup>2</sup> one so grete an  
hooste suffred suche anguyssh of hungre.

Even the  
knights were  
too feeble to  
walk upright.

One could  
buy nothing  
to eat for  
money.

It would take  
a long time  
to recount all  
that they  
suffered in  
Antioch.  
[<sup>2</sup> If. 88, bk.]

24 How the turkes, felyng that our men were in suche  
meschyef of hongre, enforced them for tassaylle  
the cyte / ca. Cxxix.

Hyles that the Cyte was thus on alle partes assieged with  
28 w turkes, And the farayne ran so anguysshous, They that were  
without / and knewe the euyl couyne of our people lefte not to  
assaylle the walles alle the longe daye, They of the dongeon, And  
the other that cam in by the yate / cam and made grete assaylles in  
32 the toun. they had made them so very / that oure men myght not  
wel deffende them, and vnnethe kepe the toun. ffor whan they had  
defended them alle the longe day / at euen they had nothyng to  
ete / wherof it happed that a tour by that syde where our men  
36 entred was euyl kept. on a nyght the turkes cam withoute  
forth / And aperceyued wel that noman was within the tour.

Those out-  
side assailed  
vigorously.

Our men left  
a tower un-  
defended.

<sup>1</sup> Orig. Bnt.

The Turks  
mounted  
and entered.

thenne they toke laddres that they had made, And mounted vpon the walles / ther were .xxx. that wente vnto this tour for to entre in / And this was at the begynnyng of the nyght. The maister of the wathe wente serchyng<sup>r</sup> right there / And sawe the turkes 4 comen vp there, And cryed<sup>r</sup> treson, treson. And thenne awoke fyrst and ran theder herry dasque / and two of his cosyns with hym / that one named ffranke, And that other Semer.<sup>1</sup> They were bothe of the toun called Mathale<sup>2</sup> vpon the mase. Thyse thre 8 smote in emong the .xxx. turkes at theyr fyrst comyng they slewe four. They of the toures sawe them, but not so sone. the other .xxvj. turkes deffended<sup>r</sup> them. But this dured<sup>r</sup> but a whyle, ffor they of the toures threwe them down to the ground / where they 12 brak their legges and neckes. Ther was none that fylle, but he was deed or maymed. Ther was slayn Semer, ffor he was hurt with a swerd thurgh the bely. ffrank was born away, whiche was hurte peryllously. 16

The erusaders  
rushed  
thither, and  
threw them  
all down to  
the ground,  
breaking  
their legs  
and necks.

How Corbagat sente his men of Armes for to slee the maronnners that were at the porte / wherof oure men hade a grete losse. Capitulo .C. xxx<sup>o</sup>.

a<sup>3</sup> Han the famyne grewe thus euery day in anthyoche, many 20 there were in the toun that had<sup>r</sup> leuer be slayn, than to abyde thus the hongre. They put them in aduenture / & by nyght yssued<sup>r</sup> 4oute of the toun whan they myght escape After they wente to the porte of the see. Somme shippis there were yet of grekes, 24 and of hermyens that brought vytaylle / many ther were that bought it / And cam and solde it in the toun<sup>5</sup> by nyght in<sup>6</sup> hydles. whan the turkes apperceyued this / many tymes they awayted them / and slewe many of them / Atte laste for to take away this 28 lytil socour that they had<sup>r</sup>. the turkes sente two thousand horsmen to the see / whiche slewe alle the maronnners and<sup>r</sup> marchauntes that they founde, And brente their shippes. Somme ther were that laye at an ancre in the see, and they fledde / Thenue had our men 32 loste alle theyr hope for vytayll, ffor the yles of the see as Cypres Rhodes / And other lyenge on the see side, As Cylyce, pamphyle, and<sup>r</sup> of other costes durste nomore sende theyr Shippes theder /

[\* leaf 89]  
Many ran  
away rather  
than suffer  
hunger.

The Turks  
burnt all the  
ships in the  
harbour.

Our men are  
now in great  
despair,

<sup>1</sup> Fr. Soemer. Lat. *Sigemaro*.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *Machale*.

<sup>3</sup> ?t or w.

<sup>5</sup> Orig. tonn.

<sup>6</sup> B. *en musceteus*, A. *en tapinage*, i. e. secretly.

They of the toun<sup>1</sup> of Anthyoche were nowe euyl demened / ffor to fore to them cam somme comforte of the marchauns. Now they had alle loste it / whan the turkes retourned fro the see they  
 4 recountred our pour pilgryms whiche wente that way / they slewe them alle, sauf somme whiche hydde them in the busshes / whan they of the toun herde tydynges herof how they were slayn they were moche sorowful, ffor they had ouer grete anguysshe in theyr  
 8 hertes as ofte as ony mesaventure fyl to their peple. In this poynt were they with in the Cyte, and wold take none hede to theyr warde, ne wold not obeie to the barons, whiche myght thenne doo to them no good. Thus were they in grete perylle /

and in a dangerous situation.

The common people would no longer obey their leaders.

12 How guyllem de grateuylle and his felaws fugytyfs cam in to Allexandrye the lasse / ca<sup>o</sup> Cxxxj<sup>o</sup>

g<sup>2</sup> Vyllem de Grateuylle & the other that fledde with hym cam in to Allexandrye the lytyl. There they founde steuen, Therle  
 16 of Chartres, Of whom they of Anthyoche abode his comynge fro daye to daye / ffor the barons and the mene peple supposed that he wold remembre how he departed / and retorne agayn / They told hym the grete sorowe of the famyne that was in Anthyoche,  
 20 and to thende that they excused them of their departyng / truly the trouthe of the mesease was grete, But they told moche more than it was / It was a light thyng to reteyne this erle, ffor he had no grete talente for to<sup>3</sup> retorne. They toke counseyl bytwene them /  
 24 & made theyr shippes to be in poynt and redy / And after entred in to them / and so wente to the see / and whan they had ben, I wote not how many<sup>4</sup> dayes in the see. they arryued at a Cyte of  
 thempourous of Constantynoble, whiche as was sayd to them cam  
 28 with alle his hoost moch greet and merueyllous, of grekes and of latyns, and hasted moche for to goo to Anthyoche. he was thenne in a Cyte not ferre from thens named fynemyne, he wold well holde couenaunte / that he had made to socour our peple with the  
 32 peple of his Empyre. And ther cam in his compagne wel / xl. M. pylgryms that had abyden in his londe of the grete hooste, by cause of sekenes or for other causes. And grete nombre were comen syth  
 36 his londes vnto Anthyoche by them self / And thenne siewed thempour. whan the Erle stephen knewe that the Emperour was

At Alexandria the Less the deserters found Stephen of Blois,

and persuaded him not to go to the help of those in Antioch.

[\* If. 89, bk.]

Hearing that the Emperour of Constantinople was at Finimine on his way to Antioch,

accompanied by a large army and many pilgrims,

<sup>1</sup> Orig. tonn.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *guillaume de gratemenil*.

<sup>3</sup> Orig. to for.

they went  
to him.

The Emperor  
received  
them honour-  
ably, but  
wondered  
that they had  
left their  
companions.

so nygh, he wente strait to hym, And brought his felaws cowardes  
with hym. whan themperour sawe them / he made grete ioye /  
And receyued therle esteuen honorably, ffor he helde hym in pass-  
yng thurgh his londe for a moche wyseman and a valyaunt, and 4  
was wel acqweynted with hym. he demaunded hym moche enten-  
tyfly of the remenaunt<sup>1</sup> of the barons / And sayde he had grete  
merueylle / how he was thus departed fro their companye.

How therle of chartres discouraged themperour of Con- 8  
stantinople that he shold not goo and socoure  
our peple in Anthyoche. Capitulo C xxxij°

The Earl  
answered  
that they  
had besieged  
Antioch nine  
months;

but just as  
they captured  
it Corbagat  
arrived, and  
besieged  
them in turn.

[<sup>4</sup> leaf 90]

They were  
now suffering  
great anguish  
from hunger.

t He Erle answerd in this maner, and sayde to themperour /  
Sire, the barons of ffraunce whiche passed this yere by your 12  
empyre, whom ye receyued so curtoysly & with grete honour.  
whan they had taken Nycene, whiche they rendred to you, They  
passed vnto Anthyoche. They assieged that cyte wel ix monethes.  
They haue taken it entierly, Reserued a dongeon, whiche stonde 16  
upon an hylle within the walles, whiche the turkes holde so  
strongly that it is unprenable / They supposed to haue wel  
exploited whan they had goten this Cyte / But thenne they fylle  
in gretter peryll than to fore. ffor on the thirde day after that they 20  
entred Cam Corbagat, a puyssaunt prynce of perse, whiche brought  
so moche peple that alle the countrey by was couerd with them.  
Oure peple suffred gret anguyssh<sup>2</sup> thenne, ffor this Corbagat, with  
his peple, enuyronned them on alle partes in suche wyse that oure 24  
men myght not yssue, and dyde to them moche payne in assayllyng  
them with out<sup>3</sup> forth. And the dongeon made to them grete  
assaylles within <sup>4</sup>forth by whiche our men suffred grete mesease /  
And also thanguyssh of hongre was so grete, that they had no 28  
power to defende them. On that other syde / they had other-  
whyle comfort of youre londe / ffor the yles of the see, And also  
fro other portes cam somtyme vytaylle / that was brought in to  
Anthyoche, But now late ben comen the turkes, And haue slayn 32  
alle the maronnars and the marchautes that they fonde atte porte

<sup>1</sup> Fr. "*de la demourance des autres barons.*" A. gives "*de la contenance,*" which is the correct version. Lat. "*interrogans igitur ab eo Imperator diligenter de vita et salute et statu principium, et quanam esset causa quod ab aliis rediret.*"

<sup>2</sup> Orig. anguyssh.

<sup>3</sup> Orig. ont.



in suche wyse, that nowe ther dare nomoo arryue there / wherfore  
 they haue loste alle theyr socours of vytaylle / And aboute alle this  
 they of the toun be greuyd nyght and day by them of the dongeon,  
 4 ffor by the yate ynder it the turkes may entre and yssue whan it  
 plesyth them / we sawe that this werke myght come to no good  
 ende in this maner, wherfor we warned them, bothe my self and  
 thyse that be in my companye, whiche be moche noble & wyse-  
 8 men oftymes, that ayenst the wyll of god they shold not enter-  
 prise to conquere this country / But shold departe with the lest  
 losse they myght, And the peple that folowed them / they shold  
 conduyte in to such a place that they shold not be delyuerd to  
 12 deth / Many tymes we sayd to them in this manere / And neuer  
 wold they here vs ne byleue, But mayntene theyr reuerye, ffor  
 ther be many emonge them in whom is lytil reson / we our self  
 had ben deed yf we had abyden there / ne we myght doo none  
 16 honour to our lord ne to our prouffyte, Therfor we departed, And  
 commaunded them to god / whiche saue them and kepe, for they  
 haue nede / Ye, syre, to whome I am bounden in good fayth / I  
 aduyse you, that ye take counseyl of your wyse men to fore ye goo  
 20 ony ferther / Trouth it is that ye be the moost hye man of the  
 world / But for al that ye haue not here now in your companye so  
 moche peple as Corbagat hath aboute Anthyoche, And ayenst one  
 of you he hath seuen / therefore myn oppynyon is yf the other so  
 24 acorde, that to fore your men be put in so gret aduenture ye retorne  
 home agayn. For yf ye approuche them / And that they haue  
 achyeued theyr werke in the Cyte, ye shal fynde them redy / &  
 the more ner ye approuche them / the more shame and vyle shal it  
 28 be to retorne fro them whan ye be so nyghe them. thise thynges  
 that I haue accounted to you, knowe wel thise valyaunt men that  
 be here with me / & also a grete parte maye ye knowe by this  
 good man that ye delyuerd to vs / that is wete tantyn your  
 32 seruaunt,<sup>1</sup> whiche is so wyse and trewe, whiche departed fro vs for  
 many defaultes, that he apperceyued with vs. whan he had sayd all  
 this / themperour was moche ameuyd of thise wordes, <sup>2</sup>with hym  
 was a brother of Buymont named guyon, that whan he had herd  
 36 therle Stephen thus speke / he was alle wroth and angry / And as  
 half araged for despyte sayde al on hye / that he sayd not the  
 truthe / But that they were departed as Cowardes. He had moo  
 grete wordes / but guyllem de gratemenyl, which was a gentelman

Above all  
 they were  
 distressed by  
 attacks from  
 the donjon  
 which they  
 had not yet  
 captured.

Nor would  
 they heed  
 Stephen's  
 advice to flee  
 to a place of  
 safety.

Therefore he  
 departed and  
 left them.

Stephen  
 advises the  
 Emperor not  
 to go to  
 Antioch.

[\* If. 90, bk.].  
 The Emperor  
 was much  
 moved by  
 this speech.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* seruaunt.

born of lygnage, And not of courage, And had to his wyf the  
 suster of the same guyen, made hym to holde his peas, And blamed  
 hym by cause he spak ayenst therle steuen. And so this guyen  
 forbare hym.

4

How by the warnynges of the sayd Erle / themperour,  
 whiche wold haue goon & socoured our<sup>1</sup> men,  
 retorned shortly. ca<sup>o</sup> C xxxiiij.

v Pon thyse wordes that themperour had herd / he wolde be 8  
 counseyllid, and called his barons. And alle they acorded  
 that themperour shold retorne fro thens, wher he was withoute  
 goyng<sup>1</sup> ony ferther / ffor they thought it were better to remeue his  
 peple withoute perylle and hurte than for to fyght in so grete 12  
 meschyef ayenst Corbagat, And to meue ayenst hym in hate and<sup>2</sup>  
 in warre all the londe of thoryent / He byleuyd so fermely the  
 wordes of therle Stephen / that he doubted that the turkes had  
 slayn them of Anthyoche / And wold thenne goc in to his londe 16  
 for to receyue the Cyte of Nycene / And alle the londe of Bythynie,  
 whiche oure men had delyuerd to hym / he wold garnysse it /  
 whan he departed fro thens he brente and destroyed alle the londe  
 fro<sup>3</sup> the cryne vnto Nycene on both sydes, <sup>4</sup>By cause the turkes 20  
 shold not folowe hym, vytaille began to faylle him, And so he  
 muste retourne<sup>4</sup> / Thus it happed that by the wordes of this grete  
 man / that so fowly departed fro the other barons / themperour  
 retorne<sup>5</sup>, & the Cristen peple beyng<sup>1</sup> in Anthyoche lost so grete 24  
 socours / by whiche myght haue comen alle theyr delyueraunce in  
 so grete necessitye as they were thenne, But consydered this that  
 was gyue to be vnderstonde to Themperour, yet he dyde not / But<sup>6</sup>  
 his deuoyre. Certaynly it was the werke of our lord, ffor yf this 28  
 Emperour that cam with his peple, and grete power of men al  
 fresshe had reysed the siege / & discomfyted the turkes / oure  
 lord shold not haue ben so honoured ne thanked / And yf of the  
 trauayll that the barons and the other pylgryms had suffred, them- 32

The Emperor  
 called a  
 council of his  
 barons, and  
 decided to  
 return home.

He was so  
 much afraid  
 of Corbagat.

In this way  
 the Chris-  
 tians of  
 Antioch lost  
 the succour  
 that they  
 might have  
 had.

The result  
 showed that  
 this was the  
 work of the  
 Lord,

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* onr.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* aud.

<sup>3</sup> Caxton's French MS. is here corrupted, "*Des le Coine jusques à Nique.*"  
 A. gives the correct reading, "*Des Icoine (Lat. Iconium), jusques à Nique.*"

<sup>4</sup> Fr. "*Afin que se les Turcz, les voulsissent suivre, vitaille leur faulzist, se les eust couvenu retourner,*" viz., "in order that if the Turks should desire to follow them, food would fail them, and they would be obliged to return home."

<sup>5</sup> *Orig.* Bnt.

perour that come laste shold haue had the vycторыe, theyr payne  
 shold not haue ben so wel guerdonne<sup>d</sup> / Therfor our<sup>1</sup> lord suffred  
 that themperour departed / And that the <sup>2</sup>werke shold be accom-  
 4 plysshed, as ye shal here to his glorye and honour of his peple /

in order that  
 the Chris-  
 tians might  
 accomplish  
 [3 leaf 91]  
 this work to  
 His glory,  
 and to their  
 own honour.

How our<sup>8</sup> peple of Anthyoche beyng aduertysed herof  
 were all discouraged, And Corbagat enhaunced  
 in pryde / ca. C / xxxiiij.

- 8 r Enommee cam in to Anthyoche, that themperour that was  
 approached by the wordes of therle Stephen, of Guyllen de  
 gratemenyll / And of theyr felaws was torned back / They had on  
 alle sydes anguysshes / But thyse tydynge empoysonne<sup>d</sup> them alle,  
 12 And put them as in despayr / thenne began they to curse the Erle  
 Stephen and alle his companye that had taken fro them so grete  
 ayde / Corbagat<sup>4</sup> that had knowleche that Themperour cam, had  
 moche doubte of his comyng / ffor it was a grete thyng of the  
 16 puyssaunce of themperour. Now was he certayn that he was  
 retorne<sup>d</sup>, Wherof he had moche grete ioye in his herte. he was  
 risen in a moche fiers pryde. He ran the more asprely on them of  
 the toun / Oure men in the toun were so abasshe<sup>d</sup>, that them seme<sup>d</sup>  
 20 wel that oure lord god had alle forgete them. They lete them falle  
 in despayre, And wold not endure no trauaylle that apperteyned to  
 the defence of the Cyte / Alle hydde them in theyr howses / On a  
 day it happed that Buymont,<sup>5</sup> whiche had alle the power of thoost,  
 24 had to doo with men / ffor thassaultes withoute forth, and for  
 thassaylles within forth / He dyde do crye on peyn of deth that  
 alle shold come, And there came none. He sente his men for to  
 fetch them in theyr howses and somone them to come, And none  
 28 wold come oute. He was abasshed / And thought<sup>6</sup> what he shold  
 doo. Atte laste he sette fyre in the toun in dyuerse places, And  
 thenne yssue<sup>d</sup> in to the stretes grete rowtes / Buymont sawe them,  
 and sayd to hem his commaundement / And bad what they shold  
 32 doo / they dyd it / A worde soured<sup>d</sup> in the toun that many  
 knyghtes and Barons had had counseyl pryuely emonge them that  
 they wold yssue oute of the toun<sup>7</sup> by nyght, And leue the pepole  
 within.
- 36 And wold doo the best they myght, and drawe them to the

The Chris-  
 tians in  
 Antioch were  
 in despair at  
 the turning  
 back of the  
 Emperor,

but Corbagat  
 rejoiced  
 greatly.

Bohemond  
 had to set  
 fire to the  
 city to force  
 his soldiery  
 out to do  
 their duty.

It was re-  
 ported that  
 many barons  
 intended to  
 steal away  
 by night.

<sup>1</sup> Orig. onr.

<sup>6</sup> Orig. Buymout.

<sup>3</sup> Orig. onr.

<sup>6</sup> Orig. thought.

<sup>4</sup> Orig. Crobagat.

<sup>7</sup> Orig. tonn.

porte for to entre vpon the see. The duc Godeffrey knewe this  
 word, he sente hastely for the bisshop of puy, And alle the barons  
 and grete partye of the knyghtes, and he fylle at theyr feet,<sup>1</sup> and  
 requyred<sup>2</sup> them for the loue of god that they wold neuer thynke  
 suche a thyng, ffor yf they dyd so, god shold hate them / And  
 they shold lese theyr sowles, as men that were in despayre of the  
 mercy of oure lord. <sup>3</sup> And on that other syde in the world they  
 shold lese their honour for euer and also theyr lygnage, whiche had  
 nothyng forfayted, And shold be shamed euer, and poynted with  
 the fingre. The londes out of whiche they yssued shold be the  
 lasse renomed and lasse preysed as long as the world shold endure.  
 Of alle thise departynges myght they neuer receyue good worde ne  
 honoure. By thyse wordes, and by the prechyng of the bisshop of  
 puy they loste this euyl talente, alle that had be in this euyl<sup>4</sup>  
 purpoos.<sup>5</sup> But they began to affeble in the toun for honger and  
 mesease, in suche wyse that they abode not, but the wylle of oure  
 lord / Ofte cam in theyr remembraunce what goodes / Rychesses,  
 and grete eases they had lefte in theyr countrees<sup>6</sup> for the loue of the  
 seruyse of oure lord. And now yelded he to them suche guerdon  
 that they deyed euery day for honger / And kept hem not fro  
 thyse dogges cruel, whiche byleuyd not in hym, but they slewe  
 and beheded them in despyte & reprouche of the Cristen fayth.  
 In this maner wold they chyde with our lord often as men that  
 wyste not what to do ne saye.

Duke Godfrey  
 begged the  
 barons, for  
 the love of  
 God, to  
 abandon this  
 thought.

[<sup>3</sup> lf. 91, bk.]

His entreaties  
 prevailed  
 with them.

But they  
 complained  
 bitterly of  
 their priva-  
 tions.

24

How the spere was founden of whiche Ihesus was  
 percyd on the crosse. And of the comfort that  
 our pylgryms toke thereby. Capitulo Cxxxv<sup>o</sup>

w Hyles as they were in this anguysshe therle herman, an hye  
 man of duche land, was in so grete pouerte<sup>7</sup> / that duc godefroy  
 dyde do delyuer to hym euery day one loof of breede for pyte  
 whiche was not moche grete / But the Duc myght no more gyue  
 hym / ffor he had not wherof / Harry dasque whiche was one of  
 the beste knyghtes of thooste was brought in so grete pouerte, that  
 he deyde for hongre. It were a long thyng for to recounte all their  
 meseases; but our lord that in alle his werkes may not forgete  
 mercy / sente to them grete comfort. ffor a clerk born in pro-

Harry D'As-  
 que, one of  
 the best  
 knights in  
 the army,  
 died of  
 hunger.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* feetr.

<sup>5</sup> *Orig.* purpops.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* reqnyred.

<sup>6</sup> *Orig.* countrees.

<sup>4</sup> *Orig.* enyll.

<sup>7</sup> *Orig.* ponerte.

36

- unnce named<sup>d</sup> peter, cam on a day to the bysshop of puy and to  
 therle of tholouse, & sayd to them in moche grete drede, that the  
 holy apostel seynt andrew had appiered to hym thryes in the nyght  
 4 slepyng, & warned hym that he shold goo to the barons & saye  
 to them / that the speer with which our lord was percid in the syde  
 on the crosse was hyd in the chirch of seint peter in the cyte, the  
 place where it was he had certainly shewed to hym / he said wel  
 8 that he was not come for to saye ne signefye them / but that seynt  
 andreu had<sup>d</sup> menaced<sup>d</sup> hym at the last tyme yf he dide not his  
 message / he shold meshappen in his body. <sup>1</sup>It was no merueylle yf  
 the clerke doubted for to saye this / ffor he was a poure man and  
 12 of a lowe lygnage / And<sup>d</sup> but lytil lettred<sup>d</sup>. Thyse two hye men  
 whan they herd hym they brought hym to fore the other barons.  
 They assembled<sup>d</sup> them, and they wolde that he shold saye to them  
 the same wordes as he had sayd to them / whan the other Prynces  
 16 herd<sup>d</sup> this, they mysbyleuyd<sup>d</sup> not the clerke / They cam in to the  
 Chirche of seynt Peter. And<sup>d</sup> sayd<sup>d</sup> theyr confessions. And cryed  
 our lord mercy in teres, wepynges, and wayllynges / And repent-  
 aunces of theyr synnes. Thenne began to delue and dygg depe in  
 20 the place that the clerke had shewed to them. They fonde the  
 spere lyke as he had<sup>d</sup> sayd to them. Thenne had they a Ioye  
 emonge them so grete, lyke as euery man had<sup>d</sup> had<sup>d</sup> as moche as he  
 myght / They ronge the belles. And<sup>d</sup> this thyng was anon spred  
 24 al about the toun. They ran alle to the chirche hastely. And sawe  
 this noble relyquye whiche was doluen out of therthe. Thenne were  
 they recomforted alle, both men and wymmen, poure and ryche /  
 as they had our lord emong them and seen hym, there were thus  
 28 many other good<sup>d</sup> men that sayde certaynly that certeyn vysyons of  
 Angeles and<sup>d</sup> apostles were appered to them (28) / By thyse thynges  
 the peple forgate moche of theyr meseases. The bisshop of puy and  
 other holy men that were in the companye sayd to the pylgryms  
 32 that oure lord<sup>d</sup> shewde to them tokene and<sup>d</sup> signe / that shortly he  
 wold sende to them his ayde and his counseyl, They concluded<sup>d</sup>  
 alle, noble and vnnoble, men and wymmen / grete and lytil / And  
 sware vpon the holy relyques / that yf our lord<sup>d</sup> wold<sup>d</sup> delyuer them  
 36 oute of the peryll in whiche they were, And<sup>d</sup> gyue them victorye  
 of theyr enemyes, that they shold<sup>d</sup> neuer departe fro this holy com-  
 panye vnto the tyme that they had<sup>d</sup> conquerd<sup>d</sup> Iherusalem, that  
 noble Cyte, where our lord<sup>d</sup> suffred<sup>d</sup> deth for to saue his peple.  
 40 And<sup>d</sup> shold<sup>d</sup> delyuer the holy sepulcre oute of the handes of the fals

The Apostle  
St. Andrew,  
appeared to  
one Peter,  
in a dream,

and bade him  
look in St.  
Peter's  
Church for  
the spear  
with which  
our Lord was  
pierced.

[1 leaf 92]

The barons  
dug there  
and found  
the spear.

By this  
miracle all  
were com-  
forted and  
encouraged,

and took it  
as a sign that  
they should  
soon be  
delivered.

mysbyleyung houndes, turkes, and saresyns that kept it in theyr power.

How Peter theremyte was sente by our men vnto Corbagat / the words what he sayde. And the answer of the sayd Corbagat. Capitulo Cxxxvj<sup>o</sup>:

After twenty-  
six days of  
famine they t

Hey had suffred this famyne .xxvj / days in the Cyte / In so moche that the people to whome our lord god had sente good hope in theyr hertes began moch to be comforted / & 8 fyllle alle to one wylle in such wise that they sayd emong

[11. 92, bk.]

them that it were good to brynge theyr mesease <sup>1</sup>to an ende /

decided to  
fight the  
Turks.

Therefore was theyr comyn acorde that they shold fyght with the turkes that had assieged them, ffor they thought a fayrer thyng 12 that yf our lord wold that they deyde in bataylle, that they shold doo it in deffendyng their cyte that they had conquered to the Cristiente, than to languysse and to faylle within without essayeng yf our lord wold ayde them / herof sourced a comyn word 16 emonge them that alle cryed bataylle, bataylle / the bataylle, whan they myght see ony of the Barons. Alle they sayde that they taryed alle to longe. This word was thus meuyd of the mene peple. The barons thought that this enterprise myght well come 20 of our lord. And so by comon acord they assembled in counseyl.

They sent  
Peter the  
Hermit, with  
Herloin, an  
interpreter,  
to Corbagat.

they alowed muche this that the peple made this request, and accorded that they wold sende to this proude prynce Corbagat, Peter theremyte, whiche was an holy man, moche wyse and wel bespokin. 24 And delyuerd to hym for felaw a valyaunt man named hellom (29), trewe and of grete wytte that coude wel speke the langage of the sarasyns. And <sup>2</sup>specially the langage of perse / They charged them with the message, like as ye shal here what they sayde to Corbagat. 28 Thise two sad men to fore sayd dyde do demaunde trews for to goo to the sayd Corbagat / ffor they wold speke with hym in the name of the pylgryms / hit was graunted with good wyll, They wente out of the Cyte and toke with him good companye, whiche were 32 assygned to them / they wente so ferre that they arryued at the payllon of this noble prynce Corbagat. They sawe hym sytte in moche grete bobaunce emonge his ryche men / Peter salewed hym nothyng, ne made to hym honour ne reuerence. But spak heeryng 36 alle in this maner / This holy companye of hye & noble men / barons, noble knyghtes, and other peple of our lord god that ben

Arriving at  
his tent they  
found him  
surrounded  
by his men.

Peter ad-  
dressed him  
thus:

- yonder / within the cyte / sende to the & comaunde that thou  
 departe fro this sieg / & that thou nomore assaylle them / but  
 late them haue and kepe the toun in pees, which our lord Ihesu  
 4 crist hath delyuered to them for to holde his faith & for to doo  
 hym seruise. ffor seynt peter the prynce of thapostles / vpon the  
 creaunce of whom our fayth is founded, hath conuerted it fyrst by  
 his prechyng / And by the merueyllous myracles that he dyde /  
 8 our peple hath conquerd it not long syth by the wyll and ayde of  
 oure lord vpon the turkes, that haue holden it with wrong and by  
 force a certeyn tyme. Therfor thou oughtest to suffre vs to enioye  
 our herytage / And retorne thou in to thy countrey, and yf thou  
 12 wilt not so doo knowe thou for certayn that within the thyrde day  
 swerdes <sup>1</sup>schal fynysse and ende this debate. And to thende that  
 thou complayne not that we desire and wille the deth pourchasse of  
 so moch peple in comyn bataylle, they shal offre to the this / that is  
 16 to wete / yf thou wilt fyght in thyn owne persone, they shal sende  
 ayenst the, one al so hye a prynce as thou art, to whom thou shalt  
 fyght. And whiche of you maye vaynquysse and <sup>2</sup>ouercome that  
 other, shal conquere the quarelle for euermore withoute other debate.  
 20 yf this thyng please the not / take certayn nombre of thy men,  
 vj. x. or xij / or as many as thou wyll / & our pilgryms shal sette  
 as many ayenst them, withoute ony moo of that one syde and that  
 other. And that they that shal wyne the feelde shal allewaye  
 24 haue the gayne of this debate. When Corbagat herde this message  
 he was moche wroth and angry, and had grete desdayne and  
 despyte / Thenne he tourned hym toward Peter and sayd to hym /  
 Peter they that hath sente the hether, ben not in such poynt as me  
 28 semeth that they shold offre to me for to chose of theyr deuyses,  
 But they be brought by my puyssaunce and strengthe that they  
 maye doo nothyng of theyr wyll / But I shall doo with them  
 alle my playsyre / But retourne thou and saye to thyse musardes,  
 32 and saye to them that haue made the to meue fro the Cyte and  
 come hether, that they vnderstonde not yet the <sup>3</sup>maluerte that they  
 be in / And byleue certaynly / that yf I had wold, I had or now  
 broken and destroyed this toun and sette my men therin by force,  
 36 in suche wyse that the cresten men had be alle slayn / men and  
 wymmen / lytil and grete. But I wyll that ye abyde in more  
 caytyfnes and mesease, dyeng & languysshyng for hongre / lyke as  
 other houndes. And whan it shal please me / I shal entre in to

"The Christians com-  
mand you to  
depart from  
this sieg,

and leave  
them An-  
tioch, which  
was con-  
verted by St.  
Peter.

[<sup>1</sup> leaf 93]

They chal-  
lenge you to  
single com-  
bat, with one  
of their  
number."

Corbagat was  
very wroth at  
this message,

and said,  
"Return,  
and tell your  
masters,  
that they are  
in no con-  
dition to  
dictate.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. aud.

<sup>3</sup> Fr. *malëurte*, misery, misfortune.

When I am  
ready I shall  
enter the  
town, and  
kill or take  
all of them  
away as  
slaves."

the toun, & alle them that I shal fynde, men and wymmen of couenable eage, I shal put them alle bounden handes & feet in in pyetous estate, And shal lede them alle to my lorde for to serue hym. And they shal be his esclaves / Alle the other I shall 4 slee with the swerd, lyke an euyll tree that wyll bere no fruyt /

How the sayd Peter retorned in to the toun, and wold openly haue sayd his message / & of the subtyl counseyll of the duc whiche wold not 8 suffre it / ca° C.xxxvij°

[¶ If. 93, bk.]

Peter re-  
turned home,

but Godfrey  
would not let  
him tell his  
message to  
the people.

They all  
with one  
accord cried  
to fight  
Corbagat.

The next day  
was set for  
the battle.

<sup>1</sup>p Eter theremyte vnderstode his pryde whiche was grete, and of grete quantite of peple that he had<sup>1</sup> / And also of <sup>2</sup>his Rychesses whiche were ouer moche / Thenne he departed and cam 12 agayn in to the toun. he wold haue sayd the message of Corbagat openly in the presence of them that wold here hym / ffor theder ran grete and smale. But the duc Godeffroy that was moche wyse and knewe moche, drewe hym a part, and called only the barons, 16 and bad hym saye that he hath founden. he recounted to them alle, as he that had wel reteyned in his mynde / & coude saye and vtter it in the best manere / The duc doubted that yf the peple had herd this grete pryde and the menaces that Corbagat had sayd / 20 that they shold be ouer moche abasshed and feer. Therfor he commaunded to Peter that he shold saye none other thyng / But that only Corbagat desyred and demaunded the bataylle ayenst them, And that they shold make them redy. Peter acorded wel 24 therto, And sayd to them lyke as the duc had commaunded hym / And vnnethe Peter had sayd the worde / But that alle cryed with one voys / And we wyll also the bataylle ayenst hym in godes name. They shewde wel by theyr sight and semblaunce that the 28 desyre of the bataylle was grete in their hertes. Alle their meseases were forgotten for Ioye to haue the vycctorye. The Barons, whan they sawe that theyr peple made suche ioye they were moche glad, And moche the more trusted in them. By comyn counseyl they 32 ordeyned the day of the batayll on the morn / And that thus wold Corbagat haue it, they byleuyd it wel. And hastely wente every man to his lodgyng. There ye shold haue seen Armourers put in poynt, hauberks and helmes fourbousshed / swerdes and custrellis 36

<sup>1-1</sup> Fr. "*Pierre l'ermite entendit son orgueil qui moult grant estoit, de la grant quantité de gens qu'il avoit.*"



- whette / This nyght slepte they not in the toun noman / They that  
 kept the hors toke good hede this nyght / And made alle thynges  
 redy. As soone as it was nyght, It was cryed vpon peyne of deth,  
 4 that alle man shold be in the mornynge to fore the sonne rysynge  
 alle armed as he best myght / And drawe hym in to the bataylle  
 where as he was ordeyned / And that euery man shold folowe the  
 baner of his Captayne / whan the spryngynge of the day apperid in  
 8 the mornynge the men of the chirche were redy for to synge masse,  
 And songe deuoutly / They that shold goo to the batayll were con-  
 fessyd, and alle receyued the bodye of oure lord, which gaf to them  
 surete of body and of sowle. Alle rancour and wrath were en-  
 12 tierly perdonned / by cause they wold be in parfyght charyte, And  
 therin doo the seruyse of our lord, whiche sayth in the gospels,  
 In this shal alle men knowe that ye be my disciples, yf ye haue  
 loue and charyte emonge you / whan they were thus redy / <sup>1</sup>oure  
 16 lord sente to them his grace / which gaf to them so grete hardines,  
 that they that were the daye to fore so ferdful / feble and lene that  
 they myght not susteyne them self for feblenesse, becam stronge,  
 and delyuer<sup>2</sup> in suche wyse / that the armes that they bare weyed  
 20 nothyng as them semed, and were hardy and vygorous, so that ther  
 was none so litil but he had talente to doo grete thyng in the  
 bataylle. The tyme cam that the bisshops and alle the other men  
 of the chirche were reuested as for to synge masse. they helde the  
 24 crosse / and the saintuaries with whiche they blessyd the peple  
 And recommaunded them to god. They graunted pardon and  
 remyssyon to them of alle their synnes, yf they deyde in the  
 seruyse of our lord. To fere alle the other the bisshop of puy  
 28 prechyd and spak to the barons. And prayd them that they shold  
 thyncke to auenge the shame of our lord Ihesu Criste, that thyse  
 vntrewe sarasyns had don to hym so longe in withholdynge of his  
 herytage. Atte laste he blessyd them with his hand, and com-  
 32 maunded them to god deuoutly.

No man slept  
in the town  
that night.

At daybreak  
all went to  
church.

All rancor  
and wrath  
were par-  
doned.

[<sup>1</sup> leaf 94]

The Lord  
now sent  
them physi-  
cal strength  
in a wonder-  
ful manner.

The priests  
gave them  
absolution for  
their sins.

The Bishop  
of Puy ex-  
horted them  
to auenge  
their shame  
of the Lord  
Jesus Christ.

How to fore er our men departed / they made redy  
 theyr bataylles right wel in poynt / & of the  
 nombre of them / ca<sup>o</sup>. C.xxxviiij<sup>o</sup>

36. N the morn erly our pylgryms assembled / as it was ordenyed  
 o & deuyssed the thyrd day to fore thentre of Iuyll, to fore the

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *delivres*, hardy, bold.

Hugh the  
Great com-  
manded the  
first batta-  
lion,

Robert of  
Flanders  
the second,

Robert of  
Normandy  
the third,

the Bishop of  
Puy the  
fourth,

[<sup>2</sup> If. 94, bk.]

Reginald of  
Toul had the  
fifth,

Rembold of  
Orange and  
other Pro-  
vençals the  
sixth,  
Godfrey of  
Bouillon led  
the seventh,  
Tancred the  
eighth,

Huon the  
ninth, and

the Earl of  
Perse and  
others the  
tenth.

yate of the brydye / to fore thyssue oute of the yate / They hañ  
theyr bataylles ordeyned and deuysed lyke as who shold goo to  
fore / And who shold come after / The fyrst bataylle had huon<sup>1</sup> le  
mayne, broder of the kynge of ffrance, And with hym Ancean de 4  
Rybemont, And the other Barons and knyghtes of theyr countrey /  
They thought wel that the men that they ledde shold not lyghtly  
be discomfyted. therfore wente they first / for to perse in the better  
to fore. The second batayll ledde Robert therle of fflaundes / 8  
which was called the fryson / he had none other in his bataylle but  
peple of his owne countree. The thyrde batayll ledde Robert the  
Duc of Normandy with his neuu, whiche was moche valyaunt,  
therle steuen of Aubuale / And alle them of his owen countreye / 12  
The fourth batayll was delyuerd to the bisshop of puy / whiche had  
don of thabyt of the chyrche, and rode upon a good stede / the  
helme laced. And he bare in his hond the holy spere of whiche  
oure saueour, Ihesu Criste, was perced in the <sup>2</sup>side, and conduyted 16  
vygorously the bataylle of therle of thoulouse, whiche was not there.  
The Erle Reignald of toul had the / v. bataylle. with hym was peter  
de stadenous his broder / Therle Garnyer<sup>3</sup> of grece, Henry dasque /  
Reynart of Anmellac / Gaultier of domedart / In the .vj. bataylle 20  
were Rembold, the erle of Orenge, Loys<sup>4</sup> de moueours, and Lambert  
sone of Euenam<sup>5</sup> de Montagu. The / vij / bataylle ledde the right  
valyaunt Godeffroy duc of Loreyne / with hym was Eustace his  
brother / And them that he brought out of his countrey. The .viij / 24  
bataylle conduyted the noble, wyse, and wel preuyd Tancre, with  
the men that were delyuerd to hym. The .ix. bataylle ledde therle  
huon of seynt poul. Aniaran<sup>6</sup> his sone was with hym / Thomas<sup>7</sup>  
de boure / bawdwyn de bourgh, Robert<sup>8</sup> fytz<sup>9</sup> gerard / Regnault 28  
de bauuaus<sup>10</sup> / And Gales de chamont.<sup>11</sup> The .x. ladde therle of  
Perse.<sup>12</sup> And had with hym Euerard du puyssat, Droon de money /  
Raoul<sup>13</sup> fytz godeffroy and Conayn the breton. Of the .xi. was  
Capytayn Ysachar<sup>14</sup> therle of dys. with hym were Remon<sup>15</sup> pabes / 32  
Gaste de bedyers / Gyrard de Roussylon, Guylllem de monpellyer,  
And Guylllem ameneux / The / xij / and the laste in whiche was

<sup>1</sup> Fr. "eut" left out.      <sup>3</sup> Fr. *garin de gres*.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. *Loys de Monçon*.      <sup>5</sup> Fr. *Conon de Montaigu*.      <sup>6</sup> Fr. *Anjorran*.

<sup>7</sup> Fr. *Thomas de Fere*.      <sup>8</sup> Fr. *Robert le filz Girart*, Robert the son of Girart.

<sup>9</sup> *Orig. fntz*.      <sup>10</sup> Fr. *Beauvoys*.      <sup>11</sup> Fr. *Chamont*.      <sup>12</sup> Fr. *Perche*.

<sup>13</sup> Fr. *Raoul le filz Godeffroy*, Raoul the son of Godeffroy.

<sup>14</sup> Fr. *Ysacart le conte de Die*.      Lat. *Yscardus comes Diensis*.

<sup>15</sup> Fr. *Remon Pelez*.

moost peple was delyuerd to buymont<sup>1</sup> / And was ordeyned that he shold goo socoure suche bataylles / as had moost nede. Therle of thoulouse, whiche was merueyllously seke, lefte they in the toun  
 4 for to kepe fro the turkes in the dongeon / ffor yf ther had be no garde / they myght haue sprongen and haue slayn alle the seke men, wymmen, and children, and the feble men that abode byhynde in the toun / of whom ther were grete nombre<sup>2</sup> in theyr herberous /  
 8 They had made, as I haue sayd tofore, vpon a lytil tertre a stronge walle of chalke / in whiche were ordeyned places for to dresse engyns, whiche were al redy for to caste / They had left / ij. C. men of Armes, noble and hardy for to deffend this paas fro the  
 12 turkes, whiche were on hye on the dongeon.

Bohemond came last with the twelfth battalion.

The Earl of Toulouse was left to guard the town.

How Corbatat was aduertysed of thyssue of oure peple, and sente his Archiers for to deffende the brydge. And how they were disconfyted.

16 Capitulo / Cxxxix<sup>o</sup>

w Han they had thus deuyse<sup>d</sup> theyr bataylles / in euery batayll they had sette men on foote. It was acorde<sup>d</sup> emonge them that they a foote shold<sup>d</sup> goo to fore. And the knyghtes that cam  
 20 after shold kepe<sup>3</sup> them. It was deffended and cryed<sup>4</sup> on payne<sup>5</sup> of deth that none shold be so hardy that shold entende to ony gayn As longe as ony turke deffended hym / but whan oure lord<sup>d</sup> had gyuen them the vycторыe, Thenne shold they retorne, and myght  
 24 tarye to take & gadre the despoylls. Corbatat fro the begynnyng of the siege of the cyte had alwaye doubte & grete suspicion that our peple shold<sup>d</sup> sodanly come vpon his hoost, And specially syth that peter theremyte had be with hym in message. And therfor he  
 28 had commaund<sup>d</sup> to them that were in the dongeon, that yf oure men thought to yssue they shold sowne a busyne / And sette oute a baner where they shold yssue / wherof it happed that whan thyse bataylles were renged<sup>d</sup> to fore the yate to fore they yssued<sup>d</sup> aboute  
 32 the houre of pryme / They of the tour made the signe like as they were commaunded. Corbatat vnderstode that our men cam. And anon he sente two thousand Archiers to the brydge to kepe it that they shold not passe. whan the turkes cam theder for to mayntene  
 36 the passage / they descended alle afoote. The yates were opened,

The footmen went first, and the knights after. [<sup>s</sup> leaf 95]

Corbatat had always feared an attack,

and had arranged for signals, so that he knew of their coming.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* buymout.    <sup>2</sup> *Orig.* nombre.

<sup>3</sup> *Fr. les garderont, viz., should protect them.*    <sup>4</sup> *Orig.* ccyed.

Hugh the Great opened the attack and put the Turks to flight.

Ancean of Ribemont gained great honours by his bravery.

Our men pursued the Turks nearly to their tents.

oure<sup>1</sup> men yssued<sup>t</sup> after thordenaunce that was deuysed<sup>t</sup>. Huon<sup>2</sup> le mayne with alle his bataylle cam fyrst vn to this paas, whiche<sup>3</sup> was kept with his enemyes. his<sup>4</sup> archiers and men a foote taryed a lytil and myght not passe in no wyse / whan huon the noble man apper- 4  
ceyued this he smote the hors with the spores, and<sup>t</sup> so smote in on bothe sydes, that it was to late for the turkes a foote to take theyr horses / Thenne torned they fleyng<sup>t</sup>, defendyng them & shotyng with their bowes. Ancean de Ribemont rode ayenst them, and bete and 8  
helde the<sup>5</sup> rowte so short allone that his men that cam after hym myght come and smyte in emong them and<sup>t</sup> delyuerd<sup>t</sup> many.<sup>5</sup> And oftymes he plunged<sup>t</sup> so depe in the presse that certaynly our men ha<sup>t</sup> supposed he had ben lost. but whan he cam agayn / he dis- 12  
couerd hym wel and made large place about hym. Alle men behelde hym, he gate there moche grete honour and<sup>t</sup> prys. Huon le mayne forgate not his sword. And he dyde so moche that our pylgryms had by hym good luck and hope at this fyrst assemblee / 16  
Therle of fflaundres and the duc of Normandy, with the valyaunt erle of henawd<sup>t</sup> cam to this chaas / The Archiers of the turkes that so fledde were so euyl mened / that they were but a fewe whan they retourned in to thoost / Our men folowed<sup>t</sup> them tyl nygh theyr lodgys. 20  
many of them they bete down that neuer releuyd.

How oure men reioysed them of a dew or rousee  
descendyng<sup>6</sup> thenne fro heuen. And of theyr  
mayntyen in approchyng the turkes. 24

### Capitulo C / xl

o Ne thyng happed whan oure men yssued<sup>t</sup> out of the toun /  
that ought not to be forgotten / ffor whan thyse Archiers were  
disconfyted, the latynes cam after in theyr ordenaunce a softe paas / 28  
Thenne began to falle a rayne or a dewe, so swete a rousee was  
neuer seen / It semed to euery man verytably, that it was the  
benediction of our lord and the grace of heuen that descended vpon

Our men were now greatly refreshed by a sweet dew which fell.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* onre.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* Hnon.

<sup>3</sup> Fr. "*qui ainsi des ennemis garny estoit*," viz., "which was thus guarded by his enemies."

<sup>4</sup> Fr. "*que tart fut à ceulx qui descendoient à pie qu'ilz fussent remontés*," i. e., so that those who had descended from their horses were very anxious to be remounted.

<sup>5-6</sup> Fr. "*tenoit tant la route, tout seul, que ses hommes qui venoient apres, y pouoient frapper à deliure*."

them / Anon<sup>1</sup> they were as fressh & al so light as they neuer had suffred mesease. This refresshement was not only in the men, but alle theyr horses were anon so stronge, so fresshe, and so reioyced /  
 4 As they had had alway al that whiche was nedeful for them. This was moche apperceyued that daye certaynly, ffor the horses that many dayes had nothyng to ete sauf leeuës of trees and skorches<sup>2</sup> or Ryndes, were in this bataylle more stronge and more penyble /  
 8 than were the horses of the turkes, whiche had alwaye as moche as they myght / The Capytayns acorded that they shold drawe them toward the montaynes, whiche was fer fro the Cyte wel .ij. myles / ffor yf the turkes whiche had moch grete plente wold goo theder-  
 12 ward / they shold be bytwene oure men and<sup>3</sup> the toun, and shold close them in. In this maner wente one bataylle to fore another withoute this / That one touched another in ony wyse / whan the turkes sawe them alle they merueylled and were abasshed, ffor they  
 16 had supposed / that they had not be but a fewe enclosed in the toun / Now they semed by the myracle of our lord that they were as many of them / as were of the turkes, and yet moo. Emonge the men of armes were the men of the Chirche reuested with  
 20 awbes<sup>4</sup> and stooles, they that were preestes. And the clerkys in surplys / & eche of them bare a crosse in his hand / they that were abyden in the toun were on the walles, reuestyd also, in prayers and oroysons and teeris cryeng<sup>5</sup> mercy to oure lord that he wolde haue  
 24 pyte of his peple / And saue them that day, & that he wold not suffre that his name and his fayth shold torne to reproche by the mescreauntes and hethen peple.

so that they felt perfectly strong and well.

The horses even recovered their strength.

They drew off towards the mountains, one battalion after another.

Among the armed men marched the priests, in their priestly garments, cross in hand.

How Corbagat ordeyned his bataylles / And how the  
 28 two hoostes marched to gydre in bataylle.

/ C. xlj°

b Y the signes that they of the dongeon made to them of thoost, and by the tydynges that the Archiers brought / Corbagat  
 32 knewe and vnderstode certaynly that oure men were yssued oute of the Cyte, and cam toward hym for to fyghte. Thenne<sup>6</sup> of this that he was thenne adcerteyned / he had desdayne to fore and

[<sup>3</sup> leaf 96]

Corbagat now understood that our men meant to fight him.

<sup>1</sup> Orig. Auon.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *ecorces*, bark.

<sup>3</sup> Orig. aud.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. *aubes et estoiles*, albs and stoles.

<sup>5-6</sup> Fr. "*lors tint à certes ce qu'il avoit eu jusques adoneques en desdaing, et tenu pour moquerie*," viz., then he began to take seriously that which up to this time he had held in disdain, and considered only as mockery.

holden it for mocquerye.<sup>6</sup> he toke counseyl of his barons / And  
 hastily ordeyned his bataylles by the counseyl of his wysemen /  
 And specially of them that were born in Anthyoche, of whom he  
 had many with hym. He made a bataylle of moche grete plente of 4  
 knyghtes, the best and moost hardy that he had / This bataylle  
 delyuerd he to Solyman / of whom ye haue herd in dyuerse places  
 to fore. He commaunded that they shold drawe them toward the  
 see, to fore er our men shold haue taken / and pourprysed alle the 8  
 playn bytwene the montayne & the Cyte. This<sup>1</sup> grete bataylle cam  
 thenne to fore, And was staked as bytwene two townes<sup>2</sup> and  
 closed / His other bataylles he sette in poynt by leyser, And made  
 that one to goo to fore another as he that knowe ynowgh of the 12  
 faytes of warre / And after spak to the Capytaynes, and sayde to  
 them, that they shold mayntene them as hye men and good  
 knyghtes, and not to be aferd ne esmayed of thyse Caytyues / men  
 enfamyned, euyll armed, and all to brused of the grete trauaylles 16  
 that they had suffred, whan our men had pourprised entierly the  
 playn in such wise that they doubted not to be closed in / They  
 approuched so nyghe the turkes that the turkes myght shote at  
 them / They made theyr trompes and busynes to sowne lowd, 20  
 And<sup>3</sup> spored their horses the thre fyrst bataylles to gydre / wel  
 founde they that receyued them, ffor the turkes were grete men  
 and well armed. Our men dyde right wel in this comyng on /  
 The<sup>4</sup> ffrensshemen, fflemynge conteyned them vygorously in brek- 24  
 ynge the presse / But thenne cam so grete rowtes of turkes / that it  
 behoued the other bataylles of our men to assemble hastily for to  
 socoure the thre first bataylles. They were alle at the medle, sauf  
 the laste bataylle, whiche buymont conduyted as ye haue herd. 28  
 There shold ye haue seen fiers skarmoche of swerdes, of maces  
 & axesse. the<sup>5</sup> malles were so grete and strokes / that ye shold  
 not haue herd yf it had thondred. The duc godeffroy sawe a

He arranged  
his own  
battalions,

and sent  
Solyman to  
intercept our  
men.

Solyman  
arranged his  
army, and  
exhorted his  
men not to  
fear the  
famine-  
weakened  
crusaders.

Our men now  
attacked  
them, and  
a fierce  
skirmish  
followed.

<sup>1</sup> Caxton has here made a "bourdon" by omitting all between the two "cites," and then in consequence of this omission, he has mistranslated the rest of the sentence, Fr. (*cecy fist il par tele entencion que quand nos gens seroient desconfitz, et ilz se vouldroient tirer vers la mer ou vers la cité*), *cette grosse bataille leur venist au devant, et fussent adoneques entachiez comme entre deux moles, et et du tout agrevé et forclos.* <sup>2</sup> hills, not towns. <sup>3</sup> Orig. Aud.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. "*Les Flamans se contindrent vigoureusement, et les Normans derompoient bien la presse.*"

<sup>5</sup> Fr. "*le marteleis estoit si grant,*" i. e., the hammering (of the arms) was so great.

- bataylle come where in were moo men than ony of the other. well thought he that yf that were discomfyted / The other shold be moche abashed. he drewe thederward, And<sup>1</sup> smote in them asprely and  
 4 vigorously. there dyde he & his felawship moche wel and<sup>2</sup> so valyauntly that they slewe many, and<sup>3</sup> hewe of heedes and<sup>4</sup> armes in suche wyse that the felde lay ful of dede men, of hurt and wounded, in so many that the turkes<sup>2</sup> myght no lenger suffre it ne  
 8 lenger endure<sup>3</sup> / But were discomfyted and<sup>4</sup> were put to flyght. Solyman that had the grete bataylle, as I haue sayd to fore / apperceyued fro ferre his men conteyned them but feblly / And<sup>5</sup> approached and<sup>6</sup> sawe the bataylle of buymont / which yet had not be in the  
 12 medle with the other / he adressid hym thedre, And dyde do shote at hym grete plente of Arowes at the approuchyng.<sup>4</sup> But after they henge theyr bowes on theyr armes, and ran vpon them with axes and swerdes / And<sup>5</sup> smote so sore on them that almost they tourned  
 16 the heedes of theyr horses, ffor they myght not abide so grete estour ne so sharpe of so moche peple. The duc Godeffroye knewe & sawe them fro ferre / & drewe hym diligently to that parte. Tancre toke hede also of his vncl, & cam dilygently to socoure  
 20 hym. at the comyng of them two which brought many men with them was Solyman discomfyted, and<sup>7</sup> muste parte fro the place. But the turkes had made redy fyre grekyssh (30) / And<sup>8</sup> threwe it in to the grasse whiche was longe and<sup>9</sup> drye in the felde / Our men thenne  
 24 departed for the smoke whiche was blak and thycke / whan the turkes sawe that they on horsbak were withdrawen, they ran vpon our men afoote, and slewe many of them. our men that were on horsbak were yssued out of the thyck smoke, and<sup>10</sup> herde the crye of  
 28 them that they so slewe / And<sup>11</sup> smote the horses with the spores, and camen agayn alle / And<sup>12</sup> alle them that they founde of theyr enemyes they bete and<sup>13</sup> slewe, and<sup>14</sup> put to flyght. So ferre they chassed them, betyng<sup>15</sup> and<sup>16</sup> hewyng<sup>17</sup> them, that they cam to the  
 32 grete multitude / whiche thenne were discomfyted and put to flyght /

Godfrey and his men fought bravely.

[2 If. 96, bk.]

The Turks were put to flight.

Solyman attacked Bohemond's division, and pressed them hard.

Godfrey, seeing this, came to the rescue, and discomfited Solyman,

and then chased him a long distance, slaying many.

Of the fleynge of Corbagat / And of som turkes gadred to gydre. And agayn discomfyted by our men.

36

ca.<sup>o</sup> Cxlij<sup>o</sup><sup>1</sup> *Orig.* Ano.<sup>3</sup> *Orig.* endure.<sup>4</sup> *Orig.* approuchyng.

i N this partye where the bataylle had bee, was in a valeye /  
 As where descended in to the see a lytil brook or rennyng  
 water. vnto that place had our men chassed the turkes / And there  
 they drewe and assembled them agayn vpon a tertre right hye / 4  
 And made do sowne theyr trompettes and busynes for to brynge  
 their peple to gidre, but our men that thenne had not to doo in  
 none other place camen alle to them / Huon le mayne / Therle of  
 fflaundes. The duc of Normandy / the Duc godeffroy, Buymont 8.  
 and Tancre, And they that were with them, began moche myghtely  
 to <sup>1</sup> assaylle theyr enemyes, thurgh the water so fiersly and by so  
 grete hardynesse and force that they passed ouer, and sodanly ran  
 on that hylle where they were on. And made them to descende 12  
 doun moche peryllously. fro thenne the turkes had none hope, to  
 abyde no longer on the felde ne on the champayns, but euery<sup>2</sup> man  
 wente and fledde here and there where he myght and thought  
 beste. Corbagat the lord of the hoost, fro the begynnyng that the 16  
 bataylles assembled / had eschewed the peryll / And was with-  
 drawen vpon an hylle a ferre of, for to see the ende. he sente ofte  
 messagers for to knowe how his men conteyned and demened  
 them<sup>3</sup> / wherefore he abode there / And sawe how the turkes cam 20  
 alle disconfyted without kepyng araye ne ordenaunce of bataylle.  
 his frendes that were about hym<sup>4</sup> sayd to hym / Syre, ye see wel  
 at this tyme how it gooth, therefore thynke ye dylygently for your  
 self / And departe hastely fro this place. he thenne wente his 24  
 waye and fledde as hastely as he myght; he had so grete fere and  
 drede in his herte that he durst abyde in no place. he passed the  
 Ryuer and flood of Eufrates / And by the rennyng of his hors he  
 withdrewe hym as fer as he myght. whan his men knewe that 28  
 they were without Capytayne they were moche abasshed. thenne  
 thought none of them of other, but euery man dyde the best he  
 coude or myghte to saue hymself, & fledde alle as moche as they  
 myght / Our valyaunt barons, whiche that had sore trauaylled 32  
 theyr horses, durste not folowe them ouer ferre, lest theyr horses  
 myght faylle them / Tancre with a companye of four thousand  
 folowed, sleying and betyng doun<sup>5</sup> alle them that they myght  
 atteyne, ffor the fere and drede was so grete in the hertes of the 36  
 sarasyns that / x. men myght haue chassed / v / C. sarasyns. Ther  
 was it euydently proued and shewd, that there is no counseyl, ne  
 none maye be gyuen ayenst our lord god / And that our lord for-

The Turks  
rallied on a  
little hill.

[<sup>1</sup> leaf 97]

Our men  
followed, and  
dislodged  
them.

The rout  
now became  
general.

Corbagat fled  
beyond the  
Euphrates.

Tancred  
followed with  
4000 men,  
as far as he  
dared, with  
his weary  
men and  
horses.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. enery. <sup>3</sup> Fr. *si comme il alendoit illec.* <sup>4</sup> Orig. hyin. <sup>5</sup> Orig. donn.



geteth not them that haue stedfast hope in hym, for a smalle peple, poure, and as alle deed for longer, whiche were come fro fer countrees and londes, by the ayde of Ihesu Criste vaynquysshyd alle the power of thoryent in theyr owne londe and countree, whiche were so grete plente of peple garnisshyd and replenesshyd of alle that they had nede of.

Thus a small famine-stricken army vanquished the proud Orient.

How our peple retorned fro the chaasse, and wente to the pillage, and of the grete Rychesses that they fonde. ca. Cxliij.

t He bataylle was thus fynysshyd, in suche wyse that the pilgryms had the vycторыe / They wente straye to the lodgyses  
 12 of the turkes, there founde they so grete Rychesses of gold, of syluer, of precious stones, of vaysell of dyuerse facions / tapytes and clothes of sylk, so moche that neuer man myght wel preyse. Oxen, sheep, and kyen were there grete plente, whete and mele  
 16 grounden, of which they had grete nede; ther was so moch that all they were encombrede to bere it / They wan horses in this discomfytur good and fatte, so many that they were abasshed of the grete multitude that was there / They toke and gadred the despoilles  
 20 and the tentes, wherof they had so grete rychesses / that of suche an hoost, was neuer none seen more faire ne ryche / And this cam to them merueyllously well to poynt / ffor alle theyr tentes & theyr paynyllons were holly rotten / wymmen, Childeren, and other peple  
 24 whiche bare none arnes they founde ouer many in the lodgyses, whom alle they brought in to the cyte Emong the other thynges. the barons assembled them for to see the tentes of Corbagat whiche was merueyllous, ffor it was made in the forme of a Cyte / It had  
 28 towres and cresses of dyuerse colours wrought with fyn sylke. ffor the mayster palays were aleys in to other tentes lyke to stretes in a grete toun. Ther myght sytte in the grete halle moo than two thousand men / whan our men had recuyelled thus the rychesses  
 32 and despoilles / they alle made grete trusses full of ryche thynges, and charged them on theyr horses and backes and entred in to the Cyte of Anthyoche. yf they thenne were glad and ioyous, It was no merueylle, ffor in longe tyme to fore, fylle ne happed suche  
 36 aduenture in Cristiente / They rendred & gaf to our lord many thankes and graces of lawde with alle theyr very hartes humbly and deuoutly. ffor wel knewe they that alle was comen fro hym /

The Christians went to the tents of the Turks, [1 lf. 97, bk.]

where they found immense riches.

Never were such great spoils seen before.

The tent of Corbagat was especially large and magnificent.

They returned to Antioch joyous, and well laden.

The Turkes in  
the donjon  
now sur-  
rendered.

Thus in a  
short time  
the Lord  
raised his  
men from  
poverty to  
riches and  
power.

[1 leaf 98]

The power  
of Persia was  
greatly en-  
feebled that  
day.

This good  
adventure  
happened the  
21st day of  
June, 1098.

The turkes whiche were in the dongeon had wel seen that theyr  
peple were vaynquysshid / And had none hope thenne to be  
rescowed ne of no socoure. Therfor anon as the barons were entred  
in the cyte they made them to speke and trete with them. And  
acorded to gydre that they alle shold take theyr wyues and childeren  
and bere with them suche goodes as they had / and rendre and  
gyue ouer the dongeon. The baners of our barons were sette aboue  
on it thenne. The werkes of our lord Ihesu crist ben moche hye  
and merueyllous, ffor fro right grete pouerte, cam oure peple to  
ouer grete rychesses in so short a tyme / It is moche good to affye  
and truste in hym that hath such power and myght. It was mer-  
uayl of the disease & pouerte that our barons had suffred / The  
valyaunt Duc godefroy was brought to this poynt at the day  
of the batayl <sup>1</sup>that he had not wheron to ryde / But he must  
praye and requyre moche swetly therle of tholouse / whiche re-  
meuyd not oute of the toun, that he wold leue to hym an hors /  
but he had grete payne to gete it, he had despended alle his hauoyr  
and good entierly for to susteyne the pour gentilmen, in suche wyse  
that he had nothyng hym self. There were many knyghtes that  
rychely were come in to the hooste atte begynnyng, that were  
brought to so grete pouerte that this day they rode on asses and on  
pour mares. And many hye men as knyghtes valyaunt and hardy  
myght not cheuysshe for to ryde, but wente afoot emong the foote  
men, where they helde moche wel theyr place / ffor they mayntened  
and taught the mene peple how they myght doo to theyr enemyes  
grettest dompage. The power of perse was moche affebled this  
day. For ther wer so many slayn and deed that alle therthe  
ther aboute was couerd. The nombre of them that were slayn was  
neuer verytably / knowen / Moche was chaunged the state of our  
men. ffor he that in the mornyg<sup>1</sup> yssued oute alle poure in suche  
wyse that he had not for to ete / At euen he entred in to the cyte  
ryche of good and of vitaylles / in suche wyse as he myght haue  
holden a grete court and compagne. This good aduenture whiche  
honoured alle cristiente / and specially the Royamme of ffrance  
happed the yere of thyncarnation of oure lord .M./lxxxviiij / the  
.xxi / day of the moneth of Iuyn /

Of the fayre ordenaunces that oure peple made in the  
chirches of Anthyoche. And in other townes  
by / after this vycторыe. Capitulo Cxliiij<sup>o</sup>.

- 4 s Yth that the barons were retorned fro the bataylle / and the  
thynges of the Cyte were wel ordeyned. By the counseyl of  
the valyaunt bisshop of puy, and by the prelates that were in the  
hoost was acorded by them alle, that the chirches of the toun were  
8 entierly made clene, And ordeyned to doo the seruyse of oure lord  
God. And specially the chyef cathedrale chirche / whiche is  
founded in thonour of seynt Peter. They establysshed therin  
clerkes and curates that shold serue in the chirche. And other to  
12 gouerne and kepe the holy places clene / ffor the false and vntrew  
sarasyns<sup>1</sup> had defowled them. They had sette in the chirches  
somme theyr kyen. Oxen and sheep. And other theyr horses and  
asses / The comyn wymmen and euylle knaues had made theyr  
16 ordure and fylthe in them that it was pyte to see / And also they  
defowled thymages of Ihesu. Crist, of our lady, <sup>2</sup>and of other  
sayntes with fylth, myre and ordure / And lyke as they had ben a  
lyue, they had drawe them and cut of theyr noses / and pycked  
20 out theyr eyen / The barons and alle the pylgryms acorde that  
there shold be ordeyned and establyssyd rentes to the clerkes  
that shold serue in the chirches. there was offerd gold & syluer  
ynowgh for to make crosses & chalyces. And also clothes of  
24 sylk for to make agayn vestementes for men of the chirche, and<sup>3</sup>  
aournementes<sup>4</sup> for aulters. The patriarke of the toun whiche was  
a greek, named Iohan / they ordeyned and sette hym agayn in his  
place with moche more grete honour and solempnyte / The turkes  
28 had caste and put hym out<sup>5</sup> with grete shame, and had don to  
hym many euyllis for the fayth of our sauour Ihesu Criste that  
he helde in the Cytees beyng aboute Anthyoche / Oure men sette  
bisshoppes in the cytees where as none were at that tyme, But in  
32 Anthyoche where as they fonde one / they sette none other til  
afterward that the good man apperceyued that he lytil proufftyed  
there. by cause the latyns vnderstode no grekysshe language, And  
lefte his dygnyte / and wente in to constantynoble, with his good  
36 wyll without any forse or constraunt / Thenne assembled the men  
of the chirche. And they chose and elected for to be patriarke the

The churches  
of Antioch  
were cleaned,  
and put in  
order for  
the Lord's  
service.

The Saracens  
had greatly  
defiled them.

[2 l. 98, bk.]

Rents and  
incomes were  
established  
for the  
priests in  
the churches.

The Greek  
patriarch  
John was  
reinstated,

but after-  
wards he  
resigned this  
position.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* sarasynus.

<sup>3</sup> *Orig.* aud.

<sup>4</sup> *Fr.* aornements, ornaments, decorations.

<sup>5</sup> *Orig.* onte.

Bernard,  
Bishop of  
Tarsus, was  
put in his  
place.

bisshop of Tarse, whiche was named bernard, born at valence. He was comen with the good bysshop of puy / And he had made hym his chappellayn. he was made patriarke / The Seygnorye of the Cyte graunted alle the barons to buymont, lyke as they had promysed and couenaunted, sauf the Erle of tholouse, whiche helde the yate of the brydge / & <sup>1</sup>I wote not how many dayes he had garnyssed it. And in no wyse wold gyue it ouer<sup>1</sup> / But sayde that it was his parte. And by cause that Buymont to fore was called prynce of the peple of his contre. Therfor that name abode to hym and to alle the lordes after hym of the Cyte / and ben alwaye called Prynces of Anthyoche.

Bohemond  
was given the  
seignory of  
the city, and  
called Prince  
of Antioch.

How our peple sente ambassadours to themperour of Constantinople for to somone hym to come and socoure them as he had promysed.

Capitulo C/xlv.

The barons  
sent ambas-  
sadors to the  
Emperor of  
Constanti-  
nople,

He tydynges were thus ordeyned in the cyte as I haue deuysed to you / Thenne was the counseyl taken among the barons that they shold sende to themperour<sup>2</sup> of constantinoble for to somone hym by his fayth, that acordyng to the couenauntes that he had made to them that he shold not tarye, but come in his propre persone for to helpe them, & specially <sup>3</sup>at the siege of Iherusalem to whiche they entended for to goo / <sup>4</sup>yf he wold not / thenne knewe they that he wold not forthon holde his couenauntes<sup>5</sup> that were made with hym<sup>4</sup> / ne kepe them. And for to doo this message they chaas huon le mayne, broder to kyng phelip of ffraunce, and bawdwyn, therle of henawd. Thyse two departed fro thoost for to goo vnto Constantinoble. But in the waye certayn turkes assaylled them / in which medle was lost therle bawdwyn, 28 in suche wyse that neuer after were tydynges herd of hym. Somme sayde that he was slayn there / And other sayde that he was taken

[3 leaf 99]  
to summon  
him to fulfil  
his promise.

Hugh the  
Grent and  
Baldwin of  
Hainault  
were sent on  
this embassy.

<sup>1-1</sup> Fr. *et ne scay quantes tours que illecques avoit garnis, que il ne voult pas rendre*, and I do not know how many towers he had fortified here and that he would not give up. Caxton evidently read *jours* (days) instead of *tours* (towers.)

<sup>2</sup> Orig. themperonr.

<sup>4-4</sup> Caxton has entirely misunderstood his French. *Se il ne vouloit faire, bien sceust il que ilz ne lui vouloient des lors en avant, estre tenus de nulle convenance*, viz. if he would not do it, he might understand that from this time on, they would not consider themselves bound by any agreement that had been made with him.

<sup>5</sup> Orig. conenauntes.

- and ladde in to ferre countrees. But the trouthe of hym was neuer<sup>1</sup>  
 knowen / huon le mayne escaped alle hool with out hurt, and cam  
 vnto constantinoble to themperour, but there he empeyred<sup>2</sup> moche  
 4 his renomnee / ffor he that was of so hye lygnage, And alway had  
 ben in thoost / large / wyse, noble, and a moche valyaunt knyght /  
 had thenne no regarde to them that sent hym / ne wolde not  
 retourne to them agayn, but departed fro themperour and went  
 8 straye in to fraunce / hit was a gretter blame in hym than in a  
 lasse man / whyles the pylgryms soiourned<sup>3</sup> in Anthyoche a mor-  
 talyte and deth sourded and roos emong them so grete, that ther  
 was no day but there were / xxx. or / xl / biers in the chirches /  
 12 It was so grete that euery man awayted presently the deth, there  
 was none that supposed to haue escaped / Thenne happed a grete  
 dommage in thooste, ffor the valyaunt man of grete trouthe and  
 hye counseyl deyde that tyme / Aymart the bisshop of puy. ffor his  
 16 deth was grete sorowe thenne thurgh the toun. he was entered and  
 honorably buried<sup>4</sup> in the chirche of seynt peter / where as the  
 spere that opened the syde of oure lord was founden / he was  
 moche bewaylled as the fader of thoost. After deyde a right  
 20 valyaunt knyght, a trew wyseman and of grete courage, henry  
 dasque, in the castel of torbesel / where he soiourned, and there he  
 deyde and was buried. In the same place / reynard de mollac,<sup>5</sup> a  
 good knyght and of hye lygnage, deyde in Anthyoche; he was  
 24 buried in the porche of seynt peter. Alle the wymmen that were  
 in the toun deyed by this pestylence sauf a fewe / in such wyse  
 that of this lytil peple deyde in a lytil whyle in this toun L. M.  
 men and wymmen. The occasion of this mortalyte was many tymes  
 28 demaunded of the fisiciens & wyse clerkes. The somme sayde that  
 thayer was corromped / The other sayde that the peple had had  
 ouer longe moche anguyssh of hongre & of thirst / And whan they  
 cam therto & plente of vyttalles / they toke therof ouer outrage-  
 32 ously / By whiche they ranne in a grete Infirmyte and sekenes. [¶ 1f. 99, bk.]  
 This shewde they euydently by them that ete but lytil and by  
 mesure / ffor they that so dyde cam lyghtly to conualence and  
 helthe.

Hugh arrived  
safely, but  
injured his  
good reputa-  
tion

by going on  
home to  
France  
instead of  
returning to  
his pilgrim-  
age.

Adhemar of  
Puy died in  
Antioch of  
the plague.

Many other  
noted men  
died, and  
nearly all the  
women.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* ueuer.      <sup>2</sup> *Fr. empira*, impaired, damaged.

<sup>3</sup> *Orig.* soiorned.      <sup>4</sup> *Orig.* buried.

<sup>5</sup> *Fr. Renart de Mellac. Lat. Reinardus de Amesbach.*

How the pylgryms of thoost desired to goo vnto  
Iherusalem for to eschewe the mortalite, & tac-  
complisshe their vowe / ca<sup>o</sup>. Cxlvj<sup>o</sup>

The pilgrims  
beg to go on  
to Jerusalem. t

He pylgryms for teschewe the mortalyte of the toun. & also 4  
for taccomplysshe their pilgremage, began to crye for to goo  
to Iherusalem. ffor therfor were they departed out of theyr

The barons  
call a council  
to discuss the  
matter.

countrees / They moche prayd the barons that they wold make  
them redy. and dylygently lede and conduyte them theder / The 8  
barons that myght not be in reste for theyr requestes / assembled  
and had counseyl on this mater. Somme sayde. that it were good  
that they shold anon go forth toward the holy Cyte / by cause the  
comyn peple desyred it / And also that euery man was bounden by 12  
his vowe so to doo / The other sayde that it was not tyme for to  
goo forth, ffor the brennyng hete was / ouer grete. and the drought  
shold cause that they shold lacke water. The peple shold not  
fynde whete / the horses shold lacke pastures. But counseyll to 16

They decide  
to wait until  
Michaelmas.

tarye and delaye this passage tyl mychelmasse: thenne shold the  
tyme be more attempered and moderat. And duryng the mene  
whyle / men myght do reste theyr horses, and gete newe for them  
that had none and had nede of somme / and also men myght 20  
refresshe them self whiche were wery and seke. To this laste  
counseyll acorded they alle / And<sup>1</sup> therfor it was late or they  
departed. Thenne deuysed the barons that they wold remeue for  
thynfyrmyte of the place / & to goo there, as they myght haue 24  
vytailles better chepe, Buymont descended in to the londe of  
Cylyce. There toke he tarse / Adane, Mamstre, Aunaure. Thyse  
four cytees a fore sayd he garnysshed well with his men, And  
helde entierly alle the countree aboute. The other wente fether 28  
in the countre, and ladde theder theyr horses for to sojourne. there  
were many knyghtes / and men a fote that passed the Ryuer of  
Eufrates for to goo forth at al auenture thurgh the countrees / tyl  
they come to bawdwyn, broder of duc Godeffroye to Rages / whiche 32  
receyued them gladly / And gaf them vytaylles, and made them  
good chere as long as they were there / And atte departyng he gaf  
to them fayre and good yeftes. It was not longe after that it  
happed that one Rodahan, the lord of halappe, had debate and 36  
warre ayenst a baron of his, whiche was Castelayn of a castel named  
Hasart. And <sup>2</sup>ye shal vnderstande for certayn that there was

Bohemond  
ravages the  
land of  
Cilicia, and  
takes four  
cities.

Some of the  
knights visit  
Baldwin at  
Rages.

[<sup>2</sup> leaf 100]

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *pour ce fut tardé le parlement.*

- founden first the playe of dyse(31), and fro thens it cam, and it is  
 named so. This grete man of halappe assembled his peple. And Rodohan,  
 assyged this castel with alle his power / The lord that was within lord of  
 4 sawe wel that he myght not holde it ayenst his lord / And he had Halappe,  
 no turkes for to socoure hym. ne helpe hym / Therfor he spak to on besieges  
 his frende, a crysten man. which was pryue with hym, and sente to Hasart.  
 duc<sup>1</sup> godefroy many grete yeftes. And requyred and prayd hym  
 8 moche affectuously that he wold socoure hym in his nede / ffor he The lord of  
 had desire to be his / and wold be bounden to hym to doo hym Hasart sent  
 grete playsys and seruyses. And sente to hym his sone in hostage to Godfrey  
 for surete / The valyaunt duc, that had a softe herte and debonayr, for aid.  
 12 receyued the loue and thalyaunce of the lord of hasart. he thought  
 wel that it was not ayenst the wylle of our lord for to afeblysshe  
 one of his enemyes for<sup>2</sup> another. Thenne sente he to his brother  
 Bawdwyn to Rages for to sende hym peple ynowe / ffor his purpoos  
 16 & wylle was to reyse the siege to fore this castel for to socoure his  
 frende / Rodahan had holden .vij / dayes longe siege to fore this  
 castel. The Duc godefroy cam by grete iourneyes / the messagers Godfrey sent  
 of the lord of the castel were with hym / ffor they myght not goo to him by  
 20 in to the castel to their lord / ffor it was besieged round about. carrier doves,  
 therfor they toke two douues or culuers / which they had taken & to the effect  
 brought with them for to doo this / that is to saye, they toke that he would  
 lettres and wrote theryn alle theyr entent. And bonde thoo lettres soon be there.  
 24 to the tayles of the douues, and lete them flee / And the douues  
 flewe and cam strait to hasart, fro whens they were, & had ben  
 there nourisshed / they that awayted on them toke them / the lord  
 toke the lettres. and fonde therin how he had alyaunce of the duc /  
 28 his loue and grace. And how he cam for to socoure hym with grete  
 strengthe. he had thenne grete Ioye / and toke to hym grete  
 hardynesse in suche wyse that he hym self yssued out of the yates The besieged  
 with his men largely / And assaylled them of the siege vygorously / took heart,  
 32 whom he had sore doubted not long byfore. and sallied  
 out to attack  
 the besiegers.

The dylygence that duc godeffroy made for to socoure  
 a turke, to whom he had promysed / And how  
 he reysed the siege, beyng to fore his castell.

36

ca. Cxlvij<sup>o</sup><sup>1</sup> Orig. dnc.<sup>2</sup> Fr. *par l'autre* i. e. by another.

n Ow was the duc Godeffroy approuched<sup>t</sup> whan his brother cam  
 with .iii/ M horsmen, noble, valyaunt and<sup>t</sup> hardy men, &  
 [1 lf. 100, bk.] <sup>1</sup>right wel armed. They were but on iourneye fro the castel /  
 Therle Bawdwyn acorded wel to thenterprise of the duc his broder / 4  
 but he sayd wel that Rodohan the lord of halappe had moche grete  
 peple, And that he knewe wel for certayn / Therefore he counseyll<sup>t</sup>  
 hym that he shold sende for the other barons that were abyden in  
 Anthyoche. and praye them as his frendes that they wold addresse 8  
 them taccomplisse this that he had enterprysed / Trough it was  
 that he had<sup>t</sup> moche prayd buymont and<sup>t</sup> therle of thoulouse to fore er  
 he departed, but they had a lytil enuye, by cause the turke had<sup>t</sup>  
 more requyred<sup>t</sup> the duc than any of them. but now whan he had<sup>t</sup> 12  
 sente for them, them thought<sup>2</sup> that they myght not goodly abyde  
 behynde. And ordeyned moche dilygently theyr goyng forth / And<sup>t</sup>  
 wente so ferre that they ouertoke hym / whan they were alle to  
 gydre / they were wel .xxx/ M. men of armes. Rodahan had his 16  
 espyes, by whome he knewe certaynly that thyse men cam vpon  
 hym. he doubted<sup>t</sup> them moche, & he had wel .xl/ M men. but yet  
 he durst not abide them / but departed fro the siege / And retorned  
 to halappe / The duc knewe nothyng that the siege was departed / 20  
 but wente strait toward hasart. There were ynowe in Anthyoche  
 of knyghtes, gentilmen, & other whiche knewe that the valyaunt  
 duc had to doo with men. and<sup>t</sup> departed<sup>t</sup> fro thens, and<sup>3</sup> wente  
 toward hym for to helpe hym. 24

Baldwin  
 agreed to  
 help his  
 brother in  
 this enter-  
 prise,

They sent for  
 the other  
 barons in  
 Antioch.

When Rodo-  
 han heard  
 of this he  
 gave up the  
 siege, and  
 returned to  
 Halappe.

Of somme pylgryms goyng fro Anthyoche toward  
 godeffroy, were disconfyted by the turkes / &  
 rescowed by the duc. ca<sup>o</sup> C/xlviii

a Grete quantite of turkes were embusshed<sup>t</sup> besyde the waye 28  
 where by they shold passe, for to awayte them. whan our  
 peple approuched<sup>t</sup>, as they that toke none hede / the turkes sprang  
 on them sodanly, whiche were many moo than our men were.  
 Somme they slewe / and many moo toke prysonners, and bonde 32  
 them, and retorned to theyr retrace. The tydynges cam to the  
 duc and to the hoost, which were out of their wytte for sorow that  
 they had. Thenne retorned they hastily for to sieue the male-  
 factours. the peple of the countre told them which way they were 36  
 goon / & addressyd them toward<sup>t</sup> thyse turkes / whan they had

Some Turks  
 in ambush  
 attacked the  
 Crusaders on  
 the way to  
 Hasart, and  
 killed many.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. thought.

<sup>3</sup> Orig. aud.



- ouertaken and approuched them, they ran on them with grete herte, and slewe them som of them. And somme they toke prysonners. fewe or none escaped / & <sup>1</sup>delyuerd them that were taken prysoners / the Cristen men whom they had taken. Rodahan was moche endommaged / ffor they were wel .x. M/ turkes of the best and chosen men / whan oure men had don this they toke agayn the waye toward hasart. whan they approuched, the lord of the toun yssued out with thre honderd men on horsbak, And there as he founde<sup>2</sup> the duc / he descended to therthe, and kneled to fore hym, and thanked hym moche / And after alle the other that were there with hym, for the socours that they had don to hym in this nede.
- 12 Thenne swar he to fore them alle / that to thyse barons and to the other Cristen men he shold be euermore trewe and good frende, In suche wyse that he wold to his power pourchace to them the best that he coude, and warne them of theyr harme. he lodged them moch wel and honorably, and made to them grete presentes. On the morn therle bawdwyn retorned vnto Rages / And that other hoost helde theyr waye vnto Anthyoche /

The Crusaders in return attacked the Turks, and avenged their companions.

[<sup>1</sup> leaf 101]

The lord of Hasart was very grateful to the Christians, and swore ever to be their true friend.

- How the Duc alway enforced hym to augmente Cristiente, And of somme fortresses by hym beten and destroyed. ca° Cxlix°

- He Duc Godeffroy knewe well that the pestylence and mortalyte endured yet in Anthyoche / and his broder had moche prayd hym that he wold come and sojourne in his londe vnto August, that the tyme shold be better attempered. he toke with hym a lytil companye of them that were moost suffrable, and cam to torbosel / and to two other castellys / That one named hatap /
- 28 And that other Rauendel. Of thyse lande dyde he entierly his wylle. his brother visyted and sawe hym ofte whyles he abode there / The peple of the countre, and specially men of Relygyon, complayned moche of two hermyens that were bretheren, that one was named Pancrace, and that other conasylls. They had a fortresse in that contre. & were grete & noble men there. But they had no trouthe in them; they receyued the Robbours and theuys that pyllid and defowilled the holy places / the chirches. And dyde moch harme to alle maner of peple. they were enhaunced in so moch pryde, that they toke the presente of the pauyllon that

Godfrey went to Torbesel and Hatap and Raven-dal.

The people of the country complained much of two Armenian brothers.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. founde.

The Duke  
sent fifty men  
to take the  
fortresses  
of these  
Armenians.  
[I If. 101, bk.]

Many of the  
Christians  
visited Bald-  
win at Rages  
at this time.

bawdwyn had sente to his brother to the siege of Anthyoche, And dyde it to be presented to Buymont in theyr name. whan the Duc herde thyse complayntes / he sente .L/ of his men of Armes, and the people of his countre / And dyde doo take the fortresses of 4 thyse <sup>1</sup>two hermyens. And bete and destroyed them to therthe / whyles that the valyaunt duc soiourned in thyse partyes / Many of the peple of the hoost wente to therle bawdwyn to Rages, ffor he dyde them moche good, and refresshyd them wel / and largely 8 departed of his good to them. The way was thenne alle sure and good, Syth that the castel of hasart was alyed entierly with our peple, as ye haue herd.

How the knyghtes of Rages wolde haue betrayed 12  
Bawdwyn theyr lord, And how he was therof  
aduertysed. ca. C.L

The people of S  
Rages were  
much dis-  
pleased at  
these visits.

O moche peple of Cristen men cam to Rages that it despleysyd moche to the Cytezeyns of the toun / And thermyens and 16 latyns discorded in many thynges, ffor withoute faylleoure men wold haue the seynorye. They dyde many ennoyes and vylonyes to theyr hostes within their howses. The Erle hym self, by cause he had so grete plente of men of hys owne countre, he called the 20 fewer and lasse to counseyll of the noble men of the Cyte / By whos helpe he was comen to his hyenesse and noble lordship. They had therof moch grete desdayne within theyr hertes, And repented them<sup>2</sup> of that they had chosen hym & sette hym to be 24 their lor<sup>1</sup> ouer them / ffor they doubted that therle, whiche was so lyberall as he that gaf to euery man / shold on a day take all that they had. Therfor they sente to the admyrals of the turkes, that

They decided  
to kill Bald-  
win.

were theyr neyghbours, that they wold pourchasse gladly by theyr 28 helpe / how therle Bawdwyn shold be slayn, or atte leste put oute and chassed away fro the Cyte, in suche wyse that he shold neuer retorne. The turkmans acorded wel to this werk. This mater was so ferforth that they of Rages toke alle theyr goodes pryuely. And 32 sette it in the howses of theyr acqueynted neyghbours in Cytees and castellys ther about. whyles they spak and aduysed of this treyson / A frende of therle Bawdwyn cam to hym and recounted this fayt al a longe / he merueylled moch therof / And dyde 36 enquyre of this thyng. And founde that it was soo / He knewe wel

A friend,  
however, re-  
vealed the  
plot to him.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig. thein.*

them that had ordeyned this trayson. And by whom it shold be doo. And secretly he sende his men, and toke the Capytayns of this falsenes: he put out theyr eyen of theyr heedes. Other that had not so moche trespaced, he chassed them out of the toun, And toke alle that they had. Somme there were that he lete dwelle stytle in the Cyte, but <sup>1</sup>he toke their good as moche as he myght gete / he had wel by thoccasion of this murder that thyse traytres deuyse<sup>d</sup> 8.xx/M/ besautes, But he departed alle to the pylgryms, that had holpen hym to take the castellys and fortresses, and somme Cytees about Rages / He was moche dradde, and doubted moche of his neyghbours, in suche wyse that none of them durste<sup>2</sup> enterprise ony 12 debate ayenst hym / The grete and hye men of the contre wold gladly haue pourchaced the moyens and maners, for to be deluyerd of hym, yf they had myght /

Baldwin took vigorous action in the matter, by killing or driving away the ring-leaders.  
[<sup>1</sup> leaf 102]

After this he was greatly feared by everybody.

How therle Bawdwyn was in daunger of deth by the  
16 treson of a turk named Balac / Capitulo C.Lj:

i N this Countre was a grete and an hye man, a turk, & was named Balac. he was acqueynted and moche pryue with therle bawdwyn / he was somtyme lord of the Cyte of Sorarge, to 20 fore that our peple cam in to that countre. This turke apperceyue<sup>3</sup> that therle bawdwyn sayde [not] to hym alle his counseyll and secrete, as he was wonte, ne shewde hym so good chere. On a daye he cam to hym / And shewde hym by fayr langage / that he shold come to 24 a fortresse of his. whiche he wold gyue to hym and delyuer, by cause he had no more. and also he wold haue nomoo, as he saide, ffor his loue shold suffyse hym. And he wold sende his wyf & his childeren in to rages for to dwell there vnder hym. by cause as he 28 sayde / that the turkes his neyghbours, & specially they of his lygnage, hated hym moche, & pourchassed alle the harme they myght, for the grete acqueyntaunce that he had with the Cristen men. The Erle thought nothyng but alle wel / And sayd that he 32 wold goo at his requeste to this fortresse at the day appointed bytwene them bothe / Therle cam theder with an honderd horsmen / Balac wente to fore, and as a fals traytre had hyd an honderd of his men, well armed, within the fortresse / whan they were arryued

Balac was lord of Sororge.

He invited Baldwin to visit him at one of his fortresses.

Baldwin accepted, and went on the day appointed with one hundred horsemen.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* dnrste.

<sup>3</sup> Fr. "*le conte Baudoin ne lui disoit mais tant de son conseil.*" Caxton has either exactly reversed the sense of his Fr. original, or else there is an accidental omission of the necessary "not."

But when he arrived Balac invited him to enter with only a few of his men.

[3 lf. 102, bk.]

Baldwin, suspecting treachery, sent up twelve men first. The Turks sprang on them, and made them captives.

Baldwin begged Balac to allow him to ransom his men, but in vain.

He returned sorrowful to Rages.

to fore the fortresse, Balac prayd therle / that he wold come vp on  
 hye and see the place how stronge it was, And that he shold  
 brynge but fewe men with hym, ffor he sayd he had certayn  
 thynges of which<sup>1</sup> he myght take harme / yf they alle entred / The 4  
 good Erle wold haue doon soo, but he had in his company a  
 valyaunt knyght, wel aduysed and a wise man / whiche aduertysed<sup>2</sup>  
 his felaws other knyghtes how it was grete perylle and daunger so  
 to lete hym goo. And they wold not suffre hym, but reteyned<sup>3</sup> 8  
 hym by force / ffor<sup>3</sup> they doubted moche the malyce of this man /  
 in suche wyse that in theyr hertes they had suspicion of treson /  
 The Erle abode by their counseyl / & sente vp .xij. of his men wel  
 armed in to the toure for to see yf ther were ony thyng to doubte / 12  
 he helde hym emong his men. they that wente vp anon apper-  
 ceuyed wel the trayson, ffor the Turkes sprange oute of theyr  
 places where they were hyd. And toke thise .xij. men by force, and  
 desarmed them, and reteyned them bounden handes and feet. whan 16  
 the erle knewe this, he was moche sorouful for his men that he had  
 thus lost. Thenne he drewe hym forth and spak to balac / And  
 moche prayd hym, and coniured hym by the feaulte and oth that  
 he had made to hym, that he wold yelde his men to hym / or atte 20  
 leste sette them at rawnson / and he wold gyue for them as moche  
 as he wold haue.<sup>4</sup> Balac answerd to hym, that he traunaylled for  
 nought / ffor he shold neuer haue none of them / But yf he wold  
 gyue to hym the Cyte of Sororge, whiche had ben his to fore. 24  
 Therle sawe that this fortresse was not lyghtly to be goten, ffor it  
 was ouer stronge, and stode in a strange place, and rychely  
 garnysshyd / And retorned to rages moche anguysshous of the  
 paryll that he had be in, whan he wold by thatycement of this 28  
 felon turk haue goon vp in to the tour, And sorouful he was for  
 them that were taken. he had delyuerd the Cyte of Sororge to  
 kepe vnto a moche wise, valyaunt and good knyght, named Foubert  
 de chartres / this man kept hit with an /C men of Armes, valyaunt 32  
 men / whan he herd saye that his lord had ben thus almost be  
 bytrayed / and how he had lost .xij. men / he was sory, and  
 thought hou he<sup>5</sup> myght helpe them ayenst this fals turk, that had  
 don this feet.<sup>5</sup> It was not longe after that in a nyght he sette a 36

<sup>1</sup> Fr. "*qu'ilz eussent peu dommaigier.*" <sup>2</sup> Orig. aduertysed. <sup>4</sup> Orig. hane.

<sup>5-5</sup> Fr. "*lui aidier contre cellui desloyal Turc qui ce lui avoit fait,*" viz. help him against this false Turk who has done this to him. Caxton has mistaken the past participle *fait* for the substantive *fait*.

- busschement nygh vnto this fortesse, a part of his men. and in the mornynge he with a fewe of his compaignye cam to fore this toure, and toke the proye of beestes. They that were on hye on the  
 4 batayllement sawe that they were but a fewe / And told it to balac and to the other men that were in the fortesse / They toke their horses hastily, and folowed them / for to rescowe that whiche they droof awaye / In suche wyse they exployted that they cam vpon  
 8 thembusschement / They sprange sodanly oute and closed them in / Foubert retorned vpon them, And slewe I wote not how many, but .vj/ he toke a lyue / ffor whom he had incontinent vj of our men, of them that he helde in his fortesse / It was not longe aftir that four  
 12 of the other escaped out of the fortesse and brake theyr prison, whyles theyr kepars slepte. whan balac sawe / that ther were <sup>[1 leaf 103]</sup> 1 nomoo but two, he dyde<sup>2</sup> do smyte of theyr heddes. ffor than forth on therle bawdwyn, that had acqueyntance to dyuerse admyrals  
 16 aboute hym, wold neuer after acqueynte<sup>3</sup> hym more ne truste ony turk / But eschewed theyr compaignes and theyr Amytee. And that he shewde wel sone after, ffor ther was an hye and grete man, a turk, in that contre, named Balduc / of whom I haue spoken to  
 20 fore / whiche sold this Auncyen Cyte, named Samoloc,<sup>4</sup> vnto bawdwyn / And this turk had encouenaunted and promysed that he shold brynge his wyf and childeren within Rages / but he sought<sup>5</sup> fals occasions for to delaye this thyng / On a day he cam  
 24 to bawdwyn, as he was accustomed to doo, And Bawdwyn demaunded hym why he dyde not that he had couenaunted and promysed ; he began to excuse hym by thynges that were not trewe. The Erle toke hym, and Incontinent dyde do smyte of his heed.

Balak came out to attack them.

Foubert took six of the Turks, whom he exchanged for six of our men.

From this time on Baldwin had no more confidence in the Turks.

28 How therle of tholouse toke the cyte of Albane. And there constituted a bisshop /. capitulo CLij<sup>o</sup>

- t He Duc Godeffroy sojourned thus as I haue sayd in the land of torbesel. Therle of tholouse assembled his peple / and toke  
 32 grete plente of pour pilgryms that were there ydle and dyde nought / he wente to a Cyte wel garnysshyd named albane / ij iourneys fro Anthyoche ; he assyged it / And so constreyned them within that they yelded the toun to hym, and he entred therin and helde it /  
 36 And by the moyen therof he had alle the countre about. he thanked

The Earl of Toulouse besieged Albana, until it surrendered to him.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig. dype.*

<sup>3</sup> *Orig. acqneynte.*

<sup>4</sup> *Lat. Samosatium.*

<sup>5</sup> *Orig. songht.*

He gave half  
of this city  
to Peter of  
Narbonne.

Sansadot now  
ransoms his  
children, and  
his brother's  
wife.

Many people  
arrived from  
Germany,  
[2 lf. 108, bk.]  
almost all  
of whom died  
of the pesti-  
lence.

oure lord<sup>t</sup> humbly of thonour that he had gyuen to hym. Thenne  
chasse he a bissshop in the toun, a good wyseman, that was named  
Peter, and born in nerbonne. And he gaf to hym entierly half  
this Cyte. After this he cam in to Anthioche, and was there 4  
sacred<sup>t</sup> by the patriarke bernard. And gaf to hym his entememet<sup>1</sup>  
and made hym Archibissshop. In the company of therle of tholouse  
was a noble knyght and valyaunt named guyllamme. This man  
whan Anthyoche was taken toke by aduenture the wyf of Ancean, 8  
lord<sup>t</sup> of the toun / and two of his neuwes sones of his broder,  
named sansadol, and helde them yet prysoners / But this sansa<sup>t</sup>ol  
gaf to hym for them grete good and rychesse, wherfor he delyuerd  
them, bothe the lady and childeren. In this sayson cam grete plente 12  
of peple out of Duchelande, And arryued atte port seynt Symeon,  
And soiournd within Anthyoche / but the mortalyte endured <sup>2</sup>yet  
in suche wyse that they deyde almost alle. ther escaped but few  
but that they were alle deed in short tyme, ffor this pestylence con- 16  
tinued<sup>t</sup> thre monethes hool vnto thentree of wynter / There were  
deed<sup>t</sup> of knyghtes only .V.C. of the mene peple, noman knewe the  
nombre.

How our peple retorned in to Anthyoche, and toke 20  
counseyl for to goo to Iherusalem, and of this  
that foloweth. ca<sup>o</sup> Cliij<sup>o</sup>

The common  
soldiers grew  
very im-  
patient to go  
to Jerusalem.

Tancred be-  
sieges Mar-  
ran,

t He fyrst day of Nouembre / the barons that were departed<sup>t</sup> for  
the pestelence were alle retourned in to Anthyoche, lyke as 24  
they had promysed / Theyr counseyl<sup>3</sup> and delyberacion was that  
they shold goo and assiege the cyte of mazran,<sup>4</sup> whiche was stronge  
and wel garnysshid / ffor Albare that they had<sup>t</sup> taken, it was not  
but .viij. myle / Noman myght holde lenger theyr comyn peple. all 28  
were desirous to goo to Iherusalem / Atte daye named<sup>t</sup> they were  
alle redy. Therle of tholouse / the duc godeffroye, Eustace his  
broder, Therle of fflaundres, The Duc of Normandye. And Tancre  
cam to the cyte of marran and assieged it / They of the toun were 32  
moch rych / and ful of grete pryde / And specially by cause that  
the same yere at assemblee of them was a scarmоче ayenst oure  
men. of whome they toke somme, and somme slewe in suche wyse  
that they had the better. ffor that cause they preysed the lasse our 36

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *interinement*. <sup>2</sup> *qui lui dona paule*. Lat. "Suscepto ab eodem  
pallii genio factus archiepiscopus." <sup>3</sup> *Orig. connseyl*. <sup>4</sup> Fr. *Marran*.

- pylgryms, They blamed and Iniured our barons, And despyted them  
 and alle thoost / They beyng on the walles / vpon the hyc towres  
 they sette vp crosses and spytte on them in despyt of our fayth.
- 4 and made other shameful thynges for to angre with alle oure peple /  
 The barons were moche wroth / And dyde do crye do assault, &  
 assailed the toun asprely in suche wyse that yf they had had  
 laddres they wolde haue entred in to the Cyte by force / the / ij.
- 8 daye after that they cam theder. The thyrde day cam Buymont /  
 whiche brought men with hym largely, And lodged where as the  
 Cyte was not assieged. Thenne had our men grete despyte of this  
 that they dyde nothyng / And hastely dyde do make engyns and
- 12 reysed them castellys,<sup>1</sup> belfroyes, and slynges to caste stones, and  
 fylled the dyches for to goo and vnder myne the walles. they within  
 defended them moche wel / And threwe vpon them grete stones,  
 Fyre, brent / lyme, Oyle boyllyng, and shotte at them with arba-
- 16 lasters and bowe turquoyes arowes passyng thycke / but god be  
 thanked they hurted <sup>2</sup>but fewe of oure men. they within began  
 moche to be mery / Oure men apperceyued that. And theyr  
 volente and hardenesse grewe and encreaced, anon they dressed
- 20 the laddres ayenst the walles / & wente vp dylygently / Emong alle  
 other ther was a noble & valyaunt man, & was of limosyn, named  
 geffrey de tours ; he <sup>3</sup>mayntened the fyrst tyme merueylously well /  
 Other folowed hym. ther were ynowe that entred in to the toures /
- 24 they had taken the Cyte yf the nyght had not come on and  
 destroubled them, therfore they left of til on the morn, ffor that  
 assault had endured fro the sonne rysyng tyl that tyme / they kept  
 wel the gates that thay of the toun shold not yssue and made good
- 28 watche in thooste. But the mene peple sawe that none shewde  
 hym vpon the walles / And entred in to the toun, And fonde that  
 it was all voyde of peple / they toke alle that they wolde and had  
 nede of, as they that longe had saffred famyne and grete pouerte.
- 32 Alle thay of the Cyte were entred in to longe caues and depe, and  
 supposed to haue saued and kept them there. On the morn the  
 barons sawe that the cyte was taken, And entred in, but they  
 founde but lytil gayne, ffor the comyn peple had takyn suche as
- 36 they founde / they knewe wel that the turkes of the toun were hyd  
 vnder the erthe ; they sette fyre in the mowthes of<sup>4</sup> alle the caues /  
 and sente in to it so moche smoke / that by force they muste come

whose people  
insulted our  
men from the  
walls.

The barons  
were much  
wroth.

Bohemond  
arrived, and

the siege was  
carried on  
most vigor-  
ously.

[\* leaf 104]

When the  
pilgrims  
entered the  
town they  
found that  
the people  
had fled to  
caves.

They set fire  
to the mouths  
of these caves.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *berfroiz*, movable tower of wood.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *se contint*, conducted himself.

<sup>4</sup> Orig. cf.

Many they  
slew, and the  
rest were  
taken prison-  
ers.

out. Oure men slewe ynough of them. And the remenaunt they  
toke prysonners. there deyde of sekenesse the good man holy and  
relygyous, whiche moche louyd and dredde our lord god<sup>¶</sup>, Guyl-  
laumme the bisshop of Orenge / whan the duc had abyden there 4  
.xv dayes with the other he departed with therle of fflaundes and  
cam in to Anthyoche, where they had to do /

How the duc Godeffroy wold goo to rages to vysyte  
his brother er he began his way to Iherusalem / 8  
And of somme of his aduentures / ca<sup>o</sup> CLiiij.

Godfrey ad-  
monished the  
barons to  
start for Je-  
rusalem.

He himself  
went to Rages  
to visit Bald-  
win.

[<sup>s</sup> If. 104, bk.]

g Odeffroy the valyaunt duc of Loreyne sawe how the men a  
fote made them redy for taccomplysshe theyr vowe and goo  
toward Iherusalem, and moche requyred<sup>1</sup> and admonested the 12  
grete lordes to the same / But the valyaunt duc would see and  
vysyte his brother to fore that he shold separate fro this countre /  
And toke his pryue<sup>2</sup> companye, and wente to Rages. whan he had<sup>¶</sup>  
seen his broder, and doo suche thynges as it plesyth hym / he wold 16  
retorne to <sup>3</sup>Anthyoche to the other barons and other pylgryms that  
abode there for hym. whan he was approuched<sup>¶</sup>, that he had but six  
or seuen myle to ryde / they founde in theyr waye a moche fayre  
place for to dyne and ete in by a fayre welle, moche delectable and 20  
ful of grete herbes and grasse / Alle they acorded gladly for to dyne  
in this fayre place. whyles they made redy theyr dyner be ye  
certayn that oute of moche reed<sup>¶</sup> whiche was nyghe a mareys by  
aroos certayn Turkes wel armed<sup>¶</sup>. whan the noble Duc and the 24  
other barons sawe them come / they toke theyr Armes hastely as  
they myght / And toke theyr horses and ran vpon them vygor-  
ously. And there was the skarmoche grete & fiers. The duc dyde  
moche wel and valyauntly, ther were many turkes slayn / And the 28  
remenaunt fledde. Our men lost there nothyng, But cam with  
moche grete ioye vnto Anthyoche /

On the way  
honne he had  
a fierce skir-  
mish with  
some Turks,

in which he  
was victori-  
ous.

How after that the cyte of Albare was conquerd, a  
grete debate arose bytwene<sup>4</sup> therle of tholouse 32  
and buymont. ca<sup>o</sup> CLv.

Bohemond  
and the Earl  
of Toulouse

o F this noble Cyte of Albare which was taken as I haue sayd  
to fore, aroos a grete debate bytwene buymont and the erle of

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* requyred<sup>¶</sup>.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* pryne.

<sup>4</sup> *Orig.* btywene.



- tholouse, ffor therle wold haue alle-albare. buymont sayde he wold not gyue away his part / yf he yelded not and gaf ouer certeyn towres that he held in Anthyoche. And herupon buymont departed,
- 4 And made the towres to be assayed, that the men of the erles of tholouse helde, and toke them by strength and made them to goo out that kept them in the name of therle, and fro then forthon he helde alle Anthyoche withoute felaw or partener. Therle sawe that
- 8 Buymont was departed fro the Cyte so conquerd / And gaf the toun<sup>1</sup> entierly to the bisshop of Albare, whyles they ordeyned and<sup>2</sup> disposed bytwene hym and the bisshop, how the cyte myght be mayntened and kept in suche wyse that the turkes shold not
- 12 recouer it / The peple a foote began to murmure of this that the hye & noble men taryed for to take this euyl Cytees, and made debate and noyse among them for theyr conquest. But the pryncipal<sup>3</sup> cause wherfor they departed fro theyr countrees lefte they, as
- 16 forgetyng<sup>4</sup> and settyng not therby / And as it semed they sette nothyng by thaccomplysshynge of theyr vowe / Therfor the mene peple acorde<sup>5</sup> emonge them self, that as sone as therle of tholouse shold be departed fro the Cyte of marran they shold confounde<sup>6</sup> and
- 20 destroye it alle vnto the erthe, in suche wyse that they wold not tarye for hym<sup>6</sup> fro than forthon. It happed that the barons assembled at Rouge, a Cyte whiche is half waye bytwene marran and Anthyoche. ffor to haue a counseyl there emonge them / yf they
- 24 shold fro thens drawe forth toward to Iherusalem, ffor the mene peple languysshid moche and hasted for to goo theder. There the barons coude not acorde / so that there was no conclusion taken / whyles that therle of tholouse abode at this parlement, The foote
- 28 men that were lefte at marran, ayenst the wyll and deffence of the bisshop / bete down the walles and toures of the Cyte of Marran / ffor they wold not for thoccasion of this toun<sup>7</sup> abide lenger in this countre.<sup>8</sup> whan the erle retorned; he was moche angry of this /
- 32 that they had don, but for that he coude not amende it<sup>9</sup> / he couerd well his courage without forth. The men a foote began alway to crye and requyre moche the barons that they wold conduyte them for taccomplysse theyr pylgremage / or yf they wold not / they
- 36 wold chese a knyght and make hym Capytayn ouer them / And

had a quarrel  
over the city  
of Albare.

Albare was  
finally given  
to the bishop  
of the city.

The people  
still murmur-  
ed against  
the barons

for not ful-  
filling their  
vows.

[<sup>5</sup> leaf 105]

The barons  
assembled to  
take counsel  
as to future  
movements,

but no de-  
cision was  
reached.

The people  
grew still  
more uneasy.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig. tonn.*

<sup>2</sup> *Orig. aud.*

<sup>3</sup> *Orig. pryucipal.*

<sup>4</sup> *Orig. confonnde.*

<sup>6</sup> *Orig. hyin.*

<sup>7</sup> *Orig. tonn.*

<sup>8</sup> *Orig. conntre.*

<sup>9</sup> *Fr. bien couvrit son courage, par dehors*, i. e. he dissimulated perfectly his real feelings.

They suffered greatly from hunger at this time.

Enjorran, son of Hugh of St. Paul, died.

they shold folowe hym vnto the-Cyte of Iherusalem / On that other syde was grete scarsete in thoost of vytaylles, in such wyse that the poure peple dayde for longer / Men sayde that many of them ete flesshe of men and other thynges that were not fayr ne good, clene / 4 ne honeste for to ete / herof sourded a grete mortalyte / ffor they had holden siege about this Cyte of Marran with suche meschyef of famyne that they had lost moche of theyr peple, and not so many by armes, but by mesease that they suffred. Ther deyde a 8 noch noble, valyaunt yonge man, Emorran,<sup>1</sup> sone of huon, Erle of seynt poul of a sekenesse / of whom was grete domnage, and moech was bewaylled in thoost.

How atte request of the comyn peple the erle of 12  
tholouse ordeyned day for to conduyte them /  
ca. CLvj.

The Earl of Toulouse was much distressed at the condition of things,

o F thyse Inconuenientes that ran in thoost of the pylgryms the vigorous and valyaunt erle of tholouse was in moech grete 16 anguysshe / ffor he wyste not wel what he myght doo. On that one syde he had pyte and grete sorowe of the meseases that he sawe the poure peple suffre / And was moche meuyd by theyr requestes whan they so swetly prayd hym and the other barons to 20 lede them for taccomplysshe theyr vowes & pylgremage. On that

[2 If. 105, bk.]

2 other syde he had wel vnderstonden that the barons acorded not to this that the comyn peple requyred. And therfor he that was of grete courage and valyaunt man, sayde that he wold no longre 24 suffre thus the pour peple languysshe ne deye. And ordeyned to them a daye that he wolde departe withoute faylle for to goo strait vnto Iherusalem / And that shold be the / xv / day folowyng, And for talledge the mesease of famyne / he toke with hym a part 28 of his knyghtes and of foote men the strengest and most delyuer, And lefte the remnaunt in the Cyte, and went forth and entred in to the londe of his enemyes and brake vp tounes, stronge howses / & brought grete plente of beestys & other vytaylles, & brought also 32 esclaves men and wymmen. whan he cam to Marran / he departed all the gayn that he had goten as wel to them that abode as to them that he had with hym / in suche wyse that they all were ryche<sup>3</sup> of goodes and of vytaylles / The daye began tapproche that therle 36 had named / The comyn peple cryed fast for the departyng / And sayd alle playnly that he shold haue no longer respyte of them. he

and fixed a day to depart for Jerusalem.

As the day approached the common people were determined to depart.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. Enjorran.

<sup>3</sup> Orig. ryhe.

- wist not what to doo / ffor he knewe certaynly that the peple<sup>1</sup> had right. But he had but a lytil company on horsbak, therfore he requyred the bisshop of Albare to goo with hym / he graunted it 4 to him gladly. And lefte his londe in the haude of Guyllamme de cūnylly, valyaunt, wyse, and trewe knyght, And delyuerd to hym but xxx horsmen and / xl. men afote. But it was not longe after, that the good knyght amended soo that he had xl on horsbak and 8 lxxx / a foote / whan the day cam that was appoynted, therle put fyre in the Cyte of marran and brente it alle to ashes. And after toke his way. he had in his companye aboute a .x.M. men, of whom there were not but / iij / C. on horsbak. whan he was de- 12 parted the duc of normandy & tancre departed after, & abode for to goo with hym. Eche of thyse two had but .xl / men on horsebak But<sup>2</sup> they had moche peple afote with them / In theyr waye they fonde plenty of vytaylles, ffor they passed by Cezaire / by haman, 16 and by chamele / Of the lordes of thyse townes had they grete yeftes gold / syluer and other rychesses, they presented to them : Oxen, Kyen, Motons and other vytaylles / They dyde them haue resonable cheep of alle thynges / eche of them conduyted them 20 surely thorough his countre. And where as they had power / Thoost encreced and grewe more and more fro day to day / ffor they founde many good passages oueral where they wente, of horses also wherof they had grete nede fonde they grete cheep / in such wise that many 24 <sup>3</sup>bought fressh horses / And so moche dyde thyse to fore that the other barons cam, that dyde so moche that they had in theyr companye a / M men wel horsed, they cam thus a ferre fro the see syde. But after they acorded that they wold drawe them to the 28 see syde, for to here more lyghtly<sup>4</sup> tydynges of the Barons that were abyden in Anthyoche / and for to fynde the better and bye theyr necessityes at the shippes that were in the hauenes and portes.

The Earl felt that the people were right;

so he burnt Marran to ashes, and started with 10,000 men.

The Duke of Normandy and Tancred accompanied him.

They received great gifts from the cities that they passed.

[<sup>3</sup> leaf 106]

The army increased every day, and went towards the sea.

How therle of tholouse auengyd hym of somme turkes

32 robbours that robbed his hoost / ca<sup>o</sup>. CLvij<sup>o</sup>.

- i N alle the waye syth they departed fro Marran they were wel comen in peas and saute, sauf only of one thyng / that is to wete that somtyme turkes theuys cam after thoost and slewe somme 36 of our peple, and toke the feble and seke that abode behynde the other / Therle was moche wroth of this Inconuenyent, therfor he

They were harassed by Turkish thieves.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *avait droit*, were in the right of it.    <sup>2</sup> Orig. Bnt.    <sup>4</sup> Orig. lygtyly.

The Earl and the bishop of Albare lay in ambush for these men,

and won great spoils from them.

Every one sent them presents,

except the lord of one castle,

which our men attacked and burnt to the ground.

[<sup>1</sup> If. 106, bk.]

After this they had greater presents, and an easy passage through the whole country.

made the other<sup>1</sup> to goo to fore. And he and the bisshop of Albare reteyned a fewe men wel horsed, embusshed them behynde the hoost for to see yf they wold come that thus endommaged the hoost. whan they had a litil whyle taryed the turkes cam & 4 sprang vpon somme of oure men / whiche al wyllonge made semblaunt that they myght not goo. Therle sawe them / and sprange sodenly on them out of his embusshement / & smote of alle theyr heedes / sauf somme that he ladde with hym. There wan he good 8 horses and armures many / And after he cam agayn in to thooste with grete ioye / ffor this daye forth they wente thurgh<sup>2</sup> the londe moche surely without ony lack of vytaylles, <sup>3</sup>of Cytees and of castellys on both sydes whan they passed. Ther was no lord, but 12 he sente<sup>3</sup> to them grete yeftes, ffor to gete theyr loue, and dyde them haue resonable cheep of vytaylles oueral / Reserved one castel, where the men that were therin trusted ouermoch<sup>4</sup> in theyr fortress. Therfor they sente to them neuer presente ne message / 16 But descendid alle Armed ayenst oure men for to deffende them a passage. But our men, whan they sawe them, assaylled them vygorously, in suche wyse that they were anone disconfyted. There were but fewe but they were alle slayn or taken. whan the barons 20 sawe that they were rebelle ayenst them / anon they wente in to the fortresse and toke it alle at the fyrst comyng, smote down the walles vnto therthe, And the howses they brente, after they had [<sup>5</sup> If. 106, bk.] taken out all that they fynde therein. They ledde away horses 24 ynow whiche they founde<sup>6</sup> in the pastures. among our men were dyuerse messagers of the contre that the grete lordes and men ther aboutes had sente for to see theyr couyne, whiche whan they sawe that oure barons dyde thus<sup>7</sup> theyr wylle / And that nothyng 28 myght resiste them, they wente to theyr lordes, And told them that they were ouer cruel and fiers peple / aspre and hardy. Thenne shold ye haue seen brought, And presented to oure men grete presentes and honorable, and vytaylles as for nought fro alle 32 partes / In so moche they doubted them / <sup>8</sup>that they dyde grete cure for tacqueynte them,<sup>8</sup> and to bryng them in to theyr loue /

<sup>1</sup> Orig. othrr.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. thnrgh.

<sup>3-3</sup> Fr. *des cités et des chasteaulx à destre et à senestre, quant ilz passoient n'y eut oncques nul seigneur qu'il envoyast*, there was not a single lord of the cities and castles, both on the right and on the left, who, as they passed, did not send them, etc. <sup>4</sup> Orig. ouermoch. <sup>6</sup> Orig. fonude. <sup>7</sup> Orig. thns.

<sup>8-8</sup> Fr. *ilz mettoient grant cure à les accointier*, they took great pains to make their acquaintance.

It was not longe but they passed alle the contre til they cam to the playnes of an Auncyent cyte by the see syde, named archys, they lodged nygh by the toun.

They arrived  
at Archis.

4 How therle of tholouse approuched with his host vnto archis, And of the situacion of the same.

ca<sup>o</sup> CLviiij<sup>o</sup>

- a Rhys<sup>1</sup> is a Cyte of the lande of Fenyce,<sup>2</sup> and standeth  
 8 atte foote of a montayne named Lybane, in a tereitorye moche stronge / and is a four or .v / myle fro the see / & hath moche plenteuous londe aboute it, and delectable of pastures & of waters. The scriptures saye / that it was founded<sup>3</sup> moche auncyently. For  
 12 Noe that was in the arke had .iiij / sones, that one of them was named Caym (32) / he had a sone named Canaham / Of hym cam a sone that was Arracheus / he founded / this cyte. And after hym this cyte was named Archys. Ther were prissonners of oure men in this  
 16 toun. hit was sente worde by the prysonners to therle of tholouse that he shold assiege this cyte, & also to the other barons / ffor they shold haue grete good therby. the cite of tript, which was moch noble & rych, was but vj myle from thes, there were  
 20 also of our peple prysonners / For syth the begynnyng of the sieg of Anthyoche, and after that it was gotten / our peple began to reune in the ctree nycely & folylly for to feche somme vytaylles & other necessitees<sup>4</sup> that they lacked / they were taken in many  
 24 places in such wyse / ther was vnneth cyte ne castel in the contre, but ther were therein som of our pylgryms prysoners.<sup>5</sup> In the cyte of trypple were moo than / ij / C. They them self had sente to oure men that yf they wolde make semblaunt to conquere<sup>6</sup> the  
 28 countree / The kynge of tripple wold gyue them grete hauoyr and good for to departe <sup>7</sup>thens, and shold delyuer to them alle theyr prysonners. It happed thes to them thus that our peple approuched the cyte of archis for to see what semblaunt they wold  
 32 make, & also for tabyde the other barons that shortly shold come and folowe them /

Archis is an  
ancient city  
of Phoenicia,

named after  
one of the  
descendants  
of Noah.

Many Christian  
prisoners  
were in this  
city,

also in the  
neighbouring  
city of Triple.

[7 leaf 167]

Our men  
approached to  
see how they  
could free  
their fellow  
pilgrims.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* Rhys.    <sup>2</sup> *Fr.* Fenice, Lat. Phoenicia.    <sup>3</sup> *Orig.* fonnded.

<sup>4</sup> *Orig.* uecessitees.    <sup>5</sup> *Orig.* prysouers.    <sup>6</sup> *Orig.* couquere.

Of a toun named<sup>1</sup> tortuose, whiche Raymont toke with  
a Rowte of pylgryms, And of the departynge of  
the other barons fro Anthyoche / Capitulo CLix<sup>o</sup>

t Her yssued out of our lodgys of oure men / an honderd men on 4  
horsbak, and two honderd a foote / And made theyr Capytayne  
Raymont pelet, whiche was a wyseman and a moche valyaunt knyght.  
They wente to fore a cyte whiche was named tortuose,<sup>2</sup> for to see yf  
they myght fynde ony auenture for to gete som gayne / They ap- 8  
prouched the cyte and began tassayle it vygorously and moche  
sharply / They within deffended them, bothe men and wymmen  
valiauntly, <sup>3</sup>but our men left but litil or nought.<sup>3</sup> the nyght cam on  
them, And they left thassault for to be more fressh<sup>4</sup> on the morn / 12  
And abode for more compagne of thooste that shold folowe them /  
And to begyn on the morn thassault agayn / They of the toun had  
moch grete drede that our men wold assaille them agayn on the morn,  
and myght not<sup>5</sup> resiste them. therfor in the nyght they wente 16  
pryuely out of the toun and wente to the montaines, and caryed  
nothyng with them but theyr wyues and childeren. Alle theyr  
other geer they lefte in the toun / Oure men that knewe no thyng  
herof aroos erly and began to make redy and encorage eche other to 20  
doo wel at thassault. they approched the walles alle armed, and  
they herde noman / they entred in to the toun, and opened the  
yates in such wyse that alle entred. thenne sawe they that they of  
the toun were yssued and goon. they founde the Cyte ful of goodes, 24  
in so moche that they were alle ryche, they trussed all / and bare as  
moche as they myght in to thoost, & recounted theyr aduenture, of  
whiche they were alle glad and ioyous, and thanked our lord. whan  
the moneth of Marche was come, and that the season was more 28  
attemperat, the people that was left in Anthyoche sawe that it  
was tyme to departe / they spak to duc godeffroye & to therle of  
fflaundres, & prayed them moche affectuously that they wold enter-  
pryse & conducte them to Ihrlm for taccomplysshe their pilgre- 32  
mage / the goyng forth of therle of tholouse, the duc of normandye /  
& Tancre, caused them moche to haue the wyll forth, <sup>6</sup>ffor they  
were goon to fore, and ledde with them grete nombre of pylgryms /  
And they happened wel in the waye, and had therby grete prouffyte 36

Raymond  
Pelet assailed  
the city of  
Tortuose,

which was  
vigorously  
defended  
during the  
day:

but at night  
the inhabit-  
ants left  
secretly, and  
fled to the  
mountains.

Our men  
entered the  
next day,  
and found  
great riches.

The pilgrims  
in Antioch  
start in March  
for Jerusa-  
lem, led by  
Godfrey and  
the Earl of  
Flanders.

[<sup>c</sup> If. 107, bk.]

<sup>1</sup> Orig. named.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. Tortouze.

<sup>3-5</sup> Fr. "*telement que nos gens ne forfirent rien ou pou.*"

<sup>4</sup> Orig. feesh.

<sup>6</sup> Orig. uot.

- and grete honour. By thyse wordes were the barons gretely stered  
 and meuyd / They ordeyned theyr affayres dyligently, and toke alle  
 theyr peple, as wel on horsbak as a foote, and wente so fer forth that  
 4 they cam to the lyche of surrye / They were / xxv. M / men all in They were  
25,000 men,  
all well  
armed.  
 poynt and armed, eueryche after that he was / The good man and  
 valyaunt knyght buymont conueyed them theder with his men.  
 But it was not theyr entente ne wyll that he shold goo any ferther,  
 8 ffor the cyte of anthyoche was newly conquerd, and theyr enemyes  
 were fast by / Therfor it behoued hym not to withdrawe hym ferre  
 fro it / but therfor he toke good hede continually daye and nyght /  
 But of his grete courage he had conueyed them theder / And there  
 12 toke his leue, and wepte moche at departyng. he recomaunded them They wept  
much on  
parting with  
Bohemond.  
 to god, & returned agayn to Anthyoche / And the hoost abode there.  
 The lyche is a moche auneynt cyte and noble, & stondest vpon the  
 ryuage of the see / That was the only cyte in surrye of which them- The Lyche is  
the only city  
in Syria  
belonging to  
Constanti-  
nople.  
 16 perour of constantinoble was lord / longe to fore oure men cam  
 theder was comen guyneuers, of whom I spak long to fore that  
 was born at boloyne vpon the see syde. And arrayed at tharse /  
 whyles that bawdwyne, broder of the duc, helde it. he was comen  
 20 to the lyche with his shippe, and supposed to haue taken the toun  
 by force / and folysshly he conteyned hym and assaylled it. They  
 of the toun yssued out lyghtly And toke hym, and yet helde hym Guinimers  
was here held  
in prison ;  
 in pryson whan oure<sup>1</sup> barons cam theder. The Duc knewe that he  
 24 was born in the londe of his fadre / And that he had been in the  
 compaignie of therle Bawdwyne his brother. Therfor he demaunded Duke Godfrey  
demanded his  
release,  
 hym of the grete men of the toun / And prayde them entierly that  
 they wold delyuere them to hym / They durst not gayne saye hym /  
 28 but delyuerd hym and his felawship with his shippe. the Duc com- which was  
granted.  
 maundið hym that he shold goo to the see, and alwaye coosteyeng  
 by the hooste. he dyde it gladly / And saylled forth.

How the duc asseeged Gybelet, and of a trayson by  
 32 whiche he lefted the siege / ca. CLx<sup>o</sup>

- t He hoost departed fro the lyche / whan oure Barons had  
 receyued theyr prysonners. They that were late departed <sup>2</sup>fro [<sup>2</sup> leaf 108]  
 Cylyce, fro Anthyoche, & fro other cytees aboute, were alle comen The pilgrims  
all go to-  
gether to  
Gibeleto.  
 36 and arrayed theder in suche wyse, that alle wente to gydre by the  
 see syde vnto a Cyte named Gybelet, whiche was fro the lyche

<sup>1</sup> *Orig. onre.*

A baillif of  
Egypt was in  
power here,

who tried in  
vain to buy  
off Godfrey  
and his men,

but was more  
successful  
with the Earl  
of Toulouse,  
who took his  
money,

and sent word  
to Godfrey to  
leave Gibelet  
and come to  
him.

Tancred re-  
vealed the  
treachery of  
the Earl of  
Toulouse to  
the pilgrims,

about a / xij. myle / They abode there and assieged the Cyte / A  
baylly of the Calyphe of Egypte <sup>1</sup>helde this Cyte on the see side  
vnder the power of the Calyphe of Egypte<sup>1</sup> / This baylle yssued out  
by sauf conduyt, & spak to duc godefroy, to whom he offred vj. M. <sup>4</sup>  
besauntes, and many grete yestes aboute that for to departe, and  
reyse the siege fro thens. The duc wold in no wyse here thyse  
wordes / but sayde that it were treson and vntrouth, and god for-  
bede that I shold take suche hyre. he thenne departed whan he <sup>8</sup>  
sawe he myght not make his bargayn with the noble duc. After  
he sente his messagers to therle of tholouse, and offred to hym this  
grete somme of moneye / yf he myght fynde<sup>2</sup> the moyen to reyse  
the siege fro this toun. It was sayd that he receyued the moneye / <sup>12</sup>  
and for to make the barons to departe / he founde a lesynge<sup>3</sup> / ffor  
he dyde to be sayd to them, that he was wel acerteined by mes-  
sagers and lettres / that the Soudan of Perse had so moche / angre  
and desdayne of this that Corbagat his conestable had be discon- <sup>16</sup>  
fyt, and so moche peple of his slayn, that he assembled alle his  
power, And cam with grete peple for to fyght, and to destroye them  
alle that he coude fynde of the cristen fayth. Thise tydynges sente  
therle of tholouse by the bisshop of Albare to the duc<sup>4</sup> a fore sayd- <sup>20</sup>  
and to therle of fflaundres, and sente to them his lettres, by whiche  
he prayd them moche swetly and expresly, that they wold leue  
theyr siege and come dylygently to hym, in suche wyse that they  
myght be alle to gydre whan this peple cam. whan the Duc and <sup>24</sup>  
other Barons herde this thyng, they were moche anguysshous and  
meuyd, ffor they supposed certaynly that alle this had be trewe.  
Anon they departed fro gybelet. by the cyte of valerne<sup>5</sup> they  
wente / whiche was aboute the castel of margat. syth they cam to <sup>28</sup>  
marelee / whiche is the first cyte of the londe of fenyce. whan they  
wente toward the northeest, fro thens they cam to the cyte of  
tortuose. There is an Isle / where somtyme was a Cyte / there  
abode the Shippes, theyr nauye. I wote not how many dayes after <sup>32</sup>  
they hasted and cam to fore the Cyte of Archys, Tancre yssued  
oute of thoost and cam ayenst them / And tolde to them alle a  
longe the tromperye and the barat that therle of tholouse had don /

<sup>1</sup>—1 "*tenoit celle cité. Ceste-cy estoit la première cité de la marine sur le pouvoir d'Egypte,*" viz., this was the first city on the sea-coast under the power of Egypt. Caxton has made a "bourdon" here by omitting all between the two *cités*. <sup>2</sup> *Orig.* fyude. <sup>3</sup> *Fr.* mençonge.

<sup>4</sup> *Orig.* dnc.

<sup>5</sup> *Fr.* Valenie.



- They were moche angry / therfore they lodged them a part fro them / that had doo broken theyr syege. The Erle knewe that he had <sup>1</sup>not the loue of the barons that were newe comen, therfor he <sup>who were very angry.</sup> [ f. 108, bk.]  
 4 sente to them messagers / that sayde to them in his name moche fayre wordes / And brought to them grete yeftes / wherfore in short tyme it happed that they were alle repeased and amyable and good frendes to gydre / sauf only Tancre, whiche acorded not with <sup>The Earl finally made his peace with all, except Tancred.</sup>  
 8 hym, but accused hym of many thynges. A fore the comynge of thise laste barons / the peple of therles of tholouse myght nothyng auaylle and prouffyte ayenst the Cyte whiche they had assieged. But now they haue grete hope / that it shold now soon be brought  
 12 to an ende / and accomplysshyd by thayde of them that were newe come / Neuertheles it fyll not so as they supposed, ffor alle the tymes that they contryued by ony engyne for tassaylle the walles <sup>The pilgrims besieged Archis in vain,</sup> alway it fyll contrarye to that they purposed / and they of the toun  
 16 brake all theyr ourages / in suche wyse that they loste their costes and payne. It appered wel that our lord had withdrawen fro them his ayde and his good wyll. They within the toun slewe many of <sup>and lost many valiant men.</sup> them without. There deyde tweyne noble and valyaunt knyghtes.  
 20 That is to wete, Ancean of Ribemont / that alway dyde valyauntly where sommeuer he cam / And potom de baladon, an hye man and wel acqueynted with therle of tholouse. This siege displesyd ouer moche to alle them of thooste. And in especial to the footemen  
 24 whiche haue moche grete desyre tacomplysse theyr vowe to Iherusalem, & also whan the duc was comen they that had ben there to fore / began to withdrawe them fro the werke in suche wyse that euery man dyde nought, ffor it plesyd them wel that therle were  
 28 greued and ennoyed that he myght departe and lede them forth with the other barons.

How thoost murmured of the spere founden in Anthyoche / & of the grete myracle that happed  
 32 in the presence of alle the hoste.

## Capitulo CLXjº

- t Here was renewed a word by whiche the comyn people & / <sup>The people began to talk against the spear found in Antioch.</sup> also somme of the barons whiche <sup>2</sup>began to doubte of the  
 36 spere / that was founden in Anthyoche, lyke as ye haue herde to fore, ffor somme sayde certaynly that it was the very spere that

<sup>2</sup> "which," interpolated by Caxton.

Some believed it to be the true spear that pierced our Lord,

[leaf 109]

others were incredulous.

The man who found it came before the barons,

and asked for the trial by fire.

This man, Peter Bertilmewe, passed the ordeal apparently in safety;

opened the Syde of oure Lord on the crosse / And that was with his precious blood bydewed. And by reuelacion of oure lord had be founden by an holy good man for to recomforte his people whiche had grete necessitye and nede. Other <sup>1</sup>sayde that it was 4 not but fals barat / tromperye and abuse / ffor therle of tholouse had fonden this & contryued / for to meue the peple to drawe and gete syluer of theyr offrynges / And this altercacion was meuyd by a preest named Arnold<sup>2</sup>, chappellayn,<sup>3</sup> and moche acqueynted with 8 the noble duc of normandye. he was wel lettred / but he was not of good lyf. he was ouer malycious and pourchassoure of discordes / As ye shal here afterward in this book.(33) This rumour was grete in thoost, as I haue sayd. The man that had fonde the spere herde 12 the doubte of the peple / And cam to fore the barons moche hardily, And sayd to them in this maner / " Fayr lordes, doubte ye nothyng that this werke hath ben by barat ne by tromperye, For theryn hath be none / But it is comen of god / And certaynly for 16 the comfort of the cristen peple. Seynte andrew appered to me by the wylle of our saueour Ihesu crist, whiche deuysed to me alle the maner, how I haue founden it / And for to shewe to yow / that this that I saye is trouth / I praye you that ye make a grete fyre 20 and merueyllous / And I shal entre in to it / And holde the spere in my hand, and shal passe and goo thurgh hool and sauf." whan they herd this they acorded alle therto. The fyre was made and brennyd lyght, which was greete & merueyllous. And this was on 24 the blessyd good fryday / And it plesed them that this thyng shold be thus preuyd the same day that our lord was smeton to the herte with the same spere / he that thus offred hym self thus, and enterprysed for to preue it was named Peter bertilmewe, <sup>4</sup>clerk / 28 and but litil lettred, after that it coude be vnderstonde without forth,<sup>4</sup> and was a moche symple man / Thenne was alle thooste assembled aboute the fyre / Peter cam forth & kneled down for to recommande hym vnto god / whan he had made his prayer / he 32 toke the spere And entred in to the fyre / And passed thurgh it, and was nothyng on hym perysshed ne hurte that any man coude see or knowe. whan the peple sawe this alle they ranne for to kysse hym / And made to hym moche grete ioye. Of this doubte thenne 36

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *Ernoul*.

<sup>3</sup> Orig. chppellayn.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. "*clerc assez pou lettré, selonc ce que l'en pooit congnoistre par dehors*," viz., an illiterate enough clerk, according to what could be judged by his outward appearance.

they wende veryly that it had be quenched, But yet soured a  
 gretter error and murmur than to fore / ffor it was not longe after,  
 but that this Clerke deyde / thenne sayde somme that by than-  
 4 guysshe of the fyre he toke his deth / And that shold be thoccasion  
 therof. The other sayde that he yssued oute al hool and sauf fro  
 the fyre. But it was the wyll of oure lord syth the trouthe was  
 knowen that he shold deye thus, or peradventure the prees that  
 8 cam vpon hym was so grete whan he <sup>1</sup>yssued out of the fyre / that [ 1f. 109, bk.]  
 he was therby hurte that he deyde / In this maner murmured yet  
 the peple among them. and the  
people still  
murmured.

Of thambassade of Egipte comen with our men in to  
 12 thooste of pylgryms / & of the reuerence that  
 was don to them / ca° / C / lxij°

s Omme messagiers that were sente in to Egypte by our barons  
 atte requeste of them that cam vnto Anthyoche fro the Calyphe  
 16 of Egypte, had he retheyned and holden there by force and barat  
 wel a yere / But now they were retourned, And with them were  
 comen the messagers of the Calyphe / which brought to our barons  
 fro hym wordes moche dyuerse & moche chaunged fro that they had  
 20 sente to them to fore Anthyoche, ffor thenne he sente to them that  
 they shold conteyne them vygorously ayenst the Sowdan of Perse.  
 And they shold haue of hym grete ayde of gold, of syluer, and of  
 vytaylles. Now had he chaunged moche his langage, ffor he sente  
 24 them worde that he thought that he dyde moche grete thyng for  
 them / yf he suffred that the pilgrims myght goo to Iherusalem  
 .ij. C / to gydre / or .iij. C / alle vnarmed. And whan they had  
 made theyr prayers and don theyr pylgremage to retorne sauily  
 28 agayn. whan oure barons herd this, they had herof grete desdayne /  
 And sayde to the messagers, that they shold retorne agayn to theyr  
 lord / and telle hym that by his licence ne leue wold they not goo  
 to Iherusalem vnarmed one after another. But they shold goo  
 32 maugre hym / alle to gydre in bataylles renged / and the baners  
 reysed and desployed / Now I shall say to you why the Calyphe of  
 Egypte was reysen in so grete pryde / whan our men had discom-  
 fyted Corbagat to fore Anthyoche, The power of the Soudan of  
 36 Perse was moche affebled, in such wise that none of his neyghbours  
 doubted hym / ne fered to make warre agaynst hym, ffor he had  
 alwaye the werse. By whiche occasion it happed that a conestable

but soon after  
he died,

and the  
people still  
murmured.

The messen-  
gers into  
Egypt now  
returned,

bringing  
word that  
only 200 or  
300 pilgrims  
at a time,  
and those  
unarmed,  
could go to  
Jerusalem.

The Crusa-  
ders sent  
word back  
that they  
would go  
altogether,  
and in battle  
array.

of the Calyphes of Egypte named Emites<sup>1</sup> / had taken the Cyte of Iherusalem fro the men of the soudan of Perse, whiche had holden it .xxxviii yere. Therefore sawe nowe the Calyphe that he was at his aboue / by the disconfyture that our men had don to Corbagat. 4

The Caliph of Egypt now despised our people.

And had wende that he shold not haue had nede of ony ayde / Therfor he despysed now our peple.

[leaf 110] <sup>2</sup>Of an ambassade fro themperour of constantinoble comen to our pylgryms / & of thanswer to the sayd ambassade / ca Clxiiij<sup>o</sup>

Messengers from Constantinople came, complaining because Bohemond held Antioch contrary to his covenant,

o N that other syde were comen messagers fro themperour of Constantinoble, whiche complayned moche on buymont<sup>3</sup> / and also on the other barons, ffor they sayde that all the barons were becomen his men, And had sworn vpon the holy ewangelyes that alle suche Cytees and Castellys by them conquerd / whiche had be vnder the power of Constantynoble shold be rendred to hym as his owen thurgh out alle the londe / to Iherusalem. Now buymont dyde contrarye this whiche helde Anthyoche / and the other Barons that had gyuen it to hym. Thus spak they of the couenauntes / But they spak not of alle / ffor withoute faylle trouthe it was that they had couenaunted this / but themperour had promysed to them that he shold folowe them with his grete hoost / And shold furnysse to them grete plente of vytaylles by see. he was the fyrst that had broken the couenaunt and promesses, ffor he had not don that one ne that other / And he myght wel haue don it / And therfor they were not bounden to holde his couenauntes made by oure barons, by cause he helde not that he had promysed / ffor the lawe wyll not that a man shal holde couenaunt to hym that holdeth not his. Thus answered the barons to them. And therfor sayde they that the yeste that they made to buymont of the Cyte of Anthyoche ought to be ferme and stable, And so wold they mayntene it to hym and to his heyres for euer / whan the messagers herd this, they moche prayd the barons that they would tarye theyr goyng to Iherusalem til that themperour were comen / ffor they sayde that without faulte he wolde come to fore thentree of Iuyll, And brynge with hym moche grete plente of peple / And yf they wold doo thus moche for hym, he shold conne them grete thanke / And shal gyue to eche of the barons many grete & ryche yestes /

forgetting that the emperor had not kept his part of the bargain.

The barons reminded them of this,

and then the messengers said that the emperor would surely come.

<sup>1</sup> Lat. *Emireius*.

<sup>3</sup> *Orig.* bnymont.

& also shal departe largely to the gentil men & to the footemen.  
 whan our barons herd this they sayde that they wold counseylle  
 them to gydre and drewe them a part. Therle of tholouse acorded  
 4 wel to this that they shold abyde so grete an ayde as was the puy-  
 saunce of themperour / And sayd he supposed<sup>2</sup> certaynly that he  
 shold come / as it was sayd<sup>3</sup>. but the other supposed<sup>4</sup> that he sayd  
 so for to kepe the barons and<sup>5</sup> other men atte siege til the cyte were  
 8 taken / ffor it shold be moche deshonour and fowl for <sup>[11. 110, bk.]</sup> <sup>1</sup>hym to  
 departe fro thens without accomplysshynge<sup>6</sup> that whiche he had<sup>7</sup>  
 enterprised<sup>8</sup>. The other barons<sup>9</sup> acorded<sup>10</sup> nothyng<sup>11</sup> therto, but  
 wolde that they shold goo dylygently assiege the holy cyte of  
 12 Iherusalem for to doo theyr pylgremage & accomplysse thei<sup>12</sup>  
 vowe / For whiche they had<sup>13</sup> suffred<sup>14</sup> so many trauaylles<sup>15</sup> and<sup>16</sup>  
 deseases, For they knewe moche wel the delaye of themperour /  
 and<sup>17</sup> his fayr wordes full of tromperyes and deceytes. Therfor it  
 16 was not theyr oppynyon <sup>4</sup>for to truste any more his couert dissim-  
 lacions<sup>18</sup> / Thus sourded<sup>19</sup> a grete debate bytwene the barons, And<sup>20</sup>  
 myght not acorde / of whiche it happed that he that helde the cyte  
 of trypple whiche had offred to them so moche good by couenaunt  
 20 that they shold departe fro the siege / and goo out of the londe.  
 whan he knewe that the barons were emonge them self in discorde,  
 he wold no more offre to them any thyng / but enterprised<sup>21</sup> so grete  
 hardynes that he wold fyghte ayenst them / The barons acorded  
 24 therto / and lefte the Bisshop of Albare for to kepe the lodgys.  
 And whan they had so doo, they wente so alle in bataylles  
 ordeyned<sup>22</sup> toward trypple / whan they cam there they fonde  
 the lord of the toun and the Cytezeyns out with grete plente of  
 28 men on horsbak and<sup>23</sup> afoote where they had ordeyned they<sup>24</sup>  
 bataylles and abode our peple / whiche they doubted not moche.  
 For they had<sup>25</sup> seen that the Erle of tholouse had<sup>26</sup> holde siege to fore  
 this Cyte, And<sup>27</sup> had<sup>28</sup> no thyng<sup>29</sup> preuayled, wherfor they preyed our  
 32 men moche the lasse than they dyde byfore. But whan oure men  
 approuched<sup>30</sup> so nyghe that they<sup>31</sup> sawe them<sup>32</sup> / anon they ranne on  
 them moche fiersly<sup>33</sup> in suche wyse that they loste anon .vij.C / of  
 theyr men whiche oure men slewe. And<sup>34</sup> of oures were slayn but<sup>35</sup>  
 36 .xiiij. There helde they the feste of ester or pasque, the x day of  
 Apryll.

The barons  
were in doubt  
whether  
to believe  
this or not.

Most of them  
wished to go  
on without  
waiting any  
longer.

A great  
quarrel arose  
about this  
matter.

The barons  
in the mean  
time attack  
Tripplé,

and slew  
seven hun-  
dred of the  
enemy.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. barous.

<sup>3</sup> Orig. tranaylles.

<sup>4-4</sup> Lat. "*ne ejus labyrinthis et ejus ambagibus iterum involuerent.*"

<sup>5</sup> i. e. our men (the Crusaders).

<sup>6</sup> The Turks.

<sup>7</sup> Orig. fiersly.

<sup>8</sup> Orig. bnt.

How the comyn peple complayned them / of this that  
they wente not hastely to Iherusalem.

ca<sup>o</sup>. Clxiiij<sup>o</sup>.

o    Wr barons that had disconfyted thise men / Retourned in to 4  
          theyr lodgys with alle theyr gayne / Thenne recommenced<sup>1</sup>  
          and began agayn the playnte and the clamour moche grete that the  
          peple made by cause they wente not hastely to Iherusalem. all they  
          cryed with hye vois that they shold departe fro the siege / so long 8  
          contynued theyr crye that the valyaunt Duc Godeffrey / Therle  
          of Flaundres, The Duc of Normandye and Tancre sayde that they  
          <sup>[2 leaf 111]</sup> wold doo the requeste of the peple afoote. And thenne recuyll<sup>ed</sup>  
          they theyr tentes and pauyllons, brent theyr lodgys, and departed. 12  
          It displeyd moche therle of tholouse / he prayde them moche affec-  
          tuously to abyde. but it myght not be. ffor they them self that  
          fyrst were comen with hym were very, and anguysshous of the  
          siege, And strait helde they the way toward trypple. whan therle 16  
          of tholouse sawe that he myght none other wise cheuisse ne accom-  
          plysshe his emprise / he wold not abyde there allone, & he had  
          right, But dislodged hym / and folowed the other / whan they were  
          a .v / myle fro trypple / they lodged them. the baylly that helde 20  
          the cyte and the countre about in the name of the Calyphe / sente  
          theder to them his messagers / he had moche ley<sup>d</sup> down his pryde /  
          ffor as I sayd to you to fore / he wende to haue faughten peer to  
          peer / his messagers knewe wel that he was to feble, and that it 24  
          was folye. He thenne desyred and moche requyred that oure men  
          wold take of hym right largely / and goo out of his power. The  
          mater was so demene<sup>d</sup> that he gaf / xv. M. besautes, and delyuerd  
          to them alle the prysonners that he had of our pilgryms. And 28  
          about that he gaf to them grete yettes and ryche presentes, as  
          horses, mulets, Cloth of sylk, and vessel of dyuerse facions. And  
          they promysed to hym that they wold doo none harme to the  
          Cytees that he had and helde / That is to wete, archys, trypple, and 32  
          Ybelyn, ne to their appertenautes. And he hym self sente to them /  
          oxen / Kyen, sheep, and moche grete plente of other vytaylles, to  
          thende that they shold not destroye his londe / Thenne cam in to  
          thoost somme surryens whiche dwelly<sup>d</sup> upon the mount of lybane, 36  
          whiche is nyghe vnto thyse Cytees toward the est moche hye /  
          They were of oure fayth wyse men and trowe, And were come for

The people  
again com-  
plained of the  
delay in going  
to Jerusalem.

The Earl of  
Toulouse was  
displeased  
that the  
other barons  
headed the  
people.

The whole  
army went  
forward, and  
encamped  
before  
Tripple,

whose bailif  
gave them  
15,000 besantes  
and great  
gifts, to leave  
his cities  
unharmd.

Some Chris-  
tian Syrians  
from Mount  
Lebanon now  
came into  
the army.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* recommenced.

to see our barons for to salewe and feste them. The good men of  
 thoost called them, and desyred of them affectuously / that they  
 wold teche them the moost strait way & easiest for to goo to  
 4 Iherusalem. They toke aduys and counseyllled to gydre, and  
 behelde alle thynges that in suche a caas behoued, and cam to our  
 barons, and sayd to them that they counseyllled to holde the waye  
 by the see coste for many reasons / Fyrst, for the surete and com-  
 8 forte of theyr shippes / ffor in the nauye were not only the shippes  
 of guyneuyers that cam fro fflaundres, but ther were shippes of  
 gene / of venyse, of Cypres / of Rhodes, and of other yles of grece /  
 charged with vytaynes and marchaundyses whiche dyde moche grete  
 12 good in thoost. The surryens wente to fore for to conduyte the  
 hoost. the baylly of trypple delyuerd <sup>1</sup> to them also men that knewe  
 wel the countrees and the londe. They passed alle the see syde  
 and the cyte of ybelyn / and lodged vpon a Ryuer that renneth  
 16 there in a place / whiche is named Mans / And for tabyde the feble  
 people that were not comen ne arryued. they soiourned there a day.

These coun-  
 selled our  
 men to take  
 the route  
 along the sea  
 coast.

[ If. 111, bk.]

The army  
 followed this  
 advice, and  
 arrived at  
 Ybelin.

Of the grete dylygence that our men made for to  
 approche to Iherusalem / & of thalyaunces of  
 20 somme turkes made vnto them. Capitulo CLXV:

t He thyrde day they cam to fore the Cyte of Baruth, And  
 lodged them vpon a Ryuer that ran to fore the toun / The  
 baylly of the toun gaf to them grete good, And made do come  
 24 plente of vitayll and good cheep, for to spare the trees & the  
 fruytes of the contre. On the morn cam they to the Cyte of  
 Sayette, there they lodged them vpon a Ryuer therby. he that  
 gouerned and kepte the Cyte wold not doo thyng ne bounte to  
 28 them / I wote not wherin he trusted, but he sente out many of his  
 men for to doo hurte to thoost, and for to atteyne certayn knyghtes  
 which were lodged by for tassaylle them / but our men toke theyr  
 horses and ran on them vygorously / And slewe of them I wote  
 32 not how many. And the other fledde in to the cyte, And had  
 nomore talente to atteyne our peple / in suche wyse that our men  
 rested them in pees that nyght / On the morn for to reste and  
 refresshe the mene peple / they departed not thens / But sente oute  
 36 for fourage many men a foote, and certayn men of Armes to kepe  
 them in to the contre and vyllages about. They brought largely

Three days  
 after they  
 came to  
 Beirut.

The Governor  
 of Sayette  
 attacked our  
 army, and  
 lost many of  
 his men in  
 the skirmish

In foraging  
the knight  
Gautier de  
Vere was lost.

The next day  
the army  
went on, and

encamped  
near a noble  
fountain.

[<sup>5</sup> leaf 112]

At Acres they  
got good  
victuals at a  
reasonable  
price.

They cele-  
brated Pen-  
tecost at  
Cæsarea, and  
went on the  
third of  
June.

<sup>1</sup>vytaylles and horses<sup>1</sup> wyth grete quantite of beestes, grete and  
smale, and cam agayn without lesyng of ony thyng, alle to gydre  
sauf only a knyght<sup>2</sup> named Gautier de ver / he wente by his valy-  
aunce ouer ferre / ffor he retorned neuer agayn, ne neuer was <sup>4</sup>  
knownen where<sup>3</sup> he becam / they were all moch sory for hym in  
thoost / The day aftir passed they by a moche sharp & aspre way,  
& after descended<sup>4</sup> by a destrayt in to a playne. and on the right  
syde they lefte this auneynt Cyte named<sup>5</sup> Sarepte, wherin helyas <sup>8</sup>  
the prophete was in. After they pessed a water whiche is bytwene  
Sur and Sayette. They wente so fer that they cam to this noble<sup>6</sup>  
cyte of Sur. There they lodged<sup>7</sup> them by the noble fontayne, and  
pytte of water lyuyng lyke as scripture sayth. They lodged this <sup>12</sup>  
nyght in gardyns <sup>5</sup>moche delectable. whan it was daye they sette  
them forth on theyr Iourneye. And passed by a <sup>6</sup>strayt moche peryl-  
lous, whiche is bytwene the montaines & the see. They descended  
in to the playnes of the Cyte of Acres there vpon, and<sup>8</sup> by a water <sup>16</sup>  
rennyng<sup>9</sup> they sette vp theyr pauyllons / he that had the charge of  
the toun made them to haue vytaylles at resonable prys, <sup>7</sup>and made  
acqueyntaunces good and honorable in this maner, that yf oure  
people myght<sup>7</sup> take the Cyte of Iherusalem, and dwelle there after <sup>20</sup>  
xx. dayes in the Royamme, in suche wyse that they were not put  
oute of it by force / or yf they myght disconfyte in the felde the  
puyssaunce of egypte / that fro thenne forthon they shold yelde  
and gyue ouer the Cyte of Acres / without makyng of ony resist- <sup>24</sup>  
ence. The pylgryms wente fro thens on the lyft syde / they lefte  
galylee bytwene the mount<sup>8</sup> of Carmely<sup>9</sup> and the see / they cam in  
to Cezaire, whiche is the second Archebisshoprich of the londe of  
palestyne. they lodged them vpon a water that yssueth oute of the <sup>28</sup>  
palus or maryses, whiche ben by the toun. there helde they theyr  
penthecost or wytsonyde / thre dayes after thentre of Iuyn they  
abode there. on the .iiij. day they toke their way. On the right  
side they lefte Iaphe / And by a grete playn and euen waye they <sup>32</sup>  
cam in to the Cyte of Lide, where the bodye of the glorious martir  
seynt george lyeth. In thonoure of whom / Iustynyen, that was

<sup>1-1</sup> Fr. "*victuailles et à hommes et à chevaux.*" <sup>2</sup> Orig. kuyght.

<sup>3</sup> Fr. *qu'il devint*, what became of him. <sup>4</sup> Orig. uoble.

<sup>6</sup> Fr. "*par ungs destroiz moult perilleux*," viz., by a very narrow and dangerous pass.

<sup>7-7</sup> The sense is ruined by Caxton's omissions. Fr. "*et fist accointances bonnes et honorables à noz barons, et aussi fist a eulx teles courtenances que se ilz pouoient*," etc. <sup>8</sup> Orig. monnt. <sup>9</sup> Fr. Carmel.



- Emperour of Rome, made there a moche / fair chirche and ryche /  
 But whan the turkes herde tydynges that our men cam / they bete  
 it doun and brente the tymbre werke, whiche was moche grete /  
 4 For they doubted that oure pilgrims shold take them for to make  
 engyns to caste stones, and castellis to assaile with / thenne herde  
 our barons saye that ther fast by was a moche noble Cyte named  
 Rames. they sente the erle of Flannndres with / v. C / horsmen to  
 8 fore the toun for to knowe what semblaunt they wold make / None  
 yssued out whan they approuched it. they cam ner / and founde  
 the yates open. And entred in to the Cyte. And founde neyther  
 man ne woman. For the nyght to fore they had herd tydynges  
 12 how oure pilgrims cam, & ladde to the montaynes wyues and  
 childeren / and alle their howshold / whan therle knewe herof he  
 sente to the barons how the mater was, and counseyllid them to  
 come in to the toun. they were moche glad of thyse tidynges /  
 16 they made deuoutly theyr prayers at the tombe of seynt George /  
 And after cam in to the Cyte, whiche was al ful of wyne, of whete,  
 of oylle, and of other vytaylles to them necessarye / they abode  
 there .iiii. dayes / they chose ther <sup>1</sup>a bisshop of the cyte / and <sup>2</sup>was  
 20 a normant named Robert, whiche was born in tharchebisshopryche  
 of Roen / They gaf to hym entierly the two Cytees for euermore,  
 that is to wete, Lyde and Rames, and the countree and vyllages  
 about them / ffor they gaf it to honoure god and seynt George for  
 24 the fyrst gayne of the same holy londe.

The Turks  
burnt the  
church of  
Lydia at the  
approach of  
the Chris-  
tians,

who entered  
the city of  
Rames, and  
found it  
deserted.

Here they  
abode thre  
[1 lf. 112, bk.]  
days, and  
chose a  
bishop, to  
whom they  
gave Lydia  
and Rames.

How the Cristen men of bethlehem receyued wel  
 Tancre and his rowte, And sette his baner on the  
 chirche of our lady. Capitulo CLxvj°

- 28 t He turkes beyng in Iherusalem herde wel tydynges of the  
 comyng of our pylgryms / wel knewe they certaynly that alle  
 theyr entencion was to come to the holy cyte, ffor whiche thyng  
 they were pryncipally meuyd and departed fro the countrees.  
 32 whan they herde this they were moche esmeuyd / And sayd that it  
 was reason to deffende it<sup>3</sup> / The Cristen men that were in bethle-

The Turks in  
Jerusalem  
were much  
alarmed on  
hearing of  
the pilgrims'  
approach.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig. aud.*

<sup>3</sup> Here a whole chapter, and part of a second has been omitted by Caxton's French text. This missing chapter gives details about the arming and fortifying of Jerusalem by the Turks, when they heard of the approach of the Crusaders; of the great cruelties inflicted upon the Christians of Jerusalem;

The Christians of Bethlehem offer to deliver that town to the pilgrims.

Tancred and 100 men went to receive it,

and saw the holy places with great joy.

They could hardly sleep this night, so anxious were [1 leaf 118] they to go on to Jerusalem.

hem sente certayn messagers to the barons, & desyred of them that they wold delyuere the toun in to their handes / if they wold sende men to receyue and kepe it. They sayd that it was reson to doo that they requyred. They toke an hunderd men of Armes wel 4 horsed, noble, valyaunt, and hardy, and delyuerd to them Tancre for a Capytayn. They that cam to fetche them conduyted them in such wise that erly in the mornynge they entred in to the toun. Alle they of the Cyte clerkes and laye men receyued them honor- 8 ably and with moche grete ioye with procession brought them in to the chirche whiche standeth in the place, in whiche the gloryouse vyrgyne marye was delyuerd & chylded oure lord Ihesu criste, the saueour of the world. they sawe the crybbe in which was leyde in 12 to reste the swete childe that made heuen & erthe / whan our peple sawe thyse holy places they were moche ioyous, and had grete tendrenes in theyr hertes / The Cyterzeyns of the toun for signe of ioye An<sup>d</sup> for demonstraunce that oure lord and his dere moder 16 oure lady shold gyue to them vycorye, toke the baner of Tancre / and sette it on hye vpon the chirche of oure lady / They that were lefte in thoost had moche grete desyre to see and vysyte the holy places that were nygh by / as it was sayd. ffor for the loue of god, 20 & for to honoure hym were they departed fro theyr countree / and had suffred many annoyes and grete trauaylles. And they myght not slepe this nyght, suche brennyng desire had they forto see the cyte, <sup>1</sup> which shold be thende of their trauaylle and thaccomplysshe- 24 ment of theyr vowe. Them thought longe er the day cam, and them semed that thys nyght was moche longer than the other / ffor<sup>2</sup> to a corageous desire ther is not haste ynowgh.

Of thardaunt desire that the peple had for to see 28 Iherusalem / And how thoost approched and were lodged by ordenaunce. Capitulo C/Lxvij<sup>o</sup>.

The common people of the army could no longer restrain themselves,

s Yth that it was knowen certaynly in the lodgys that the Duc<sup>3</sup> hadde receyued this nyght the messagers of bethlehem, And 32 that he had sente his men in to the toun. The peple afoote abode neuer for leue of the barons / ne myght not suffre til the daye was and, especially, of the taxes laid upon them, which were so heavy that the Patriarch was obliged to go to Cyprus for aid in paying them.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. "*car à courage desirant, ne haste l'en mie asses*," viz., for one can never hasten enough to satisfy a desiring (or eager) heart. <sup>3</sup> *Orig. Dnc.*

- come, but begun to calle alle the nyght for to goo vnto Iherusalem. but started on alone, and unprotected.
- whan they were goon a whyle forth / One of the noble men of thooste named Gaste de bedyers had moche grete pyte of this
- 4 peple that they shold be slayn in the waye. And therfore he toke his hors, and toke .xxx / men of Armes with hym wel horsed, and ordéyned in arraye, And thought that he wolde goo nygh to Iherusalem for to see yf they myght fynde out of the toun beestes and
- 8 other gayne for to take and lede away with hym. Alle thus as he thoughte<sup>1</sup> / it fylle thus in partye, ffor whan he cam nygh<sup>2</sup> the toun he fonde Oxen / & kyen largely in the pastures / and but fewe that kept them. they fledde away whan they sawe our<sup>3</sup> men come
- 12 Gaste and his men began to gadre the beestes to gydre and droof them hastely toward thoost / but the herdmen and kepars of them made a grete crye / In the toun were turkes hardy, and desyryng<sup>4</sup> to doo armes / They armed them dilygently, & ronne hastely after
- 16 for to rescowe the proye / gaste & his men sawe them come, & knewe well that they were not strong ynough for the turkes / therfor they lefte this that they brought, & mounted vpon an hye montayne, therby moche angry of this mesauenture. whan they had
- 20 abyden a whyle vpon this montayne, They behelde in to the valeye / And sawe Tancre come fro bethlehem retornynge to thoost with an / C. men on horsbak. whan Gaste sawe them he smote his hors with his spores & cam to hym / and told hym of his mesauenture
- 24 and moche anguysshous, and sayd that the turkes were not ferre / they ran alle to gydre after them and ouertoke them er they myght come in to the cyte. In theyr comyng they discomfyted the turkes
- <sup>5</sup>that they that myght fledde in to the Cyte / The remenaunt they [<sup>5</sup> If. 113, bk.]
- 28 slewe, And oure men recoueryd theyr proye, And brought it in to thoost with grete ioye / Alle they that were in the lodgys assembled about them. And demaunded of them ententyfly fro whens this proye cam. They answerd that they had take it to fore the yates
- 32 of Iherusalem / whan they herde named the holy Cyte of Iherusalem, and knewe certaynly that it was so nygh / thenne began they tendrely to wepe / And fylle down on theyr knees, and rendred thankynges to oure lord with moche grete syghes, of this that he
- 36 had so moche loued them, and conduyted that they myght see shortly the ende of theyr pylgremage / that is to wete, the holy Cyte of Iherusalem, whiche oure lord so moche louyd, that he wold dye

Gaste de Bediers followed to protect them, and to find booty if possible.

He was vigorously attacked by some Turks.

Tancred, returning from Bethlehen, came to his aid, and discomfited the Turks.

The pilgrims thank the Lord that the end of their pilgrimage is so near.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* thoughte.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* uygh.

<sup>3</sup> *Orig.* our

<sup>4</sup> Fr. "*desirais de faire armes*," eager to fight.

Some went  
far enough to  
see the walls  
of Jerusalem.

All were now  
reconciled to  
their labours  
and trials.

therin for to saue the world. Grete pyte was it to see and<sup>1</sup> here  
the teres & the cryes of this good peple. They departed in this  
same maner. And wente so forth that they sawe the towres and the  
walles of the toun / Thenne lyft they vp theyr handes toward<sup>4</sup>  
heuen and dyd<sup>4</sup> of theyr hosen and<sup>4</sup> shoes, men and<sup>4</sup> wymmen / and<sup>4</sup>  
kyssed<sup>4</sup> therthe / who that had seen this / though he had had an  
herd<sup>4</sup> herte he shold<sup>4</sup> haue be meuyd<sup>4</sup> to pyte. ffro thens ferthon the  
waye greued them nothyng, but they wente moch lyghtly til they <sup>8</sup>  
cam to fore the toun / There they lodged<sup>4</sup> them all aftir thordenaunce  
and deuyse of the barons / whiche delyuerd to them the places.  
Thenne semed verytably that the worde of the holy prophete was  
entierly accomplyssh<sup>4</sup>, whiche sayd<sup>4</sup> longe to fore. "Leua Iheru- <sup>12</sup>  
salem / &c." Aryse vp Iherusalem / and<sup>4</sup> lyft vp thyn eyen, And<sup>4</sup>  
beholde the puissaunce of the kyng thy sauour / which cometh <sup>2</sup>to  
ontbynde the and put the oute of the bonde wherin thou art.<sup>2</sup> O  
lord<sup>4</sup> god, how the hye barons, the knyghtes, the gentylmen of our <sup>16</sup>  
hoost, and<sup>4</sup> alle the other generally, men and wymmen, were recom-  
forted and<sup>4</sup> reconcyled<sup>4</sup> of the grete trauaylles and<sup>4</sup> meseases that they  
had longe endured / whan they founde them to fore the holy Cyte  
of Iherusalem, And<sup>4</sup> how eche of them had<sup>4</sup> good<sup>4</sup> wyll to conteyne <sup>20</sup>  
hym self in this nede and werke.

Of the situation of Iherusalem and descripcion / and  
also of many other cytees, townes, & countrees/  
ther aboute. ca<sup>o</sup> CLxviij<sup>o</sup> 24

The holy city t  
stands be-  
tween two  
mountains.  
[\* leaf 114]

Near by is  
the castle of  
Emmaus.

Routhe it is that the holy Cyte of Iherusalem stondest by-  
twene two montaynes, wherof dauid sayth in the psalter,<sup>3</sup>  
<sup>4</sup>"Fundamenta eius in montibus sanctis" / The fondementes of it  
ben in the holy montaynes / toward<sup>4</sup> the west is the see and<sup>4</sup> the londe <sup>28</sup>  
of the philistees, xxiiij mile vnto port Iaphe / and<sup>4</sup> that in the next  
part of the see / Bytwene bothe is the castel of Emaus, where as  
oure lord<sup>4</sup> after his resurexion appered<sup>4</sup> to two discyples. There is  
modyn the cyte and the fortresse of the machabews. There is the <sup>32</sup>  
place & temple, where abymelech the holy preest gaf to dauid and

<sup>1</sup> Orig. aud.

<sup>2-2</sup> Fr. "*deslier et mettre hors de lien ou tu es*," i. e. to loose thee, and free thee from the bonds in which thou now art.

<sup>3</sup> This Latin quotation was inserted by the French translator; it is not in the original text.

- to his squyres the loues of breed to ete that were offred vpon the  
table of our lord, wherfor saul dyde do slee hym / and the other  
admystryatours of the chyrche and men of the toun / There is lyde  
4 where seynt Peter heeled a lame man named Eneanx,<sup>1</sup> and had  
leyen / viij. yere paralytyk / There is also Iaphe, as I haue sayd,  
where seynt Peter reysed a dede woman named thabyte<sup>2</sup> / There  
was seint peter herberowed in a tanfiers hows, that tanned leder  
8 whan he receyued the message fro Cornelle, whom he baptysed, as  
is sayd in thactes of the apostles. toward the eest is the flome  
Iordan / And the deserte is by yonde where the holy prophetes  
were woont to repayre / There is the vale sauage,<sup>3</sup> whiche is named  
12 the dede see / whiche was a moche fayr and delectable cowntre,  
lyke a paradys, to fore that oure lord made do synke .v. Cytees /  
Sodome and the other / as is sayd in Genesys / On this syde  
Iordan is the cyte of Iherycho, that Iosue wan more by prayer than  
16 by bataylle. Theder wente oure lord Ihesu Criste / and made a  
blynde man to see / There is galgala, where helyzeus the proophete  
dwellyd. Toward the south is the cyte of Bethlehem, where our  
lord was born, and leyde in the crybbe emonge the beestes. There  
20 by is tecua, the cyte where Amos and Abacuc the prophetes were  
born / Toward northeest is Gabao,<sup>4</sup> where atte prayer of Iosue the  
sonne rested, til he had vaynquysshed / the batayll / There is  
Sceirs,<sup>5</sup> where as our lord spak to the woman of Samarye. There  
24 is bethel, where as the peple of Israhel worshipped the calf of god  
ayenst the wylle of oure lord / There is Sebaste, whiche is named  
seynt Iohan de sebaste. There is the sepulchre of seynt Iohan  
baptist / helizeus and Abyas the prophetes were there buryed / It  
28 was sommetye named Samarye.<sup>6</sup> The Cyte of naples is there /  
which somme tyme was named Sychem. And it was there where  
Symeon and leuy, sones of Iacob, for to venge theyr suster, whiche  
had ben enforced, slewe them of the toun / and<sup>7</sup> brente alle  
32 the cyte.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *Aeneas*.<sup>2</sup> Caxton has here omitted a line or two after "*Thabite*." Fr. "*et estoit pleine d'aumosnes et de bonnes oeuvres, et la rendit aux veufves femmes et aux povres gens à qui elle faisoit moult grant bien*,"—Lat. "*Tabitham plenam operibus bonis et elymosynis, defunctam suscitavit, et sanctis ac viduis resignavit vivam*."<sup>3</sup> Fr. *li vauz sauvage*, Lat. *vallem sylvestrem*.<sup>4</sup> Lat. *Gabaon*.<sup>5</sup> Fr. *Sichors*.<sup>6</sup> Caxton has omitted "*pour le mont de Somer qui est illecques encore nomme L'en toute cette terre*," viz., from Mount Somer which is situated here all this country is still named.<sup>7</sup> Orig. aud.Here is Lydia  
where St.  
Paul healed  
Æneas.Here is where  
St. Paul re-  
ceived the  
message from  
Cornelius.On this side  
of Jordan is  
the city of  
Jericho.There is  
Sychar,  
where our  
Lord spake  
to the woman  
of Samaria.There is the  
Sepulchre of  
John the  
Baptist.Here Simeon  
and Levi  
burnt the city  
of Sichem.

How Iherusalem had many names after dyuerse lordes  
 therin <sup>1</sup>rennyng, and yet of the situacion wel at  
 a longe / ca°. Clxix°.

[1 ff. 114, bk.]

Jerusalem is  
 the chief city  
 of Judea.

David im-  
 proved it  
 greatly, and  
 gave it its  
 name.

After the  
 death of  
 Jesus Christ  
 Titus con-  
 quered and  
 destroyed it.

In rebuilding  
 Jerusalem  
 the Holy  
 Sepulchre  
 was brought  
 within the  
 walls.

The city is  
 longer than it  
 is broad.

Iherusalem is the chyef cyte of Iudee / It is withoute medowes <sup>4</sup>  
 and withoute Ryuers, ne no brooke ne welle. It was first  
 called Salem / & after Zebus<sup>2</sup> / After in the tyme what tyme were  
 caste out the Iheruhesees,<sup>3</sup> whan dauid<sup>4</sup> had regned / vii. yere in  
 Ebron / he grewe<sup>4</sup> and amended moche this cyte / And wold that <sup>8</sup>  
 it shold be the chyef and hede place of alle the Royamme / Thenne  
 was it named Iherusalem. To fore that dauid assaylled the toun /  
 he toke the towre of Syon / whiche was named the cyte of Dauid.  
 Thenne made dauid the cyte to be made about the place whiche <sup>12</sup>  
 was named Mellon. Ioab made the remenaunt of the toun / After  
 whan Salamon regned in Iherusalem / It was named Iherosolima,  
 That is to saye, Iherusalem of Salamon. As they seye that made  
 thystories / Aftir the deth of Ihesu criste, Titus the sone of vas- <sup>16</sup>  
 pasian was a moche grete prynce, of Rome, And assieged this cyte  
 with a grete hoost / & toke it by force / and destroyed it, and  
 threwe it down to therthe / Aftir cam Elyus Adrian the fourth  
 Emperour after hym / and called it after his name elye / ffor he <sup>20</sup>  
 reedefyed it moch wel / <sup>5</sup>first it stode in an hangyng of an hylle,<sup>5</sup>  
<sup>6</sup>in suche wyse as toward theest and south it was sette in the  
 roundnesse of the tertre of the mount of Syon,<sup>6</sup> And of another  
 mount named Moria. The temple only and the toure named <sup>24</sup>  
 Anthone<sup>7</sup> was on the toppe of the tertre. But the same Elyus  
 made alle<sup>8</sup> the Cyte to be born and reedefyed right on the toppe or  
 sommet of the tertre, in suche wyse that the place where oure lord  
 was crucyfied / and the holy sepulchre, where his blessid body was <sup>28</sup>  
 leyed in, whiche to fore were without the Cyte, were then enclosed  
 within the walles. The Cyte was not ouer grete, ne ouer lytle. It  
 was more long than brood / hit is on the four quarters enuyronned  
 with depe valeyes, toward the eest is the valeye of Iophat<sup>9</sup> / There <sup>32</sup>  
 stondeth a moche fayr chirche made in thonour of the glorious

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *Jebus*. <sup>3</sup> Fr. *Gebusées*, Lat. *Jebuseo*. <sup>4</sup> Fr. *creut*, i. e. increased.

<sup>5-6</sup> Fr. "*premierement elle estoit assise en un pendant*," at first it was situated on the brow of a hill.

<sup>6-8</sup> Fr. "*si que vers soleil levant et vers midi estoit assise el roiste del monte de Syon*," so that towards the east and south, it was situated on the steep side of mount Zion. <sup>7</sup> Fr. *Antoine*, Lat. *Antonia*.

<sup>8</sup> Fr. *fit porter*, caused the city to be moved.

<sup>9</sup> Fr. *Josaphat*.

- vyrgyne Marye, where it is sayd that she was buried. & ther is shewed yet the sepulchre. Ther vnder is the rennyng water of which seynt Iohn euangelyste sayth / that Ihesu Criste passed /
- 4 Toward the southe is a valeye nameð Ennon, there is the felde that was bought<sup>1</sup> with the pens that Iudas sold oure lord fore, which is made in sepulture of pilgrims / & named acheldemach. toward the weste is a parte of the valeye where as the piscyne<sup>2</sup> is, whiche was
- 8 a grete thyng whan the kynges of Iude were there : and it stratcheth vnto the Cysterne, whiche is called the lake of the Patriarke. By the old Cymetyer whiche is in the caue, named the Lyon, toward the north-eest, may men goo vp playn to the Cyte. There is
- 12 shewed the place where seynt Stephen the prothomarter was stoned of the Iuys, whan he prayd vpon his knees for them, that so pytte hym to deth / And so deyed a very marter.

Here is the sepulchre of the Virgin Mary.

(<sup>2</sup> leaf 118)

Here is the place where Stephen the martyr was stoned by the Jews.

- Here thystorye deuyseth of many merueyllyus edyfyces conteyned in the same Cyte of Iherusalem.
- 16 And who made them. Capitulo Clxx<sup>o</sup>

- s O, as I haue sayd, two montaynes ben enchainet within the walles of Iherusalem, a litil valeye is bytwene them both,
- 20 whiche departed the toun as in the myddle / Syon is toward the weste / on the sommete or toppe thereon stoneth the chirche which is named Syon / And after there is a tour of dauid, whiche is the dongeon of the toun / made of moche stronge werke, walles and
- 24 barbycans there be many that ben aboute the toun.<sup>3</sup> Trouthe it is that to fore oure pylgryms cam in to this holy lande, the place where our lord was crucified, whiche was named caluarye. And there where the very crosse was founden, And where our sauour
- 28 Ihesu Criste was taken doun of the crosse, And enoynted with precious oynementis / & enveloped in whyte linnen cloth, this places were straye as lytil chapellys / But after that oure cristen men had the power, them thought that the chirche was made ouer strait and

Two mountayns are enclosed within the walls of Jerusalem.

The true cross was found on Calvary, where our Lord was crucified.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* bought.

<sup>3</sup> Here several lines are omitted by Caxton, which were probably unintelligible in the text which he translated. Lat. of the missing lines: "*In eodem quoque sed in deverso quod ad orientem respicit, sita est sanctae Resurrectionis ecclesia, forma quidem rotunda, quae quoniam in decliua praedicti montis sita est, ita ut clivus eidem imminens et contiguus ecclesiae tectum habet, erectis in sublime trabibus et miro artificio in modum coronae contextis apertum et perpetuo patens, unde lumen ecclesiae infunditur necessarium. Sub quo hiatus patulo Salvatoris positum est monumentum.*"

They walled  
it all in  
newly.

On the slope  
of Mt. Moriah  
standeth the  
temple.

On the west  
of the temple  
are two gates.  
[<sup>s</sup> If. 115, bk.]

Towards the  
east is the  
Golden gate.

Within this  
enclosure  
dares no man  
dwell.

In every  
corner were  
oratories  
where the  
Saracens  
used to pray.

lytil w nere so grete and noble thynges were. Therfore they made  
it al newe walled about with good strong werke and hye, which  
conteyned and enclosed within it the fyrst chyrche,<sup>1</sup> and the holy  
names that I haue named / Toward the parte of the oryent is the 4  
other mount named mona.<sup>2</sup> On the hangyng therof as who be-  
holdeth toward the south stondesth the temple, whiche the laye  
peple calle it Templem domini. There as Dauid<sup>3</sup> bought the place  
for to sette in the Arke of oure lord. And Salamon his sone made 8  
there the temple by the commaundement of God / At the begyn-  
nyng of this booke we sayde to you, that Omar the sone of Captap  
dyde make the forme in this manere / There is a place square longe  
as moche as an Archer may shote at twyes, And as brood / closed 12  
with good walles / stronge and<sup>4</sup> hye / And there toward the weste  
ben two gates by whiche men entre, <sup>5</sup>That one is named Speciosa /  
where seynt peter heeled hym that was lame fro his birth, and satte  
to fore the gate for to demaunde Almesse. That other gate had no 16  
name toward the north eest. Toward the thoryent is another gate  
named the Golden gate / Toward the south is the hows Ryall /  
whiche is the temple of Salamon. vpon eche of thyse yates, By  
whiche men entre in to the toun, And on the cornes<sup>6</sup> ben hye 20  
towres / vpon whiche the prouostes<sup>7</sup> were woonte to goo vp at  
certayn howres for to warne and somone the peple to praye and  
saye theyr orysons / and to honoure our lord after theyr custommes /  
Somme endure yet, & the other ben falle. in the cloysture of this 24  
place, ther dar noman dwelle / ne noman is suffred to entre but  
bare foot and clene washen / ffor there ben porters sette at alle the  
yates that take hede therof / In the mydle of this place, whiche is  
thus closed, is another place, more hye and square, toward the 28  
weste men goo vp therto in two places, by degrees or stappes / and  
in lyke wyse toward the southe. But toward the south goth noman  
vp, but by one place / In eueryche of the angles or corners were  
woont to be oratoryes, where the sarasyns made theyr orysons and 32  
prayers / Somme endure yet / And many ben beten down / In the  
myddle of this hye place stondesth the temple, whiche is made .viii /  
square / And with out ben the walles couerd with tables of marble

<sup>1</sup> Owing to his misunderstanding of the passage above omitted, Caxton has also failed to understand this line. Fr. "*qui enclot et contient dedans soy la première église et les saints lieux que je vous ai nommés*," which enclosed and contained the first church and the holy places which I have mentioned to you.

<sup>2</sup> Lat. *Moria*.

<sup>3</sup> Orig. bought.

<sup>4</sup> Orig. aud.

<sup>6</sup> Fr. *angles*, corners.

<sup>7</sup> Fr. *provoires*, priests, Lat. *sacerdotes*.



wrought with fyn gold moche rychely / The couerture aboue was  
of leed alle round right wel made / eche of thyse places aboue and The roof is of lead, and well made.  
bynethe is pased with moche fayre whyte stone / in suche wyse  
4 whan it rayneth, alle the waters of the temple, of whiche ther  
falleth grete plente, falleth down cleene and cleer in the cysternes  
whiche ben within the cloystre. There bytwene the temple and  
the place which is emonge the pylers, There stondeth an hye Roche Within the temple is a high rock  
8 and lowe bynethe a dyche or a fosse. It is sayd that the Angele<sup>1</sup>  
stondeth there on, whan he slewe the peple for the synne that  
dauyd had nombred his peple, vnto the tyme that oure lord com-  
maunded that he shold put the swerde in to the shethe. there made on which David made an altar.  
12 Dauyd after an Aulter. To fore that oure men entred in to the  
toun, it had been a certayn tyme all discoueryd / But after they  
that holde it, they couerid it with a fayr whyte marble, & made an  
aulter aboue where the clerkes dyde the seruyse of oure lord.

16 <sup>2</sup>How the turkes of Iherusalem, whan they knewe the [<sup>2</sup> leaf 116]  
comying of our hooste, stopped the pyttes and  
fontaynes of the toun. ca<sup>o</sup>. Clxxi<sup>o</sup>

He londe in whiche Iherusalem stondith is named Iurye, by Jerusalem is in the land of Judea, so called from the tribe of Juda.  
20 t cause that whan the .x / lygnages / or trybus departed fro the<sup>3</sup>  
heyer of Salamon / And helde them to Ieroboam / The tweyne  
abode in Iherusalem with Roboam that were the trybe of Iuda<sup>4</sup> /  
And the trybe of beniamyn / And of the name of Iuda it is named<sup>5</sup>  
24 Iurye<sup>5</sup> / It is named also palestynne for the phylysteas. This Cyte  
standeth as it were in the nauyll of the londe of Byheste or of  
promysson / after the termes that were named by Josue / whiche  
endure<sup>6</sup> fro deserte of the mount of Lybane, and fro the grete flood<sup>7</sup>  
28 of Eufates vnto the see. The place in whiche the cyte standeth  
in is moche ayerye & drye / Ther be no waters in the toun but only The only water in the town is that collected in cisternes.  
of the rayn ; ffor in wynter tyme whan it is acustommed to rayne  
moeche in the londe, it is receyuyd in to the Cisternes / of whom be  
32 many in the toun / and they occupye<sup>7</sup> this water in all thynges that  
they haue nede of / Neuertheles somme scriptures saye that they  
were woonte to haue fontaynes, whiche were without the toun, and Formerly there were fountains in the town

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *s'assist la*, sat there.<sup>3</sup> Fr. *l'oir*, the heir.<sup>4</sup> *Orig.* Inda.<sup>5</sup> Fr. *Judée*, Lat. *Judaea*.<sup>6</sup> Fr. "*du desert et du mont de Libane*," from the desert and from Mt. Libanus.<sup>7</sup> Fr. *usent*, employ, use.

which were  
stopped up  
during the  
wars.

A mile from  
the town is  
the renowned  
fountain of  
Siloth.

The Turks  
stopped up  
all the foun-  
tains for five  
or six miles  
around.  
[<sup>4</sup> If. 116, bk.]

Within the  
city they had  
great plenty  
of water,  
while the pil-  
grims with-  
out suffered  
greatly.

ran in to hit / <sup>1</sup>But they were stopped by the warre<sup>1</sup> / The leste<sup>2</sup> of  
alle the fontaynes was gyon, whiche Ezechyas the kyng stopped, lyke  
as the scripture sayth. Gyon is now a place in the toun toward  
the south, within the valeye that is named Ermon. There is a 4  
chirche founded in the worship of seynt pretopt marter. There in  
that same place was Salamon enoynted, as is red in the thirde book  
of kinges. without the toun a two myle or thre ben founden somme  
fontaynes, but they be but fewe / and they rendre but lytil water. 8  
In the partye toward the south, where as the two-valeyes assemble /  
is a fontayne moch renommed, whiche is named Syløe / our lord  
commaundes<sup>3</sup> to the blynde man that neuer had seen that he shold  
goo wasshe hym in the water there of this fontayne, and he sawe 12  
clerely & incontinent was made hool / this fontayne is but a lytil  
myle fro the toun. It semeth that it boylleth a lytil / som tyme it  
spryngeth not, somme saye that alwaye the .iij / daye the water  
cometh agayn atte ferthest. whan the turkes of the toun knewe that 16  
oure men cam / they stopped the mowthes of thyse fontaynes & of  
the Cysternes a fyue or .vj myle aboute / ffor they thought that the  
pylgryms for lacke of watres sholde not mayntene theyr syege to  
fore the toun / And <sup>4</sup>without fawte that they had grete lack and 20  
mesease therby, as ye shal here folowyng: they that were within  
the cyte had grete plente of water in Cisternes / and fro the fon-  
taynes without cam grete haboundance by conduytes, whiche  
descended in to .ij / pyscynes right grete by the temple, that one 24  
endureth yet in to this day / and is named probatica piscina /  
where as they were wonte to wasshe the flesshe of the sacrefyses /  
of whiche the gospel speketh, and sayth that it had .v. porches  
where the angele descended and meuid the water / And he that 28  
fyrst entred after the meynge of the water was made hool of what  
dysease that euer he had. In that place oure sauour Ihesu Crist  
heeled a lame man that had leyn there many yeres.

Of the nombre of them of thoost / of them of Iheru- 32  
salem, and how oure men lodged them in the  
siege to fore Iherusalem. Capitulo Clxxij°

<sup>1-1</sup> Fr. "*mais elles furent estoupées par la guerre*," but they were stopped  
up by war. <sup>2</sup> Fr. "*la moindre, de toutes les fontaines*."

<sup>3</sup> Orig. *commandes*.

- i N the yere of thyncarnasion of our sauour Ihesu Criste / The pilgrims encamped before Jerusalem, June 7th, 1099.
- MLxxxxix in the moneth of Iuyn, the vij daye of the sayd moneth, was lodged the hoost of cristiente to fore the holy Cyte of
- 4 Iherusalem / The nombre of them that were there, as wel men and wymmen, were / xl / M. There were not men defensable of the foote men aboue / xx. M. On horsback were not passyng<sup>a</sup> / xv. C. Alle the other were feble men, as seke men and wymmen, and also
- 8 old<sup>e</sup> peple. within the toun were men able to bere Armes .xl. thousand, whiche were comen in fro cytees and castellys ther aboute. And they were the best men of Armes, and chosen for the valyauntest that they coude fynde / After that oure men were arryued to fore the
- 12 toun : They hadde a grete counseyl emonge them, And called the Cristen men of the Countree for to demaunde of them in what syde they myght beste assiege the Toun / They sawe wel that toward thoryent, Ne toward the Southe they myght nought doo for the
- 16 deepe valeys that ben there. Therefore they accorded to sette the siege to fore the northeeste / Wherefore it was so that fro the yate name<sup>d</sup> the yate of Seynt Steuen, whiche stondest in the Northeeste vnto the other yate that standeth toward the weste / And is name<sup>d</sup>
- 20 the yate of Dauyd, were lodged alle the Barons and the other pylgryms. The valyaunt Duc of loreyne had the fyrst place / In the second was therle <sup>1</sup>of mlaundres, In the thyrde was the duc of Normandy / The fourth place held Tancre besyde a tour of a
- 24 Corner, whiche yet is named the tour of Tancre / And other grete men were lodged there with hym. ffor this toure vnto the yate of Occident comprysed therle of tholouse the place, and the people that were with hym / But after Tancre sawe that by cause the tour
- 28 defended the yate so wel / and also for the valeye that was so nyghe he myght but lytil proufyte there, therefore by the counseyl of the wyse men that knewe wel the beyng of the toun he remeuyd fro thens / and <sup>2</sup>wente on the tertre on whiche the cyte is sette on
- 32 <sup>3</sup>bytweene the toun and the chirche of seynt Symeon<sup>3</sup> / whiche is withoute the Cyte as far as an Archer maye shote at ones / There he lodged hym to thende that he myght beste greue the toun there. And for to deffende the turkes this sayd chirche, whiche is holy,
- 36 ffor there sowped our lord with his discyples / and weeshe humbly

Their number was about 40,000.

They held a council as to which side of the city to attack first.

They decided upon the North-East; and each of the great barons took up his position near the walls.

[<sup>1</sup> leaf 117]

Tancred established himself further off between Jerusalem and the church called Sion.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig. and.*

<sup>3-3</sup> Fr. "*entre la ville et l'eglise qui a non Syon*," i. e. between the city and the church whose name is Sion, not "*Simeon*." Lat. "*inter urbem et ecclesiam quae dicitur Syon*."

This is the place where the Virgin Mary died.

theyr feet. There descended the holy ghoost in fyry tonges on witsondaye. In the same place passed oute of this world the glorious vyrgyne Marye / whiche bare in her precious body the saueour of the world. ther is shewde the sepulture of seynt steuen. 4

How oure men began tassaylle Iherusalem / And of the grete dilygence that they dyde to make engyns for to take it / ca° Clxxiiij°

w Han the barons were thus lodged fro the yate toward north-8 este, as I haue sayd, vnto the tour on the corner which is vpon the vale of Iosaphat / And fro thens vnto that other corner of the cyte whiche is on the pendaunt of the same vale toward the south. thenne was it thyng euydente that the one half of the toun was 12 wyth payne or vnnethe assieged. ffor fro thens that I haue sayd vnto the yate named mount Syon, the Cyte was no thyng assieged.

The fifth day after they took their positions an assault was ordered.

The fyft daye after that thoost was lodged to fore the Cyte / it was acorded comynly, and cryed thurgh alle the lodgys, that alle 16 men shold be armed the best wyse they myght and come to thassault. They cam alle, and began moche strongly thassaylle aboute the toun. They hadde the hertes moche hardy, and brennyng desyres and wylle to doo the werke of oure lord / In theyr 20 comyng on they toke the barbycannes that were right ayenst them.

[2 If. 117, bk.]

The Turks in the city were greatly alarmed at our boldness;

<sup>1</sup> And the turkes embatilled them within the grete wallys<sup>1</sup> / They of the toun were so effrayed of the grete hardynesse <sup>2</sup>and prowesse that they sawe with oure peple and had ouer grete fere, in suche 24 wyse that they loste alle theyr hope for to deffende the toun, and was wel knowen afterward / that yf the talent of our men had endured, and that they had had skalyng laddres & castellys by whiche they myght haue approuched the walles of the toun,<sup>3</sup> They 28 had taken it certaynly. but whan thassault had endured fro erly mornynge that same daye vnto one of the klok of the same daye at after none / They apperceyued wel that withoute engynes they myght not doo grete hurte ne dommage to the toun / therfor they 32 withdrew them abak, & purposed to come agayn to thassault, whan theyr engyns shold be better ordeyned. The barons toke counseyl among them for taduyse / how they myght fynde manere to make engyns for tassaylle the toun. ffor them semed that in alle 36

but the pilgrims soon perceived that without engines of war they could not take the city.

<sup>1-1</sup> Fr. "*et les Turcs embatirent dedans les grans murs.*"

<sup>3</sup> Orig. tonn.

the countree shold not be founde trees ne wode ynowe for to make  
 suche thynges as they sholde nede. But a valyaunt<sup>1</sup> man of the  
 countre cam forth and told to them of a valeye .vj / or vij. myle  
 4 thens, whiche was ful of trees and grete ynowghe for to make  
 engyns / They sente theder grete nombre of Carpenters, And somme  
 of the barons to conduyte them / Eche of them hewe down the  
 tres, and dyde do brynge them in charyottes / Thenne made they  
 8 come alle them of thoost that coude medle with suche thyng, and  
 dyde do make engyns, perierers / Magonneauls, castellys, chattes /  
 and wayes couer<sup>d</sup>, moche grete plente / The pylgryms that coude  
 werke toke none hyre ne wages yf they had as moch as they myght  
 12 entretiene and kepe them self / The other that were pour receyued  
 theyr wages of the comyns / ffor of all the barons of thoost / ther  
 was none that myght paye the costes of this werke sauf therle of  
 tholouse. ffor he hym self allone susteined of his propre good all the  
 16 werkemen without thaide of any other. & also to many knyghtes  
 that had despended theyr good dyde he gyue many grete yeftes.  
 whyles that the barons were thus besy, that eueryche dyde do make  
 his engyns for hym self / The other knyghtes & the mene peple ran  
 20 vnto busshes and hedges / ffor to fetche stockes and roddes with  
 grete dilygence for to make pynnes.<sup>2</sup> None was ydle, but alle men  
 heelp to this werke. Ther was noman had shame ne despyte to  
 doo thyng that myght auaylle; ffor they say<sup>d</sup> well that alle theyr  
 24 traualle and despences that they had don & made in alle theyr  
 waye were nothyng worth yf this enterpryse for to take this toun  
 were not wel accomplysshe<sup>d</sup>.

They found  
trees for their  
engines in a  
valley near  
by.

All worked  
diligently—  
the rich gave  
their time,  
and the poor  
were paid.

No man was  
ashamed to  
do anything  
that might  
help.

<sup>3</sup>How our peple were in grete meschyef at the sayd [<sup>3</sup> leaf 118]  
 28 siege, & how the turkes deserted them by cause  
 they myght entre and yssue in and out of the  
 toun. ca<sup>o</sup> Clxxiiij

i N thoost had they grete mesease of thurst, ffor as I haue sayd  
 32 to you the place where the cite stondeth in is moch aye<sup>r</sup>e &  
 drye, withoute fontaynes, withoute wellys & pyttes of water spryng-  
 ynge / ffor they of the toun, whan they her<sup>d</sup> saye / that oure peple  
 cam, they fylled somme pyttes that were <sup>4</sup>withoute the toun nygh  
 36 to the Cysternes where as was rayn water<sup>4</sup> / and they had couer<sup>d</sup>

They suffered  
greatly from  
lack of water.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* valyaunt.

<sup>2</sup> *Fr. cloyes*, i. e. hurdles, wattles, not "pynnes."

<sup>4</sup>—*Fr. "Lors de la ville pres. Les citernes mesmes ou il avoit caue de pluie."* Caxton divided his sentence here wrongly, and spoiled the sense.

The Christians of the country told them of fountains and cisterns near the city.

The sufferings from thirst grew more and more intense.

All their animals died for lack of water.

[2 lf. 118, bk.]

Great numbers of men also died.

and stopped them, to thende that the pylgryms sholde haue none ease of water / But the cytezeyns of bethlehem, and they of a lytil cyte called tecua, that knewe the countre al aboute / told and ensseygned to them somme fontaynes / brokes, pyttes, and Cisternes. 4 ther was grete prees and grete mesease / suche tyme there was, that whan the pour peple myght brynge theyr barellis & vessellys ful of troubled water and thycke, They sold it rychely in thooste / The fontayne of syloe, of whiche I haue spoken to fore, myght not 8 suffyse them, ffor it spryngeth not alway, and yet that was not right good. Thanguysshe of thurste grewe moche of the heete that was in Iuyn / And of the trauaylle that they suffred, and for the duste that entred in theyr mowthes / whan two or thre had founden 12 ony water rennyng or welle / alle ran theder / in suche wyse that it faylled anon / The men a foote were not in so grete disease as they that had horses / ffor they ledde them somtyme thré or foure myle ferre for to watre them, & yet vnnethe founde they ynowgh. there 16 were many that lefte theyr horses / and habandouned to goo where they wold, and other beestys for defaulte of water. ye shold haue seen mules, Asses / Oxen, Kyen, and horses goon withoute garde or kepar in the feldes / Atte laste, whan the beestys had long languys- 20 shed / they deyde / wherof cam grete stenche in thoost, wherof the ayer was corrupte ouer peryllously / The peple was not in lasse anguysshe there for thurste, than they had ben to fore at Anthyoche for hongre / Oure men were acustomed for to seche pasture for theyr 24 horse moche ferre fro the toun in vyllages ther about. The turkes of the toun<sup>1</sup> marked it, and yssued where as the siege lay not / and cam ayenst them and slewe many, and toke away theyr horse / And brought them in to the Cyte. Many escaped that fledde vnto 28 thooste. Euery day lassed the <sup>2</sup>nombre of the pylgryms by many suche aduentures / and by grete Infyrmyte and sekenesses that were in thooste / and by many other causes, wherof many deyed / And in the place of them cam none other / But they in the toun 32 encreced and grewe euery day, ffor to them cam newe ayde & grete refreshmentes of men and vytaylle that myght entre and yssue by the yates beyng oute<sup>3</sup> of the siege.

How the turkes enforced them to make merueylleous 36 engyns ayenst<sup>4</sup> the owres, And of the meschyef

<sup>1</sup> Orig. tonn.

<sup>3</sup> Orig. onte.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. "*encontre les nostres*," against our men.

that they dyde to the cristen men that dwellyd  
in the toun. ca<sup>o</sup> Clxxv<sup>o</sup>

m Oche were our barons in grete payne for to make & adresse the  
4 engynes. The mene peple payned them ententyfly to seche  
and purchasse suche ayde and helpe as they myght / They that  
were in the toun fayned<sup>1</sup> nothyng, but made<sup>1</sup> grete cure and grete  
entente to make other engyns ayenst oures. they toke good<sup>1</sup> hede to  
8 the Instrumentes that oure men made for tassaylle them. And  
they adressyd as good or better to defende them / ffor they had  
gretter plente of tymbre within the toun than they hadde that were  
without. the toun was moche wel garnysshed<sup>1</sup> of alle thynges that  
12 they neded to fore that our peple cam. they had grete plente of  
Cordes, stones<sup>2</sup> wel fetyced, and other thynges more than they  
neded. the cristen men of the toun were more traauylled<sup>1</sup> and  
charged with thyse werkes than any other men. And also they  
16 were beten cruelly, And somme they slewe. And with alle thyse  
mesaurentures<sup>3</sup> <sup>4</sup>they bare them on honde that they were traytours,<sup>4</sup>  
and descouerd<sup>1</sup> theyr counseyl to theyr enemyes / there was none of  
the cristen men that durst goo vpon the walles / But yf he were  
20 charged or laden with stones or tymbre, and yf they had<sup>1</sup> any vytaylles  
in their howses it was take from them, in suche wyse that they  
suffred many meseases / whan one had nede of ony tree<sup>5</sup> / anon  
they bete down the hows of a crysten man / for to haue a lytil  
24 pyece of tymbre. yf they taryed a lytil to come at the hour assygned,  
anon they were beten and hurt ouer sorowfully. they were brought  
to so moch sorow / that there were but fewe / but they had leuer to  
haue been deed than a lyue. they durst in no wyse yssue out of  
28 their howses without commaundement.

The Turks  
in Jerusalem  
also made  
engines of  
war,

for which  
they had a  
great abun-  
dance of  
material.

They made  
the native  
Christians do  
all the heavy  
work,

and treated  
them cruelly.

<sup>6</sup>In this tyme arrayued a shippe of Genewys<sup>7</sup> atte [° leaf 119]  
porte of halappe / and how they messagers cam  
in thoost, and how to the barons they made  
32 theyr requeste. Capitulo / Clxxvj<sup>o</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Fr. "*Mettoient grant cure*," took great pains.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. "*pierres toutes fetices*," i. e. stones cut the proper size.

<sup>3</sup> *Orig.* mesaurentures.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. "*les mettoient sus qu'ilz estoient traitres*," they accused them of  
being traitors.

<sup>5</sup> Fr. *fust*, timber.

<sup>7</sup> Fr. *Genevois*, Genoese.

Some Genoese  
ships arrived  
at the port of  
Aleppo

The Earl of  
Toulouse sent  
some men to  
conduct these  
new-comers  
to the army.

On the way  
they had a  
skirmish  
with the  
Turks.

An Egyptian  
fleet now ap-  
peared in the  
harbour.

[\* 1f. 119, bk.]

a T the Siege of Iherusalem the pylgryms conteyned them as I  
haue sayd / Thenne cam a messenger that brought tydynges /  
that somme shippes of the Genewes<sup>1</sup> were arryued atte porte of  
halappe, And moche requyred the barons of thoost, they that were 4  
come in the shippes, that they wold sende to them somme knyghtes  
for to conduyte them vnto thooste. The Barons prayde therle of  
tholouse, whiche was most rychest of them / that he wold sende  
theder somme of his men / he dyde that they requyred, And sente 8  
a knyght of his named wyldemart Carpynele, and delyuerd to hym  
.xxx. horsmen / and .L / men a foote / After that they were  
departed / the barons sayde to therle that he had sente ouer fewe  
men, and prayd hym that he wold sende yet moo ; he agreed wel, 12  
And sente Remon pelet and Guyllamme de Arsbran with .L /  
horsemen. But er they had ouertaken this wyldemart / whiche  
wente alway forth til he was come bytwene Lyde & rames in the  
playnes that ben there / ther mette hym .vj. C turkes on horsbak 16  
which ran vpon hym rudely. At this fyrst recountre they slewe  
four of oure horsmen, & moo of them a foote / yet our men were  
not disconfyted / but helde them to gydre, And warned eche other  
to doo well. In this tyme, whyles they fought to gydre / Thyse 20  
two knyghtes that cam after, and theyr companye sawe this scar-  
muche, and so moche hasted that they cam and ioyned with our  
other men. Thenne began they to doo wel, in such wise that they  
disconfyted the turkes and put them to flyght, and slewe .ij. C. 24  
turkes of them / Of our men were slayn two valyaunt knyghtes, for  
whom alle the other were sory, that one was named Gylbert<sup>2</sup> de  
treue, And that other Achart<sup>3</sup> de mountuille. whan our men had  
thus disconfyted the turkes, they cam to Iaphe, where they were 28  
receyued with moch grete ioye. the maronniers of Gene receyued  
them moche honorably / whyles as they soiourned there, and dis-  
charged theyr shippes for to aduyse and ordeyne how they myght  
come in the hooste. Sodanly or ony man toke hede of hit, the 32  
nauye of them of egypte, whiche was more redy in the porte of  
Sklauonye,<sup>4</sup> sawe theyr tyme for to hurte our peple, cam to fore  
Iaphe. whan oure men and the genewes apperceyued this / hastily  
they descended to the see / fyrst they <sup>5</sup> essayed for to deffende 36  
them / but they, whan they sawe that there cam so moche peple  
that they myght not resiste them, they disgarnysshed theyr shippes

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *Genevois*, Genoese.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig. de trene, but Fr. "de Treve."*

<sup>3</sup> Fr. *Achart de Montmelle.*

<sup>4</sup> Fr. *Escaloine.*



as faste as they myght, and bare away cordes, cables and<sup>d</sup> saylles, The Genoese dismantled their ships, and the other takle, and bare it and leyde it in the fortresse. One shippe of the genewes, whiche was goon for somme gayne vpon the  
 4 see / cam alle laden with grete gayne / and wold<sup>1</sup> arryued<sup>d</sup> at the porte of Iaphe / but they of the shippe knewe wel fro ferre that the nauye of the turkes helde the porte. Therfor they caste about and torned theyr saylle, and wente to the Lyche / The cyte of Iaphe  
 8 was thenne alle deserte and voyde of peple, ffor the cytezeyns of the toun trusted not wel in theyr fortresse / Therfor they were goon a litil byfore that our men cam, of which it happed<sup>d</sup> that oure men kepte nomore than the tour / And<sup>d</sup> whan they sawe theyr tyme, they  
 12 made them redy, and<sup>d</sup> sette theyr thynges all in ordenaunce, and wente theyr waye and cam in to thoost, where they were receyued<sup>d</sup> with grete ioye / ffor the maronnners of gene were moche good<sup>d</sup> then came in a body and joined our army. They were joyfully received. Carpenters, & coude wel make engynes & other Instrumentes of  
 16 warre, in suche wyse that syth they were comen / the barons began more delyuerly, and the better theyr enterpryses to brynge to an ende.

How alle the pylgryms, eueryche after his estate  
 20 payned them to make thengyns for thassault.

ca. Clxxvij.

t Hey that abode in thoost dyde theyr power for tadresse their engyns / ffor the duc godefroy, the duc of normandy, & therle of  
 24 fflaundes had a valyaunt man which was moch wise & iuste named Gace<sup>2</sup> de veer / he had<sup>d</sup> the charge for to take hede to the werkmen / This man dyde do make theyr werkes iustly and wel / The barons conduyted<sup>d</sup> the men a foote for to gadre to gydre the Roddes  
 28 and bowes of trees for to make witthes and pynnes for to couere the engyns, And<sup>d</sup> also to hewe the grete tymbre and<sup>d</sup> brynge it to the hoost to the werkmen / they toke the hydes of the beestes that deyde and stratched<sup>d</sup> them vpon thengyns for to kepe & defende  
 32 them fro fyre / In this partye toward<sup>d</sup> the northeest the barons entre-medled vygorously, as I haue sayd, for to assaylle fro the tour of the angle or corner vnto the west gate / Tancre tranaylle<sup>d</sup> also moche, and the other knyghtes that were there lodged for taduyse  
 36 how the cyte myght be wel assaylled on theyr syde. On the syde toward<sup>d</sup> the <sup>3</sup>south / there was therle of thoulouse and<sup>d</sup> his peple. he The work on the engines went forward vigorously. The barons assail the city on the north-east. [<sup>3</sup> leaf 120]

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *vouloit arriver*, wished to land.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *Gace de Bear*, Lat. *Beart*.

Guilliam  
Ebryac di-  
rected the  
work of the  
Genoese  
sailors.

The work is  
finished, and  
all quarrels  
settled.

was moost ryche of them / and therfor he had the moost peple that wrought. They of Genes were drawn alle to hym / whiche had a Capytayn, a moche excellent werkman named Guylliam<sup>1</sup> Ebryac. he made them to haste moche the werke, and to amende it / Thus<sup>4</sup> was alle thoost occupyed in this werke four monethes all hool / They had so moche employted that eueryche of the barons had doo made right that whiche he had begonned and entreprysed. Therfor they counseyllled emonge them, & ordeyned at a day sett to goo to thassault / But for as moch as therle of thoulouse and tancre had be grete Rancour and wrath / and somme of the other Barons and knyghtes that loued not wel to gyder for dyuerse reasons / The barons, by the admonestacion of the bisshops, wolde that of alle<sup>12</sup> debate shold be good peas / and that eche shold pardone other all euyll wyll and talente / by cause that our lord shold helpe them the better in doynge and accomplysshynge his worke. And yf it happed them to dye, the surer myght they attende the deth. 16

Of the fayr processions that oure pylgryms made to  
thende that god shold gyue them vycторыe / and  
how they pardonned eche other theyr mal talentes  
and euyll wylls / ca°. Clxxviij 20

They go in a  
procession  
bearing all  
the reliques  
of the army.

t He daye was ordeyned and taken by comyn acorde of alle, that procession shold be made, & the relyquyes shold be borne suche as were had in thoost. They shold alle goo vnto the mount of Olyuet, And they shold mayntene them this day in fastyng, In<sup>24</sup> repentaunce of theyr synnes / and in orysons and prayer vnto our lord to thende that he wold haue pyte of his peple / and receyue<sup>2</sup> in gree theyr seruyse, in suche wyse that by them his herytages myght be recouerd fro the handes of his enemyes which helde it<sup>28</sup> in their possession / Peter theremyte on that one part, and arnold, the chappellayn of the Duc of Normandy / whiche was a grete clerk and wyse, of that other parte, made the sermon to the peple. They exhorted them by swete wordes to enterpryse vygorously the<sup>32</sup> werke of oure lord / wherein it were better to deye than to lyue. The mount of Olyuete is ayenst Iherusalem in the eeste partye, about a myle fer fro the toun / ffor the vaal of Iosaphat is bytwene bothe.

Peter the  
Hermit, and  
Arnold,

preach to the  
people.

[<sup>3</sup> If. 120, bk.] there assembled our lord, his discyples, and styed<sup>3</sup> and ascended vp<sup>36</sup> to fore them alle in to heuen the day of thassension / and wente vp

<sup>1</sup> Orig. Gnylliam.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. "reçut en gré leur service."

- in a clowde which toke hym / whan alle the peple had ben there in grete wepynges and prayers / and alle the debates appeased that were emong them / they descended fro the hylle in to the chirche  
 4 of mount syon, whiche is by the Cyte, as I haue sayd, in the side toward the southe on the toppe of a tertre / The sarasyns of the toun that were in the toures and vpon the walles of the toun, merueylled moche. what this myght be that oure men made there /  
 8 and where they myght see the presse nygh to them within shotte. They cessed not to shote arowes, and quarellys in suche wyse that they hurted somme. Thenne addressyd they crosses vpon the walles / and in despyte of our sauour, and in reproche of oure  
 12 fayth, spytted on them, and made other shames and<sup>1</sup> fowle thynges whiche be not for to be sayd. The people<sup>2</sup> of our lord, which were in holy wylle for to serue hym / sawe wel thise thynges that the turkes made / theyr desyre grewe and encreaced moche in theyr  
 16 hertes for tauenge the shame of our<sup>3</sup> lord Ihesu Criste / whan they had made theyr orysones and prayers in the chirche of mount Syon / The day was to them ordeyned and named for to make thassault by comyn acorde / Thenne they retourned to theyr lodgys, yf ther was  
 20 any thyng to be made on theyr engyns, anon it was accomplysshid / for euery man toke good hede aboute hym that no thyng faylled that shold be necessarye to make thassault ayenst theyr enemyes.

All the people weep and pray.

The Turks on the walls insult the Christians and their religion.

The day is set for the assault.

- How oure men sodenly transported in the nyght  
 24 theyr engyns vnto the other part of the toun for tassaylle on that side. Capitulo / Clxxix:

- w Han the day approched that they had named for tassayle the Cyte / the nyght to fore, the valyaunt duc godeffroy, the erle  
 28 of flaundres / and the duc of normandye sawe that this partye of the Cyte that they had assieged was moche wel garnysshed of alle maner of engyns, and<sup>4</sup> the moost defensable men<sup>4</sup> of the Cyte they had sette there. Therefore they doubted more this part, than  
 32 any other / The noble men had herupon counseyll / They knewe wel that they myght not endommage the toun there. And enterprysed a thyng of a right grete affayre and of moche grete trauallye / for alle thengynes that they had by them, And the castel to fore

The night before the leaders of the army change the plan of assault,

<sup>1</sup> Orig. aud.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. peole.

<sup>3</sup> Orig. onr.

<sup>4-4</sup> Fr. "*les hommes les plus defensables*," their most capable men. Lat. *viris fortibus*.

[leaf 121]  
and carry  
their engines  
to the north-  
east side,  
which was  
not so well  
defended.

They draw  
up a great  
castle to the  
walls.

The Turks  
were asto-  
nished in the  
morning at  
this change.

Each of the  
great barons  
brought his  
engines up  
near the  
walls.

the sydes were Ioyned<sup>d</sup> to gydre, they bare <sup>1</sup>them alle. On that  
other syde whiche is bytwene the gate of seynt stephen & the tour  
of thangle / that is toward the northeest / ffor them semed & it was  
trouthe, that by cause that the cyte had not be assieged on that 4  
syde that ther shold<sup>d</sup> be the lasse defence / wherof it happed<sup>d</sup> that  
they woke al the nyght as wel they as theyr peple, in suche wyse  
that theyr engyns were alle ioyned and reysed vp byfore day or er  
the sonne aroos, in the places where they ought to be. The castel 8  
was so approuched the walle / and was moche hyer, in so moche that  
they that were therin were almoost as hye as one of the toures / and  
knowe ye for certayn / that this was noo lytil trauaylle, ffor fro this  
place where they were fyrst lodged<sup>d</sup> vnto the place where they sette 12  
theyr engyns was nygh half a myle. And the thynges were so wel  
and so hooly ordeyned, that to fore the sonne rysyng all thyng was  
redy at them. on the mornyng the turkes byhelde on the walles  
and<sup>d</sup> toures, And merueylled what this myght be that our men so 16  
trauaylled all the nyght / they sawe that the lodgys of the Duc and<sup>d</sup>  
of the other barons aboute hym were remeuyd. They sought them  
about that other side of the toun, And founde<sup>2</sup> them there, where  
as they had sette no garde. whan they sawe thenngyns and the castel 20  
dressyd / they merueylled ouer moche, how they myght doo this  
werke in so lytil tyme. ffor this cause they doubted moche the more  
them that had<sup>d</sup> thus enterprysed<sup>d</sup> and<sup>d</sup> accomplyshed<sup>d</sup> so sodeynly in  
the nyght about that syde of the toun / the barons that were lodged<sup>d</sup> 24  
as ye haue her<sup>d</sup> to fore / were not ydle, but reysed<sup>d</sup> theyr engyns  
eueryche in his parte / And therle of tholouse had made tapproche  
the walles a castel that he had made with moche grete trauaylle  
bytwene the chirche of mount Syon and<sup>d</sup> the Cyte / the other 28  
that were nyghe the corner, whiche is called the tour of tancre,  
redressyd<sup>d</sup> a castel of tree moche hye. Thyse thre castellys that  
were about the toun were nyhe alle of one facion, ffor they were  
alle square / the sydes that were toward<sup>d</sup> the toun were double / in 32  
suche wyse that one of the panes<sup>3</sup> that was without / myght be  
auald vpon the walles, and thenne it shold<sup>d</sup> be lyke a brydge.  
But for alle that the side was not vnclosed ne discouer<sup>d</sup>, But it was  
hool for to deffende them that were in the castel. 36

<sup>2</sup> *Orig. fonnde.*

<sup>3</sup> *Lat. latus.*

How the day folowyng our peple made a merueyllous<sup>1</sup>  
 assault, And how the turkes defended them sub-  
 tyllly and wel. Capitulo Clxxx<sup>o</sup>

- 4<sup>2t</sup> He daye begonne strongly to wexe clere / Thenne, as it was  
 enterprysed and deuyse<sup>d</sup>, our men were alle armed for tap-  
 proche the walles. They alle were and had one purpoos. That is  
 to wete,<sup>3</sup> or they wolde take the toun vpon thenemyes of our lord<sup>4</sup>,  
 8 And delyuer the ordures of the mescreauntes fro the holy places, or  
 ellys in this seruyse they wold<sup>5</sup> rondre theyr sowles to hym that  
 made them. Ther were none that had wyllle to drawe aback fro  
 this werke / the old men forgate theyr age / the seke men theyr  
 12 maladyes, the wyues and childeren enterprysed in theyr hertes<sup>4</sup> to  
 doo grete thynges. Alle generally payned them to drawe forth  
 the castelles, to ioynne them to the walles in suche wyse that they  
 myght approche them that defended it; they of the toun cessyd<sup>6</sup>  
 16 not to drawe and shote Incessantly grete plenty of arowes and  
 quarellys, And with theyr engyns caste grete stones / the moyen  
 peple with theyr handis<sup>5</sup> threwe fro the walles and towres / their  
 entente was therewith to make oure men to withdrawnen fro the  
 20 walles / The good cristen men that doubted nothyng to deye couferd  
 them with targes & sheldes / thise & other habyllemens they sette  
 to fore them, for to kepe them fro the stones & shotte. they that  
 were within the castellis of tree lefte not to shote & caste stones  
 24 vpon the turkes Incessantly. And other had grete leuers and  
 plente of ropes and Cordes with whiche they laboured and payned  
 them to drawe forth the castellys / they that were put for to throwe  
 the stones and to occupye thengyns were not ydle, but had theyr  
 28 thynges wel adressyd, and threwe to them that defended the toun  
 grete stones moche asprely, and trauaylled moche for to do thyng  
 that myght greue their enemyes / But they that wold haue put  
 forth the castellys myght not doo that they wold: for ther was a  
 32 dyck moche depe to fore the barbycane, ffor whiche they myght not  
 make theyr engyns ioynne to the walles. the strokes of the stones<sup>6</sup>  
 that were throwen on the walles dyde not moche harme to the walles  
 of the cyte, ffor the turkes had sacks ful of heye & of coton, And

[2 lf. 121, bk.]  
 At daybreak  
 our men were  
 armed for the  
 assault.

The old men,  
 the sick, and  
 even the wo-  
 men and chil-  
 dren were all  
 eager to help.

Those within  
 the wooden  
 castles shot  
 at the Turke  
 incessantly.

On account  
 of the deep  
 ditch they  
 could not get  
 up near to  
 the walls.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* merueyllons.

<sup>3</sup> *Orig.* wcte.

<sup>4</sup> *Orig.* lertes.

<sup>5-6</sup> Fr. "*les grosses pierres jettoient à leurs engins, les menues et maniables aux mains,*" viz., they threw the large stones with their engines, the smaller and more easily handled stones, with their hands.

<sup>6</sup> *Orig.* stones of.

The Turkes  
protected  
themselves  
well.

[<sup>2</sup> leaf 122]

The assault  
lasted from  
morning to  
evening time.

Those within  
threw fire  
and burning  
oil on our  
men,

who quenched  
the fires  
with water  
and vinegar.

Our men  
returned to  
camp to eat  
and rest.  
The towns-  
people left a  
watch on the  
walls—

grete peces of tymbre bounden with cables of shippes, whiche hēnge  
a longe by the walles and towres / in suche wyse that whan the  
stones of thengyns smote thyse softe thynges / the strokes were lost  
and made no hurte to the walles. On that other syde the turkes 4  
within the toun had moo engyns adressyd than we had without /  
& more quantite of other artyllerye, of Arbalestres withoute<sup>1</sup> com-  
paryson that we hadde / by whiche they slewe many of the pil-  
grims, & it myght not be but that our peple were <sup>2</sup>sore aferd. 8  
Thus was thassault moche grete & peryllous fro the mornynge vnto  
euensong tyme / and duryng thassault it cessed neuer of Arowes  
and stones fleyng more thycke, than was in a / M. yere to fore /  
There were so many that ofte the stones mette & hytte eche other 12  
in thayer / in suche wyse that they brak and flewe in pyeces.  
Thassault was in thre places. And the barons payned them sore to  
greue the turkes / men myght not wel knowe whiche partye had  
the better / Oure pylgryms were put to grete payne to bere erthe 16  
for to fyll the dyche, to thende that the castellys myght ioynе to  
the walles / They within threwe fyre moche thycke in to the  
castellys / men myght see many arowes brennyng,<sup>3</sup> brondes, pottes  
ful of sulphre / of oylle / and other thynges, nourysshyng to fyre. 20  
<sup>4</sup>The stones to brak that the pyeces flewe thurgh out the sydes /  
And it myght not be but that many were hurte that were aboue for  
tassaylle / hyt semed many tymes that alle shold falle to the  
ground. but our men quenched the fyre with water and vyner / 24  
and had redy pynnes for to stoppe the holes / and also for to holde  
to gydre theyr castellys moche Iustely, in suche wyse that theyr  
contenaunces were in alle thynges good and hardy.

The nyght departed the sayd assault, Our peple with- 28  
drewе them / and how they watched wel theyr en-  
gyns / and the turkes the toun / Capitulo Clxxxj°.

t His grete assault & peryllous, that so long endured the derk  
nyght departed. Our men retorned to theyr lodgys for to ete 32  
and reste, they lefte grete watche aboute theyr engyns / by cause  
the turkes shold not brenne them, and they of the toun made grete  
watche to kepe theyr walles, ffor they / doubted moche that oure  
peple, whom they had seen so vygorously assaylle / and defende 36

<sup>1</sup> Orig. wtthoute.

<sup>3</sup> Orig. brennyug.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. "*leurs perrieres y frappaient si grans coups quelles s'envoloient par my les costes oultre.*"

them, myght by nyght come vp on the walles by laddres and entre  
 in to the toun. Therfor they peyned them to make good watche  
 alle this nyght / and to goo round about the walles and serche the  
 4 towres / The stretes also made watche within the toun with grete also in the  
streets, for  
fear of trea-  
son.  
 nombre of people, by cause of fere of trayson. They sette heron<sup>1</sup>  
 grete entente, ffor it was for the sauacion of theyr lyues / theyr  
 wyues, theyr childeren, & alle theyr goodes hoolly. Our peple that  
 8 were in the tentes and in the lodgys had not theyr hertes in reste,  
 but they remembryd of thassault that had be / Euery man <sup>2</sup>remem- [<sup>a</sup> 1f. 122, bk.]  
 bryd hym what he had don, And hym semed that he had left  
 many thynges vndon that he ought to haue don. And moche  
 12 desired they alle to come to the poynt for to doo prowesse. the  
 daye taryed long er it cam as they thought / them semed that they  
 had no greef ne ennoye of the trauaylle that they had suffred that  
 day. They had grete hope in theyr hertes / that assone as they  
 16 shold come agayn to gydre for tassaylle, that they by the helpe of The pilgrims  
had great  
hopes that  
the next day  
they would  
be successful.  
 our lord they shold haue the better. And they were in grete  
 anguysshe / by cause them semed to be in more mesease in their  
 lodgys than in thassault.

20 How our peple retorned agayn on the morn to thas-  
 sault / And of the sorceryes<sup>3</sup> that they wold haue  
 charmed one of our engyns. Capitulo Clxxxij<sup>o</sup>

t He sprynge of the daye appiered, the peple Incontinent were  
 24 awaked. Eche wente to the place where he had ben the daye At daybreak  
every one was  
in his place  
again ;  
 to fore / Thenne sholde ye haue seen somme renne to thengynes  
 and other goo vpon the castellys for to shote with bowes and  
 arabalestres. And many abode vnder for to drawe the sayd cas-  
 28 tellys forth. Nowe were they of the toun anon redy for to defende  
 vigorously ayenst the assaÿllers. There deyed ynowgh on bothe  
 sydes as wel of stones as of quarellys / but not for that, the other  
 lefte not /. but gretely they dyde theyr deuoyr / ne neuer was  
 32 founden lasse cowardyse in so peryllous affayre & werke. One never was  
seen less  
cowardice in  
so perilous a  
work.  
 thyng happed that ought not to be forgotten / that is, that our men  
 had an Instrument called Caable, so strong and<sup>4</sup> so wel made that  
 5 it threwe thre grete stones attones.<sup>5</sup> And dyde moche hurte in

<sup>1</sup> Orig. beron.      <sup>3</sup> Fr. *sorcières*, Sorcerers, witches : not "*sorceries*."

<sup>4</sup> Orig. and.

<sup>5</sup>— Fr. "*elle gectoît trop grosses pierres*," it threw very large stones instead of three large stones.

The Turkes  
brought two  
old witches  
and three  
maidens to  
charm the  
engines of  
our men.

Our men  
threw stones  
and killed  
the three  
maidens.

[\* leaf 128]

the toun where it atteyned. the turkes sawe wel that they coule not breke it / ffor it threwe fro so ferre that their engines myght not come ther to / therfor they dyde do come vpon the walles .ij. old wytyches or enchaunteresses, whiche shold charme this engyne / and 4 they had with them iij maydens, for to helpe to make theyr charme / Alle they of oure hooste behelde them moche ententyfly / ffor they made their enchantement vpon the walles / they abode so longe there that thengyne threwe the stones / & atteyned the two old 8 wytyches and the thre maydens in such wise that they were smeton alle to pyeces, and fyl down deed fro the walles, of whom the sowles wente forthe to helle. Thenne oure peple made an hu and a crye so grete / And<sup>1 2</sup> so grete ioye therof / that euery man of them was 12 refresshyd of this good strook / They of the toun were ouer sorowfull and moche abasshed, in suche wyse that they semed<sup>3</sup> that they had loste alle theyr good ewr and fortune for the losse of thyse two wytyches that thus were slayn. 16

Of the despayr of our peple at the sayd assault. And how they were recomforted by a knyght vnknownen, and euydent myracles.

### Capitulo / Clxxxiiij<sup>o</sup> 20

Our men  
began to wax  
weary,

and their  
engines were  
smoking  
with fire.

i N this poynt endured thassault vnto after myddaye / that men knewe not whiche of them had the better / Our men began to wexe wery / <sup>4</sup> And thassault tourned them to annoye and grief / ffor they had longe don alle theyr power / And the werke was not 24 moche amended, but were falle in a desperaunce / in suche wyse that they had talente to leue the castell of tree, whiche was nygh al to broken of the stones and shotte / and wolde drawe abak the other engyns that smoke<sup>4</sup> of the fyere that the turkes had caste 28 therin, therefore<sup>5</sup> wold they prolonge thassault til on the morn / And herof to doo thus they had good wylle. <sup>6</sup> Theyr enemyes aperceyued this / that they lefte thassault<sup>6</sup> thus, & were reysed in

<sup>1</sup> *curent*, had, omitted.

<sup>3</sup> *Orig.* seed.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. "*et leur torna l'affaire à ennui*," and the affair began to annoy them.—This is a good sample of Caxton's "literal" translations.

<sup>5</sup> *Orig.* herfore.

<sup>6-6</sup> Fr. "*leurs ennemis s'estoient aperceuz qu'ilz se lassoient moult chèrement*," i. e. their enemies perceived that they were becoming seriously tried. Caxton has mistaken *se lassoient* (were becoming fatigued), for *laissoient* (were leaving).



to grete pryde. They mocqued<sup>r</sup> oure peple, & sayd to them many  
 fowle and shamefull wordes, and more asprely defended them self /  
 and hurted<sup>r</sup> thengyns. In moche feble poynt was the conduyt of  
 4 oure pylgryms. And yf ne had<sup>r</sup> be the debonayrte of oure lord<sup>r</sup> /  
 whiche by myracle comforted<sup>r</sup> them, like as ye shal here. ffro the  
 mount<sup>1</sup> of olyuet appiered a knyht whiche was not knowen ne  
 neuer myght be founden. This knyght began to shake and meue  
 8 his shelde, whiche was moche cleer and shynnyng. And made  
 signe to our peple that they shold now retorne,<sup>2</sup> and come agayne  
 to thassault / The Duc godeffroy was in his estage of the castel,  
 And eustace his broder with hym, for to deuyse and ordeyne there  
 12 that ought be don, & to kepe that holde whiche moch was good. as<sup>3</sup>  
 sone as he sawe this signe that this knyght made, he began to call  
 all thet peple agayn with a moch hye voys, & cryed & affermed that  
 yf they wold retorne the toun shold be taken / herof it happed that  
 16 by the debonayrte of oure lord<sup>r</sup>, whiche put in the hertes hardy-  
 nesse / In suche wyse that they cam agayn with so grete ioye,  
 as that euery man had<sup>r</sup> be in certayne of the vycторыe. So grete  
 4 hardynes was come in to their hertes / that they were entierly  
 20 refresshyd / as they that in al that day had suffred no trauaylle /  
 and one thyng happed whiche was grete meruaylle / ffor they that  
 were hurte peryllously / and<sup>5</sup> laye in theyr beddes / sprange vp  
 anon and reпрыsed<sup>r</sup> theyr harnoys and armes in suche wyse that  
 24 more dylygently and of greter herte than the other / [they] began to  
 assaylle. The Barons of thoost that were Capytayns of the people  
 for to gyue ensample to other men / put them self alway to fore /  
 where the grettest daungiers were / were founden the moost hye  
 28 men of thoost / by whiche the mene peple were the more hardy /  
 The wymmen that myght bere no armes ran with theyr pottes ful of  
 water thurgh thoost / and gaf to all them that were wery of assayl-  
 lyng to drynke / And moche admonested them by fayr wordes for  
 32 to doo wel / And to serue our lord vygorously. Oure pylgryms had<sup>r</sup>  
 so grete ioye in theyr hertes that they laboured and toke the werke  
 so hertely, that within the<sup>6</sup> space of half an hour they fylled the  
 dyche. And a barbycan, whiche was moche stronge / in suche wyse  
 36 that they brought the castel vnto the walle.<sup>7</sup> The turkes of the  
 toun had ganged, as I haue sayd, with cordes long pyeces of tymbre

The Turks  
mocked them  
with foul  
words.

At this  
moment a  
knight ap-  
peared on  
the Mt. of  
Olivet shak-  
ing a shining  
shield.

Our men now  
took heart,  
and renewed  
the assault.  
[\* If. 123, bk.]

The great  
barons ex-  
posed them-  
selves gal-  
lantly to the  
greatest  
dangers.

The men  
worked so  
diligently  
that in half-  
an-hour the  
ditch was  
filled.

<sup>1</sup> Orig. mouut.    <sup>2</sup> Orig. retorue.    <sup>3</sup> Orig. a5.    <sup>5</sup> Orig. aud.

<sup>6</sup> Fr. "l'espace d'une heure," within the space of an hour.

<sup>7</sup> Fr. "Et avoient prinse," omitted by Caxton in translating.

Two great  
pieces of  
timber were  
cut down  
from the  
walls,

which our  
men used to  
strengthen  
their castle.

a long the wall for to receyue the strokes of the stones / Emong all  
other there were two grete pyeces of tymbre moche longe, of whiche  
our men that were in the castel cutte the cordes in suche wyse that  
they fylle to the ground. They that were vnder toke them with 4  
grete perylle / and drewe them ner the castel for to helpe to staye  
and sette vnder the brydge of the castel whan it shold be aualed /  
ffor the side of the castel that shold be lete falle vpon the walle /  
was of feble tymbre / in suche wyse / that yf thyse two pyeces of 8  
tymbre had not be / the men of Armes mocht not haue passed  
on it.

How therle of tholouse assaylled vygorously toward  
the south & of thardaunt desire that eche man 12  
had to doo wel. ca<sup>o</sup> C lxxxiiij.

On the other  
side, the Earl  
of Toulouse

had brought  
his castle up  
to the wall.

[\* leaf 124]

The Chris-  
tians fought  
with great  
boldness and  
hardiness,

in the hope  
that our Lord  
would help  
His soldiers.

Hyles as they conteyned them thus vygorously in the partye  
toward the northeest / the erle of tholouse and the other that  
were with hym on the side toward the south assaylled there 16  
with grete strengthe: they had fylled a dyche, in whiche they had  
laboured, I wote not how many dayes, in suche wyse that by force  
they<sup>1</sup> had drawn theyr castel, so ferre forth that it was nyghe the  
walle / In suche wyse that they that were aboue<sup>2</sup> in the last stage,<sup>3</sup> 20  
myght smyte the turkes with their glaues that defended the tour.  
A man coude not thynke thardaunt desyre, ne so grete anguysshe  
as eueryche<sup>4</sup> of the cristen men had in his herte for to do wel in  
this assault / one thinge there was that gaf to them moche grete 24  
courage / And merueylously grete hardynesse / ffor a man that was  
an heremyte on the mount of olyuete had promysed to them moche  
certaynly / that that same daye shold be taken the holy cyte of  
Iherusalem. Ne they had not forgotten the demonstraunce that the 28  
knyght made to them / whan he shoke his shelde, ne neuer after  
was seen. they had moch hope of the vycторыe by thise signefy-  
aunces that were shewed to them. It semed that thassaultes were  
bothe in one poynt in eyther syde that I haue named. They dyde 32  
bothe right wel / And certaynly it appeered wel that oure lord wold  
helpe his souldyours, and brynge theyr pylgremage to an ende,  
whiche so longe had suffred so many maners of mesease for to doo  
to hym seruyse.

36

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* that they.

<sup>2</sup> *Fr.* "au derrenier estage," on the top story.

<sup>4</sup> *Orig.* eneryche.

Of the pryse and takynge of Iherusalem / And how  
the Duc godeffroy entred fyrst vpon the walles.  
And who folowed after. Capitulo Clxxxv°

- 4 t He people of the duc godeffroy and the other barons whiche  
were with hym, as I haue sayd, fought moche asprely ayenst  
theyr enemyes on theyr syde / & delyuerd to them a moch mar-  
ueyllous assault. They had don so moche that theyr enemyes  
8 wexed wery / and weryly and slowly defended them / <sup>1</sup>Oure men  
were drawn forth, and the dyches fylled, the barbycans taken, and  
in suche wyse they cam playn to the walles / ffor they within  
entremeted not moche, but launched and shotte vpon the walles<sup>1</sup> /  
12 The duc commaunded to his peple that were vpon the castel, that  
they sette fire in the pokes of coton & in the sackes of heye that  
henge on the walles / They dyde his commaundement / thenne  
aroos a smoke so blacke and so thynke that they myght nothyng  
16 see. The wynde was northeeste, and blew vpon the Turkes that  
were at defence vpon the walles, in suche wyse that they myght not  
opene theyr eyen ne theyr mowthes, But by force they muste  
avoyde the place that was delyuerd to them to deffende / The  
20 valyaunt Duc Godeffroye, whiche<sup>2</sup> soynously entended to the werke,  
apperceyued first that they were departed / thenne he commaunded  
that they shold drawe diligently the .ij/ pyeces of tymbre that were  
fallen fro the wall / as ye haue herd to fore / this was don anon, in  
24 suche wyse that the two endes of the two trees were leyd vpon the  
<sup>3</sup>castel, And the two other endes vpon the walle / Thenne com-  
maunded that the syde of the castel that myght be late down /  
shold be late down vpon the two pyeces of tymbre / And thus was  
28 the brydge made good and strong vpon the tymbre of theyr  
enemyes / The fyrst that entred and passed by the brydge vpon  
the walles was the Duc Godeffroy of boloyne / and Eustace his  
brother with hym. After thyse tweyne cam two other knyghtes /  
32 that were also bretheren, whiche also were fyers, noble & hardy.  
That one was named lutol, and that other gylbert. They were  
borne in tornay / Anon ther siewed them grete nombre of knyghtes

The Turks  
began to wax  
weary, and to  
defend them-  
selves slowly.

The Duke  
commanded  
fire to be set  
to the bales  
of cotton on  
the walls.

The Turks  
then had to  
withdraw.

[<sup>3</sup> If. 124, bk.]  
Godfrey now  
let down the  
bridge of the  
castle,

and passed  
over on the  
walls, fol-  
lowed by  
Eustace his  
brother.

<sup>1-1</sup> Fr. "*li nostre s'estoient tirez avant, les fosses avoient empliz, les barbecanes prises, si que de plein venoient aus murs; car ceulx dedans ne s'entremettoient mais guaires de traire, ne de lancer par dessus les murs, ne par les archieres.*" The last part of this sentence, Caxton has thoroughly misunderstood, and has completely inverted the sense.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *soigneusement*.

The Turke  
yielded the  
towers.

The Knights  
mount the  
walles, with-  
out waiting  
further  
orders.

All the great  
barons enter-  
ed the city,

and the gates  
are opened to  
everybody:

this happened  
on Friday,  
about noon.

[\* leaf 125]

and of peple a foote, whiche ranne moche thycke, as moche as they myght susteyne / Anon the turkes apperceyued that our men were entred in to the toun, and sawe the baner of the duc vpon the wallys. And were disconfyted and gaf ouer the toures, and descended 4 in to the toun, and put them in to the strait and narrow stretes for to defende them / Oure peple sawe that the duc and grete partye of the knyghtes were now entred / and that they had taken I wote not how many towres / they abode no commaundement, but adressyd 8 laddres to the walles and wente vp. It was commaunded a good whyle to fore that euery ij knyghtes shold haue a laddre, Therfor ther were grete nombre in thoost whiche anon were adressyd<sup>1</sup> vp. The duc ranne moche dilygently vpon the walles / and sette the 12 peple as they cam in the towres. he moche hasted for to take the fortresse. Anon, after that the duc was entred, entred in the duc of Normandy, Therle of ffaundes / Tancre the valyaunt, Therle of seynt poul / Bawdyn deltors,<sup>2</sup> Gace de barce<sup>3</sup> / Gaste de bedyers, 16 Thomas de fere / Gyralt de Roussylon / Lowys de Monco / Conam lybres / Therle Remboulte of Orenge, Conain de Montagu, Lambert his sone, and many other knyghtes whiche I can not name / whan the valyaunt Duc knewe certaynly that they were in the toun / he 20 called them, and commaunded that they shold goo hastily to the yate, named the yate of seynt Stephen / And that they shold opene it / whan it was open / Alle the people cam in with moche grete prees, In suche wyse that there abode but fewe withoute / But alle 24 were comen within the toun / This was vpon a frydaye, aboute None / It is a thyng for to be beleuyd, that oure lord dyde this by grete sygnefyauce, ffor on this daye and<sup>4</sup> about that hour suffred he deth on the crosse right cruel in the same place, for the Redemp- 28 cion of man. Therefore wold the swete lord that the peple of his trewe pylgryms shold<sup>5</sup> gete<sup>6</sup> this toun,<sup>7</sup> and delyuer it oute of the seruage and thraldom of the hethen men, and make it free vnto Cristen men, that his seruise myght be had therin and encreced. 32

Of the mayntenynge of our peple entred in to the toun toward the northeest / And therle of tholouse, herof alle ygnorant, assaylled alle way /  
ca° Clxxxvj° 36

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *directés*, i. e. set up.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *Baudoin de Ultorc*.

<sup>3</sup> Fr. *Gastes de Bearz*.

<sup>4</sup> *Orig. aud.*

<sup>5</sup> Fr. "*à ce jour*," on this day, omitted.

<sup>7</sup> *Orig. tonn.*

t He valyaunt duc godeffroy of buyllon / the knyghtes, and the  
 other men of armes that were with hym, descended fro the  
 walles all armed in to the toun / They wente to gydre thurgh the  
 4 stretes with their swerdes in their handes, & glayues, alle them that they mette they slewe & smote right down, men, wymmen and  
 childeren, sparyng none. There myght no prayers ne cryeng of mercy auaylle. They slewe so many in the stretes / that there were  
 8 heeps of dede bodyes, and myght not goo ne passe but vpon them that so laye deed. The foote men wente in the other partyes of  
 the toun by grete rowtes, holdyng in theyr handes grete polaxes,  
 swerdes, malles and other wepens, sleynge alle the turkes / that they  
 12 coude fynde / ffor thei were the men of the world whom our men had grettest hate vnto, and gladlyest wold put to deth / They were  
 thenne comen vnto the mydle of the Cyte. Therle of tholouse ne his men knewe nothyng yet that the toun was taken, but assaylled  
 16 moche fyersly the toun ayenst syon / The turkes that defended them ayenst hym apperceyued not that our peple were in the toun.  
 But whan the crye and the noyse of<sup>1</sup> them that men slowe began to growe / The turkes behelde and sawe fro the walles / And  
 20 knewe wel the baners and Armes of the cristen men, And were moche abasshed. They lefte alle theyr deffences, & fledde there where they supposed best to be saued, And by cause that the  
 dongeon of the toun whiche was by, and was the grettest strengthe  
 24 of the cyte, Alle they that myght entre entred therin / And shette faste the doores on them / The erle of tholouse made the brydge of  
 his castel auale vpon the walles / and entred there in the toun, he hym self / and the Erle of dye, yso[c]ar, remon pelet, guyllen de  
 28 sabram / the bisshop of albare / & the other barons moche hastily, & wende that they on that part of the toun had be the first that  
 had entred. thenne they wente doun of the walles / And alle the Turkes that they founde<sup>2</sup> in the <sup>3</sup>stretes and in the howses they  
 32 brought to deth and slewe down right / ffor than forthon myght none escape, ffor whan<sup>4</sup> they that fledde to fore Duc Godeffroye and his rowte, mette with other rowtes of oure peple, whiche smote  
 them down and slewe them without mercy / I may not reherce ne  
 36 can not to you the faites of euery man by hym self / But there was so moche blood shedde that the canellys and ruisseauls<sup>5</sup> ronne  
 alle of blood / and alle the stretes of the toun were couer<sup>6</sup> with blood.

All the inhabitants are slaughtered without mercy.

The Earl of Toulouse knew nothing as yet of the capture of the city,

but entered from this side, and met Godfrey's men in the middle of the city.

The streets ran with blood.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. "de ceux qu'on occioit," of those that were being killed.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. foude.

<sup>4</sup> superfluous.

<sup>5</sup> Fr. ruisseauls.

It had been  
a great pity,  
had they not  
been the  
enemies of  
our Lord.

dede men, In suche wyse that it was grete pyte for to see, yf it had  
not be of thenemyes of our lord Ihesu Creste.

How .x/ M. turkes were slayn in the temple / And of  
the grete tresour that Tancre founde in the sayd 4  
temple / ca° Clxxxvij°

Many fled to  
the inner  
Temple.

i N to thynner part of the temple were fledde moche grete peple  
of the toun / <sup>1</sup>by cause it was the moost seynorously and rial  
place of the toun.<sup>1</sup> And the sayd place was fast shette and closed 8  
with good walles / of towres and yates / But this auaylled them  
but lytil, ffor incontinent Tancre, which ladde a grete partye of  
thoost with hym / ranne theder and toke it by strengthe, and slewe  
many therin / And it was sayd that Tancre founde therin grete 12  
hauoyr / and gold / syluer, precious stones and cloth of sylk. He  
made alle to be born a way. But after, whan alle was sette in  
reste / he rendryd all / And made it al to be brought in to the  
comyn. The other barons, that had enscherched the toun / and slayn 16  
alle the turkes that they encountred, herd saye / that within the  
cloysture of the temple were fled alle the remenaunt of theyr  
enemyes / They alle cam to gydre theder / And founde that it was  
trewe. Thenne commaunded they to theyr men that they shold 20  
entre in to the place, and put them alle to deth. And so they  
dyde / It was wel couenable thyng that the hethen men and fals  
mysbyleuyd, whiche had fowled and shamefully had maculated  
with theyr mahometry and fowle lawe of machomet, shold aby 24  
there theyr fals rytes / And that theyr blood shold also be shedd,  
where as they had spred the ordure of mescreaunce. It was an  
hydeouse thyng to see the multitude of peple which were slayn in  
this place. They them self that had slayn hem were sore ennoyed 28  
so for to beholde them, ffor fro the plante of the foot vnto the heed  
was none other thyng but blood / Ther was founde that within the  
closyng of the temple we<sup>2</sup>re slayn .x/M/ turkes, withoute them  
that leye in the stretes and other places of the cyte. Thenne the 32  
mene peple of the pylgryms ran serchyng the lanes and narrow  
stretes. whan they fonde ony of the turkes that had hyd them,  
were it man or woman, anon he was put to deth / the barons had  
deuysed to fore that the toun was taken, that euery man shold haue 36  
the hows in the toun that he toke and fyrst seased / and it shold

Tancred  
followed,

and found  
therein great  
spoils.

[2 leaf 126]  
10,000 Turks  
were slaugh-  
tered in the  
enclosure of  
the temple.

<sup>1-1</sup> Lat. "*eo quod locus in parte urbis esse videretur secretior.*"

be his with alle appertenautes ; Wherfor it was so that the Barons sette vpon the howses that they had conquerd theyr baners / The lasse knyghtes and men of Armes theyr sheldes ; the men a foote  
 4 sette vp theyr hattes and theyr swerdes, ffor to shewe the tokenes, that the howses were therne taken and seased, to thende that none other shold come in to it.

The knyghts and barons took possession of the different houses.

Of the fayr ordenaunces that the Cristen men made  
 8 to fore they wente for to vnarme them, after the toun was taken / Capitulo Clxxxviii°

Han the holy Cyte was thus taken, and alle the sarasyns that w coude be founden were slayn, the barons assembled them to  
 12 gydre to fore they vnarmed them / and commaunded to sette men in the towres for to make good watche, and kepe the toun. And sette porters for to kepe the yates, that noman from without shold come in to the toun without leue vnto the tyme that they had  
 16 ordeyned and chosen a lord, by comyn acorde, that shold holde the toun, and gouerne<sup>1</sup> it at his wylle. It was not merueylle if they doubted<sup>2</sup> yet, ffor alle the countre was ful of sarasyns, And myght peradventure assemble and sodenly come and smyte in to the toun  
 20 yf ther were not good watche and hede taken. thenne departed the barons, and disarmed them and toke of theyr harnoyes in theyr hostellys / and wesshe theyr handes and feete moche wel / and chaunged theyr clothes / Thenne began they goo bare foot, and in  
 24 wepynges and teeres, vnto the holy places of the Cyte / where oure sauour Ihesu Criste had ben bodyly. they kyssed the place moche swetly where as his feet had touched / the Crysten peple and the clergie of the toun, to whom the turkes had many tymes  
 28 don grete shames for the name of Ihesu Criste, cam with procession / & bare suche relyquyes as they had ayenst the barons : and brought them, yeldyng thanks to Almyghty God, vnto the Sepulchre / and there it was a pytous thyng to see how the peple wepte for ioie  
 32 and pyte / And how they fylle doun a crosse to fore the sepulchre /  
<sup>3</sup>It semed to eueryche of them that eche sawe there the bodye of our<sup>4</sup> lord there deed. there were so many teeres and wepynges that euery man thought certaynly oure lord was there / whan they cam  
 36 in one of the holy places, they coude not departe, but yf it were for thardaunt desire that they had for to goo in another. They had so

The Christians now commenced to ordain the affairs of the city.

They all went in solemn procession to the holy places,

and fell down weeping before the Sepulchre.

[<sup>3</sup> If. 128, bk.]

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* gonerne.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* doubted.

<sup>4</sup> *Orig.* onr.

They had  
great joy that  
our Lord had  
suffered them  
to see this  
day.

They gave  
great gifts to  
the churches,

and thanked  
our Lord  
devoutly for  
his goodness.

Many of the  
pilgrims who  
had died on  
the way ap-  
peared to  
their com-  
rades.

[1 leaf 127]

moche ioye and gladnesse of this honour, that our lord had gyuen  
them the grace to see the day that the holy Cyte was delyuerd fro  
thenemyes of Ihesu Cryste by theyr trauaylles / in such wyse that  
they rought not ne sette not by the remenaunt of theyr lyues. 4  
They offred and gaf largely to the chirches, and to men of the  
chirche / and made vowes to yeue yeftes in their countrees, whiche  
thenne sette lytil by temporal thynges / ffor them thought that  
they were atte yates and entree of paradys, ffor neuer in this world 8  
myght gretter ioye entre in to the herte of a man / than was in  
them in sechyng and goyng to the holy places where our sauour  
Ihesu Criste had ben. One shold haue had a moch harde herte,  
and lytil pytous, that had seen this syght / and myght haue holde 12  
hym fro wepyng / whan thyse barons and alle the other peple had  
made thus glad chiere of this that they had accomplysshyd theyr  
pylgremage, The Bysshoppes, and generally alle the peple of the  
chirche, myght not departe fro the chirche of the sepulcre, ne fro 16  
the other holy places. They prayd our lord moche deuoutly and  
ententyfly for the peple, and rendred grete graces and thankynges  
vnto Ihesu Criste of this that he had suffered them to see thyse holy  
places, where the fayth of Cristendom was fyrst gyuen / In this 20  
daye happed certayn thyng that was seen of many men in the  
Cyte of Iherusalem, that was, the valyaunt man Aymart, the  
besshop of puy, whiche was dede in Anthyoche / lyke as ye haue  
herd to fore / many noble men whom men ought to byleue, affermed 24  
certaynly that they sawe hym first mounte and goo vpon the walles  
of the toun, & that he called other to come aftir hym / Of many  
other pilgryms also, that were to fore by the waye deed / It was  
certayne that they appiered to many / men the daye whan they 28  
vysyted the chirches of the Cyte. By thyse thynges may wel be  
knownen that our lord loueth this holy cyte aboue alle other, And  
that this is the hiest pylgremage that may be, whan deed men ben  
reysed by the wyll of oure lord for taccomplysshe theyr pyl- 32  
gremage / whan oure lord Ihesu Criste aroos fro deth to lyf, the  
gospel sayth that the same day aroos many bodyes of them that  
had ben deed, and appiered to many in the cyte / This myracle  
was renewed this day by Ihesu Criste, by this cyte whiche had 36  
ben longe holden in the seynorye of the paynems / whan it was  
vnder them that serued the lawe of machommet. So grete noyse  
was thurgh the toun of the ioye that was made, that they remem-  
bred not the grete trauaylle that they had suffered by alle theyr 40



waye / Thenne was accomplysshe<sup>d</sup> alle euydently this that the prophete sayd / <sup>1</sup>Enioye ye with Iherusalem / and<sup>t</sup> make ye ioie within them that ye loue.<sup>1</sup>

Then was accomplished the saying of the prophet.

4 How the Cristen men, that had charged their message  
for their delyueraunce to peter theremyte, knewe  
hym / ca<sup>o</sup> Clxxxix<sup>o</sup>

a S many pour cristen men as had dwellid in the toun / which  
8 had<sup>t</sup> seen Peter theremyte four or fyue yere to fore / whan  
they delyuer<sup>d</sup> to hym lettres for to bere to our holy fader the pope,  
and<sup>t</sup> to the barons of ffraunce / to thende that they myght sette<sup>2</sup>  
remedye for theyr affayres, they knewe hym emonge the other.  
12 thenne they cam to hym, and<sup>t</sup> fyl doun<sup>3</sup> to his feet and wepte for  
ioie / And moche gretely thanked hym of this that he had<sup>t</sup> so wel  
performed his message, ne they cessed not to yeue preysyng and  
lawde to our lord that had gyuen suche counseyl to the barons and<sup>t</sup>  
16 to the peple, by which they had performed such an hye werke,  
which was aboue the hope of alle men, sauf by thayde of oure lord /  
Alle the gree and thanke they gaf to Peter theremyte, whiche so  
vygorously had enterprysed<sup>t</sup> for to delyuere them by thelpe of our  
20 lord fro the caytyfnes and<sup>t</sup> seruage dolorous, in whiche they had ben  
so long holden by the cruelte of the sarasyns, lyke as ye haue herd  
to fore. The Patriarke of Iherusalem was goon in to Cypres / for  
to demannde Almesse and ayde of the cristen men there, for to  
24 helpe and socoure the cristen men of Iherusalem to paye the cruel  
taillages that the turkes had sette vpon them, ffor he doubted yf  
they faylled<sup>t</sup> of their payment / that they wold<sup>t</sup> bete and throwe  
doun theyr chirches or put to deth the beste of theyr peple, lyke as  
28 they had don many tymes / to fore. This good man, the Patriarke,  
knewe nothyng of this good auenture that oure lord had don of the  
delyueraunce of the toun / But supposed<sup>t</sup> to haue come and<sup>t</sup> to haue  
fouden<sup>4</sup> it in suche seruage as it was whan he departed.

The poor Christians of Jerusalem recognize Peter the Hermit, and give thanks to him who has delivered them by his energy.

The Patriarch of Jerusalem was in Cyprus, and

knew nothing of what had happened.

32 How they clensed the toun of the dede bodyes / Of  
many other ordenaunces.<sup>5</sup> And how the turkes [<sup>c</sup> lf. 127, bk.]

1—1 Mistranslation: Fr. "*esjoyez-vous avec Jerusalem, et faites joye dedans, ceulx qui l'aimes,*" Lat. "*Laetamini cum Hierusalem, et exsultate in ea omnes qui diligitis eam.*"

<sup>2</sup> Orig. sette.

<sup>3</sup> Orig. donn.

<sup>4</sup> Orig. fouden.

rendred the dongeon vnto the erle of tholouse.

Capitulo Clxxxx<sup>o</sup>

After the  
barons had  
visited the  
Holy Places  
they met  
together,

w Han the barons and the other pylgryms had made theyr  
prayers and vysyted the holy chirches thurgh the Cyte of 4  
Iherusalem / The hye men of the hoost assembled, and sayd that it  
was a peryllous thyng yf the toun were not voyded of the dede  
bodies, and purged of the blood and ordure. ffor in short tyme the  
ayer shold be corrupt / by whiche sekenesse and Infyrmytes myght 8  
ensiewe and folowe / There were somme turkes yet that were not  
slayn, but were kepte in yrons. to them was commaunded this  
werke for to bere the bodies out of the toun / but by cause they  
were but fewe of them / and myght not suffyse to doo it shortly. 12  
they toke the poure men of thoost / and gaf to them good hyre for  
to helpe taccomplysshe this werke / whan the barons had this  
deuyse, they wente in to theyr howses and made  
moche grete ioye / they gaf largeli to ete & drynke / ffor the toun 16  
was replenished of alle goodes, in suche wise that they were to fore  
poure fonde in the howses alle thyng that was nedeful to them,  
wherof they had endured to fore grete anguysshe and penurye, ffor  
they fonde the cysternes alle ful in alle the howses. On the thyr<sup>d</sup> 20  
day was ordeyned that market shold be holden in the toun / And  
that they shold bye and selle suche thynges as they had conquerd  
in the Cyte. They were moche refresshyd and rested, ffor<sup>1</sup> they  
abode now no trauayll. They forgate not our lord, whiche had 24  
brought them in so grete honour as for taccomplysshe his werke by  
them / And by comyn acord of the prelates, of the barons, and of  
alle the people was ordeyned, that this daye, in whiche Iherusalem  
was goten and conquerd, shold euermore after be holden feste and 28  
holy day / in remembraunce of the cristen men to thanke and preyse  
our lord / and also praye to our lord for the sowles of them that  
thyse thynges had accomplysshed. A grete partye of the turkes  
that were in the dongeon of the toun named the tour dauid<sup>2</sup> / sawe 32  
wel that alle the cyte was taken / And that they had [no] more hope  
of rescows ne socour ayenst our men. Therfor they requyred by  
messagers therle of tholouse whiche was next to them / And dyde do  
be sayd to hym, yf they myght departe with theyr wyues, children, 36  
and suche goodes as they had in the tour / they wold go theyr waye /

and set about  
cleansing the  
town lest a  
pestilence  
arise.

On the third  
day they held  
a market to  
dispose of  
their spoils.

Some Turkes  
who were  
still in the  
dungeon of  
the Tower  
David sur-  
rendered,

<sup>1</sup> Fr. "*car ilz n'atendoient mais nul travail*," for they did not expect any more trouble and work.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. dauid.

and delyuere<sup>1</sup> ouer the tour / he agreed and acorded it to them. and were given a safe conduct of the city.  
 And<sup>2</sup> so they departed / And he dyde them to be conduyted saufly [2 leaf 128]  
 vnto Escalonne. Thus was the tour yolden / They that had the  
 4 charge for to purge and voyde the dede bodyes oute of the toun  
 dyde it ententyfly and dilygently / in suche wyse that in shorte In a short time the city was well cleaned.  
 tyme this thyng was alle don. ffor they beryed them in depe  
 pyttes withoute the toun the moost parte / The remenaunt they  
 8 brente in to ashes, that the cendres with the wynde was blown  
 away. Thenne were our men in good sewrte and ease within the  
 toun to goo and walke thurgh the stretes and other places, and dyde  
 dayly goo in pylgremages, that vnnethe myght they departe thens,  
 12 They abode so gladly there. In this manere, as ye haue herd, was In this manner was taken Jerusalem on Friday, the 15th of July, 1099.  
 taken the holy cyte of Iherusalem. In the yere of thyncarnacion of  
 oure sauour Ihesu criste / M.lxxxxix. the .xv / daye of the moneth  
 of Iuyll on a fryday at the hour of none / The / iij. yere after that  
 16 the pylgryms had enterprysed this viage. Tho was pope of Rome  
 Urban, And Henry Emperour of the Romainys. Alexis emperour  
 of Constantynople, And phylp kyng of ffrance.

Howe the hye barons of thoost assembled for to chese  
 20 a kynge of Iherusalem, And thoppynyng of the  
 clergie vpon the same. Capitulo. Clxxxj:

1 Yke as ye haue herd, the pylgryms whiche had grete nede of  
 reste soiourned in the toun. The barons deuysed the affaires The barons arranged the affairs of the town.  
 24 of the cyte. In moche grete ioye were they there vij dayes / On  
 the viij daye assembled alle the barons for to chese one of them, On the eighth day they assembled to choose a king.  
 to whome the garde, gouernaunce / and kepyng of the toun shold  
 be delyuerd, and the seynorye of the holy cyte, and the charge of  
 28 the Royamme entierly / as it was reason and right. They made  
 theyr prayers and orysons, And with alle theyr herte called the  
 holy ghooste, that he wold counseylle them that daye, and to yeue  
 to them grace to chese suche a man as were worthy and couenable  
 32 to susteyne the faytes<sup>3</sup> of the Royamme /. whyles as they were in  
 this affayre, and moche entended with good fayth ther about, An  
 hepe of clerkes assembled, whiche had not good entencion, but  
 thought on malyce by pryde and couetyse / They cam where as the  
 36 barons were assembled, And sente to them for to speke to them a  
 short word or two / They suffred them to come in. whan they were

There was a meeting of the clerks at the same time, with a bad intent.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* delynere.

<sup>3</sup> *Fr. fais*, i. e. the responsibility, burden,

comen in / One of them spak in this manere / "Fayr lordes, we  
 [1 ff. 128, bk.] haue vnderstanden / that ye be assembled here for <sup>1</sup>to chese a kyng  
 that shal gouerne this londe, whiche thyng plesith vs moche. And  
 we holden it for right wel don / yf ye doo it in the manere that ye 4  
 ought to doo it, ffor without doubte the spyrituel thynges be more  
 digne and worthy than the temporall / Therefore we saye to you,  
 that the moost hye thynges ought to goo to fore / And thus wolde  
 we that ye shold doo / And thordenaunce shold not go forth other 8  
 wyse than it ought to be. Now thenne we praye you and requyre  
 you in the name of oure lord, that ye entremete not you to make a  
 kyng / til that we haue chosen a patriarke in this toun that can  
 gouerne the cristiente. yf it plesse you that this be don fyrst, it shal 12  
 be good and weel for you. And we shal thenne holde hym for  
 kyng that ye shal gyue to us. but if ye wylle do otherwyse / we  
 shal not holde it for good, ne wel don / But we shal discorde / And  
 after that ye doo shal not be ferme" / This worde semed outward to 16  
 haue <sup>2</sup>somme apparence of weel / But it cam of euyl purpoos. Ther  
 was therin but deceyt and trecherye / Of this complot / and barate /  
 was mayster & capytayne, a bisshop of Calabre, born of a Cyte /  
 whiche was named lamane.<sup>3</sup> This bisshop acorde<sup>4</sup> moche to one 20  
 Arnold, (33) of whome I haue spoken to fore, whiche was ful of des-  
 loyalte. he was not yet subdeken, and was a preestes sone, and of  
 so euyl and fowl lyf / that the boyes and garsons had made songes  
 of hym thurgh thoost. and yit not with stondynge alle this the 24  
 bisshop of Calabre, ayenst god and reson, wolde haue made hym  
 patriark, ffor they knewe ouermoeche euyl, therfor were they both  
 acorded to gyder.<sup>4</sup> They had made a bargain bytwene them that as  
 sone as this Arnold shold be patriarke the sayd bisshop shold haue 28  
 tharchbissoprych of bethlehem. But oure lord ordeyned this thyng  
 in another maner as ye shal here / Ther were in thoost many clerkes  
 of euyll contenaunce, that lytle entended to the seruyse of our<sup>5</sup> lord,  
 they litil preysed relygyon and honneste / ffor syth the tyme that 32  
 the valyaunt bysshop of puy was dede, which was legat of our holy  
 fader the pope, the bisshop william of Orenge was in his place,  
 whiche was a relygyous<sup>6</sup> man, and moche doubted<sup>7</sup> our lord / but

They sent  
word to the  
barons that a  
patriarch  
should be  
chosen before  
a king,

if not, they  
would not  
accept the  
new king.

Arnold and  
the Bishop of  
Calabria had  
made a bar-  
gain between  
them

that Arnold  
should be  
patriarch of  
Jerusalem,  
and the other  
the Arch-  
bishop of  
Bethlehem,

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *apparence de bien*.

<sup>3</sup> Caxton's text gives *Laturane*; the correct reading is *Maturane*. Lat. *Marturanensis*. See p. 284, l. 2.

<sup>4</sup> Orig. *gydr*.

<sup>5</sup> Orig. *onr*.

<sup>6</sup> Orig. *relygyons*.

<sup>7</sup> Orig. *donbted*.

he abode not longe after / <sup>1</sup>but was deed in suche wyse lyke as ye  
 haue herd<sup>1</sup> / Thenne was the clergie without pastour and garde /  
 And lete them falle in euyll lyf / The Bisshop of Albare conteyned<sup>2</sup> Many of the  
 clergy led an  
 evil life on  
 this pilgrim-  
 age.  
 4 hym holyly in this pylgremage, And somme other that were noble.  
 But the comyn of the clerkes made it alle ylle.

<sup>2</sup>How the duc Godeffroy was chosen kyng of Iheru- [2 leaf 129]  
 salem, and how he was presented to our lord in  
 8 his chirche of the holy sepulcre.

capitulo Clxxxxij<sup>o</sup>

t He wordes that the Clerkes had brought to the barons in theyr  
 electyon was not moche preysed, but aretete it to grete folye / The barons  
 paid no atten-  
 tion to the  
 message of  
 the clerke,  
 12 ne therfore letted not to doo that they had bygonnen. To thende  
 thenne that they myght knowe the better the couynes of alle the  
 barons. they ordeyned wyse men that shold enserche the lyf of  
 eueryche of them and the maners. They dyde do come to fore  
 16 them suche men as were moost pryue of the barons / and toke eche  
 of them a parte by the leue of theyr lordes. And toke of them  
 theyr othes to saye the trouthe of that they shold be examyned that but investi-  
 gated the  
 lives of the  
 different  
 barons to  
 find a suit-  
 able man for  
 king.  
 20 fayllynge of the trouthe. Thus it was acorde emonge them. It  
 was a grete thyng whan the lordes abandouned them self tensesche  
 theyr lyues / But the wyse men that made this enquest were trewe  
 men, and helde alle thyng secrete that as ought not to be knowen /  
 24 Many thynges were sayd to them of whiche they toke but lytil  
 hede. Emonge alle other thynges they that were moost pryuee of  
 the duc Godeffroye / whan they were demaunded of his maners and  
 his tetches,<sup>4</sup> they answerd that he had one manere right greuouse and The only  
 complaint of  
 Duke Godfrey  
 was that he  
 was too fond  
 of church  
 going.  
 28 ennoyous, ffor whan he herd masse and the seruyse of oure lorde,  
 he coude not departe out of the chirche, but sente after payntours  
 & glasyers(34) vnto the clerkes & gouernours<sup>5</sup> of the churches / he  
 herd gladly the ryngyng of the belles, and <sup>6</sup>entendeth moche yf  
 32 they discorded / so long that it / displeyd<sup>6</sup> moche to his felawship

<sup>1-1</sup> Caxton has here omitted several words, owing to his obscure French text, which was unintelligible. A. gives the correct version, "*ainz fu morz; Enterrez fu en l'eglise de Marran, si comme vos oistes*," but he died. He was buried, as you have heard, in the church of Marran. <sup>3</sup> *Orig.* lesyuge.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. *tetches*, qualities, characteristics.

<sup>5</sup> *Orig.* gonernours.

<sup>6-6</sup> Fr. "*et trop y entendoit tellement que mainte foyz desplaisoit*," and spent so much time in this way, that often he displeased, etc.

When the  
good men  
heard that  
this was his  
greatest vice  
they were  
much pleased.

After some  
talk about  
the Earl of  
Toulouse,

they all  
agreed upon  
Godfrey of  
Boulogne.

and seruauntes. And oftymes his mete appayred by cause of his  
long<sup>1</sup> taryeng in the monasteryes and holy places / whan the wyse-  
men herd this, and that this was the grettest vyce that coude be  
founiden in the duc. they had moche grete ioie / ffor they thought  
wel that he dyde this for the loue of oure fayth and for thonour of  
our sauour / whan they had herd alle that they wold enquire of  
the Barons / they spak to gydre / And grete partye of them were  
acorded upon therle of tholouse, if it had not be for one thyng / 8  
ffor alle they of his countre, that were moost pryue with hym,  
thought that yf he were chosen kyng that he shold abyde there  
and reteyne the peple of his countrey. And yf he were not chosen  
he shold sone retorne in to his countrey fro whens he cam / and 12  
[<sup>2</sup> If. 129, bk.] that desyred they moche. Therfore men wene that they were  
forsworn wyllingly, And sayde vpon hym somme euyl tatches of  
whiche he had no blame / Neuertheles he had neuer Intencion to  
retourne to his londe, as it appered after / ffor euer after he abode 16  
in the seruyse of our lord, whiche he had enterprysed / whan the  
barons herde all the tetches after many wordes they acorded al vpon  
Godeffroy of boloyne / And named hym to be kyng / and was lad  
with alle the peple with grete ioie vnto the chirche of the holy 20  
sepulcre / And presented to oure lorde. Euery man was glad grete  
and smal / ffor he was the man that had the hertes of alle the  
comyn peple.

How the duc godeffroy, after his election, requyred 24  
therle of tholouse that he shold delyuer to hym  
the tour dauid. ca. Clxxxxiiij.

In this  
manner was  
Godfrey  
chosen King  
of Jerusalem.

i N this maner was the duc godeffroy chosen to be kyng, and  
lord of the holy Cyte of Iherusalem. Therle of tholouse helde 28  
the grettest<sup>3</sup> fortresse of the toun, whiche was called the tour dauyd /  
The turkes had delyuerd<sup>4</sup> it to hym lyke as ye haue herd to fore /  
It is sette in the hiest parte of the Cyte toward the weste, strongly  
walled with square stones, and ther on men may see ouer al the 32  
Cyte entierly. whan the Duc sawe this tour was not in his power,  
It semed to hym that he had not the seynorye / whan the grettest  
fortresse of alle the countre was not in his possession. Therfor he  
demaunded therle of tholouse, in the presence of the barons, & 36  
prayd hym debonayrly that he wold delyuer it to hym. Therle

He demanded  
immediately  
that the Earl  
of Toulouse  
should give  
up his tower  
which he  
held;

<sup>1</sup> Orig. long.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. gttestest.

<sup>4</sup> Orig. delynerd.

answer<sup>1</sup> that he had<sup>2</sup> conquerd<sup>1</sup> it, and thenemyes of oure lord had  
yolden it to hym / And therfor he helde it / But he had concluded  
to goo in to his countre at ester / And thenne he wold delyuer it  
4 with a good wyll. But in the mene whyle he / wold kepe it / who promised  
to make it  
over to God-  
frey when he  
should start  
for home.  
This requyred he for to be more honoured, and in the gretter surete.  
The duc ansuerd playnly, that yf he had<sup>2</sup> not the toure / he wold  
leue all, ffor how myght he be lord of the countre whan another  
8 had gretter power and gretter strengthe in his londe than he.  
Thus<sup>2</sup> were they in debate. The Duc of Normandy and therle of  
fflaundes<sup>3</sup> helde with the duc godeffroy / Of the other barons ther  
were<sup>4</sup> that counseyllid, that he shold doo his wil with therle of  
12 tholouse.<sup>4</sup> They of therles countre<sup>5</sup> attysed and counseyllid hym  
that he shold not leue the tour, by cause<sup>6</sup> they wolde gyue hym  
occasion by<sup>7</sup> this discorde to retorne in to his countre / Atte laste [7 leaf 130]  
they acorded<sup>2</sup> that the fortresse shold be put in the hande of the  
16 bysshop of Albare vnto the tyme that they were acorded what shold<sup>2</sup>  
be doo therin. whan he had it / within a short tyme after he  
delyuerd it to the duc. It was demaunded<sup>2</sup> hym why he had<sup>2</sup> so  
delyuerd<sup>2</sup> it / Thenne he answerd<sup>2</sup> that it was taken from hym by  
20 force. It was not knowen for trouthe whether it was taken from  
hym by constraynt / or yf he delyuerd it with his gree and wyll.  
whan therle of tholouse sawe this / he was moche angry. <sup>8</sup>And<sup>2</sup>  
hym semed<sup>2</sup> that the barons were not wel content with hym lyke as  
24 they ought to be,<sup>8</sup> consydering that by the way he had<sup>2</sup> don to  
them many grete bountees and good seruysys, whiche they remembryd  
not, as it was sayd / ffor desdayne herof, And by atyement that  
his knyghtes made to hym, he enterprysed<sup>2</sup> to retourne in to his  
28 countre,<sup>9</sup> And descended<sup>2</sup> vnto the ffloime Jordan / And there bayned<sup>2</sup>  
hym / After he ordeyned his affayre for to departe out of the londe. Finally God-  
frey got pos-  
session of the  
tower.

Of a Patriark chosen and elect in Iherusalem / And  
how ther was founden a part of the very crosse.

32

Capitulo Clxxxiiiij.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* conquerd.<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* Thns.<sup>3</sup> *Orig.* ffannndres.<sup>4-4</sup> Fr. "*Qui conseilloyent que l'en feist la volenté au conte de Toulouse.*"<sup>5</sup> *Orig.* countre.<sup>6</sup> *Orig.* canse.<sup>8-8</sup> "*Lui fut avis que les barons ne s'estoient pas contentz vers lui, comme ilz devoient,*" viz., it was his opinion that the barons had not behaved towards him as they should.<sup>9</sup> *Orig.* countre.

The Bishop  
of Maturane  
stirred up  
discord be-  
tween the  
barons and  
the people.

Arnold was  
chosen  
Patriarch of  
Jerusalem.

A part of the  
true cross is  
found.

Then was  
there great  
rejoicing.

t His euyl man of whom I haue spoken to fore / the bisshop of  
maturane, was ful of grete malyce and of desloyalte / And  
payned hym moche in alle maners to sette discorde bytwene the  
Barons and the people / ffor they sayde / that the Barons wold not 4  
suffre that a patriark shold be chosen by cause they helde the rentes  
of the chirche / And wold not delyuer them / he fonde moche peple  
that byleuyd hym and acorded to hym, in suche wyse that by  
thayde of them / ayenst the wyll of other / & also by thayde of 8  
the duc of normandye / to whom he was moche pryue / & had be  
at his table in all this werk, he chose for patriark this arnold that  
was his felaw in alle euyl condicions / & by force they sette hym  
in the seete of the patriarche in the chirche of the sepulcre / This 12  
was ayenst reason & ayenst alle right / Therfore it happed ne fyll  
not wel to hym ne to that other / Thenne it happed that a parte of  
the very Crosse was founden in therthe by the Chirche of the  
sepulcre in a secrete place / ffor the cristen men that were in the 16  
[1 ff. 139, bk.] toun to fore it was taken, in so grete meschyef as ye haue herd,  
doubted that the turkes wold haue taken it fro them. Therfore  
had they hyd it moche surely, and fewe knewe of it. But a good  
man, a suryen, whiche that knewe it / discouerid it to the barons. 20  
And whan they had doluen and dygged a good whyle / they fonde  
it in a cheste<sup>2</sup> of syluer, lyke as he had to them sayd and deuysed.  
Thenne was the ioye moche grete / and they bare it a procession in  
syngyng vnto the temple. all the peple wente after, which wepte 24  
for pyte, As moch as if they had seen our sauour Ihesu criste yet  
hangynge on the crosse / They alle helde them for moche recom-  
forted of this grete tresour<sup>3</sup> that our lord had thus discoueryd.

How the duc godeffroy payned hym to amende the 28  
Royamme of his good constitucions and estatutes.

c<sup>o</sup>. Clxxxxv.

All were  
delighted  
that Godfrey  
was chosen  
king.

g Rete ioye was it thurgh the londe of this, that the valyaunt  
duc godefroy was chosen kyng. Alle they obeyed hym with 32  
good herte. he amended dylygently alle the discordes thurgh the  
londe, And alle the other thynges that had nede of amendement, in  
suche wyse that his power grewe fro day to day moche appertely /  
Of hym shal I saye in shorte wordes the very trouthe / he regned 36  
not but one yere / and that was moche grete dommage / ffor he had

<sup>2</sup> Fr. "*chasse d'argent*," i. e. reliquary of silver.

<sup>3</sup> Orig. *tesour*.



- the wyllle, wytte, and power to doo grete good in the Royamme for  
 tenfeble thenemyes of oure lord Ihesu Crist, and for tenhaunce and  
 exalte the Cristen fayth / But our lord called hym fro this world to  
 4 hym, to thende that the malyce of it shold not chaunge his herte in  
 thonour wherin he was / he was born in the Royamme of Fraunce  
 at boloyne vpon the see / whiche was somtyme a Cyte / And nowe  
 it is but lytil more than a castel. he cam of hye and noble folke  
 8 and good crysten peple. his fader was named eustace, noble &  
 puyssaunt erle in that countre, whiche had doon many hye werkes  
 & bountees vnto our lord & noble werkes vnto the world / his  
 moder was a noble lady of gentillesse / more noble of herte than of  
 12 hyenes of lygnage. She was named yde, & was suster to the duc  
 of Loreyne, whiche was named godeffroy bouce. he deyde withoute  
 heyer. Therfor he lefte alle the duchye and the Countreye to his  
 neuewe whiche bare his name, And adopted hym in to sone and  
 16 heyr / Therefore he was duc of Loreyne whan <sup>1</sup>his vncler was deed /  
 he had thre brethren, whiche were moche wise men and good  
 knyghtes / and also moch fathful and trewe / That one was Bawd-  
 wyn, therle of Rages / whiche after hym was kyng of Iherusalem /  
 20 The second was named Eustace, whiche bare the name of his fader,  
 And was Erle of boloyne / The kyng Stephen of Englonde toke his  
 doughter to wyf, whiche was namde Maulde.<sup>2</sup> The barons of  
 Surye sente for this Eustace for to make hym kyng after the deth  
 24 of his broder bawdwyn, whiche deyde withoute heyer. But he  
 wold not goo / ffor he doubted the barats & discordes of the londe  
 whiche he knewe wel. The fourth broder was william, a good  
 knyght and a trewe. <sup>3</sup>ne he discorde not in the bounte of his  
 28 bretheren<sup>3</sup> / Bawdwyn and Eustace folowed theyr lord and broder  
 in the pylgremage to Iherusalem. the fourth broder guylliam abode  
 in his countre for to kepe the londe. Alle the four bretheren were  
 of moche grete valeur. But the duc Godeffroye lyke he was the  
 32 oldest, so bare he awaye the prys and auantage of the other / as he  
 that was ful of vertues, of bountes, and was moche noble and right-  
 ful withoute couetyse / he dredde and louyd oure lord aboue alle  
 thyng / he honoured relygyous men and good, he was moche ferme  
 36 and constant of his worde / he despyset merueyllously bobaunces,  
 pompes / and dishonestees, and hated them / he was in almesse

He was a  
man of great  
wit and will  
and power.

He was born  
at Boulogne  
in France.

He was his  
uncle's heir  
to the Duchy  
of Lorrain.

[<sup>1</sup> leaf 131]

He had three  
brothers,  
Baldwin,

Eustache,

and William,

but Duke  
Godfrey had  
the finest  
character of  
the four.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *Mahaut*, Lat. *Mahaldem*.

<sup>3-3</sup> Fr. "*ne se discordait mie à la bonte des ses frères*," i. e. he was just as good as his brothers.

He prayed  
long with  
many tears.

He was great  
of body, hand-  
some, and  
well skilled  
in arms.

large and plentyuous,<sup>1</sup> gladly he herd the seruyse of our lord, and moche wel vnderstonde it. And in his prayers and orysons prayeng our lord / he was right longe / And fylle ofte in wepyng haboundantly teeris. And vnto alle men he was pytous and amynable. By 4 this it semed wel that oure lord louyd hym, wherof he was worthy to haue the grace of the world. And so he had certainly / he was grete of body, not of the grettest<sup>2</sup> / But of mene gretnesse, more stronge than an other man / his armes grete and wel<sup>3</sup> quartred, the 8 breste moche brode and large, and vysage wel made and coloured, heeris aboutne<sup>4</sup> / And in his harnoyis and armes wel enducte and acustomed, that it semed that hit greued ne coste hym nothyng to to bere them.

12

Of the sayeng of the countesse of boloyne, moder of the sayd duc, that she sayde of her thre oldest sones was verified. Capitulo Clxxxvj.

o Ne thyng<sup>5</sup> is sayd for trouth. And it happed in the tyme of 16 the yongthe of thyse four bretheren, whiche ought not to be

[<sup>5</sup> If. 131, bk.]  
The mother  
of these four  
brothers  
was a holy  
woman.

leste vnremembryd ne forgotten / The Moder of thyse four<sup>5</sup> bretheren of whom I haue spoken, was an holy woman / and entendable to good werkes. It was nothyng merueylle though oure lord spak 20 by her mouth a propheeye, ffor it happed on a daye that her thre oldest sones, whiche were yong and smale, pleyde eche with other / And as they chaced eche other in theyr playe / alle thre fledde vnto theyr moder / where she satte / and hydde them vnder her mantel / 24 Theyr fader Eustace cam there where the lady was, And he sawe her mantel meue, where the childeren playde vnder it / he demaunded the lady what it was. She answerd that she had thre grete prynces / The fyrst of them shold be a duc, The second 28 sholde be a kyng, And the thyrde an Erle. ffor Godeffroye was / duc<sup>6</sup> of<sup>7</sup> Loreyne after his vncl, And had also after the Royamme of Iherusalem. But he was neuer crowned, ne wold not be callyd kyng. The second was bawdwyn, whiche had after hym the sayd 32 Royamme, and was crowned / The thyrde was Eustace, which after the deth of his fader was erle of boloygne. now late vs retorne for

As they  
played  
around her  
one day,  
she prophe-  
sied that the  
first should  
be a Duke,  
the second a  
King, and  
the third an  
Earl.

<sup>1</sup> Orig. plentyuous.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. "mais de moyenne grandeur."

<sup>3</sup> Fr. "bras avoit gros et quarrez." Quarrez signifies literally square, i. e. stout, not well quartered.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. blons, blond.

<sup>6</sup> Orig. dnc.

<sup>7</sup> Orig. ef.

to speke of the valyaunt Duc Godeffroy, ffor moche honour<sup>1</sup> may be sayd of hym / And also of the valyaunces don by hym.

Much honour may be said of Duke Godfrey.

Of the wagynge of a bataylle that was bytwene<sup>2</sup> the

4 duc godeffroy and an hye baron of Almayne.

ca<sup>o</sup>. Clxxxxvij<sup>o</sup>.

e Mong<sup>3</sup> all other hye feetes that he dyde, I shal recoun-  
 you one withoute lesynge / hit was so certaynly that one of  
 8 the hiest barons of Almayne, a grete and strong knyght / valyaunt  
 and noble, <sup>4</sup>siewed the duc godeffroy, whiche was his cosyn, in  
 plee<sup>4</sup> in the court of themperour of Almayne / to whom they were  
 men both two. This man demaunded of duc godeffroy grete parte  
 12 of his londe that he helde in the duchye of Loreyne. And this  
 baron sayd that it was his right, & apperteyned to hym. So longe  
 wente the plee forth by dayes & respytes, that they of the court  
 iuged that it shold be determyned by wagynge of the bataylle, &  
 16 named to them a day to fyght for it. At the daye named they  
 cam in to the felde Armed and aparaylled of that they ought to  
 haue / Thenne Bissshops and good men laboured moche, And other  
 Barons that were there payned them moche, for to seke moyen and  
 20 manere how the pees myght be made / And shewde to them how  
 they were of<sup>5</sup> one blood and lynnage, And that they ought<sup>6</sup> to  
 deporte them tenterpryse thyng of whiche muste nedes falle to  
 one of them shame & dishonour.<sup>6</sup> They payned them moche, one  
 24 & other / but in no manere coude they fynde the peas to be made  
 bytwene them / Thenne began the bataylle bytwene thyse two  
 barons moche fiers and sharp, ffor they were bothe good and strong  
 knyghtes. They smote to gydre right vygorously / This bataylle  
 28 endured so long that the valyaunt duc godeffroy smote that other  
 so grete a strook with his swerde that it flewe in pyeces / In suche  
 wyse that there abode nomore in his hande therof but half a foote  
 longe aboute the crosse of the swerde / The barons that behelde the  
 32 felde, sawe how the duc<sup>7</sup> had broke his swerde and had the werse,  
 & were moche sory & wroth therof / And cam to themperour, &

He had a dispute with a high baron of Germany about part of his heritage.

They decided to settle it by single combat,

[<sup>5</sup> leaf 182]

which was fought fiercely and vigorously until Godfrey broke his sword.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* honour.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* lytwene.

<sup>3</sup> *Orig.* Moug.

<sup>4-4</sup> Fr. "*tira en plait*," i. e. brought suit against him.

<sup>5</sup> *Orig.* ef.

<sup>6-6</sup> Fr. "*et quilz s'en deportassent d'entreprendre chose parquoy il convenist que l'ung*," etc.—misunderstood by Caxton.—It should have been translated, "and that they should desist from undertaking an affair in which one or the other would be brought to shame."

<sup>7</sup> *Orig.* dnc.

Some friends  
then arranged  
for a compro-  
mise,  
but Godfrey  
was not  
satisfied, and  
continued the  
combat with  
his broken  
sword,

and thus  
disabled van-  
quished his  
adversary.

And then as  
a victor ac-  
cepted the  
terms which  
he had  
thought dis-  
honourable  
when van-  
quished.

they prayd hym swetly that he wold suffre that <sup>1</sup>they myght comene of the peas bytwene them<sup>1</sup> / he graunted it gladly / The frendes spak to gydre and acorded vnto a peas, whiche was ynowgh resonable. But they lefte somewhat of the dukes right / whan they brought this acorde and pees to them / The Duc in no wyse wold here herof, But<sup>2</sup> began the bataylle more cruel and fiers than it was to fore / That other that had his swerd hool, doubted ne fered not moche the strokes of the duc, whiche had but a tronchon<sup>3</sup> / but ranne vpon the duc and oppressid hym that he had no leyzer to reste hym, til the duc began to thynke and to take herte / Thenne lie dressyd hym on his steroppes / And smote his aduersarye with the pommelle of his swerde that he helde / vpon the lyfte temple suche a strook thurgh the helme that he fyl down astonyed, that it semed that he was deed / ffor he remeuyd no foote ne hande / Thenne the noble duc a lyght down and descended fro his hors / and threwe a way his tronchon<sup>3</sup> of his swerde ; And toke the swerde fro hym that he had beten down, and mounted vpon his hors agayn / Thenne called he the barons / that had made and brought to hym to fore the peas / and sayd to them : “ ye, lordes, suche maner of peas as ye offred to me right now / is now to me agreable, and am redy now to take and abide / ffor though I haue the dommage and losse, Atte leste I haue no shame ne dishonour / And it plesyth me wel to gyue & departe of my right, to thende that I slee not this whiche is my cosyn.” whan the barons herd this, alle they began to wepe. The peas was made suche as he sayde / he had more honoure and loos<sup>4</sup> / for the pees to whiche he adressyd hym so swetly, than of alle the prowesses that he had in this bataylle, In whiche he dyde many.

28

[<sup>5</sup> It. 132, bk.] <sup>5</sup> Of a fayr feat of Armes that the duc dyde in a bataylle that the Emperour of Almayne had ayenst them of Saxone. Capitulo Clxxxxviii<sup>o</sup>

Another  
great prowess  
I will relate.

a N other feat of prowesse I shal recounte to you, lyke as it happened, without lesynge. The peple of Saxone, whiche ben the meoste felle and moost cruell of alle them of Almayne, had desdayne and despyte tobeye to themperour / And sayde that they wold doo nothyng for themperour henry. But sayde that they

<sup>1-1</sup> Fr. “*qu'on parlast de paix entre eux*,” that peace might be arranged between them. <sup>2</sup> Orig. Bnt. <sup>3</sup> Orig. trouchon. <sup>4</sup> Fr. *los*, praise, Lat. *laudis*.

wold haue a lord vpon them self, whiche shold obeie to none other. And made an hye noble man of the countre, whiche was emonge them, an Erle named Raoul, for to be kynge vpon them, by  
 4 whom they wold be Iustised and gouerned. whan themperour herd this he was moche wroth / and desired moche to be auenged of so grete oultrage. Therfor sente he for alle the barons of thempyre, and assembled moche grete court / and made to be sayd and shewde  
 8 in the presence of them alle the pryde and rebellyon of them of Saxone, wherof he demaunded debonayrly counseyl and theyr helpe. They acorded alle that this thyng was for to be auenged asprely. They habandouned bodye and power to themperour for  
 12 thamendynge of this trespaas. They departed, and eche wente in to his countre. Themperour somoned his hooste as strongly as he myght at a castel on the marche of Saxone. whan they were entred in to the londe, theyr enemyes sayde that they wolde fyghte  
 16 ayenst them, ffor they were prow<sup>1</sup> and fiers, in suche wyse that they sette but lytil by the power of themperour / whan they knewe that they must fyght / they ordeyned theyr bataylles / ffor they had moche peple / And<sup>1</sup> had ynowe / Thenne demaunded them-  
 20 perour / of whom they were acorded that shold bere thaygle / which is the fawcon<sup>2</sup> of thempyre / They choos to fore alle other for to doo that, the valyaunt duc of Loreyne, worthy and moost sufficient to do it. They reputed it for a moche grete worship that he was  
 24 thus chosen by comyn acord of them alle / Neuertheles he with sayde it, and refused as moche as he myght. But he muste nedes take it on hym<sup>3</sup> / This daye cam<sup>4</sup> / and that one partye approuched that other in suche wyse that they assembled fiersly / ther were  
 28 many men put to deth, ffor they were merueillously wroth eche ayenst other. whyles thus as the bataylle was grete and fyers in many places, the duc Godeffroye, that conduyted the bataylle of Themperour, espyed a grete Rowte of men, wherin was this Raoul,  
 32 whiche was lorde<sup>5</sup> of saxone / ayenst them<sup>6</sup> the duc dyde do assemble the peple of themperour. The duc knewe this Raoul, and smote the hors with his spores ayenst hym. And with the gonfanon that he bare / Iusted ayenst hym in<sup>7</sup> suche wyse that he  
 36 bare hym thurgh the bodye and slewe hym, that he fylle down deed in the place. And Incontinent he redressy<sup>8</sup> and reysed on

They made  
one Raoul  
their king.

The Emperor  
of Germany  
assembled his  
men at a  
certain castle.

Godfrey of  
Lorraine was  
chosen to  
bear the  
eagle.

They met the  
Saxons in  
battle,

[<sup>3</sup> leaf 134.]

and Raoul  
was slain by  
Godfrey.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. "*si en firent assez*," viz. "so they made plenty of them (i. e. of battalions)." <sup>2</sup> Corruption or mistranslation for Gonfanon. Fr. *gonfanun*.

<sup>3</sup> Orig. hyin.

<sup>4</sup> Orig. cain.

<sup>6</sup> Orig. thein.

<sup>7</sup> "*telement qu'il lui envoya parmy le corps oultre*."

The rest sur-  
rendered to  
the Emperor.

Godfrey gave  
generously to  
the church,

when he  
started on his  
pilgrimage.

heygthe his baner alle bloody / his peple sawe that they had<sup>t</sup> loste  
theyr lord<sup>t</sup>, and<sup>t</sup> anon were disconfyte<sup>t</sup> / Somme fledde, & somme  
fyllen doun vnto the feet of themperour, and<sup>t</sup> put them in his mercy /  
Alle the gentilmen and<sup>t</sup> other gaf good hostages for tobeye euer 4  
after to hym, and be at his commaunzment / Many other prowesses  
made the valyaunt duc godeffroye / but it behoueth not to put  
them alle in this historye, ffor my purpose now is for to recountre  
of the holy londe by yonde the see, and not of them on this syde, 8  
but of them of whom ye may vnderstande that he was in his  
countre noble and<sup>t</sup> a valyaunt knyght. Of his largesse ayenst oure  
lord<sup>t</sup> I shal saye to you one thyng, by whiche ye maye vnderstande  
the other. In the duchye of Loreyne was a castel, whiche was 12  
moost renommed<sup>t</sup> and chyef of thonour of buyllon / And<sup>t</sup> bare that  
name / whan he shold<sup>t</sup> meue to goo in his pylgremage by yonde the  
see, he gaf this castel as the mooste noble and<sup>t</sup> hiest of his herytage  
vnto oure lord in Almesse, in to the chirche of lyege, for to abyde 16  
there for euermore.

How the valyaunt duc godeffroy augmented the holy  
chirche, And how he wold neuer<sup>1</sup> bere crowne.

ca.<sup>o</sup> Clxxxxix. 20

He loved the  
service of our  
Lord,

and ordained  
the churches  
in Palestine  
as they were  
in France.

[\* If. 134, bk.]  
He endowed  
an abbey for  
monke very  
richly.

s Yth that he had thus by election the Royamme / like as a  
deuoute and a relygyous man as he was, he lould moch holy  
chirch & the seruise of our lord. by conseyll of the bisshops & of  
other wise clerkes that were in thoost / he ordeyned<sup>t</sup> fyrst in the 24  
chirche of the sepulcre of our lord, and<sup>t</sup> in the temple, clerkes for to  
serue, & establisshed chanonnes, & gaf to them grete rentes &  
large herytages, <sup>2</sup>of which they shold take theyr prebendes.<sup>2</sup> & he  
wold that the churches in thoo partyes there shold be ordeyned<sup>t</sup> 28  
after the establementis / vses, and custommes of the grete churches  
of fraunce<sup>3</sup> / He began moche hyly / & wel had accomplysshed, yf  
our lord<sup>t</sup> had gyuen to hym lenger lyf / He had<sup>t</sup> brought with hym  
oute of his countre relygyous Monkes, whiche sayde and<sup>t</sup> songe 32  
theyr <sup>4</sup>howres and seruyse al a longe the waye as he cam. he gaf  
to them an Abbaye in the vale of Iosaphat, and<sup>t</sup> establisshed them  
there, And<sup>t</sup> endowed them there moche Rychely with good rentes

<sup>1</sup> *Orig. nener.*

<sup>2-2</sup> *Fr. "ou ilz devoient prendre leurs provendes,"* from which they should  
draw their revenues.

<sup>3</sup> *Orig. francee.*

and reuenues<sup>1</sup> / And gaf to them grete pryueleges. he was a very  
 relygyous and deuoute man, And had his herte moche large vnto  
 holy chirche, And gaf therto many grete thynges. whan he was  
 4 chosen to be kyng / alle the barons requyreð hym that he wold do  
 hym be crowned, and receyue thonour of the Royamme as hyly as  
 the other kynges in Cristendom doo / he answerde / that in this  
 holy cyte, where our sauour Ihesu Criste suffred deth, and had  
 8 born a crowne of thornes vpon his heed for hym and for the  
 synners / he wold neuer bere, yf it playsyð god, crowne of gold ne  
 of precious stones, but hym semed that it was ynowe of that  
 coronacion that he had the daye of his passion for to honoure alle  
 12 the kynges Cristen that shold be after hym in Iherusalem / ffor this  
 cause he refused the crowne. Ther ben somme men that wyll not  
 accompte hym emong the kynges of Iherusalem / but me thynketh  
 that therfore he ought not to be lassed ne dymynued of his  
 16 honoure, but the more and hyer exalted and enhaunced; ffor he  
 dyde not this for despysyng of the sacrament of holy chirche, but  
 he dyde it for teschewe the bobaunce and pryde of the world, and  
 for the grete mekenes & humylyte that he had in his herte / wher-  
 20 fore thenne I saye not only that he was not kyng, but he was  
 gretter than any kyng that holdeth ony Royamme syth that the  
 holy londe of Iherusalem was conquerd.<sup>2</sup>

When he was  
 chosen king,  
 and about to  
 be crowned,

he refused,  
 saying that  
 he would not  
 be crowned  
 with gold  
 where our  
 Lord had  
 worn thorns.

How the turkes of Arabe and of Egypte made theyr  
 24 somaunce for to come in to Surye tassaylle our  
 cristen men / ca. CC.

n Ewly whan the cyte was taken / yet er that the Barons were  
 departed, cam tydynges in to the toun of Iherusalem, & trew  
 28 they were / that the Calyphe of Egypte, which was the mooste  
 puyssaunt and myghtiest of all the londe of thoryent, had somoned  
 alle his power, knyghtes, gentilmen, and alle other that myght bere  
 armes / in suche wyse that he had assembled a grete hooste  
 32 merueyllously; ffor he had grete desdayne and despyte of this that  
 so lytil peple, whiche were of a straunge londe and ferre countrey,<sup>3</sup>  
 were so hardy and durst come in to this londe and Ro<sup>4</sup>yamme, and  
 had taken the cyte whiche he had conquerd vpon his enemyes / he  
 36 made come to fore hym his conestable, whiche was prynce of his  
 hoost: he was named Elafdales. To this man he commaunded

The Caliph of  
 Egypt had  
 summoned a  
 great army  
 to invade  
 Palestine.

[\* leaf 135]

The com-  
 mander of  
 the army  
 was named  
 Elafdales,

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* reuennes.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig.* conquerd.

<sup>3</sup> *Orig.* countrey.

that he shold take all this peple with hym & goo in to Surye / And renne vygorously vpon this peple, that were so folyssh and out-rageous, that had tordned his peas<sup>1</sup> and made warre to *his* peple. Therfor he commaunded<sup>2</sup> hym that <sup>3</sup>he shold efface and destroye<sup>4</sup> them alle / In suche wyse that neuer worde be spoken of them<sup>3</sup> / This Elafdales was of Ermenye born, And was called<sup>5</sup> Cimireenx<sup>4</sup> by another name. Of the Cristen men he was comen / But for the Rychesse that was gyuen hym, and for the lecherye that he fonde<sup>8</sup> emonge the mescreautes / he renyed<sup>6</sup> our lord and Cristen fayth for to become sarasyn. This same man had conquerd the Cyte of Iherusalem vpon the turkes, and sette it in the puyssaunce of his lord the same yere that the cristen men had besieged it, And had<sup>12</sup> not yet holden it .xj/ monethis whan thoost of the pylgryms toke it vpon them, and rendred it to Cristiente / hit was a thyng that it moche displaysyd his conestable that his lord had hold it so short a whyle / And enioyed nomore his conqueste: ffor this cause he<sup>16</sup> enterprysed in hym this werke / and for to renne vpon oure peple. And hym thought it but a lytil thyng and a light for to doo, consyderyng the grete plente of peple that he had for to disconfyte them that had taken the Cyte. He cam in to Surye, & brought<sup>20</sup> with hym alle the power of Egypte. he had grete pryde in his herte by cause of the grete people that he had / And was moche angry toward our men / But our lord, that can sette wel counseyl in alle the purpoos of men / ordeyned this werke all in another maner<sup>24</sup> than he deuysed / he cam with alle his men to fore the Cyte of Escalone. There they lodged them, and pourprised grete space of ground. with them were ioyned alle the dukes of damaske, and they of arabe that were in thoo partyes / moche grete peple /<sup>28</sup> Trouthe it is that to fore er oure peple entred in to the londe / They of Egypte and the turkes of arabe louyd not to gydre /<sup>5</sup> but doubted<sup>6</sup> moch thencreacyng of the one and other<sup>5</sup> / But after, they accompanyed them togydre to come vpon oure men, more for<sup>32</sup>

born in Armenia, of Christian blood, but a proselyte to Mohammedanism.

He had already once conquered Jerusalem from the Turks,

and was now coming to reconquer it for his master.

The Egyptians and the Turks loved each other not,

<sup>1</sup> The MS. which Caxton followed reads "*trouvée sa paix*," which makes no sense, and was rendered *turned his peace* by him. The correct reading is "*qu'il avoit brizié sa pes*," that it had broken the peace.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. commaunded.

<sup>3-3</sup> Lat. "*et populum praesumptuosum delet de superficie terrae, ita ut non memoretur nomen illius ultra*."

<sup>4</sup> B. *Cimiricux*, A. *Emirieux*, Lat. *Emirius*.

<sup>5-5</sup> Fr. "*ains doubtoient moult le croisement les uns des aultres*," but each feared greatly the growth and increase of the other. <sup>6</sup> Orig. *doubtd*.



hate of oure peple, than for loue that they had emonge them self.  
 They were alle to gydre to fore Escalone, And they there concluded<sup>2</sup> but united  
 to come after to fore Iherusalem for tassiege the toun<sup>1</sup> / ffor they their forces  
 4 supposed veryly, that oure barons durst in no wyse yssue out ayenst to come  
 them in bataylle. against Jerusalem.

<sup>2</sup>How our Cristen men, whan they knewe thyse tyd- [<sup>2</sup> If. 135, bk.]  
 ynges, cryed to god for mercy / and for to haue  
 8 the vycторыe. ca. CCj<sup>o</sup>

w Han thyse tydynges were spradd thurgh the cyte of Iherusa- The Chris-  
 lem, Alle the peple were gretely affrayed<sup>3</sup>, grete and<sup>4</sup> smale / tians were  
 By comyn acord of the bisshoppes they cam<sup>3</sup> wullen and barfote<sup>3</sup> this newe,  
 12 in the chirche of our lord. There were alle the peple, and<sup>4</sup> cryed<sup>4</sup> mercy to oure<sup>4</sup> lorde with syghes and<sup>4</sup> teeris, And besought Ihesu and prayed  
 Criste moche swetly that his peple, whiche he had kept and the Lord to  
 defended vnto that day / he wold delyuer fro this peryll, ne suffre protect them.  
 16 that the cyte and holy places that they late had rendred and<sup>4</sup> yeuen to his name and<sup>4</sup> to his seruyse, and<sup>4</sup> that he wold not that they  
 shold<sup>4</sup> be remysed agayn and habandouned in ordure and<sup>4</sup> fylthe, and in the desloyalte of the hethen men. ffro thens they wente a  
 20 procession,<sup>5</sup> syngynge with moche grete pyte, vnto<sup>6</sup> the temple of oure lord. There dyde the bisshops and the clerkes the seruyse /  
 And the laye peple prayde with moche good<sup>4</sup> herte and<sup>4</sup> pytous / whan this was don, the bisshops gaf to them the benediction / And  
 24 after they departed<sup>4</sup>, The duc ordeyned<sup>4</sup> barons and<sup>4</sup> knyghtes that The Duke  
 shold<sup>4</sup> kepe the cyte. After this he yssued out, and therle of assembled  
 ffaundres / And cam in to the playnes of Rames. The other his men,  
 Barons abode in Iherusalem / The cytezeyns of napples had<sup>4</sup> sente and went  
 28 to fetch eustace, broder of the duc, and<sup>4</sup> Tancre for to come theder forth as far  
 to them, & they wold<sup>4</sup> yelde to them the cyte. They were goon by as Rames,  
 the commaundement of the duc, and<sup>4</sup> garnysshed<sup>4</sup> moche wel the  
 toun with peple and<sup>4</sup> vytaylle, of which the countre was moche  
 32 fertile / therfor they abode there, and knewe nothyng of thyse  
 tydynges / But the duc sente for them, And they cam hastily / sending for  
 and were with the other barons. whan the duc and<sup>4</sup> the erle of Eustache  
 ffaundres<sup>7</sup> arryued atte Cyte of Rames, they knewe wel the trouthe and Tancred,  
 who were in  
 Tripple.

<sup>1</sup> Orig. tonn.<sup>2-3</sup> Fr. "*en lange et nuz pies*." The Lat. gives only "*nudis pedibus*."<sup>4</sup> Orig. onre. <sup>5</sup> Fr. *en procession*. <sup>6</sup> Orig. vuto. <sup>7</sup> Orig. ffaundres.

He also sent  
back to Jeru-  
salem for the  
other barons,

certainly that this admiral was lodged to fore Escalone with so grete peple that the contre was couerd. Thenne sente they hastily messagers in to Iherusalem vnto the other barons, which abode and awayted the certaynte of this thyng / And he bad them hastily to 4 come alle, sauf suche as shold kepe the cyte / And shold brynge alle the peple moche hastily, as for to fyghte ayenst grete plente of theyr enemyes.

[leaf 136]

How our men assembled and ordeyned theyr bat-8  
aylles for to <sup>1</sup>fyghte ayenst the turkes. And  
how the turkes were disconfyted.

Capitulo / CCij<sup>o</sup>

who came  
speedily to  
the place  
where he  
was.

t Herle of tholouse & the other barons that were with hym 12  
knewe the certaynte how theyr enemyes cam vpon them with so  
grete power / therfor they gadred to gydre alle theyr men that were  
in Iherusalem, and yssued out and come to them moche dilygently  
in to the playnes, where the duc<sup>2</sup> was, atte a place named now 16  
ybelyn. whan they were alle assemble<sup>1</sup> / they nombre<sup>1</sup> theyr peple  
and fonde / xijC. horsmen / and of footemen / ixM. whan thoost  
of our men had been there one day or therabout, after euensonge,  
whan it began<sup>3</sup> to wexe derk / they espyed a fer a greet prees that 20  
cam takyng vp the countrey, and couerd grete partes of the playnes /  
Oure men ha<sup>1</sup> supposed certaynly that it had be thoost of the  
sarasyns / And merueylle<sup>1</sup> moche how they cam ayenst them at  
that hour. Thenne they sente oute .ij.C / horsmen armed<sup>1</sup> lightly, 24  
& wel horsed, for to see more nygh<sup>1</sup> what peple they were that cam &  
how many were of them ; they roode forth a good paas, and whan they  
approached them / they knewe that it were Oxen, Kyen, and mares /  
ther were so many of them, <sup>4</sup>that them semed there were no moo in 28  
alle the world, and that it myght suffyse<sup>4</sup> for alle the peple ther  
about. with thyse beestes were comen men on horsbak, whiche  
kepte them from theuys, And commaunded<sup>1</sup> to the herdmen what  
they shold doo. They that were sente forth by the barons retorned<sup>1</sup> 32  
and sayde that ther was none other but beestes. Thenne alle oure  
men ran theder / The kepars of them fledde that myght / Somme

Our men now  
saw an im-  
mense body  
of animals  
approaching.

which they  
captured.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig. dnc.*

<sup>3</sup> *Orig. hegan.*

<sup>4</sup> *Fr. "il leur estoit avis que s'il n'en eust plus en toute cette terre, si deüssent ilz souffire."* Caxton has omitted the *si* viz. if there were no more in all this country, etc.

- ther were that were taken, whiche tolde the trouthe of the turkes,  
 In suche wyse that it was wel knowen, that this grete hooste of  
 sarasyns were lodged but .vij / myle from them. And that they  
 4 purpoos was to come on them and to slee them alle. Our barons  
 were thenne certayn of the bataylle / And deysed emonge them /  
 ix. bataylles / And commaunded that thre shold goo to fore on that  
 one syde. For the playnes were greet. And thre shold go in the  
 8 mydle / and thre shold come behynde / Of the sarasyns myght  
 noman knowe the nombre / ffor ther was so grete plente that every  
 daye they encreaced and grewe of the contre about / whiche ranne  
 to them in suche wyse that it was not for to be estemed / whan our  
 12 men had goten this grete gayne that I spak of, that is to saye of  
 alle the beestes / they had grete ioye and ioyously restyd them  
 that nyght; but they that had the charge made good watche upon  
 1 thooste. On the morn whan the sonne was rysen, the duc dyde do  
 16 crye that every man shold arme hym and goo to his bataylle, and  
 after wente forth a soft paas<sup>2</sup> right theder where they thought to  
 fynde theyr enemyes / they had stedfast hope in our lord / to  
 whom is a lyght thyng to make that the lasse in nombre vayn-  
 20 quysse the more & gretter / they of egypte, & the other mescre-  
 autes that were with them, cam in moche grete desraye vnto the  
 place that they sawe oure peple alle in the playne.<sup>3</sup> whan they  
 sawe and knewe that our men had noo talente to withdrawe them  
 24 ne eschewe them, but cam for to seche them / they began moche to  
 doubte. whan they sawe that oure men had taken and pourprised  
 so grete a place on the playns, wel supposed they that they had ben  
 mochemore people and in greter nombre. But the trouthe was  
 28 suche as I hane sayd / Our men were but fewe on horsbak and a  
 foote. the grete company of beestes, as I hane sayd, were with  
 them<sup>4</sup> / whan they drewe forth on / the beestes wente with them /  
 the turkes wende that they had ben alle men Armed and had ouer  
 32 grete fere and drede / the grettest men and they that men supposed  
 shold best haue born the fayte<sup>5</sup> of the bataylle, they began to with-  
 drawe them lytil and lytil and lefte theyr bataylles the one after  
 the other & fledde all pryuely. whan the lasse knyghtes of the  
 36 turkmans apperceyued this / <sup>6</sup>they neuer toke hope on them,<sup>6</sup> but

They learned  
that the  
Saracens  
were only  
seven miles  
distant.

They then  
arranged  
their men  
in nine  
battalions.

They rested  
quietly all  
night,

[11. 136, bk.]

and went  
forth early in  
the morning  
to meet their  
enemies,

so arranged  
that they  
seemed to  
have an  
immense  
army.

The Egyp-  
tians fled in  
fear.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *tout le pas*, briskly.

<sup>3</sup> Fr. *tout à plain*, plainly.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. *quant ceulx se tiroient*, when these advanced.

<sup>5</sup> Fr. *fais*, burden, responsibility.

<sup>6-6</sup> Fr. "*ne prinrent oncques nul despit sur eulx.*"

On this day  
was loet the  
Bishop of  
Maturane.

When the  
barons saw  
their victory

they gave  
thanks to  
God.

[? leaf 137]  
They found  
immense  
riches and  
spoils in the  
hethen  
tents,  
and returned  
laden to  
Jerusalem.

torned<sup>t</sup> their horses & smote with their spores, & fledde euery man where he supposed best to saue hym / On this daye was he lost / that had sette al his herte for to sowe & pourehasse discordes ouer al where he was byleuyd. Noman wote wher he becam / this was the 4 bisshop of maturane. Somme men sayde that the duc had sente hym for to fetcche the barons that were lefte in the cyte / and whan he retorned Sarasins shold haue take hym & slayn hym, or brought hym in pryson. what sommeuer cam of hym it was no grete harme, 8 so that he were effaced out of this holy company / whan oure Barons sawe that our lord had foghten for them, And that he had put in the hertes of the turkes so grete fere & drede / that they were fled without smytyng of stroke, they had grete ioye and 12 rendred graces and thankynges to oure lorde deuoutly; they had counseyl that they shold<sup>t</sup> not folowe them withoute araye thurgh the felde / ffor they were ouer grete nombre of peple vnto the regarde of them. And yf they happed<sup>t</sup> to relye<sup>1</sup> and gadre to gydre 16 agayn, they myght perauenture put oure men to the werse. Oure men rode alle in ordenaunce vnto the tentes of the hethen men, ffor they that fledde 2loked<sup>t</sup> neuer behynde them / There founde oure men so grete plente of Gold, of Syluer, of Robes, of Iewellys, 20 and of vessell, that the leest of them had ynough / Thus gadred<sup>t</sup> they alle that they fonde there / & retorned and wente agayn to Iherusalem euery man laden and charged with despoylles, thank- yng and preysing our lord, by whom was comen to them this vyc- 24 torye / honour, and gayne. Thenne made they within the cyte moche ioye & grete / As doon the vaynquers and conquerours<sup>3</sup> whan they departe theyr gayne.

How somme of our<sup>4</sup> barons wolde retorne home after 28  
they had don theyr pylgremage / ca° CCiij°

i N this maner they conteyned them in the Cyte of Iherusalem /  
The two valyaunt men that had ben long tyme in the seruyse of our lord, and had<sup>t</sup> perfourmed<sup>t</sup> theyr pylgremage, that is to wyte 32 the duc of Normandy / And therle of flaundres / they toke leue of the other barons and toke theyr waye for to retorne in to theyr cuntry / they cam by shippe to Constantinople / Themperour alexys which had<sup>t</sup> seen them to fore receuyed<sup>t</sup> them with moche 36

The Duke of  
Normandy  
and the Earl  
of Flanders  
start for  
home.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. "*se raliassent*," if they should rally.

<sup>3</sup> Orig. *couquerours*.

<sup>4</sup> Orig. *onr*.

- fayr chiere, & gaf to them moche fayre yeftes at theyr departyng /  
 After they cam in to theyr countre hool and ioyous / That one of  
 them, that was the duc of Normandye / founde the thyng alle  
 4 chaunged otherwyse in his countre than he lefte it / ffor whyles he  
 was in mayntenynge this holy pylgremage, lyke as ye haue herd, his  
 oldest broder deyde without heyer of his body, wylliam Rous, His eldest  
brother  
William  
Rufus had  
died without  
heir.  
 whiche was kyng of englond by right / And after the customes of  
 8 the countre the Royamme was fallen to this duc of normandye;  
 but his broder whiche was yonger, named Henry, cam to the  
 barons of the countrey and made them to vnderstande<sup>1</sup> / that the  
 duc his broder was kyng of Iherusalem / And had no talente / ne  
 12 purposed neuer to retorne on this syde the montaynes. By this  
 lesynge they made hym kyng of Englonde, and they becam his  
 men. whan his broder returned fro the holy londe, he demaunded  
 of hym his herytage entierly / And he wold not delyuer it to hym. His younger  
brother  
Henry had  
by treachery  
obtained the  
kingship.  
 16 The duc made redy a grete nauye / and gadryd as moche peple as  
 he myght in normandye and other places, and passed the see / he  
 arryued by force.<sup>2</sup> His broder that was kyng cam ayenst hym  
 with alle the power of the lande / The bateyllles were al redy for  
 20 tassemble. But the noble and wysemen sawe that it shold be ouer  
 grete<sup>3</sup> hurt & damage yf thyse two bretheren shold fyght thus. [<sup>3</sup> If. 137, bk.]  
 Therfor they spak of pees, and made it in this manere / that the  
 sayd henry shold holde the Royamme / but he sholde gyue euery  
 24 yere to his brother a greet somme of good / of whiche he made  
 hym sure / And thus returned the duc agayn, and cam in to his  
 londe. after it happed that the kyng whiche had somme castellys in  
 normandye to fore that he had the Royamme<sup>4</sup> of Englonde / them  
 28 wolde he kepe as his herytage / The duc demaunded them. And  
 he wold not delyuere them / thenne the duc assieged them, and  
 toke them by force. whan the kyng herd this / he was moche  
 angry, he assembled grete peple and passed ouer in to Normandye /  
 32 his brother cam ayenst hym / And they fought to gydre at tynche-  
 bray<sup>5</sup> / ther was the duc disconfyted and taken, his broder put hym  
 in pryson, wherin he deyde / Thenne had this henry alle to gydre  
 the Royamme of Englonde, and the duchye of Normandye / Therle  
A compro-  
mise was  
effected  
between the  
two brothers,  
which was  
soon broken,  
and a battle  
was fought  
at Tynche-  
bray.  
Henry was  
victorious.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* vnderstande.<sup>2</sup> Fr. "*il arriva en Angleterre à force*," he arrived in England with an army.<sup>4</sup> *Orig.* Royamme.<sup>5</sup> The Latin does not specify the name of this place, which is added by the French translator. Fr. *Tanchebray*.

The Earl of  
Toulouse  
went to Con-  
stantinople  
on a visit.

Tancred  
stayed in  
Palestine  
with Godfrey,

and governed  
wisely the  
lands allotted  
him.

of thoulouse cam vnto the lyche in surye / there lefte he his wyf,  
the Countesse, and wente vnto Constantynople, And shold hastily  
reterne / Themperour made to hym grete ioie and receyued hym  
moche wel / and gaf to hym grete yestes / And after cam agayn to 4  
his wyf hoole & sauf / to his felawship in Surye, but it was two  
yere after, as ye shal here / The due godeffroy was in Iherusalem /  
wel gouverne<sup>t</sup> he the Royamme whiche oure lord ha<sup>t</sup> gyuen to  
hym, he reteyned with hym the Erle Garnyer<sup>1</sup> of greece / And 8  
other Barons, suche as he myght have. Tancre the valyaunt abode  
with hym, to whom the Duc gaf for to holde in herytage the cyte  
of tabarye, whiche stondesth on the laye of Geme.<sup>2</sup> And with that  
alle the pryncipalyte of Galylee with the Cyte, whiche was woned 12  
to be named porphire, And now named Cayphas, and alle thap-  
pertenances of thyse thynges / Tancre helde thyse londes so wel  
and so wysely, that he was alowed of god / & honoured of the  
world / he founded chirches of this countrey<sup>3</sup> moche rychely / he 16  
gaf to them grete rentes / and endowed them with Aournementes  
fayr and of grete valure. Specially the chirche of Nazareth, of  
tabarye, and that of mount Tabor, he lefte them in hie estate and  
in moche ryche poynt. But the barons that after hym haue be 20  
lordes of the countrey haue taken from them ynowgh of their ten-  
ours / This Tancre was wyse and trewe / And delyted hym to doo  
wel to the chirches / as it appereth after whan he was prynce of  
Anthyoche. ffor he enhaunced the chirche of seynt peter, and the 24  
pryncipalyte and seynorye of anthyoche made he moch tencrece &  
enlarged, as ye shal here.

[4 leaf 138] <sup>4</sup>How buymont and bawdwyn beyng certayn of the  
pryse and conqueste of Iherusalem wolde accom- 28  
plysshe theyr pylgremage / Capitulo / CC.iiij<sup>o</sup>.

Bohemond  
and Baldwin  
receiue the  
news of the  
conquest of  
Jerusalem,

w Hyles that the Royamme of Iherusalem was in such estate /  
Buymont<sup>5</sup> the prynce of Anthyoche, And Bawdwyn Erle of  
Rages, broder of the duc godeffroy, ha<sup>t</sup> herd certayn tydynges that 32  
<sup>6</sup>the other barons that helde them to gydre as bretheren for the  
accompanye of theyr pylgremage, ha<sup>t</sup> by thayde<sup>6</sup> and helpe of our

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *Garnier de Gres.*

<sup>2</sup> Fr. B. *Gene* : A. *Genesar.*

<sup>3</sup> *Orig.* countrey.

<sup>5</sup> *Orig.* Buymont.

<sup>6-6</sup> Fr. "*que les autres barons quilz tenoient a freres, pour la compaignie  
du pelerinage, avoient, par l'aide,*" viz., that the other barons whom they con-  
sidered as brothers in this pilgimage had, by the aid, etc.

lord Ihesu Criste conquerd vpon the turkes and recouerd to oure  
 fayth the holy Cyte of Iherusalem / by whiche they ha<sup>k</sup> accom-  
 plyshyd<sup>r</sup> theyr vowes and theyr pylgremages. Therfor they assem-  
 4 bled on a day named for to goo to the holy sepulcre, to thende <sup>1</sup>that and decide  
 they were assaylled<sup>r</sup> of theyr vowes.<sup>1</sup> And desired<sup>r</sup> moche for to to accomplish  
 see the Duc and<sup>r</sup> the other Barons, to whom they wol<sup>k</sup> gyue ayde their own  
 yf they had nede / that is to wete of their bodyes / of theyr goodes vows.  
 8 and<sup>r</sup> of theyr men that were vnder them. Thyse two hye men were  
 not at the takynge of the holy Cyte of Iherusalem, ffor by the  
 wylle of the pylgryms that one of them abode in Anthyoche / And<sup>r</sup> One was in  
 that other at Rages, for to kepe soygnously / and defende the Antioch, and  
 12 turkes fro thyse <sup>2</sup>two Cytees whiche were fer fro Cristiente.<sup>2</sup> Eche the other in  
 man ha<sup>k</sup> to doo ynowgh in his countrey. But they lefte alle for to Rages.  
 come to the other / Buymont cam fyrst fro his cyte with a moche  
 fayr company, grete nombre of men of Armes on horsbak and<sup>r</sup> a  
 16 foote. he cam vnto a Cyte vpon the see, named valerne, on the They met at  
 castel of margat / there he lodged hym maulgre them of the cyte. Valerne, and  
 Bawdwyn cam fro his countrey sone after and so moch iourneied  
 after, that he ouertoke the prynce buymont to fore this Cyte / And  
 20 there they assembled<sup>r</sup> / In that same tyme were arruyed pylgryms  
 of ytalye at the lyche in surye. Emong them was a good man  
 wyse and wel lettred, Relygyous and of grete honneste, named were also  
 daybart, Archebisshop of Pyse / Another was in his company, joined by  
 24 Archebisshop of puylle, of a Cyte named<sup>r</sup> Aciane.<sup>3</sup> Thyse men with some other  
 theyr meyne cam in the companye of thyse two barons for to passe pilgrims.  
 more surely vnto the Cyte of Iherusalem. Of them was moche en-  
 crece<sup>r</sup> thoost of thyse two prynces / in suche wyse that they were  
 28 wel .xxv / M. on horsbak and<sup>r</sup> a foote. Thus thenne helde they  
 theyr waye by suche manere / that they fonde no Cyte but of theyr  
 enemyes / wherfore they passed<sup>r</sup> with moch grete payne / They  
 suffred moche in theyr way for lack <sup>4</sup>of vytaylles, ffor they fonde [\* If. 138, bk.]  
 32 none for to bye. And<sup>r</sup> suche as they brought fro theyr countrey  
 was faylled<sup>r</sup>. They ha<sup>k</sup> grete cold<sup>r</sup> / & so grete rayne that nothyng  
 myght endure; it was so merueylous. It was in the moneth of  
 Iuyl,<sup>5</sup> whiche is moche rayny customably in that countrey / ffor  
 They suffered  
 much on the  
 way from  
 cold and rain,

<sup>1-1</sup> Fr. "*afin quilz fussent absouz de leurs veuz*," that they might be ab-  
 solved from their vows—assayled is probably a misreading for *assoyled*.

<sup>2-2</sup> Fr. "*deux cités qui tiennent grant lieu à la xpiente*," viz., two cities  
 which occupy a great place in Christendom.

<sup>3</sup> B. *Atiene*: A. *Arriene*. Lat. *Episcopus Arrienensis*.

<sup>5</sup> Caxton follows his corrupt French text here. That it is a mistake can

also from  
lack of food.

At last they  
arrived in  
Jerusalem,

where all the  
town received  
them with  
great joy.

There they  
celebrated  
Christmas.

this cause many deyed of mesease in that companye, ffor in alle this longe way, they myght fynde none that wold selle to them ony vytaylle, sauf they of Tryple, and they of cesaire. They had grete scarcete<sup>1</sup> of vytaylles for theyr horses / Atte laste by the mercy of our lord they cam to Iherusalem / There were they receyued with moch grete ioie, of god, of the barons, of the clergie, and of alle the peple. They vysyted the holy places of the cyte in teeris and grete sorowes of herte / they fylle down flat and stratched in the chirches / they 8 kyssed and ete<sup>2</sup> therthe that our lord had bought<sup>2</sup> / After they cam in to theyr hostellys / where alle they of the toun made to them grete ioie / whan the hie feste of the natyuyte of our lord Ihesu Criste approuched, Alle the prelates and barons yssued out of Iheru- 12 salem & wente to Bethlehem / There helde they theyr Cristemas. There behelde they gladly and moche ententyfly the holy crybbe, wherein the sauour of the world laye bytwene the beestes, deuoutly made they theyr prayers & orysones in the place / whiche is as a lytil 16 dyche where the swete lady that was moder and vyrgyne after that she had chylded / wrapped her sone with lytil and smale clothys, & gaf hym souke of the Mylke of her pappes.

How our Cristen men chosen a very Patriarke in 20  
Iherusalem and assigned to hym rentes /  
ca. CCv.

The barons  
now assem-  
bled to choose  
a patriarch  
for Jeru-  
salem.

Their choice  
fell upon  
Daimbart,  
Archbishop  
of Pisa.

v N to this tyme had the See of Iherusalem ben without<sup>3</sup> pastour and patriark that duely and truly had entred / It was 24 wel thenne v monethes that the cyte was conquerd / Thenne assembled the Barons for to counseylle to haue suche a man that were worthy of honour & myght to bere the faytes / Ther were wordes ynowgh / The somme wolde haue one / and other wold haue an- 28 other. Atte laste by the counseyl and good wyll of alle they chees this Daybart, Archibisshop of pyse, whiche was but newly come. They constituted and sette hym in the siege of Patriark / ffor he that had be made by this baratour arnold, of whom I haue spoken 32 4to fore, lyke as he was made ayenst right and reson, In lyke wyse he retourned agayn to nought / whan this good, wise man was

easily be seen by the context. The "July" should of course read "December."

<sup>1</sup> Orig. sarcete.

<sup>2-2</sup> Fr. "*La terre que nostre Seigneur avoit marchée.*" Caxton confounds *marcher* (to walk) with *marchier* (to buy), to bargain. It should be, *the earth where our Saviour had walked.*

<sup>3</sup> Orig. without.

[4 leaf 139]



sette in his dignyte / The duc godeffroy and the prynce buymont  
 cam to fore hym / whiche had gyuen to hym this honour as for to  
 be the vycayre of Ihesu Criste in that londe, and thanked and  
 4 preysek alle to gydre oure lord / whan this was don they assygned  
 rentes to the newe Patriark, suche as his predecessour, whiche  
 was a greeke, had holden. And other gretter aboue that, in suche  
 wyse that he myght honorably mayntene a good and honest com-  
 8 pany of peple / Thenne bawdwyn and buymont toke leue of the  
 duc and of the other barons, and descended vnto flom Iordan,  
 and there bayned them / ffor thens they wente by the Ryuer syde  
 til they cam to tabarye. Thenne passed by the londe named  
 12 Fenyce / And lefte cesayre on the right syde. After they cam to  
 the Cyte named manbec.<sup>1</sup> After helde they the see syde and so  
 moche exployted that they cam al hool and sound to Anthyoche.

Rents were assigned to him suitable to his rank.

Baldwin and Bohemond now took leave and went to their homes.

How by thatyement of somme men a grete debate  
 16 sourded bytwene the duc and the patriarke of  
 Iherusalem / ca. CCvj:

He customme of somme men is suche / that they may not  
 t suffre the peas among the peple, where they may sette dis-  
 20 corde / By thatyement of suche maner folke sourded a debate  
 bytwene the duc and the patriarke / <sup>2</sup>ffor the patriarke demaunded  
 of hym the chyef tour of the toun, whiche is named the toure  
 dauyd, and the fourth part of Iherusalem<sup>2</sup> / aboue that he wold  
 24 haue the cyte of Iaphe and alle thappertenautes, ffor he sayde  
 that they were the droytes and rightes of his chirche of the sepulcre /  
 whan this debate had a whyle endured bytwene them. the duc  
 whiche was humble and mesurable & moche doubted our lord / on  
 28 candlemas day, in the presence of alle the clergie & all the peple,  
 he gaf the iiij part of Iaphe moche debonayrly to the patriarke and  
 to his chirche to holde for euermore. After this whan it cam to  
 the day of Eester, to fore all them that were assembled at this  
 32 feste / he gaf in to the honde of the patriark, the fourth part of  
 Iherusalem & the tour dauyd with alle the appertenautes / Alway

A dispute arose between the new patriarch and the Duke.

Finally the Duke promised to give the patriarch the fourth part of Jerusalem, and the city of Jaffa,

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *Malbec*.

<sup>2-2</sup> Fr. *Car le patriarche lui demandoit la sainte cité de Jherusalem, et la maîtresse forteresse de la ville, qu'on nomme la tour David, oultre plus.* The patriarch demanded the whole of the city of Jerusalem, not "a fourth" as Caxton translates. Lat. "*domino patriarcha reposcente ab eo civitatem sanctam Deo ascriptam, et ejusdem civitatis praesidium,*" etc.

as soon as he  
should have  
conquered  
two other  
cities from  
the Turks.

[<sup>2</sup> 1f. 139, bk.]

Every one  
marvelled  
that the  
patriarch  
should make  
this demand.

forseen by couenaunt that the duc<sup>1</sup> shold<sup>2</sup> holde thyse cytees and<sup>3</sup> the londes aboute vnto the tyme that by the ayde of oure lord<sup>4</sup> he had conquerd vpon the turkes two other Cytees / By whiche the Royamme myght be enlarged<sup>5</sup>. And<sup>6</sup> yf it happed<sup>7</sup> that he deyde in 4 the 2<sup>me</sup> mene whyle without heyer, Alle thyse thynges withoute contradiction shold come in to the honde of the patriarke / and to the chirche. The trouthe was suche as I haue sayd<sup>8</sup>, But it is ouer grete merueylle, ffor what reson this holy man that was so wyse, 8 demanded thus thyse cytees of this noble man, the duc, as I haue sayd<sup>9</sup>. They that knewe the state of the londe / helde and<sup>10</sup> reputed<sup>11</sup> them self for lasse, whan they vnderstode this werke and<sup>12</sup> couetyse in the chirche, and<sup>13</sup> merueylled<sup>14</sup> therof / ffor the barons that had<sup>15</sup> 12 conquerd the cyte gaf it to the duc so frely / that they wold<sup>16</sup> not / that ony man lyuyng shold haue no right aboute hym, but that he shold holde it hym self entierly without making to ony other ony obeyssaunce. 16

Hier recounteth thystorye how the fourth parte of Iherusalem cam vnto the patriarke of the same / ca<sup>o</sup>. CCvij<sup>o</sup>.

From this  
time on, the  
patriarch  
had a fourth  
part of the  
city.

Jerusalem  
was never a  
peaceful city,

but was  
always being  
besieged.

a Lway it is certayn, that fro the tyme that the latins entred in 20 to the Cyte, And yet of more Auncyente / the patriarke of Iherusalem had the fourth part of the cyte of Iherusalem / And helde it as his owen / how this happed<sup>1</sup>, and by what reson / I shal saye to you shortly / ffor the trouthe therof hath ben serched<sup>2</sup>. It 24 is founden by thauncyent historyes, that whyles this Cyte was in the hondes of the hethen peple / It myght neuer haue peas that longe endured, But was ofte assieged<sup>3</sup> of hethen prynces that were about it, ffor eche of them wold conquere<sup>4</sup> it and put it in his seyg- 28 norye / Therfor they toke ofte the proyes, and mesdyde and trespaced to the Cytezeyns of the toun / They brake the towres & walles moche outrageously by theyr engyns, And<sup>5</sup> for the oldenes of the walles / the Cyte was disclosed and open in many places / 32 In this tyme the Royamme of <sup>6</sup>Egypte was more ryche and<sup>7</sup> more

<sup>1</sup> Orig. dnc.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. conquere.

<sup>4-4</sup> Fr. "*Egypt estoit plus riche et plus puissant et d'avotr et de sens.*" Caxton has here made a common paleographic error by reading *sens* instead of *sens*, and then making one word of it with the *de*. Lat. "*Cum igitur ea tempestate, Aegyptorum regnum viribus et divitiis, sed et prudentia Saeculari caeteris quae in Oriente, vel in Austro erant regnis esset praestantius.*"

- puyssaunt of hauoyr and good<sup>4</sup> and defence<sup>4</sup> than any other of the  
 Royammes of Turkye / ffor the Calyphe helde thenne Iherusalem  
 and the londe therabout, and with his grete hoost that he sente  
 4 theder he conquerd alle surye vnto the Lyche, whiche is by  
 anthyoche. Thus had he encreced his empyre. he establyshyd his  
 bayllyes in the cytees that stonde on the see syde, And in them  
 also on the londe / Thenne commanded he that alle sholde paye  
 8 hym trybute, & ordeyned & deuysed what he wold haue of euery  
 cyte. after this he wold that the cytezeyns shold make agayn the  
 wallis of euery <sup>1</sup>Cyte / And mayntene in good poynt the towres /  
 and redresse alle aboute suche as neded / by the aduys of his men. The Caliph  
of Egypt had  
possession  
of it at one  
time.  
 12 And after theyr establysshement / The bayly of Iherusalem com-  
 maunded to them of the toun to repayre theyr walles and sette  
 them entierly in poynt lyke as they to fore had ben. Thenne  
 ordeyned he and deuysed how moch euery strete of the toun shold  
 16 make. By grete cruelte and malyce he commaunded that the  
 captyfs cristiens that were in the cyte shold make the fourth part  
 of the walles / They were so pour and so greued of tayllages and  
 excises, that vnnethe they had among<sup>r</sup> them alle wherof to repayre  
 20 two towrettys / They sawe wel that he sought occasion for to  
 destroye them alle / Therfor they assembled and cam moche  
 humbly to fore the bayly / and fyl at his feet, And moch requyred  
 in weping / that he wold comande them to doo thyng that they  
 24 myght doo, ffor this that he had commannded them to doo was  
 ouermuche ouer theyr power / That Inhumayn baylly, whiche was  
 ful of cruelte and of pryde, louyd not the Cristen men, and menaced  
 them moche fiersly / And sware that yf they accomplisshyd not the  
 28 commaundement of this lord the Calyphe, he wold do smyte of  
 theyr heedes as traytours / whan they herd this / they were moche  
 aferd / and on that othersyde they sawe wel that they myght not  
 bere the charge that he leyde on them / therfor they dyde so moche  
 32 atte laste by the prayer of somme turkes / whiche had pyte on them,  
 that the Baylly gaf them respyte, til that they had sent to them-  
 perour of Constantynople, and to requyre hym for the loue of god  
 that he wold sende his almesse to performe this horrible werke, for  
 36 to delyuer them fro the peryll of deth in whiche they were con-  
 dempned yf it were not by them made. He decreed  
that the walls  
should be  
rebuilt.  
[1 leaf 140]  
The poor  
Christians  
were ordered  
to rebuild a  
fourth of  
them.  
They prayed  
in vain to be  
released on  
account of  
their poverty.  
So they  
finally sent to  
the Emperor  
of Constanti-  
nople to beg  
for help.

Of the same mater / ca<sup>o</sup>. CCviii<sup>o</sup>

Messengers  
went to tell  
their mis-  
fortunes to  
the Emperor,

who was  
named  
Constantine  
Monamaques.

He promised  
to help them,  
if this fourth  
part of Jeru-  
salem should  
be given to  
them exclu-  
sively.

The Caliph of  
Egypt gave  
them a  
charter to  
this effect.

t He messengers cam fro them to themperour in to constanty-  
nople / they seyde to hym the trouthe of their message, how  
they were in subiection, and what mesceases, what fylthes the turkes 4  
made them to suffre. And fynally they muste alle deye yf he  
socoured them not / all they that herde them began to wepe for  
compassion / thenne was emperour a valyaunt man, wyse, & of grete  
corage named<sup>t</sup> constantyn, and surname monamaques. he gouerned 8  
moche vygorously thempyre. whan he herd<sup>t</sup> the requeste of the  
poure cristen<sup>1</sup> men he was meuyd<sup>t</sup> with grete pyte in his herte /  
and sayd<sup>t</sup> that he wold helpe them gladly, and shold gyue to them  
so largely of his good that the iiij part of the wallis which was 12  
commanded<sup>2</sup> them to make shold be accomplysshid, but he pro-  
mysed<sup>t</sup> them wel that he shold doo nothyng but by couenaunt.  
That is to wete that yf they myght pourchace of the lord<sup>t</sup> of the  
londe, that within the partye of the cyte that shold be closed with 16  
his money, none shold dwelle but cristen men / on this condicion  
wold he doo it / and<sup>t</sup> other wyse not. In this fourme<sup>3</sup> he delyuerd<sup>t</sup>  
to them his lettres patentes, And sente to his bayly of Cypre / that  
yf the cristen men of Iherusalem myght pourchace of the Calyphe 20  
of Egypte this that ye haue herd, that of the rente that he ought  
to haue in that londe, he shold<sup>t</sup> lete make the fourth<sup>4</sup> part of the  
wallis of this holy Cyte. The messagers that had<sup>t</sup> thus don theyr  
message Retorned<sup>t</sup> vnto the Patriarke and to them that had sente 24  
them / And recounted<sup>t</sup> to them truly how they had<sup>t</sup> don and sped /  
They ansuerd<sup>t</sup> that it shold<sup>t</sup> be hard<sup>t</sup> to be had, not withstondyng  
they muste essaye, ffor they myght passe in none other maner.  
they sente good messagers and trewe to this grete lord the Calyphe 28  
of Egyte / Our lord helpe hym in such wyse that thei fonde in hym  
this that they sought ; & shortly to say / he delyuerd<sup>t</sup> to them a good<sup>t</sup>  
chartre sealid<sup>t</sup> with his seal, & confermed with his propre hand, <sup>5</sup>that  
so closyng the / iiij / part / he graunted to them the fourth part of 32  
Iherusalem.<sup>5</sup> The messagers retorned. They that had sente them  
made to them grete ioye whan they knewe how they had achyeued  
their message. The baylies of Cypre passed<sup>t</sup> in to Surye / And<sup>t</sup>  
they made the fourth part of the walles with the goodes of them- 36

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* ceisten.

<sup>3</sup> *Orig.* fourme.

<sup>4</sup> *Orig.* fourth.

<sup>5-5</sup> Fr. "*que par ce faisant leur octroya la quarte parte de Jerusalem,*" viz.,  
that by so doing he delivered to them the fourth part of Jerusalem.

- perour, lyke as he had commaunded. And this werke was made in the yere of thyncarnacion<sup>1</sup> of oure lord .M.lxiiij. thenne was calyphe & kynge of egypte bommensor / And this was / xxxvj. yere to fore  
 4 the cyte was conquerd. vnto this tyme the cristen men were lodged in the toun emonge the turkes comynly one by another, but fro thens forth that the Calyphe had commaunded, the fourth part of the toun was delyuerd to them / Thenne were the cristen men  
 8 moche eased, ffor whan they dwellyd emong the turkes, they that were theyr neyghbours / dyde to them grete ennoyes and shames / But whan they were by them self / they dyde them not so moche / yf they had any debate emonge them self it was brought to fore  
 12 the patriark. ffor fro thezne forth was in that part of the toun none other iustice but he / thus gouerned he it as his<sup>2</sup> oune. his iiij part is bounded as I shall saye to you. ffor the yate that the sonne goth doun, whiche is named the yate dauid by the tour of the angle,  
 16 otherwyse named the tour tancre. The walles that they made within is bounded fro<sup>3</sup> the chyef way<sup>4</sup> that goth fro that gate vnto the<sup>5</sup> chaunge, And fro thens agayn vnto the west yate / In this space stondesth the mount of Caluarye where our sauour Ihesu  
 20 Criste was crucified / & the holy sepulcre / where he laye deed in, and out wherof he aroos fro deth to lyf / The hows of the hospytal, Two abbayes, one of monkes & another of nonnes / The hows of the patriarke / And the Cloysture of the chanonnes of the sepulcre.

This was done in the year 1068.

Then was the lot of the Christians in Jerusalem much easier.

[<sup>4</sup> leaf 141]

This fourth part of the Christians included the most holy places of the city.

24 How the duc Godeffroy for to augmente the Cristi-  
 ente / assieged one of the townes of the turkes /  
 ca<sup>o</sup> CCix<sup>o</sup>

- i N this tyme after that alle the Barons that were come in pyl-  
 28 gremage were departed fro the londe, and retorned in to theyr countrees, The valyaunt duc, to whom the Royamme was delyuerd / & tancre whiche was abiden with hym, they were almost alone in tho partes. they were moche pour of good and of  
 32 men. vnnethe myght they make, whan they dyde all theyr power, thre honderd men on horsbak, and two thousand a foote / The Cytees that the pylgryms had conquerd were ferre a sondre / And none myght come to other without grete peryll of theyr enemyes /

Godfrey and Tancred were now very poor, and had but few men.

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* thyncarcion.

<sup>2</sup> *Fr.* comme sienne, as his own.

<sup>3</sup> *Fr.* est bornée de, i. c. is bounded by, not from.

<sup>5</sup> *Lat.* "ad mensas nummulariorum."

The Turks did every-thing possible to injure them.

They would not plant their lands, so that the Christians should have no profit.

Many Christians left and went home.

Duke Godfrey, notwithstanding, enlarged his kingdom steadily.

He besieged Ars in vain,

The villages that were about the cytees whiche were called casians<sup>1</sup> therin dwellyd the turkes that were theyr subgettis, and obeyed to the lordes of the cytees / but thise turkes hated nomen more than they dyde the cristen men, and pourchaced incessantly alle the harme & euyl that they myght. whan they fonde ony of our men allone oute of the way / gladly they mured them. And somtyme they ledde to the Cytees of the sarasyns for to selle them / yet thought they of gretter meschyeif and folye / ffor they wold not ere ne laboure theyr lordes to thende that the lordes and men of the cytees shold not take theyr rentes / and desired them self lyuer to suffre mesease / rather than our<sup>2</sup> peple shold haue ony good or auaylle. The Cristen men were not well assured within the Cytees / ffor they had but fewe people / And there cam theuys by nyght that Robbed theyr houses, and slewe them in theyr beddes / And bare away alle theyr thynges. By this occasion many there were of the Cristen men / that lefte theyr fayr tenementes<sup>3</sup> and houses in the Cytees, and retourned pryuely in to theyr countreyes / ffor they hadde grete drede / that the Turkes, whiche that dwellyd aboute them / sholde assemble somme daye, and take the townes by strengthe & destresse, and destroye them for euer in such wyse that neuer sholde be memory of them. ffor hate of them<sup>4</sup> that thus wente was establysshyd fyrst in that londe, that who that helde a yere longe in peas his tenement and his londe / he shold neuer after answere therof to ony other, by cause ther were many that for fere and for cowardise lefte alle theyr thynges and fled away. After whan the countrey was better assured / they cam agayn, and wold haue recouerd them / but by this lawe that was thus establysshyd they were neuer herd. whyles that the Royamme was thus in grete pouerte / the valyaunt duc godeffroy, which had moche grete courage and good hope in our lord, enlarged his Royamme. he assembled as moche peple as he myght / And wente for tassiege a Cyte nygh to Iaphe on the see Syde, named Arsur. But he fonde it wel garnysshed of vytaylles, of men of Armes, and other engyns. And ther were therin turkes many, hardy and defensable. The hoost of the Cristen men that were withoute / were but fewe and suffretous by cause they had no shippes by whiche they myght defende the waye of the see, where they myght entre & yssue whan it plesyd them / ffor thise thynges the duc was constrayned to leue the siege, and

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *Casiaux*, not in the Latin original.

<sup>2</sup> *Orig. onr.*

<sup>3</sup> Fr. *teneures*, *tenures*, *holdings*.

departed thynkyng to come agayn to the same place / whan the tyme shold be more couenable / <sup>1</sup>And that he were better pourueyed of men / wherof he had nede for to take the toun.<sup>1</sup> And so <sup>but determined to try it again when he had more men.</sup>  
 4 had he don yf our lord had gyuen hym long lyf in this world.

How the turkes brought presentes to the duc godeffroy at the sayd siege and of theyr deuyses to gydre / ca. CCx<sup>o</sup>

- 8 i T happed, in this siege of whiche I haue spoken, a thyng that ought not to be forgotten. ffro the montaynes of the londe of Samarye, in whiche is the londe of Napples, cam summe turkes whiche were lordes of Casians therabout, and brought vnto the  
 12 valyaunt duc godeffroy <sup>2</sup>presentes of brede, of wyn, of dates, and of other fruyte.<sup>2</sup> It myght wel be that they cam more for tespye the beyng and contenaunce of our men than for other thyng. they prayde so moche the men of the duc that they were brought to  
 16 fore hym / Thenne they presented to hym suche as they had brought / The noble duc, as he that was humble and without bob-  
 aunce, sat in his pauyllon on the ground, & lened vnto a sak full of stuff / There abode he a part of his peple that he had sente in  
 20 fourage. whan they that had made thyse presentes / sawe the duc sytte <sup>3</sup>so lowe, they merueylled them ouermoche, and began to dem-  
 mande of the peple that vnderstode theyr langage, where fore it was so, that so hie a prynce of the weste, whiche had troubled alle  
 24 thoryent, and had slayn so many men, and taken and conquerd so puyssaunt a Royamme, conteyned hym so pourely, ne had not vnder hym tappytys ne clothes of sylk, ne habyte of a kynge on hym. ne  
 had not aboute hym sergeantes or knyghtes holdyng naked swerdes  
 28 or haches or axis danoys, by whiche alle they that sawe hym shold doute and fere hym / but sattu so lowe<sup>4</sup> as he were a man of lytil affayre. The valiaunt duc demaunded of them that knewe & vnder-  
 stode theyr langage what they sayde / It was tolde & answered of this  
 32 which they merueylled. Thenne<sup>5</sup> he sayd that it was no shame to a man mortel to sytte vpon therthe / ffor theder muste he retorne

The Turke  
of Samaria  
brought  
presentes to  
Godfrey.

who received  
them sitting  
on the  
ground.

[<sup>3</sup> leaf 142]

They mar-  
velled greatly  
at his sim-  
plicity and  
humility.

Their  
astonishment  
was told to  
Godfrey.

<sup>1-1</sup> "*et que les hommes fussent mieuz pourueuz de ce que mestier fust à prendre la ville,*" viz., and when his men were better supplied with what was necessary to take the city.

<sup>2-2</sup> Lat. "*deferentes secum exenia panis et vini caricatum quoque, et uvae passae.*"

<sup>4</sup> The original is here damaged.

<sup>5</sup> Orig. Thenue.

They departed, filled with admiration for the Duke.

after his deth, and lodge there in his body and become erthe. whan they herd this answeare, they that were comen for tespye and essaye what he was / began moche for to allowe and preyse his wytte and his humilyte. They departed fro thens / sayeng that he was shapen 4 and lyke for to be lord of alle that londe, and to gouerne the peple / that was so withoute pryde / And knewe pouerte and the fragilyte of his nature so wel. This word was spradd ouer al by them that had herd hym. he was so moche dradde and doubted of his enemyes / 8 that enquired of his affayres / whiche founde not in hym but vygour, Rayson and mesure, without ony pryde or outrage.

How buymont was taken in goyng to Meletene /  
whiche cyte the lord of the same wold yelde to 12  
hym. ca° CCxj°

Gabriel, lord of Melitene, was much afraid of an invasion of Persians,

i N the Royamme of Iherusalem they conteyned them thus as ye haue herd. Thenne it happened that a ryche man of ermenye named Gabryel was lord of the cyte of meletene, which 16 stondeth by yonde the Ryuer of Eufates in the londe of mesopotayne. This gabriel doubted moche that the turkes of Perse shold come on hym / ffor the men that they helde / ran ofte on hym / in suche wyse that he myght not wel suffre it / Therfore he toke coun- 20 seyl, And sente messagers to buymont, prynce of Anthyoche / that they shold saye to hym in his name, that he shold haste hym in to his londe / ffor he wold gyue ouer to hym his Cyte by certayn couenauntes resonable ynough whiche he sente to hym. he louyd 24

and decided to give his city over to Bohemond.

[1 ff. 142, bk.]

Bohemond started to receive this gift.

On the way he was attacked by the Turks and taken prisoner.

<sup>1</sup> buymont / And sayde that he had leuer that buymont had his cyte by his agrement, than the turkes sholde take it from<sup>2</sup> hym ayenst his wyll / whan Buymont herde thyse tydynges, as he that was hardy hasted hym moche for to make hym redy, And toke with 28 hym a good company, and went forth on his way / he passed the Ryuer of Eufates and entred in to mesopotayne / And was nyghe the Cyte of meletene / ffor whiche he wente for to receyue / whan a puyssaunt amyral of the turkes named domsmayn<sup>3</sup> / that had 32 certaynly the very knowleche of his comyng, And laye in a wayte for hym / and ranne vpon hym sodenly, and his men beyng alle out of arraye and dispourueyed / They that abode were alle slayn / ffor ther were ouer grete plente of turkes / The other fledde, Buy- 36 mont was taken and reteyned, and they ladde hym the handes

<sup>2</sup> *Orig. froin.*

<sup>3</sup> *Fr. Danisman.*



bounden with cordes / And his feet chayned<sup>e</sup> with yron / Of this  
 auenture mounted the turke in grete pryde / And trusted moche in  
 his hoost that he ledde / that he cam to fore the cyte of meletene,  
 4 and assieged it, by cause he supposed that they wold haue delyuerd  
 it without taryeng<sup>i</sup> / But somme of them that escaped fro thens  
 where the prynce was taken cam fleyng in to the cyte of Rages.  
 They told to therle Bawdwyn this grete mesaventure that was fallen  
 8 to them / whan the valyaunt Erle herd this / he was moche angrye,  
 And had grete pyte of the prynce / whom he helde for broder for  
 the companye of the pylgremage. And by cause they had theyr  
 countrees so nygh to gydre <sup>1</sup>It shold haue displeysd hym<sup>1</sup> yf the  
 12 turkes shold conquere this cyte that buymont shold haue had.  
 Therfor he somoned hastily alle his men that he myght haue on  
 horsbak and a fote, and toke with hym that was necessarye for  
 suche a vyage and wente toward thoo partyes. wel a thre daye  
 16 iourneye was Rages fro meletene. he had sone passed this waye in  
 suchewyse that he was nyghe the cyte. But the sayd donysmayn  
 knewe wel the comyng of therle and durst not abyde ne fyght  
 with hym, But lefte the siege and departed and ledde forth with  
 20 hym buymont faste bounden and straytly. whan Bawdwyn herde  
 that he durst not abyde hym / but fledde to fore hym / he ran after  
 with his men and chaced hym thre dayes longe / whan he sawe  
 that he myght not ouertake hym / he retourned in to the cyte of  
 24 Meletene. Gabryel the lord of the toun receyued hym with moche  
 grete ioye with alle his men, and made to them good chere, And  
 after gaf ouer the cyte to hym by the same couenauntes that he had  
 offred to buymont.<sup>2</sup> whan he had <sup>3</sup>don this he retorned<sup>4</sup> home  
 28 agayn to Rages.

The Turke  
elated went  
on to besiege  
Melitene,

but Baldwin  
went quickly  
to the relief  
of Bohemond.

The Turke,  
hearing this,  
left the siege  
of Melitene,  
and fled.

Baldwin  
chased them  
three days,

and then  
returned to  
Melitene,  
which sur-  
rendered to  
him.

[<sup>2</sup> leaf 148]

How the duc<sup>5</sup> godeffroy assembled<sup>6</sup> alle his peple,  
 And entred in to Arabye, And of the gayn that  
 he made, And of his deth. Capitulo CCxij<sup>o</sup>

32 g Odeffroy the valyaunt Duc and his men that were lefte with  
 hym for to kepe the Royamme began to haue moche grete  
 mesease / and suffre suche pouerte that vnnethe it may be deuyed.  
 Thenne it happed that good espyes and trewe brought to hym

Godfrey and  
his men were  
in great dis-  
tress,

<sup>1</sup>—<sup>1</sup> Fr. "moult leur eust displeu se ilz conquissent les cités," viz., it would have displeased them much, etc.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. bynmont.

<sup>4</sup> Orig. reborned.

<sup>5</sup> Orig. duc.

<sup>6</sup> Orig. asseinbled.

and made a  
foray into  
Arabia to  
find food  
and money.

There they  
got great  
spoils.

One of the  
lords of  
Arabia came,  
out of  
curiosity, to  
visit Godfrey,

and asked  
him to show  
him some feat  
of strength.

[1 ff. 143, bk.]

Godfrey  
smote the  
head off  
from a camel,  
at one stroke  
of the sword.

tidynges that in the partyes of arabye on that other syde of ffrom  
Iordan were moche ryche peple whiche doubted nothyng. And  
therefore they dwellyd out of fortresses. yf they were surprised  
there shold be moch grete gayne wonne / The valyaunt Duc that so  
moche had suffred toke with hym peple a foote and on horsbak as  
many as he myght, sauf the garde of the Cyte. Thenne entre he  
sodeynly in to the londe of his enemyes. There gadred he many  
grete proyes, that is to wete, horses / beufes, Kyen and sheep, And  
ryche prysonners brought he grete plente. Thenne retorne he  
toward Iherusalem / Somme turkes ther were hye and puyssaunt of  
them of Arabye whiche were moche hardy, and noble in Armes,  
And had grete prys. Emonge all other ther was one that had longe  
desired for to see the duc Godeffroye of boloyne / & wold fayn  
knowe yf it were trewe that was said of his force & strengthe / &  
acquynte hym with his peple of ffrance, of whom he had herd so  
moche / that were come fro the occident vnto thoryent / And had  
conquerd so many londes / And sette them in theyr subiection.  
About alle other he desired to see duc godeffroy and knowe yf it  
were truth that was sayd of his prowesse & his strengthe / he dide  
so moch to such men as he spak, that he had good surete & triewe  
to come vnto the duc. he salewed hym moche lowe enclynynge lyke  
as is theyr customme. And after he prayd and desired of the duc  
moche humbly / that it wold plesse hym to smyte with his swerd a  
Camel that he had brought moche grete. ffor as he sayde it shold  
be grete honour to hym in his countre / yf he myght recounte ony  
of his strokes that he had seen hym self. The duc knewe wel that  
he was come fro fer to see hym / And dyde that he requyred hym.  
he drewe his swerd / and smote the camel on the neck where it was  
grettest, And smote it of as lyghtly as it had been a sheep. whan  
the turke sawe this / he merueylled ouer moche. In such wyse  
that he was all abasshed / whan he had a litil bethought hym / he  
sayd in his langage, I see wel, sayd he, that the duc hath a good  
swerd & wel trenchant & cuttyng / But I wote neuer yf he coude  
smyte so grete a strook with another swerde. The valyaunt duc  
demaunded what he sayde. And whan he knewe, he began to  
smyle a lytil / And after sayd, that he shold delyuer to hym his  
owen swerde. The turke dyde so. the duc thenne smote therwith  
another Camel, In suche wys that he made the hede to flee of moche  
lyghtlyer than of the other / thenne merueylled ouer moche the turk,  
And sayde that it was more by the strengthe of the Arme than by

the bounte of the swerd. he had wel prenyd that it was trewe that  
 was sayd of the Duc in his Countreye. Thenne he gaf to the  
 duc many fayr Iewellys of gold and of ryche stones, and moche  
 4 acqueynted with hym. And after retorned home in to his countre.  
 The valyaunt duc cam vnto Iherusalem with alle his proye / & the  
 trusses & fardellys of his gayn, which wer so grete that all the men  
 of his companye were ryche. In that moneth of Iuyll the velyaunt  
 8 duc godefroy whiche was gouernour of the Royamme of Iherusalem  
 had a maladye and sekenes moch grete / Alle the phisiciens of the  
 contre were sente for. They dyde alle that in them was possible /  
 But alle auaylled not, ffor the payne encresyd alway more. After  
 12 this he sente for men of relyggon, as prelates / curates & other good  
 & deuoute men, for to haue counseyll of them for the helthe of his  
 sowle / he was moche wel confessyd and veray repentaunt with  
 grete wepynges / And in his right mynde with grete deuocion<sup>1</sup>  
 16 departed out of this world / Certaynly we ought to thynke that the  
 sowle was brought vp with angelis to fore the face of Ihesu crist.  
 he deyde the .xiiij day of Iuyll the yere of thyncarnacion<sup>2</sup> of oure  
 lord .M / i / C / he was entiered and buryed in the chirche of the  
 20 holy sepulcre vnder the place of the mount of Caluarye / where our  
 lord was put on the crosse / That place is kept moche honestly for  
 to entere and burye the kynges vnto this day.

The astonish-  
 ed Arabians  
 gave Godfrey  
 great gifts.

Godfrey was  
 taken ill on  
 his return  
 from this  
 expedition.

All the  
 physicians  
 of the land  
 were of no  
 avail.

He died the  
 13th day of  
 July 1100,  
 and was  
 buried under  
 Mount  
 Calvary.

Thus endeth this book Intitled the laste siege and conquest of  
 24 Iherusalem, with many other historyes therin comprysed / Fyrst of  
 Eracles / and of the meseases of the cristen men in the holy londe /  
 And of their releef & conquest of Iherusalem / and how Godeffroy  
 of boloyne was first kyng of the latyns in that royaume & of his  
 28 deth, translated & reduced out of ffrensse<sup>3</sup> in to englysshe<sup>4</sup> by me  
 symple persone Wylliam Caxton to thende that euery cristen man  
 may be the better encoraged tenterprise warre for the defense of  
 Cristendom, and to recouer the sayd Cyte of Iherusalem in whiche  
 32 oure blessyd sauour Ihesu Criste suffred deth for al mankynde,  
 and roose fro deth to lyf / And fro the same holy londe ascended in  
 to heuen. And also that Cristen peple one vnyed in a veray peas /  
 myght empryse to goo theder in pylgremage with strong honde for  
 36 to expelle the sarasyns and turkes out of the same that our lord  
 myght be ther seruyd & worshipped of his chosen cristen peple in  
 that holy & blessyd londe in which he was Incarnate, and blissyd

Thus endeth  
 this book,

[\* leaf 144]  
 translated  
 out of French  
 by me,  
 William  
 Caxton;

<sup>1</sup> Orig. denocion.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. thyncarnacion.

<sup>3</sup> Orig. ffrensse.

which book  
I present  
unto King  
Edward IV.

I began it on  
the 12th of  
March, and  
finished it  
the 7th of  
June, 1481.

it with the presence of his blessyd body whyles he was here in  
erthe emonge<sup>1</sup> vs / by whiche conquest we myght deserue after this  
present short and transitorye lyf, the celestial lyf to dwelle in heuen  
eternally in ioye without ende, Amen / Which book I presente vnto 4  
the mooste Cristen kynge, kynge Edward the fourth, humbly  
besechyng his hyenes to take no displesyr at me so presumyng,  
whiche book<sup>2</sup> I began in marche, the xij daye, and fynysshyd the  
vij day of Iuyn / the yere of our lord .M.CCCC.lxxxj, & the xxj 8  
yere of the regne of our sayd sauerayn lord kyng Edward the  
fourth, & in this maner sette in forme & enprynted the xx day of  
nouembre the yere a forsayd in thabbay of westmester, by the sayd  
wylliam Caxton.

12

<sup>1</sup> *Orig. emonge.*

<sup>2</sup> *Orig. boook.*

## NOTES.

Note 1, p. 4. This Edward was Edward IV., who died April 9th, 1483.

Note 2, p. 5. "*My lord Prynce and my lord Rychard, duc of yorke and norfolke,*" mentioned here by Caxton, are the two young princes who were so cruelly murdered in the Tower by Richard III. in 1483.

Note 3, p. 19. William here gives the story of the capture of the Cross as believed in his time, and still received by the Catholic Church; Chosroes' trophy, however, was not the whole of the Cross, as only part of it was left in Jerusalem by the Empress Helena, at the time of its discovery. The rest was sent to Constantinople, when it was again divided, one half being inserted by Constantine in the head of a statue of himself, while the other half was sent to Rome and deposited in the church Santa Croce, in Gerusalemme, which received its name from the sacred relic. In 614, Chosroes carried off the piece that had been left in Jerusalem to his capital, Ctesiphon; fourteen years afterwards, in 628, Heraclius brought it back. The feast of the Elevation of the Cross still commemorates the day of its restoration.

Note 4, p. 19. The Cosdroe of William of Tyre is Chosroes, or Khosru II., called *Parviz the Conqueror*, who ascended the throne in 590, in the midst of a civil war, and was assisted in maintaining his position by Mauritius, Emperor of Rome. When Phocas killed Mauritius in 602, and seized the imperial power, Chosroes decided to avenge his ally, and attacked Phocas, taking Jerusalem in 614. Heraclius, who succeeded Phocas as emperor, invaded Persia in return, and conquered Chosroes, who was killed soon after, on the 29th of Feb., 628, but by the hand of his own son. William's authority for his version of the whole story was the Arabian Said Ibn Baktrik.

Note 5, p. 20. William refers here without doubt to Zacharias, patriarch of Constantinople, who was at this time taken prisoner, and carried into Persia by Chosroes. Theophanes of Byzantium tells us in his *Chronographia*, that this Zacharias was a contemporary of St. John of Alexandria, called Eleemosynarius,—the St. John Elymont from which the church in Jerusalem was named. According to Theophanes, Zacharias himself brought back the Cross from his captivity, and died soon after. According to others, Modestus, the successor of Zacharias, was patriarch when the Cross was reinstated. The Catalogue of Nicephorus states that Zacharias was bishop (or patriarch) from 609 to 631, which would give him three years after his return from captivity in 628.

Note 6, p. 22. This is the great and famous hero of the Arabian Nights of our childhood, Haroun al Raschid, or Ressit. His name is more properly Harûn er Rashid, *Aaron the Orthodox*. He was the fifth of the Abasside Caliphs of Bagdad, was born at Ray, Feb. 15th, 766, and died in 808. He was the most accomplished, eloquent, and generous of all Mohammedan princes. Ascending the throne at the age of twenty-two, he soon ruled the greater part of the Eastern world. The

account of his relations with Charlemagne has, however, no trustworthy historical basis.

Note 7, p. 24. Hyart, the Idraot of Tasso's *Jerusalem Delivered*, a prince of Damascus, and uncle of Armida, whom Tasso sends to the camp of the Christians to seduce their chiefs.

Note 8, p. 36. According to Paulin Paris, the first church of St. Mary de la Latyne was constructed between 1014 and 1023, by some Amalfians, permission having been granted them by the Sultan of Egypt. It was built near the church of the Holy Sepulchre, in the street of the Paumiers, and was called *Latyne*, because the Latin instead of the Greek rites were used: a monastery was added to it to receive the pilgrims, and a hospital for the sick. Godfrey of Bouillon and others gave it large donations. This was the origin of the Knights Hospitallers of the order of St. John of Jerusalem, called later Knights of Rhodes and Malta.

Note 10, p. 37. For this conversation between Peter and Simeon there is no historical authority. It is not found in any of the known sources, and seems to have been introduced by William for rhetorical effect.

Note 11, p. 40. This Gilbert (who is known in history as the Anti-Pope) held the Seat from 1080 to 1101, under the title of Clement III., but has never been numbered among the legitimate popes.

Note 12, p. 47. This *Gaultier without knowleche* is called in English Walter the Pennyless, his French title being not *Gautier sans Savoir*, which Caxton translates *Gaultier without knowleche*, but *Gautier sans Avoir*. P. Paris says that, far from being a term of reproach, the title *Sans Avoir* was often applied to sons of noblemen to distinguish them from their older and wealthier brothers: Albert of Aix calls him *Walterus cognomento Zenzavehor*; Tudebodius, *Gualterius sine habere*; Foucher of Chartres, *Gualterius sine pecunia*; Foulques d'Anjou, *Gualterius sine Avero*; and William of Tyre, *Waltarius sine Habere*. The *Dictionnaire des Croisades*, Migne, tome 18, says that his true name was Gautier de Perejo, that he was a nephew of Gautier de Perejo, who died *en route* for the Holy Land in Bulgaria. Gautier sans Avoir succeeded his uncle in command of 15,000 men, who with eight knights formed the advance guard of Peter the Hermit. Gautier was killed in 1097, during the siege of Nicæa.

Note 13, p. 54. These speeches of the Grecian ambassador to Peter are quoted almost verbatim by William from Albert of Aix.

Note 14, p. 56. Soliman, son of Kuntul Misch, and a direct descendant of Seljuk, passed into Asia Minor in 1074, at the head of an army of Turks, carrying his conquests as far as Nicæa. His eldest son, Kildige Arslan, called also *Soliman the Younger*, and *David*, is the *Solyman* here mentioned. William of Tyre makes him a nephew of the Soudan of Persia, and confounds the father and son.

Note 15, p. 62. There was at this time a universal uprising against the Jews, especially in Germany, due, without doubt, to the general state of exaltation. At Spiers, Worms, and Treves, as well as at Cologne and Mayence, there were terrible massacres, at least a thousand being slain in Mayence alone. In England the feeling was also very bitter against them, and notwithstanding Richard's efforts to protect them, large numbers were slain in Lincoln, Stamford, and Lynn, and also in York after Richard's departure.

Note 16, p. 79. Caxton's *Entyses* is a corruption for Eutyches, founder of the sect of the Eutyrians, presbyter and archimandrite at Constantinople. He affirmed that after the union of the two natures, human and Divine, Christ had only one nature, that of the Incarnate Word, and that therefore His human body was essentially different from other human bodies. At the Council of Chalcedon, in 451, this theory was declared heretical, and it was affirmed that two natures were united in Christ, but without any alteration, absorption, or confusion. Eutyches died in exile.

Note 17, p. 79. Discretus is a corruption or mistranslation for Dioscurus,

bishop of Alexandria, from 444 to 454. He also was condemned for heresy at the Chalcedon Council.

Note 18, p. 95. Belphet is known in Oriental history as Alp Arslan, Sultan of Persia, born in 1030. He was celebrated for his justice, his courage, and his generosity. His features were noble and fine, and his character gentle and good. His glory and power were so great that he is said to have had at one time 1,200 subject princes around his throne.

Note 19, p. 115. Without doubt Caius Julius Solinus, a Latin historian and grammarian of the third or fourth century, author of a book called *Collectanea Rerum Memorabilium*, a collection of the memorable things to be found in different countries. His work is divided into seventy chapters. The best ancient edition is that of Salmasius, the best modern, that of Mommsen, Berlin, 1864. He lived after the time of Pliny, and copied him so closely that he is often called Pliny's ape.

Note 20, p. 122. Guynesers is a corruption of Guinemers, as can be seen from the Latin form of the word, *Guinemerus*.

Note 21, p. 124. William has made a mistake in his statement in respect to Rages. This is not the Rages where Tobias went for the money of Gabael, as that city is in Persia, five miles south-east of Teheran.

Note 22, p. 125. The name of this Greek prince, who ruled Edessa, was Theodore. It is given thus in the history of Matthew of Edessa.

Note 23, p. 148. Latyns, a corruption for Tatinus or Estatin, called Tatinus the Noseless. He was a prefect of the palace of the emperor of Constantinople; Anna Comnenus calls him Tatikios, and says that he was a Saracen by birth. He is called Tatice L'Esnasé in the *Chanson d'Antioche*.

Note 24, p. 152. When the Crusaders arrived in Asia Minor, the situation of the Mohammedans was exceedingly favourable for the accomplishment of their purpose; all was confusion, and civil conflicts prevailed everywhere; the power of the Seljuks was greatly broken, several pretenders were quarrelling for the Sultan's throne, and the emirs or governors of provinces, having made themselves independent, were waging war with each other. Several subject Christian princes—Armenians—had risen in arms in Taurus, and on the banks of the Euphrates in Mesopotamia. On the south, the Caliph of Egypt had just commenced a general war against the Seljuks, and was advancing towards Palestine. The Emir of Nicæa was fighting against the Prince of Mitilene; the Emir of Aleppo was besieging his neighbours of Damascus and Emessa; and the Emirs of Sebasta and Mosul were engaged in war with the Armenian leaders, who were awaiting the arrival of the Crusaders with great impatience. For a further account of the situation, see von Sybel's *Geschichte des Ersten Kreuzzuges*.

Note 25, p. 167. Steven paid dearly for this desertion of the Holy Cause; and although he arrived safely in France, was so reproached and condemned by both his subjects and his wife, that he was forced in order to satisfy public opinion, and to retrieve his character, to return to the Holy Land and fulfil his vows. He shared the misfortunes and perils of the Lombard, German, and French pilgrims, who were led by the Archbishop of Milan, the Duke of Bavaria, and the Duke of Bourgogne. Arriving safely in Antioch, he was received by Tancred, and went on to Palestine, where he was killed in 1102 at the battle of Ramla. William, in recounting his death, observes that God had permitted him by a glorious death to atone for his previous sin and cowardice.

Note 26, p. 189. Some of the most influential men departed in this way, by night; among those that are not given by name were Lambert le Pauvre, son of Conon of Montaigne, and Godfrey's own nephew, Guillaum de Grantemesnil, Aubery his brother, Guillaume Charpentier, and Guy Trosselle. They were called hereafter the rope-runners, or *funambuli*, in derision, and were regarded as most ignominious cowards and sinners: William refused to name them, because they were blotted out of the Lamb's Book of Life for ever.

Note 27, p. 190. Guy Croseaulx, a corruption of Guy Trosseaulx, or Guy Trosselle.

Note 28, p. 201. William follows Raymond of Agiles in his story of the finding of the lance, who tells of infinite signs and wonders from heaven. As usual, William omits the greater part of these, and speaks very cautiously of the whole matter: he evidently is not a great believer in miracles. All of the different historians mention this miracle. Paulin Paris, in a note to his edition of William of Tyre, speaks of an early tradition that the lance with which St. Mercury pierced Julian the Apostate was preserved in the crypt of this church of St. Peter.

Note 29, p. 202. This man, who accompanied Peter the Hermit to Kerbogha, is called in French Herluin. He can speak Turkish, and Tudebodus calls him Drogomandus. Albert of Aix does not mention him, because he wishes Peter to have all the honour of the embassy.

Note 30, p. 211. This is not supposed to have been the real Greek fire, as used in ancient times in the Levant. William says, "*Et ignem, solito excutientes artificio, subiciunt in stipulam,*" they simply set fire to the bundles of hay, and made a dense smoke.

Note 31, p. 219. Monsieur Littré, in his dictionary, accepts this origin of the word *hasard*. It did not come, however, from William of Tyre, but is an interpolation of some French translator, who put in "*Sachiez que là fu trovez et de là vint li jeus des dez qui einsint a non.*"

Note 32, p. 233. This Cham, or *Caym*, as other French editions give it, is our Ham: Chanaan is naturally his son Canaan, and Aracheus is the son of Canaan, who is called in our English Bible the Arkite. The Latin version of William of Tyre states that he was the seventh son, *septimus filiorum Chanaan*.

Note 33, pp. 238, 280. There seems to have been a difference of opinion as to this Arnold of Rohes or Roches. William of Tyre dislikes him, and loses no opportunity of speaking slightly of him, in this agreeing with Raymond d'Agiles and l'Abbé Guibert; for a rehabilitation of his character, see *Description des Tombeaux de Godefroid de Bouillon*, etc., by the Baron de Hody, Bruxelles, 1855.

Note 34, p. 281. Mistranslation by Caxton, which is very curious. The French reads, "*Ainz demandais des peintures et des verrières, aux clers et aus provaires, Mout ois volentiers les estoires, et les vies des sainz et trop entendoit.*" This last sentence is not in the original Latin, but was interpolated by some French translator. As can be easily seen, it was the paintings and the stained windows, not the *painters* and *glaziers*, that he desired, and he sat a long time listening to the stories and lives of the saints. Paulin Paris remarks that this passage proves the early use of stained glass.



## VOCABULARY.

- Abandoned (himself), v. pret., p. 102, 109, exposed himself
- Abasshed, p. 129; *abasshyd*, p. 55; O.F. *eba[h]isser*, extended from stem of Fr. *ebahir*, confused, disconcerted
- Abeut, adv., p. 185; A.S. *abutan*, round about
- Abide, vb. trans., p. 138; A.S. *ābīdan*, pret. sing. *ābād* = Goth. *usbeidan*, to await, to expect
- Abode. See *Abide*
- Abourne, adj., p. 286; O.F. *auborne*, *alborne*, whitish yellow, auburn
- Abyden, v. int., p. 195, remained
- Abye, v. t. pret., p. 274, *aboughte*; A.S. *abyrgan*, to pay the penalty of, to atone for
- Abylliments, p. 183. See *Habylliments*
- Abyte, n., p. 27; O.F. *habit*, external dress, the costume appropriated for a particular use or vocation
- Accomp̄te, v., p. 291; O.F. *aconter*, to reckon as, to hold to be
- Accorded to, v., p. 120; O.F. *accorder*, to be reconciled to or with
- Achyeuyd, v., p. 2, *achyeued*, p. 197; O.F. *achever*, to accomplish, to achieve
- Accounted, v., p. 197; O.F. *aconter*, to relate, to narrate
- Acowarded, v., p. 64; O.F. *couarder*, *coarder*, to make afraid
- Acqueynted hym with, v., p. 123, O.F. *s'accountier de*, to make oneself acquainted with
- Adcertayned, pp., p. 140; O.F. *acertainer* from *ā* + *certain*, to make certain
- Addressement, n., p. 44; O.F. *adrice-ment*, according to Cotgrave, a directing or guiding in the nearest course
- Admonested, p. 43, admonished
- Admyral, n., p. 152; O.F. *admiral*, *amiral*, originally from the Ar. *Emir*, an Emir or prince under the Sultan
- Adommaged, v., p. 40; O.F. *ā* + *domager*, *domagier*, damaged, injured
- Adressyd, p. 123, 259; O.F. *adrecier*, set up, directed
- Aduowe, v., p. 105; O.F. *avouer*, acknowledge
- Afeblysshe, p. 219; O.F. *afeblir*, to enfeeble
- Affectuously, adv., p. 219; F. *affectueux*, affectionately
- Affraye, n., p. 44, 57, disturbance, broil, fear
- Affrayed, v. t., p. 293; O.F. *afrayer*, *affrayer*, *esfrayer*, etc., frightened, terrified
- Affyance, p. 131, trust, confidence
- Affye, p. 214; O.F. *after*, to trust, to confide in
- Affirst, adj., p. 51, superlative of *after*, the last, the hindmost
- Ait̄re, p. 25; O.F. *ait̄re*, churchyard porch
- Alalonge, adv., p. 3, exactly, truly, at length
- Alledge, v. tr., p. 147, 230, etc.; O.F. *al-leger*, *alegier*, to lighten, mitigate, allay
- Almesse, n., p. 35, 252; A.S. *aelmesse*, *aelmysse*, alms
- Alowed, v., p. 55; F. *alouer*, praised
- Alyed, p. 222; O.F. *alier*, united, allied
- Ameuyd, v., p. 197, moved, influenced
- Amytee, n., p. 225; F. *amitié*, friendship
- Anguysshously, adv., p. 58; O.F. *anguissus*, *angoisseux*, fiercely, strenuously
- Annoyes, n., p. 113; O.F. *anoi*, *anui*, *enui*, discomfort, vexation, trouble
- Aourned, p. 122; O.F. *adorner*, adorned

- Apparayllement, n., p. 46; F. *apparailllements*, equipments  
 Appayred, v. pret., p. 282; O.F. *empirier*, injured, spoilt  
 Appert, adj., p. 82; O.F. *appert*, capable  
 Apperte, adj., p. 90; open, present  
 Appertenautes, n., p. 275; O.F. *apertenance*, appurtenances  
 Apperteyned, v. pret., p. 40; Fr. *appartenir*, belonged, appertained  
 Appertly, adv., p. 284, plainly, openly  
 Appese, v. tr., p. 61; O.F. *apaissier*, to appease  
 Approuchement, n., p. 155, from v. approach; O.F. *aprochier*, approach  
 Araged, p. 112; O.F. *rager*, *ragier*, mad  
 Aretted, pp., p. 281; O.F. *areter*, assigned, ascribed  
 Armures, n., p. 46; O.F. *armure*, armor  
 Arrayed, v., p. 46; O.F. *areier*, *aroyer*, to array, arrange, or dispose in order  
 Arreche, v., p. 75; A.S. *aræcan*. Cf. Mod. Ger. *erreichen* = to attain, get at, to strike  
 Arryved, pp., p. 261; *arriver*, landed (the word has here its primitive meaning)  
 Asondre, adv., p. 30; A.S. *on sundran*, asunder  
 Aspre, adj.; O.F. *aspre*, severe, cruel  
 Assaylles, n., p. 141; O.F. *assailler*, assaults  
 Assieged, v. pret., p. 19; O.F. *assegier*, besieged  
 Astonyed, pp., p. 288, either from A.S. *astunian*, or from O.F. *estoner*, *estuner*, *estonner*, probably of A.S. origin, stunned  
 Aswage, v., p. 54; O.F. *asouager*, *asuager*, assuage  
 Attemperat, adj., p. 116, moderate  
 Atteyne, v., p. 243; O.F. *attaindre*, attain, reach, strike  
 Attyed, v. pret., p. 117; O.F. *atisier*, urged on, instigated  
 Atyement, n., p. 121, instigation, enticement  
 Aualed, v. trans. pret., p. 119, 180; O.F. *avalier*, lowered  
 Auctors, n., p. 135; O.F. *autor*  
 Aune, adj., p. 305, own  
 Aulter, p. 253, aultres, p. 25; O.F. *alter*, *auter*, altar  
 Auysed, p. 102; O.F. *aviser*, to notice, observe  
 Auowe, n., p. 149, vow  
 Avowed, p. 126. See *Aduowe*  
 Avoyde, v., p. 271, to quit. For derivation see *Voyde*  
 Awbes, n., p. 209, albs, a white linen vestment, and also a close-fitting vestment worn by officiants at mass, of black or other colour.—Cot. See the Lay Folks' Mass Book, p. 167  
 Ayerye, p. 253, airy  
 Bandon, n., p. 165; to have *bandon* = to have full and free permission  
 Barat, n., p. 236; Fr. *barat*, origin uncertain; trickery, deceit  
 Barayn, adj., p. 116; O.F. *barain*, *brahain*, *brehaing*, sterile  
 Barbycane, n., p. 156; Barbycam, n., p. 251; O.F. *barbican*, supposed to be of Arabian or Persian origin, introduced into Europe by the Crusaders; cf. *Barbican*, a casement or hole in a parapet or wall to shoot out from; some think it also a sentry scout-house or hole. See Cotgrave, Ar. Pers. *babkhanah*  
 Barellys, n., p. 119; O.F. *baril*, barrels  
 Bataylles, n., p. 56, 138, etc.; O.F. *bataille*, from *battere*, *battuere*, battalions  
 Baylliage, n., p. 125, a bailiwick  
 Bayly, n., p. 24, 125, etc.; O.F. *baili*, earlier *bailif*, a derivative of *bail*, a bailif  
 Beestes, n., p. 48; beestys, p. 48; O.F. *beste*, *bête*, beasts  
 Befylle, v., p. 20; A.S. *befeallan*, *befel*  
 Behoued, p. 110, pret. of *behoove*; A.S. *behofian*, behooved  
 Behoueful, adj., p. 44, needful, fit  
 Berde, n., p. 36; A.S. *beard*, beard  
 Besaunt, n., p. 35, 165; O.F. *besant*, M.L. *Bezantius*, from *Byzantium*, a gold coin issued by the Emperors of Constantinople, in the Middle Ages  
 Besy, adj., p. 153; A.S. *bysig*, busy  
 Besynes, n., p. 162, *busy* and *ness*, business  
 Bette, v., p. 47; A.S. *beatan*, beat  
 Beuffes, pl. of *beef*, p. 33; O.F. *boeuf*, *boef*, *buef*, *beeves*  
 Bihalue, p. 89, behalf  
 Bobaunce, p. 27; O.F. *bobance*; cf. M.L. *bombicus*, from L. *bombus*, boasting, pride

- Bote, v. pret., p. 113; A.S. *bitan* = Goth. *beitan*, to bite
- Bowe turquoys, n., p. 102, a Turkish bow
- Brede, n., p. 135; A.S. *breáð*, breadth
- Brende, v. pret., p. 51; A.S. *baernan*; pret. *baernde*, burnt
- Brent, v., p. 20. See *Brende*
- Brokes, n., p. 258; A.S. *broc*, brooks
- Bruyt, n., p. 138; O.F. *bruit*, report, rumor, noise
- Busslement, n., p. 131, abbreviation for ambushment; O.F. *embuschement*, ambush
- Busynes, n., p. 53, 108, etc.; O.F. *bus-sine*, *buisine*, trumpets
- Bycam, v. pret., p. 124; A.S. *becumen* = Goth. *bikwiman*, became
- Bye, v., p. 61; A.S. *bycgan*, pret. *bohte* = Goth. *bugjan*, atone for
- Bygonne, v. pret., p. 53; A.S. *beginnen*; pret. *began*, begun
- Byheded, pp., p. 52; A.S. *behéafðian*, beheaded
- Byleve, p. 38; A.S. *be* + *liefan*, believe
- Byse, n., p. 124; F. *bise*, North-east or North
- Bytwene, prep., p. 121; A.S. *betweón*, between
- Byyonde, p. 46; A.S. *begeondan*, beyond
- Caable, n., p. 267; F. *chaable*, L.L. *cadabula*, *quadabulum*, Gk. *χαρβολή*, a machine of war for throwing stones and demolishing walls
- Caityfnes, n., p. 37; O.F. *caitif*, *chetif* + nes; wretchedness, misery
- Canellys, n., p. 273; F. *canal*, canals
- Cariage, p. 51, caryage, p. 52, n.; O.F. *carriage*, *chariage*, the act of carrying, also that which is carried, the burden
- Castelles, n., p. 2, castellys, p. 99; O.F. *chastel*, a rolling gallery, flanked with towers for attacking a fortified place, called sometimes a chat, *castel*
- Cautele, n., p. 186; O.F. *cautelle*, caution, subtlety, cunning, fraud
- Cendres, n., p. 279; O.F. *cedre*, cinders, ashes
- Chaas, v. pret., p. 2; A.S. *ceðsan*, pret. *ceðs* = Goth. *kisan*, to choose
- Chaas, n., p. 64; A.S. *chace*, *cace*, v. sub. chase
- Chalyces, n., p. 36; O.F. *chalice*, *calice*, *calix*, chalice
- Champayns, n., p. 212; O.F. *champagne*, plain, field
- Channones, n., p. 290; O.F. *canone*, *chanone*, *chanoine*, canons or prebendaries
- Charged, v. pret., p. 213; O.F. *chargier*, *cargier*, loaded
- Charyotte, n., p. 33; O.F. *chariot*, dim. of *char*, a two-wheeled waggon
- Chattes, n., p. 257; O.F. *chat*, a frame of heavy timber, with projecting pins or teeth, hoisted upon battlements to be dropped on assailants
- Chees, p. 45, pret. of *choose*
- Chere, n., p. 218; O.F. *chere*, *chiere*, cheer
- Cheuysshe, v., p. 151; O.F. *chevir*, to accomplish, get, provide
- Chiere, n., p. 276. See *Chere*
- Childed, v., p. 111; A.S. *cildian*, gave birth to
- Childeren, n., p. 46; A.S. *cild*, children
- Choos, v., p. 131, pret. of *choose*
- Chylded, v., p. 246. See *Childed*
- Cirurgens, n., p. 114; O.F. *cirurgien*, *serurgien*, surgeons
- Claymeth, v., p. 134; O.F. *claimer*, *cleimer*, *clamer*, call or name
- Closure, n., p. 135; O.F. *closure*, afterwards extended under influence of Lat. *claustrum* to *closture*, L. *clausura*, enclosure
- Cloysture, p. 252. See above.
- Cole, vb., p. 88, to cool
- Comene, v., p. 288, to talk of a weighty matter in counsel (Palsgrave), to discuss, treat of
- Commysed, v., p. 21; O.F. *commis*, pp. of *commettre*, committed, perpetrated
- Compleyned, vb., p. 186; O.F. *complaindre*, to lament, to bewail
- Conduyte, v., p. 34, 181, etc.; F. *conduit*, pp. of *conduire*, to conduct
- Conduytes, n., p. 254; O.F. *conduit*, conduits, tubes, canals
- Conestable, n., p. 132, 236; O.F. *conne-stable*, general-in-chief of an army
- Conne, v., p. 162; A.S. *cann*, *can*, pl. *cunnon*, to be able
- Contened, v., p. 31; O.F. *contenir*, to conduct one's self
- Conteyned them, p. 37. See above
- Contre, n., p. 48, *contreye*, p. 63, *countrie*, p. 48; O.F. *countreé*, *contrée*, country

- Convalescence, n., p. 219, convalescence  
 Coosteyeng, pres. part., p. 235; O.F. *costeier*, to sail along the coast, to go along by the side of  
 Corne, n., p. 252; Fr. *corne*, a corner or projecting point  
 Corromped, pp., p. 217; O.F. *corrompre*, L. *corrumpere*, corrupted  
 Corrouers, n., p. 154; O.F. *coureor*, *coureur*, runners, messengers  
 Costeyeng, p. 139. See above.  
 Couenable, adj., p. 274; O.F. *convenable*; earlier, *convenable*, suitable, proper  
 Couine, n., p. 19, 151; O.F. *covine*, *covine*, from *covenir*, manner, condition, appearance  
 Counterpeysed, vb., p. 69; O.F. *contrepeser* = to weigh in the balance, to consider  
 Courage, n., p. 178; O.F. *corage*, *courage*, heart, mind, thought, desire  
 Courreurs, n., p. 159. See *Corrouers*  
 Creancers, n., p. 44, creditors  
 Creance, n., p. 24, 152; O.F. *creance*, faith, confidence  
 Creneul, n., p. 181; O.F. *crenelle*, dim. of *crena*, an embrasure, a battlement, one of the open spaces of a battlemented parapet which alternate with the merlons or cops  
 Creuache, n., p. 102; O.F. *crevace*, a crack, fissure, cleft  
 Crochette, n., p. 103; F. *crochette*, dim. of *croc*, a hook  
 Crose, n., p. 40; O.F. *croce*, crozier, a bishop's staff  
 Croysyng, v. sub., p. 3, the putting on of the cross  
 Crybbe, n., p. 246; A.S. *crib*, *cryb*, a crib, a manger  
 Culpe, n., p. 120; O.F. *culpe*, *coupe*, *colpe*, fault, guilt  
 Culuer, n., p. 219; A.S. *culfre*, *culufre*, probably a corruption of Lat. *columba*, a dove, a pigeon; used by Spenser  
 Cursour, n., p. 111; O.F. *corsier*, *coursier*, a war-horse, a runner  
 Custrellis, n., p. 204; O.F. *coustelle*, a sabre with two edges  
 Cymetyer, n., p. 251; O.F. *cemetiere*, a cemetery
- Dampned, p. 79, damned  
 Daunger, n., p. 192; O.F. *danger*, *daugier*, difficulty, hesitation, power
- Debate, n., p. 49; O.F. *desbat*, *debat*, contention, strife  
 Debonair, adj., p. 50; O.F. *de bon air*, courteous, affable  
 Debonairly, adv., p. 22, courteously  
 Decevalle, n., p. 81; O.F. *decevaile*, deception, treachery  
 Deduyt, n., p. 118; O.F. *deduit*, diversion, sport, pastime  
 Defaute, n., p. 52; O.F. *défaute*, a fault, a failure  
 Defended, pp., p. 24; O.F. *defendre*, forbidden  
 Deffeted, pp., p. 21; O.F. *defeter*, defeated  
 Defowled, pp., p. 36; O.F. *defoler*, trampled underfoot  
 Degrees, n., p. 252; O.F. *degré*, steps  
 Delue, v., p. 201; A.S. *delfan*, pret. *dealf*, pl. *dulfon*, pp. *dolfen*, to dig, excavate  
 Delytable, adj., p. 118, 130; O.F. *delitable*, delightful, delectable  
 Delyuer, adj., p. 205; O.F. *delivre*, free, prompt, nimble  
 Delyuerid, pp., p. 124; O.F. *delivrer*, freed, delivered  
 Delyuerly, adv., p. 133, promptly, actively  
 Demayne, n., p. 106; O.F. *demaine*, *demeine*, var. of *domain*, power, dominion  
 Demened, v., p. 28, 31, 37; O.F. *demener*, conducted; managed, treated  
 Demonstraunce, n., p. 246; O.F. *demonstrance*, demonstration, proof  
 Departed, v., p. 251; O.F. *departir*, divided, separated  
 Deporte, v., p. 26; O.F. *deporter*, to protect, take care of  
 Desherytid, pp., p. 43; O.F. *desheriter*, disinherited  
 Despenses, n., p. 162; O.F. *despences*, expenses, expenditures  
 Desperpled, p. 64; O.F. *desparpaillier*, etc. = to scatter, to disperse  
 Deployed, pp., p. 239; F. *de + ployer*, unfolded  
 Desraye, n., p. 295; O.F. *desarrei*, *disarroi*, *disroi*, disarray, confusion  
 Destourmed, p. 75, probably a corruption for destourned; O.F. *destourner*, to hinder, avoid, turn from  
 Destrayt, n., p. 244; F. *destreit*, *destroit*, a narrow passage  
 Destrobled, v., p. 30; O.F. *destourbler*, var. of *destourbier*, troubled

- Deuoyr, n., p. 65; Fr. *devoir*, duty, or service
- Deyche, n., p. 270; A.S. *dic*, a ditch
- Deyde, p. 43, pret. of *Deye*
- Deye, v., p. 32; M.E. *dien*, *dyen*, *deyen* = Goth. *diwan*, pret. *dau*, to die
- Disancre, v., p. 189, *dis* + *anchor*; A.S. *ancor*, to weigh anchor
- Discarged, v., p. 147; O.F. *descharger*, *deschargier*, *discaricare*, discharged, fired
- Disconuenientes, n., p. 52; O.F. *desconvenance*, inconveniences, discomforts
- Discoueryd, pp., p. 253; O.F. *descouvrir*, uncovered
- Displaysyd, v., p. 60; O.F. *desplaiser*, displeased
- Dispourveyed, adj., p. 308; O.F. *de-pourru*, needy, deprived of
- Dispoylls, n., p. 135; O.F. *desporilles*, spoils
- Distourblyng, n., p. 48. See *Destrobled*
- Dolorous, adj., p. 277; O.F. *doloureux*, mournful, dismal
- Dommage, n., p. 26; O.F. *damage*, *domage*, damage, harm
- Domyned, v., p. 2; O.F. *dominer*, ruled, controlled
- Dongeon, n., p. 251; O.F. *donjon*, the inner tower, keep, or stronghold of a castle
- Doubted, v., p. 108; O.F. *douter*, feared
- Doughtres, n., p. 25; A.S. *dohtor*, daughters
- Drad, adj., p. 5, 124; A.S. *draedan* (only in comp.), dreading
- Dressed, v., p. 227; O.F. *dresser*, *drecier*, set up, arranged, prepared for action
- Droef, v., p. 48, pret. of drive; A.S. *drifan* = Goth. *dreiban*, drove
- Droncardys, n., p. 150; *drunk* + *ard*, drunkards
- Droytes, n., p. 301; O.F. *droits*, rights
- Duchemen, n., p. 51; Dutchmen, *i. e.* Germans
- Duellid, v., p. 21, pp. of dwell (A.S. *dwellan*, dwelt)
- Dychte, v., p. 114; A.S. *dihtan*, pret. *dihte*, to dress, to clean
- Fylyure, v., p. 39. See *Delyuerid*
- Dymynued, v., p. 291; O.F. *diminuer*, to diminish
- Eeryng, v., p. 29. See *Ere*
- Effrayed, v., p. 113, 140; O.F. *effrayer*, frightened
- Egally, adj., p. 144; F. *égal*, equally
- Eght, adj., p. 47, eighth
- Elis, n., p. 93, eels?
- Ellys, adv., p. 109; A.S. *elles* = Goth. *alis* = L. *alius*, else
- Embussshed, v., p. 125; O.F. *enbuscher*, *embuscher*, *embuissier*, to place in ambush
- Embussshement, n., p. 125, an ambushment
- Empesshement, n., p. 89; O.F. *empeschement* = hindrance
- Empeyred, v., p. 42; O.F. *empirier*, to injure, damage
- Empryse, v., p. 1, 21; F. *empris*, pp. of *emprendre*, to undertake
- Enchassed, v., p. 121; O.F. *enchacier*, *enchasser*, *encachier*, chased
- Endeuoyre, v., p. 1, 4; O.F. *in* + *dever*, *devoir*, to endeavor
- Enducte, adj., p. 286; probably a synonym for accustomed. ? trained
- Endure, v.; O.F. *endurer*, to persist
- Enforced, v., p. 249; O.F. *enforcer*, *enforcier*, violated, ravished
- Enforced, v., p. 134; same origin as above; strengthened
- Enforced them, v. ref., p. 25, 98; same origin as above; to encourage one's self, to put forth one's greatest exertion
- Enhabited with, adj., p. 130; O.F. *inhabiter*, inhabited by
- Enhaunced, v., p. 22; O.F. *enhancer*, *en* + *hancer*, *enhancier*
- Ennoyed, v., p. 125, annoy + ed, O.F. *anoi*, *enoi*, *enui*, troubled, vexed
- Enpayred, v., p. 158. See *Empeyred*
- Enpesshe, v., p. 107; O.F. *empechier*, to hinder
- Entente, n., pp. 19, 93; O.F. *entente*, attention, heed, intention
- Entented, v., p. 52, etc.; O.F. *entendre*, to be busy, attend to, occupy one's self with
- Ententify, adv., p. 21, 137, diligently
- Entermeted of, v., p. 53; O.F. *entremettre*, to concern one's self with, to have to do with
- Enticed, v., p. 20; O.F. *enticer*, *enticher*, *en* + *teche*, persuaded, enticed
- Entierly, adv., p. 105, *entier* + *ly*; O.F. *entier*, entire, whole
- Entreated, v., p. 22; O.F. *entraiter*, *entraitier*, to treat, to behave towards

- Entredeux, loc. adv., p. 83; O.F. *entredeux*, of two minds, undecided
- Entreprysed, v., p. 44; from *entrepris*, pp. of F. *entreprendre*, undertook
- Entretiened, v., p. 22; Fr. *entretenir*, supported, taken care of
- Enuyronned, v., p. 47; O.F. *environer*, *environner*, en + *viron*, surrounded
- Entysed, v., p. 62. See *Enticed*
- Erable, adj., p. 135; O.F. *arable*, L. *arabilis*, prob. confused with the M.E. *to ear*, arable
- Ere, v., p. 306; A.S. *erian* = Goth. *arjan* = L. *arare*, to plow, to till
- Eschewe, v., p. 128; O.F. *eschuer*, *eschiver*, to avoid
- Esclaues, n., p. 204; O.F. *slave*, slaves
- Escumours, n., p. 120; *pirates* O.F.; see *Escumerie* = piracy, of German origin
- Eshewe, v., p. 43. See *Eschewe*
- Esmayed, v. int., p. 210; O.F. *esmaier*, Goth. *magan*, daunted, filled with fear
- Esperance, n., p. 160; O.F. *esperance*, hope
- Estandart, n., p. 150; O.F. *étendard*, standard-bearer
- Ester, n., p. 241; A.S. *éastra*, Easter (given by Beda)
- Estorements, n., p. 138; O.F. *estorements*, soldiers' equipment, arms
- Estour, n., p. 211; O.F. *estor*, O.H.D. *sturm*, vb. *sturman*, attack, contest
- Eurous, adj., p. 4; O.F. *heureux*, *eureux*, happy, lucky
- Ewr, n., p. 268; O.F. *heur*, luck
- Excusacion, n., p. 66; O.F. *excusation*, excuse, apology
- Exploited, v., p. 196; O.F. *exploiter*, *exploitier*, achieved, accomplished
- Exploites, n., p. 126; O.F. *exploit*, *exploit*, achievements, performances
- Eyen, n., p. 134. pl. of eye, eyes
- Facions, n., p. 23; O.F. *façon*, *fazon*, etc., fashions, manners, ways
- Faite, n., p. 173; O.F. *faix*, burden, charge, weight
- Faitis, n., p. 273; O.F. *fait*, deeds
- Fardellys, n.; O.F. *fardel*, *fardeau*, L. *fardellus*, said to be of Arabic origin, bundles, packs
- Fawcon, n., p. 289; O.F. *faucon*, banner = *gonfanon*. *Falco* = *vexillum* in Med. Lat.
- Fayned, v., p. 259; O.F. *feindre*, to make a false appearance, pretend
- Fayte, n., p. 62. See *Faite*
- Feaulté, n., p. 30; O.F. *feaulté*, *feaute*, etc., fealty, faithfulness
- Feeldes, n., p. 61; A.S. *feld*, fields
- Feerd, adj., p. 204, abb. of *afeerd*; A.S. *āferan*, ā + *færan*, frightened, afraid
- Feers, adj., p. 188; *fiers*, 124; O.F. *fers*, old nom. form of *fier*, fierce, bold, savage
- Fel, adj., p. 40; A.S. *fel*, *felo*. Cf. O.F. *fel*, O.D. *fel*, grim, fierce, ruthless
- Felaw, n., p. 128; Ice. *félagi*, a companion, comrade
- Felawship, n., p. 44, fellowship
- Felly, adv. used adjectively, p. 107; same origin as *Fel*, and same meanings
- Felonnous, adj., p. 113; O.F. *felon* + *ous*, wicked, malignant
- Feotemen, n., p. 123, footmen
- Fer, adv.; A.S. *feorr* = Goth. *fairra*, far
- Ferde, v. pret., p. 122; A.S. *faran*, to fare
- Ferdfulness, n., p. 31; A.S. *fær*, fear
- Ferre, adv., p. 33. See *Fer*
- Feste, n., p. 278; O.F. *feste*, feast
- Fetysed, adj., p. 259; O.F. *faitis*, *faitice*, well made, neat, properly cut
- Feuerer, n., p. 156; O.F. *Fevrier*, February
- Feytes, p. 125; a misprint or corruption for *fruytes* = fruits
- Flawe, n., p. 33; literally a flake, but probably a corruption for *fléau* = scourge, of which it is a translation
- Flowred, v., p. 3; O.F. *florir*, to flourish
- Folyly, adv., p. 143; O.F. *folie* + *ly*, foolishly
- Fondament, n., p. 21; O.F. *fundement*, *fondement*, foundation
- Forgate, v. pret.; A.S. *forgitan*, pret. *forgeat*, forgot
- Forleton, n. adj., abandoned
- Fosse, n., p. 253; F. *fosse*, a ditch
- Fourage, n., p. 55; O.F. *fourage*, forage
- Fourbushshed, v., p. 204; O.F. *fourbiss*, *furbir*, M.L. *forbare* = A.S. *feormian* for *feorbrian*, *furbrian*, to furbish, scour, polish
- Fourriers, n., p. 131; O.F. *foriers*, foragers, forage-merchants
- Fowle, adv., p. 33; A.S. *fūl* = Goth. *fuls*, foully
- Fowilly, adv., p. 192, foully

Fowragyng, n., p. 48, foraging  
 Franchyses, n., p. 33; O.F. *franchise*, liberties  
 Fyers, adj., p. 19. O.F. *fiers*, fierce  
 Fynably, adj.; *fine* + *able* + *ly*, finally  
 Fysshc, n., p. 135; A.S. *fisc*, pl. *fiscas* = fish  
 Fyxed, v., p. 44; O.F. *fixer*, *fichier*, *ficher*, fixed  
 Gadryd, pp., p. 297; A.S. *gaderian*, gathered  
 Garnyson, n., p. 177; O.F. *garnison*, garrison  
 Garnyssed, v., p. 124; O.F. *garniss*, *garnir*, Germ. stem; fortified, garnished  
 Garson, n., p. 280; O.F. *garson*, a boy, a servant  
 Gaynable, adj., p. 85, tillable  
 Gaynsay, v., p. 62; by abbreviation, from A.S. *agein seyen*, to speak against  
 Geer, n., p. 234; A.S. *gearwe*, gear, property  
 Ghestes, n., p. 119; A.S. *gaest*, *gest*, etc. = Goth. *gasts*, guests  
 Glayues, n., p. 97, 273; O.F. *glave*, *glaiue*, *glaves*, a weapon made of a cutting blade at the end of a stick or staff  
 Gobet, n., p. 191; O.F. *gobet*, *goubet*, dim. of *gob*, a morsel, lump  
 Gonfanon, n., p. 289; O.F. *gonfanon*, L. *gonfano(n)* = A.S. *gūthfana*, gonfalon or banner  
 Gossib, n., p. 20; A.S. *godsib*, sponsor  
 Gree, n., p. 277; O.F. *gre*, *grei*, etc., to accept in gree, means to accept kindly, or with favour  
 Greues, n., p. 29; O.F. *grief*, *gref*, *greu*, etc., afflictions, grievances  
 Guarysshyd, v., p. 167; O.F. *guariss*, *guarir*, cured, healed  
 Guerdon, n., p. 182; O.F. *guerdon*, M.L. *widerdonum*, Gm. *wider lonum*, a reward  
 Gybet, n., p. 25; O.F. *gibet*, a gibbet, a gallows  
 Habyllled, adj., p. 19; O.F. *habiller*, clad, dressed  
 Habyllemens, n., p. 104; O.F. *habillement*, clothes, habiliments  
 Haches, n., p. 307; O.F. *hache*, axes  
 Happed, v. pret., p. 141, 198; Ice. *happ*, happened

Harberowed, v., p. 249, same origin as *Herberous* = O.F. *herbergier*, to give shelter to, to harbor  
 Hardynes, n., p. 63; hardy + ness; O.F. *hardi*, O.H.G. *harti*, *herti*, hardiness  
 Harnoyes, n., p. 137, 138; O.F. *harnas*, *harnois*; of Celtic origin; harness, armour  
 Haubergyers, n., p. 168; makers of hauberks  
 Hauberks, n., p. 204; O.F. *hauberc*, *halberc*, Gm. *halsberc*, *halsberge*, hauberk  
 Hauene, n., p. 231; A.S. *haefen*, a haven, harbour  
 Havoyr, n.; Fr. *avoir*, property, riches  
 Heelpe, v. pret.; A.S. *helpan*, pret. *healp*, pl. *holpon*, to help  
 Heer, n., p. 36; A.S. *hær*, hair  
 Heeryng, pres. part., p. 4; A.S. *hiéran*, *hëran*, *hyran* = Goth. *haurjan*, hearing  
 Henge, v. pret., p. 211; A.S. *hongian*, hung  
 Herberous, n., p. 207, O.F., G. or Scand. origin; H.G. *heri* + O.H.G. *bergan*, a camp, lodging  
 Heremyte, n., p. 3; L.L. *eremita*, hermit  
 Hethenes, n., p. 23; A.S. *hæthen* = Goth. *haithenis*, pagans, heathen  
 Hether, adv., p. 60; A.S. *hider*, sometimes; *hidres* = Goth. *hidre*, hither  
 Hewing, pres. part., p. 147; A.S. *hædwon*, pret. *heow* = Goth. *haggwan*, to cut, to inflict cutting blows  
 Heyer, n., p. 302; O.F. *heir*, *eir*, *oir*, an heir  
 Heygtlie, n., p. 289; A.S. *heathu* = Goth. *hau-hitha*, height  
 Heyr, n., p. 126. See *Heyer*  
 Holpen, pp., p. 106. See *Heelpe*  
 Hool, adj., p. 125, whole  
 Hourdeys, n., p. 140; O.F. *hourdeis*, from the Gm.; cf. Goth. *haurds*, M.H.G. *horden*, *hort*, palisades of wood placed on the tops of towers  
 Hu, n., p. 268; O.F. *hu*, *hui*, a cry or shout  
 Hydles (in), p. 194; A.S. *hýdels*. See Wiclif, Deut. xxvii., secretly  
 Inconuenyent, p. 231; O.F. *inconvenience*, a disagreeable situation, misfortune  
 Indigne, adj., p. 5; O.F. *indigne*, unworthy

- Intituled, pp., p. 18; O.F. *intituler*, entitled
- Journeye, n., p. 34; O.F. *journée*, a day's journey
- Iusted, v., p. 289; O.F. *jouster*, to joust
- Iustised, v. pret., p. 289; O.F. *justicier*, judged
- Iusticer, n., p. 29; O.F. *justicier*, a judge
- Knowleche, n., p. 64; *know* + *leche*, assimilated form of *leke*; Icel. *leikr*, *leiki* = A.S. *lāc*, knowledge
- Knowleched, v., p. 123, abbreviation for acknowledgech, acknowledged
- Kyen, n., p. 33, pl. of cow, kine
- Kynred, n., p. 29; A.S. *cynn* + *ræden*, kindred
- Labourable, adj., p. 112; O.F. *labor* + *able*, that which can be tilled
- Laddre, n., p. 272, ladder
- Largesse, n., p. 22; O.F. *largesse*, generosity, bounty
- Lasse, adj., p. 44; A.S. *laessa*, less
- Lassed, adj., p. 164; O.F. *lasser*, *lassare*, wearied, fatigued
- Late, v., p. 48; A.S. *lāetan* = Goth. *lētan*, to let
- Launced (on), sb., p. 82; O.F. *lancier*, to attack
- Lawe, n., p. 22; A.S. *lagu*, religion, law
- Laye, adj., p. 42; O.F. *lai*, lay
- Laye, n., p. 141, 154; A.S. *lagu*, lake
- Layettee, n., p. 43; *lay* + *ty*; O.F. *lai*, laity
- Layser, n., p. 37; O.F. *leisir*, *loisir*, etc., leisure
- Lecherye, n., p. 32; O.F. *lecherie*, *lechir*, M.H.G. *lecken*, lechery
- Leed, n., p. 253; A.S. *lēad*, lead
- Leep, v., p. 113; A.S. *hlēapan* = Goth. *hlapan*, to leap
- Lese, v., p. 114, partly from A.S. *losian*, but chiefly a var. of *lesen*; A.S. *leósan*, to lose
- Lesyng, n., p. 244. See *Lese*, losing
- Lesyng, n., p. 236, 281; A.S. *leasing* = Icel. *larusung*, falsehood, lying
- Letted, v., p. 146, 281; A.S. *lettan* = Goth. *latjan*, to strip, retard, hinder
- Leuer, adv.; A.S. *leof* = Goth. *liubs*, used in the expression "to have liefer," to prefer
- Leyser, n., p. 160. See *Layser*
- Leyzer, n., p. 5. See *Layser*
- Lodgys, n., p. 110; O.F. *logis*, M.L. *laubia*, of Gm. origin, camp
- Longed, adj., p. 53, contraction for belonged
- Loos, n., p. 288; O.F. *laus*, *los*, praise, fame
- Lygnage, lynage, n., p. 26, 29; O.F. *linage*, family, race, stock
- Lyttier, n., p. 113; O.F. *litière*, a litter
- Lyuess, n., p. 58, pl. of *life*; A.S. *lif* = Goth. *leif*, lives
- Maculated, pp., p. 274, stained, spotted
- Mahometry, n., p. 274; Mahomet + *ry*, Mahommedanism
- Mahommerye, n., p. 157, 162; O.F. *Ma-homérie*, a mosque
- Maistres, n., p. 23; O.F. *maistre*, masters
- Males, n., p. 51; O.F. *male*, *malle*, bags or sacks
- Malle, n., p. 273; O.F. *mal*, *mail*, a mall, or heavy hammer
- Malles, n., p. 210, same origin as word above = blows
- Maluerte, n., p. 203; O.F. *malheurte*, misfortune
- Mangonneaul, n., p. 257; O.F. *mangonel*, a mangonel, or engine for throwing stones
- Marchaunte, v., p. 115; O.F. *march-ander*, to buy and sell, to trade
- Marchauntes, n., p. 39, merchants
- Marche, n., p. 289; partly A.S. *mearc*, partly from O.F. *marche*, frontier, border
- Matched (on), v., p. 136; A.S. *mearcian*, to border on
- Mareys, n., p. 139, 228; O.F. *mareis*, *marais*, *marois*, a marsh
- Marryd, v.; O.F. *marrir*, Gm. *marrjan*, to injure
- Marueyilles, n., p. 55; O.F. *merveille*, marvels, wonders
- Maulgre, prep., p. 55, 117; O.F. *maugre*, *malgre*, in spite of
- Maymed, v., p. 194; O.F. *mehaing*, *ma-hain*, to disable, maim
- Mayntene, n., p. 61, conduct, behaviour
- Medle, n., p. 53, 97; from verb *medle*, a hand-to-hand fight, a *mêlée*
- Medled (with), v., p. 115; O.F. *medler*, *mesler*, to concern one's self with, to deal with
- Medlyng, n., p. 49, 155; *medle* + *ing*, contention in battle, fighting



- Meobles, n., p. 32; O.F. *meuble*, furniture, movable property
- Meuable, adj., p. 5; movable
- Meschlyef, n., p. 161; O.F. *meschief*, misfortune, calamity
- Mescrauntes, n., p. 3; O.F. *mescraunt*, infidels, unbelievers
- Mesease, n., p. 25, 153; O.F. *meseise*, *mesaise*, *mes* + *aise*, discomfort, trouble
- Mesfeates, n., p. 29; O.F. *mesfait*, bad actions, misdeeds
- Meshapped, v., p. 167; *mis* + *happen*, *minus* + Icel. *happ*, to happen ill, to go wrong
- Messenger, n., p. 18, 163; O.F. *message*, messenger
- Messagier, n., p. 239. See *Messenger*
- Mesurable, adj., p. 301; O.F. *mesurable*, moderate, temperate
- Meyne, n., p. 136, 177; O.F. *megnie*, *menie*, suite, members of a household
- Monethe, p. 41, 183; A.S. *moneth*, *monoth* = Goth. *menoth*, month
- Moo, adj., p. 52, more
- Mounture, n., p. 141; O.F. *monture*, a mount, a saddle-horse
- Mowe, vb., p. 185, be able
- Moyne, adj., p. 59; same derivation as below; literally, medium, but used here in the sense of *common*
- Moyens, n., p. 119; O.F. *moien*, *meien*, means
- Mulettis, n., p. 122; O.F. *mulet*, mules
- Muraylles, n., p. 21; O.F. *muraille*, walls
- Murdred, v., p. 35; A.S. *myrthrian* = Goth. *maurthrian*, killed, murdered
- Murdrier, n., p. 32; same origin as above, murderer
- Musardes, n., p. 203; O.F. *musard*, vagabond
- Musardye, n., p. 179, vagabondage
- Myllenes, n., p. 51; A.S. *mylen*, *myln* = O.F. *moulin*, mills
- Mynnysshid, v., p. 145; O.F. *menusier*, *menuisier*, to diminish
- Mysauntures, n., p. 54; O.F. *mesaventure*, ill luck, mischance
- Mysbeleue, n., p. 152; A.S. *mis* + *belief*, false opinion, heresy
- Myschiefs, n., p. 25. See *Meschlyef*
- Myscreauntes, n., p. 23. See *Mescrauntes*
- Natyuyte, n., p. 3; O.F. *nativété*, nativity
- Nauyll, n., p. 253; A.S. *nafela* = Goth. *navalo*, the navel, the middle
- Ner, adv., p. 108, near
- Neraught, v. pret., p. 149, *neg.* combined with reckon; A.S. *recan*, pret. *röhte*; not to heed, or pay attention to, or care
- Nette, adj., p. 25; O.F. *net*, neat
- Neueus, n., p. 136; O.F. *neveu*, nephews
- Noye, v., p. 104; by aphaeresis from annoy, to damage, injure
- Noyous, adj., p. 140, injurious, troublesome
- Noyse, n., p. 23, 138; O.F. *noise*, L. *nausea*, disturbance, noise
- Nycely, adv., pp. 187, 233; *nice* + *ly*; O.F. *nice*, L. *nescius*, foolishly
- Nyle, n., p. 85. See note, p. 85
- Obeysaunt, adj., p. 2; O.F. *obeissant*, obedient
- Occisyon, n., p. 62; O.F. *occision*, slaughter, the act of killing
- Occynt, n., p. 55; O.F. *occident*, the Occident, the West
- Oost, n., p. 55; O.F. *host*, *ost*, the army
- Orguyel, n., p. 20; O.F. *orgoïl*, *orguel*, etc., of Teut. origin; cf. O.H.G. *urgilo*, *ur* + *gel*, pride
- Orguyllous, adj., p. 19; O.F. *orgueilleux*; cf. A.S. *orgellic*, same origin as *orgayel*, proud, haughty, ostentatious
- Orisons, n., p. 26; O.F. *oraison*, orisons, prayers
- Oroysons, n., p. 269. See *Orisons*
- Ostages, n., p. 50, 127, etc.; O.F. *ostage*, hostages
- Ottroye, v., p. 5; *octroyer*, to grant, to give
- Ouerste, adj., p. 161, superlative of *over*; A.S. *ofer*, the highest
- Ought, v., p. 124, pret. of to owe; A.S. *āhte*
- Oultrages, n., p. 49, 120; O.F. *outrage*, outrages
- Outbynde, v., p. 248, *un* + *bynde*, to loosen
- Ouurages, n., p. 237; O.F. *ouvrage*, works
- Oynementis, n., p. 251; O.F. *oignement*, *oigner*, *oindre*, ointment, unguent
- Paas, n., p. 133; O.F. *pas*, pace
- Palfroye, n., p. 46; O.F. *palefroi*, a saddle-horse
- Palus, n., p. 244; Lat. *palus*, marsh

- Pamante, n., p. 39; O.F. *pavement*, *paviment*, pavement  
 Pane, n., p. 264; O.F. *pan*, a piece, division, part  
 Panemye, n., p. 150; O.F. *païennie*, heathendom  
 Parfygt, adj., p. 122; O.F. *parfait*, *parfit*, perfect  
 Parteyes, n., p. 18; *partie*, parts, countries  
 Paryll, n., p. 151; O.F. *peril*, peril  
 Pasque, n., p. 241; Fr. *Pasques*, Easter  
 Pauyllon, n., p. 46, 165; O.F. *pavilion*, pavilion, tent  
 Paynem, n., p. 145; O.F. *païenime*, a pagan, a heathen  
 Payssyble, adj., p. 81; O.F. *paisible*, peaceable  
 Peas, n., p. 51; Fr. *paix*, peace  
 Pecked, v., pret., p. 142; A.S. *pycan*, picked  
 Pees, n., p. 43. See *Peas*  
 Pendaunt, n., p. 188; O.F. *pendant*, a slope, a hanging  
 Penyble, adj., p. 209; O.F. *penible*, capable of enduring hard work, pains-taking  
 Percid, v., p. 201; F. *percer*, *percier*, pierced  
 Pierier, n.; O.F. *pierrières*, an engine for throwing stones  
 Perylle, n., p. 35. See *Paryll*  
 Peyned, v. ref., p. 64; O.F. *peiner*, to make an effort, to give one's self great trouble  
 Pieres, n., p. 3; F. *pair*, peers  
 Pierrye, n., p. 78; O.F. *pierrieres*, precious stones  
 Piscyne, n., p. 251; O.F. *piscine*, a pool  
 Playsyr, n., p. 5; O.F. *plaisir*, *plesir*, pleasure  
 Plom, n., p. 184; O.F. *plom*, *plomb*, plumb  
 Popelican, n., p. 94; O.F. *popelican*, a heretic  
 Popeliquans, n., p. 80; same as above  
 Potes, n., p. 113; F. *patte*, of Gm. origin. Cf. Low Gm. *pote*, Gm. *Pfote*, paws  
 Pourchassed, v., pp. 22, 23; O.F. *porchacier*, etc., *captiare*, obtained, gained  
 Pourchassoure, n., p. 238; O.F. *purchaceor*, one who acquires or obtains.  
 ? pursuer, seeker after  
 Pourprised, v., p. 139; O.F. *pourprise*, *porprise*, seized, occupied  
 Pursue, v., p. 39; O.F. *pursuer*, *poursuivre*, to pursue  
 Pursyewe, v., p. 60. See *Poursue*  
 Pourueyaunce, n., p. 36; O.F. *porveiance*, *porveance*, care, foresight  
 Pourueyed, v., p. 160; O.F. *porveier*, *pouvoir*, provided  
 Prechid, v., p. 18; O.F. *prechier*, *precher*, preached  
 Prees, n., p. 133; O.F. *presse*, a press, a crowd  
 Prenable, adj., p. 135; O.F. *prenable*, that which may be taken  
 Preuyleges, n., p. 24; O.F. *privilege*, rights, privileges  
 Praysed, v., p. 36, 145; O.F. *prisier*, *priser*, prized, estimated highly  
 Prime temps, n., p. 165; O.F. *printemps*, the spring-time  
 Prise, n., p. 130; O.F. *prise*, the taking, the capture  
 Priue, adj., p. 106; O.F. *privé*, private, intimate  
 Proef, n., p. 40; O.F. *prove*, *proeve*, *preuve*, proof  
 Promysseyon, n., p. 253, promise  
 Propice, adj., p. 40; O.F. *propice*, propitious, suitable  
 Prothomarter, n., p. 251; Fr. *protomartyr*, M.L. *protomartyr*, from Gk. *πρωτομαρτυρ*, the first martyr.  
 Prouffred, v., p. 163, 164; O.F. *proferer*, proffered  
 Prouffyt, n., p. 122; O.F. *profit*, profit  
 Prouostes, n., p. 41; A.S. *práfost*, provosts  
 Puissaunt, adj., p. 19, powerful  
 Puyssaunce, n., p. 61, 124; O.F. *puissance*, for power  
 Pyece, n., p. 259; O.F. *piece*, piece  
 Pyetous, adj., p. 204; O.F. *piteux*, compassionate  
 Pyked, v. pret., p. 63; A.S. *pycan*, to pick or strike with an instrument  
 Pykoys, n., p. 63; O.F. *pecois*, *pyquois*, etc., a sort of dart  
 Pyler, n., p. 253; O.F. *pilier*, a pillar  
 Pylle, pyle, v., p. 55, 60; O.F. *piller*, to pillage  
 Pynnes, n., p. 257; A.S. *pinn*, pins  
 Pytte, v. pret., p. 251; A.S. *potian*, to put  
 Quarellys, n., p. 263; O.F. *quarrel*, arrows having a four-edged head  
 Quyt, adj., p. 60; O.F. *quite*, quit  
 Quyte, n., p. 17. See *Quyt*

- Raced, v., p. 34; O.F. *raser*, freq. of L. *radere*, to destroy, to put; used with *out*  
 Raunson, n.; O.F. *Rançon*, *rençon*, ransom  
 Rawnson, n., p. 224. See *Raunson*  
 Reconforte, v., p. 27, 63; Fr. *reconforter*, *re + comfort*, to give new strength to  
 Recouere, v., p. 43; O.F. *recouvrer*, to recover  
 Recountred, v., p. 195; O.F. *rencontrer*, to encounter  
 Recuperacion, n., p. 4; O.F. *recuperation*, recovery  
 Recuyelled, v., p. 213; O.F. *recueillir*, gathered, collected  
 Redde, v. pret., p. 5; A.S. *rædan*, read  
 Reedefye, v., p. 27; O.F. *reedifier*, to rebuild  
 Refreshyd, v., p. 50; O.F. *refraischir*, *refreschier*, refreshed  
 Reherschynge, v., p. 2; O.F. *reherser*, *re + herse*, recount, relate  
 Releuyd, v., p. 208; O.F. *relever*, lifted up, raised  
 Relyed, v., p. 56, 296; O.F. *rallier*, united, rallied  
 Remuled, adj., p. 93. See note, p. 93  
 Remyse, v., p. 1, 293; F. *remis*, stem from *remettre*, to put back  
 Rendrid, v. p. 51; O.F. *rendre*, returned, rendered  
 Renged, adj., p. 108; O.F. *renger*, *reng*, O.H.G. *hring*, arranged, drawn up in line  
 Renomed, adj., p. 200; O.F. *renommer*, renowned  
 Renomme, n., p. 5, 37; O.F. *renommée*, renown  
 Renye, v., p. 25, 45, etc.; O.F. *renier*, to deny, renounce  
 Repeased, pp., p. 128; O.F. *rapaisier*, appeased  
 Repreef, n., p. 25, 28; O.F. *reprover*, *reprouver*, reproof  
 Repreyd, v., p. 123; same origin as reproof, reproved  
 Reprysed, v., p. 262; F. *repris*, pp. of *repandre*, taken back  
 Respyted, v., p. 150; O.F. *respiter*, delayed, postponed  
 Resseyue, v., p. 106; O.F. *recever*, *receivre*, to receive  
 Retched (not), pret., p. 83, an assimilated form of *reck* = *cared* (not)  
 Reteayne, v., p. 89; O.F. *retenir*, to retain  
 Retrayte, n., p. 220; O.F. *retraite*, place of refuge  
 Reuerrye, n., p. 174, 197; O.F. *resverie*, *resver*, a fit of obstinacy  
 Reuested, v., p. 205; O.F. *revestir*, to clothe, to put on  
 Rial, adj., p. 274; O.F. *roial*, *regal*, *royal*, royal, magnificent  
 Rightwys, adj., p. 37; A.S. *rightwis*, righteous  
 Roted, v., p. 145; from the noun root, A.S. *rōt*, rooted  
 Rought, v. pret., p. 276; A.S. *rēcan*, pret. *rōhte*, to reckon, heed, care  
 Rousee, n., p. 208; O.F. *rosée*, dew  
 Rowte, n., p. 47; O.F. *route*, a troop, band  
 Royme, n., p. 60; O.F. *royaume*, kingdom  
 Ruissheauls, n., p. 273—probably a corruption of 'ruysseaulx, ruisseaux'—brooks or gutters  
 Ryuage, n., p. 112; O.F. *rivage*, bank, brink  
 Ryall, adj., p. 252. See *Riall*  
 Sad, adj., p. 38, 202; A.S. *saed*, sober, serious, wise  
 Salewed, v., p. 40; O.F. *saluer*, saluted, greeted  
 Sauely, adv., p. 41; O.F. *sauf + ly*, safely  
 Sauf, prep., p. 21, except  
 Sauf, adj., p. 48, safe  
 Sauf conduyt, n., p. 236; O.F. *saufconduit*, safe-conduct  
 Saufly, adv., p. 56, safely  
 Saufte, n., p. 104, safety  
 Scaffholde, p. 63; O.F. *eschafault*, *eschafaud*, scaffold  
 Scarmuche, n., p. 97, 121; O.F. *escarmouche*, It. *schermugio*, skirmish  
 Scarsenes, n., p. 141, scarce + ness, scarceness  
 Scarsete, n., p. 230; O.F. *escarsete*, origin uncertain: scarcity  
 Scysme, n., p. 41; O.F. *scisme*, *cisme*, schism  
 Seased, v., p. 106, 274; O.F. *saisir*, *seiser*, M.L. *sacire* till 8th cent.; after, *sasire*, to be put in possession of, seize  
 Seche, v., p. 35; A.S. *sēcan*, pret. *sōhte*, Goth. *sokjan*, to seek  
 Seece, v., p. 52; O.F. *cesser*, to cease

Selde, adv., p. 193, seldom  
 Sensours, n., p. 32, censors  
 Seruage, p. 58, 277; O.F. *servage*, servitude  
 Sewed, v., p. 58; O.F. *suir*, *sewir*, *sevir*, *suivre*, followed, chased  
 Sewr, adj., p. 48; O.F. *seür*, *surè*  
 Sewrte, n., p. 58; O.F. *seürté*, security  
 Seynourously, adj., p. 274; O.F. *seignoureux* + *ly*, magnificent  
 Shadde, v., p. 33. See *Shedde*  
 Shamely, adv., p. 120; A.S. *sceámelic*, shamefully  
 Shedde, v., p. 270; A.S. *sceádan* = Goth. *skaidan*, to shed  
 Shewde, v., p. 201. See *Shewyd*, showed  
 Shewyd, v., p. 4, showed  
 Shippis, n., p. 34, 63, pl. of ship; A.S. *scip* = Goth. *skip*, ships  
 Sholder, n., p. 45, shoulder  
 Sholdre, n., p. 45. See *Sholder*  
 Shytte, v., p. 48; A.S. *scyttan*, shut  
 Siewed, p. 62, 195. See *Sewed*, followed  
 Signefyaunce, n., p. 270; O.F. *signefiance*, sign  
 Skalyng ladders, n., p. 256, scaling ladders  
 Skarmoches, n., p. 210. See *Scarmuche*, skirmish  
 Skorches, n.; O.F. *écorce*, bark, skin  
 Slee, v., p. 54; A.S. *sleán* = Goth. *slahan*, to slay  
 Slowe, vb., p. 73, pret. of slee, slew  
 Smeton, v., p. 19; A.S. *smitan*, pret. *smāt*, pp. *smiten* = Goth. *smeitan*, to smite  
 Socours, n., p. 35; O.F. *sucurs*, *secours*, aid  
 Sodenly, adv., p. 58; O.F. *sodain* + *ly*, suddenly  
 Sommyers, n., p. 46, 51; O.F. *sommier*, beast of burden  
 Somoned, v., p. 50; O.F. *somener*, *semondre*, summoned  
 Sonde, n., p. 185; A.S. *sand*, sand  
 Sorouful, adj., p. 42; A.S. *sorgful*, sorrowful  
 Souldye, n., p. 126; O.F. *soldie*, pay, salary  
 Souldyour, n., p. 126; O.F. *soldier*, one who receives pay  
 Sowdan, n., p. 136; O.F. *souldan*, *soudan*, M.L. *sultanus* or *soldanus*, a Moham-  
 medan ruler

Sowles, n., p. 200; A.S. *sāwel*, *sāwol*, etc., soul  
 Sowne, v., p. 53, 104; O.F. *soner*, *suner*, sound  
 Sowped, v., p. 255; O.F. *souper*, M.D. *soppe*, *sop*, supped  
 Soynously, adv., p. 271; O.F. *soigneux* + *ly*, M.L. *sonia*, *sunnia* + *osus*; of Gm. origin, carefully  
 Spede, v., p. 63; A.S. *spēdan*, to be successful  
 Spores, n., p. 154; A.S. *spora*, spurs  
 Sprad, v., p. 18, to spread  
 Stage, n., p. 270; O.F. *étage*, a story  
 Stalled, v., p. 2; A.S. *steallian*, installed, placed, set  
 Stedes, n., p. 46; A.S. *stēda*, steeds  
 Stered, v., p. 235, stirred  
 Steroppes, n., p. 288; A.S. *stirap*, *stiger-up* = stirrups  
 Stoolles, n., p. 209; O.F. *estole*, stoles, robes  
 Strayt, adj., p. 47, 135; O.F. *estreit*, *estrait*, narrow  
 Stryf, n., p. 51; O.F. *estrif*; of Gm. origin, strife  
 Styed, vb., p. 262, pret.; A.S. *stigan*, to mount, to ascend  
 Subget, adj., p. 20; O.F. *sujet*  
 Sued, v., p. 183. See *Sewed*  
 Suffrable, adj., p. 221; O.F. *souffrable*, *souffrir*, capable of endurance  
 Suffre, v., p. 29, 115; O.F. *souffrir*, *souffrir*, to suffer  
 Suffrete, n., p. 144; O.F. *souffreté*, want  
 Suffyse, v., p. 30; O.F. *suffis*, stem from *souffire*, L. *suffire*, to suffice  
 Surplys, n., p. 209; O.F. *surplis*, *surpelis*, a surplice  
 Suspession, n., p. 207, a var. of *suspicion*, from suspicion  
 Sustre, n., p. 46, sister  
 Swote, n., p. 111; A.S. *swāt*, sweat  
 Syghes, n., p. 36, var. of *sike*, *sik*; cf. Sw. *such* = Dan. *soh*, sigh  
 Syres, n., p. 60; O.F. *sire*, sirs  
 Syth, adv., p. 51, since  
 Taillage, n., p. 277; O.F. *taillage*, toll, tax, tribute  
 Takle, n., p. 261; M.D., L.G. *takel* = Sw. *tackel* = Dan. *tackel*, tackle  
 Tappet, n., p. 184; A.S. *taepped* = L. *tapetum*, F. *tapis*, carpet, tapestry  
 Tapre, n., p. 36; A.S. *tapor*, taper

- Tapyte, n., p. 313. See *Tappet*  
 Targe, n., p. 63; O.F. *targe*, a shield  
 Taryed, v., p. 54; *taryen*, developed through influence of *targen*, to wait for, to delay  
 Tatche, n., p. 282; O.F. *tache*, *teche*; (origin uncertain), defect, vice  
 Tayllage, n., p. 24. See *Taillage*  
 Tere, n., p. 127; A.S. *teār*, *taēr* = Goth. *tagr* = O.L. *lacruma*, *lacrima*, tear  
 Tereitorye, n., p. 233; O.F. *territoire*, used by Caxton in the sense of *tertre*  
 Tertre, n., p. 182; O.F. *tertre*, a little hill  
 Tette, n., p. 281. See *Tatche*  
 Theys, n., p. 231; A.S. *theof* = Goth. *theubs*, thief  
 Throte, n., p. 151, throat  
 Thye, n., p. 113, thigh  
 Tierce, adj., p. 183; O.F. *tiers*, hour half-way between sunrise and noon  
 Tofore, adv., p. 42, before  
 Torette, n., p. 129; O.F. *tourrette*, dim., turret, a little tower  
 Tourrette, n., p. 99. See *Torette*  
 Towres, n., p. 50; A.S. *tur* = O.F. *tour*, towers  
 Trauailed, v., p. 22; O.F. *travailler*, to work, to labour  
 Trauaylle, n., p. 24, labour, pain  
 Trayson, n., p. 61; O.F. *trahison*, *traison*, treason  
 Trecherye, n., p. 280; O.F. *tricherie*, *tricher*, treachery  
 Trewe, adj., p. 19, true  
 Trewes, n., p. 43, pl. of *trew*; same origin as above, truce  
 Tromperye, n., p. 236; O.F. *tromperie*, deception  
 Trusses, n., p. 213; O.F. *trousse*, a bundle, a pack  
 Trybus, n., p. 253; O.F. *tribu*, tribes  
 Trycherye, n., p. 60. See *Trecherye*  
 Trychour, n., p. 127; O.F. *tricheor*, traitor, cheat  
 Twyes, adj., p. 252, twice  
  
 Unprenable, adj., p. 196; F. *un* + *prenable*, impregnable  
 Utterist, adj., p. 30, superlative of A.S. *ūt*, doublet of *outerest*, outermost, extreme  
 Valyaunce, n., p. 287; O.F. *vaillance*, a deed of valour  
 Vaward, n., p. 157, reduction of *vantward*, short for *avant* + *ward*, advance-guard  
 Veray, adj., p. 2, 169; O.F. *verai*, *vrai*, etc., true, real  
 Veri, adj., p. 25. See *Veray*  
 Very, adj., pp. 3, 19. See *Veray*  
 Viage, n., p. 44; O.F. *voiage*, *viage*, etc., voyage  
 Vnnethe, adv., p. 33; A.S. *unedæthe*, not easily, hardly, scarcely  
 Voyde, adj., p. 21; O.F. *voide*, *vuide*, empty  
 Voyded, v., p. 20; O.F. *voidier*, *vuider*, to empty  
 Vycayre, n., p. 301; O.F. *vicaire*, vicar, substitute  
 Vyletees, n., p. 40; O.F. *vilité*, insults  
 Vysytyng, pres. part., p. 4; O.F. *visiter*, to examine, inspect, visit  
 Vytaylle, n., p. 47; O.F. *vitaille*, *victuaille*, victual, food  
  
 Waast, n., p. 144; O.F. *vast*, *gast*, L. *vastus*, confused with M.E. *weste*; A.S. *westen* = M.H.G. *wueste*, waste  
 Warantise, n., p. 45; O.F. *warantise*, *guarantise*, warrant  
 Weder, n., p. 36, weather  
 Weeshe, v., p. 255, to wash  
 Wellys, n., p. 257, wells or springs  
 Wende, v., p. 97. See *Wene*  
 Wene, v., p. 39; A.S. *wēnan*, pret. *wende* = Goth. *wēnan*, to be of the opinion of, to think  
 Wete, v., p. 108; A.S. *witan*, pret. *wiste* = Goth. *witan*, to know, to become aware of  
 Wexe, v., p. 55, to grow, to wax  
 Weyed, v., p. 205; A.S. *wegen* = Goth. *gawigan*, to weigh  
 Whilis, adv., p. 133; abbreviation of A.S. *thāhwile*, the while that, while  
 Wode, p. 36, 257; A.S. *wudu*, supposed to be of Celtic origin, wood  
 Wood, adj., p. 112; A.S. *wōd* = Goth. *wōds*, mad, raging  
 Woonte, adj., p. 39, contracted from *woned* = Gm. *gewohnt*, accustomed, wont  
 Worship, n., p. 116, respect, worship  
 Wote, p. 296, pres. ind., of *witen*, 1st pers. *wot*; 2nd *wost*; 3rd *wot*, know  
 Wreton, pp., written  
 Wullen, adj., p. 293; A.S. *wyllen*, *wul* + *en*, woollen

Wysedomme, n., p. 4, wisdom  
 Wyst, v. pret., p. 57. See *Wete*

Yate, n., p. 47, gate

Yefte, n., p. 55, gift

Yeldyng, pres. part., p. 275, yielding

Yeris, n., p. 2; A.S. *geár*, *gēr* = Goth.  
*jēr*, years

Ynowe, adv., p. 54; A.S. *genōh*, adv.  
 neut. acc. of adj., enough

Ynowgh, adv., p. 34, same as *Ynowe*

Ynowhe, adv., p. 19, same as *Ynowe*

Yolden, pp. See *Yeldyng*

Youen, pp., given

Yow, pron., p. 25; A.S. *eōw*, you

Yssued, v., p. 33; *issue*, pp. of O.F.

*issir*, *eissir*, to issue, to come out, to  
 descend from

Yu, pron.; A.S. *gē*, *ge*, *ye*

## INDEX OF NAMES.

- Aaron Ressit*, p. 22, 23, the Caliph Haroun al Raschid, fifth Abasside Caliph, b. 766, d. 808
- Abacuc*, p. 249, Habakkuk the prophet
- Abyas*, p. 249, corruption for Abdias; Lat. Abdiae, Fr. Abdies; the prophet Obadiah
- Abymelech*, p. 248, Abimelech
- Acharye*, p. 20, Zacharias, patriarch of Jerusalem, 609 — 631. See 'Pat. Graec.' tom. 86
- Adryan*, p. 94, Adrian I., Pope from 772—795, son of Theodore, a Roman gentleman
- Alexandre*, p. 94, patriarch of Constantinople
- Alexes Conius*, p. 71; Alexys, p. 296. Alexius Conain = Alexius Comnenus I., Emperor of Constantinople, 1081—1118, successor of Romanus Diogenes
- Alysandre*, p. 2, Alexander the Great, King of Macedon
- Amanaix* (Guillem), p. 46; Guillem de Amaneux, p. 84; Guyllem Ameneux, p. 206; Guillaume Amanjeu d'Albret, Gascon nobleman
- Amos*, p. 28, 249, Amos the prophet
- Ancean*, p. 136, 226, etc., Accien, prince of Antioch, called *Garsian* in the 'Chanson d'Antioche.' Tudebodus and Robert the Monk call him *Cassianus*, Foucher de Chartres, *Gratianus*, William of Tyre, *Alexianus*; Abulfeda calls him *Baghistan*, while he is known in other Oriental historians as *Akby Syran*. His title among English historians is *Baghasian*
- Arnold*, p. 238, 300, etc., Arnoul or Ernould de Rohes, family tutor of Robert of Normandy, having educated Cecilia, Robert's sister; a man of great influence, but called Arnolph Mala Corona, on account of his dissolute and unclerical habits. See 'Palgrave,' IV. p. 554.
- Arracheus*, p. 233, seventh son of Canaan, the founder of the City of Archis
- Arryus*, p. 94, Arrius the heretic, supposed to have been a native of Cyrenaica, in Africa. He was excommunicated by the first Nicene Council, and banished to Illyria
- Arzbran* (Guyllaume de), p. 260
- Arthur*, p. 2, King of the Britons
- Assche*, Aske, Henri d', p. 74, 100, etc., a German knight; Bongars calls him Henricus de Asca. He was buried in Turbessel, where he died of an epidemic. William of Tyre says that he was a knight celebrated by birth as well as by bravery
- Assougur*, p. 137, paleographic error for Assongar, the Sultan of Aleppo, father of Sanguin, and great-grandfather of Nouredin. His real name was Acsencar Cacim Eddaulah
- Aubmable* (Steven d'), p. 92, Aubuale, p. 206. Etienne d'Aubemarle, in English, "Steven of Albemarle and Holdernesse"; "*le fils au Comte Odon*," the 'Chanson d'Antioche' calls him. He was the grandson of Etienne, Count of Champagne, and son of Odo, the Champenois, whom his usurping uncle Thibaut of Blois had disinherited. His mother was Aalis of Normandy, sister of William the Conqueror. He died in 1126
- Aumellac* (Reynart d'), p. 206
- Ayerne*, p. 94, Irenaeus, father of the Emperor Constantine

- Aymart*, p. 45, 276, etc., Adhemar de Monteil, Bishop of Puy, Papal Legate among the Crusaders
- Balac*, or *Balak*, p. 129, 223, etc., Emir of Serorge, prince of the family of Ortoc, who possessed many places on the Euphrates, and reigned in Mesopotamia and Aleppo
- Baladon* (Potom de), p. 237, Fr. Pons de Baladin, a great friend and companion of the Count of Toulouse
- Baldue*, p. 225, Blandue, p. 127, Baudue, p. 129, a Turkish Emir, lord of Samosata
- Barce* (Gace de), p. 272. See *Centon de Beart*
- Barneville* (Rogier de), p. 92, Rogier de Barneville, p. 97, etc.; according to Bongars, a gentleman of Normandy; Barneville sur Mer is a very ancient chateau in the department of La Manche. Roger de Barneville is called by Raymond d'Agiles, *Miles clarissimus et rarissimus omnibus*. He was killed by an arrow near Antioch
- Bartelmewe* (Peter), p. 201, 238, etc., Pierre Bartelemey, a priest of the diocese of Marseilles, finder of the Sacred lance. He was attached to the suite of Raymond St. Gilles
- Basilie*, p. 70, Basil II., Emperor of Greece from 976—1025
- Baugenel* (Raoul de), p. 46, Raoul de Baugencé. He accompanied Hugh the Great to the Holy Land, whose daughter Mahaut he married for his second wife
- Baudwin*, p. 45, 77, etc., Baldwin, brother of Godfrey of Bouillon, second king of Jerusalem, third son of Eustache de Boulogne and Ida. He had been destined for holy orders, and had held many prebends in the churches of Rheims, Cambrai, and Liege, but marrying Godechilda or Gandechilda, daughter of Ralph de Soeny and Isabelle de Montfort, he cast off the sacerdotal habit. See 'Palgrave,' IV. p. 547.
- Beart* (Centon de), p. 46, 84. Gace de Barce, p. 272. Gaston, fourth Vicomte of Béarn, called Gastus de Berdeiz by Albert d'Aix; killed in 1130 by the Moors of Spain. His blood flows in the veins of the Bourbons
- Beauways* (Regnault de), p. 111, Bauuaus, p. 206
- Bedyers* (Gaste de), p. 84, 111, 247, 272, etc.
- Belfhet*, p. 33, 36, Alp Arslan, or Abulfath, Sultan of Persia from 1059—1072
- Beniamin*, p. 253, youngest son of Jacob
- Bernard*, of Valence, p. 216, 226, Bishop of Tarsus, made patriarch of Antioch in 1099
- Blois*, Steven, Earl of Chartres and Blois, p. 91, etc. See *Chartres*
- Boce* (Godefroy), p. 285, Godefroi le Bossu, Duke of Lorraine, so called because he was humpbacked, uncle of Godfrey of Bouillon
- Boloyne* (Godefroy of), p. 3, 64, etc., Godfrey of Bouillon, second son of Eustache de Boulogne and Ida, b. 1061, d. 1100. He was of the lineage of Charlemagne, through Mahaut de Lorraine, his grandmother
- Boloyne* (Eustache of), p. 121, etc., Eustache de Boulogne, father of Godfrey of Bouillon
- Boloyne* (Eustace of), p. 206, etc., brother of Godfrey of Bouillon, eldest son of the Eustache above mentioned; married after the First Crusade, Mary of Scotland, daughter of Margaret and Malcolm
- Bommensor*, p. 305. El Mustansir, Caliph of Egypt, from 1035—1095
- Borgh* (Bawdyn de), p. 111, 112, 206, etc., also called Bourg, Bort, Borgh, Bors, Bourgh, by Caxton; cousin of Godfrey of Bouillon, and son of Hugh, Count of Rêthel, one of the seven peers of Champagne, ancestor of the house of Burgundy
- Boure* (Thomas de), p. 206, misreading or corruption for Thomas de Fere. Lat. Thomas de Feria. See *Thomas de Fere*
- Broyes* (Reygnald of), p. 58. Michaud conjectures that he is perhaps Renaud de Breis, one of the knights in Peter the Hermit's army. He was slain before Nicæa
- Bureau* (Godefroy), p. 57, Godefroy Burel d'Etampes, one of the knights in the army of Peter the Hermit



*Burgoyn* (Gelpies of), p. 117

*Buymont*, Prince of Tarente, p. 46, 76, 77, etc., Bohemond, Prince of Tarentum in Italy, son of Robert Guiscard, originally from Hauteville in Normandy

*Canaham*, p. 233, Canaan, son of Ham

*Canderon* (Bawdyn), p. 99, originally from Bassigny in Champagne; William of Tyre calls him *nobilis et magnificus vir in armis strenuus*. He was killed at the siege of Nicæa

*Cannac* (Aubery of), p. 80

*Captap*, p. 252, Lat. Catab, father of Omar

*Cariantes* (Johan), p. 27, a Greek, living in Jerusalem at the time of the First Crusade

*Carpynelle* or *Campinelle* (Wyldemart), p. 260, Ganderar Carpinelle, from Languedoc, although in the suite of Godefrey

*Caryn* (Herman of), p. 80. According to Bongars he was a Norman nobleman, who accompanied Bohemond to the Holy Land. Palgrave (IV. 551) calls him Herinan de Cogy

*Caym*, p. 233, Ham, second son of Noah

*Chamont* (Gale de), p. 111, or Giles de Chaumont. This family is mentioned in 'Camden' as from Cornwall

*Charlemagne*, p. 3, Charlemagne the Great

*Charpentier* (Guylame), p. 72, etc., William, viscomte of Milun, called the Hammerer or the Carpenter. Guibert de Nogent says of him that he pillaged his villages and burghs to get the money with which to start for the Holy Land. Robert le Moine tells us that he was of royal lineage, and related to Hugh the Great. He was called the Carpenter from his vigorous style of fighting — "Ensy comme Charpentier aloit carpentant." — 'G. de Bouillon,' l. 18,042

*Chartes* (Ogan of), p. 80

*Chartres* (Foubert de), p. 224, 225

*Chartres*, Steven, Earl of Chartres and Blois, p. 91, etc., son of Thibaud III., Count of Blois and Champagne. He was a brother-in-law of Robert of Normandy, whose sister he had married. He was a man of wisdom

and prudence, and was made president of the council of war, which directed the military operations of the Crusade

*Cherisy* (Gerard), p. 46. Geart de Cherysy, p. 111, a knight of Picardy, who accompanied Godfrey of Bouillon to the Holy Land. History calls him Querisé, Kerisi, or Quierizi. Rogier ('Noblesse Française aux Croisades') says that he belonged to an ancient and knightly family near Soissons

*Cimirieux*, p. 292, misreading for Emirius. See *Elafdales*

*Colemant*, p. 47, Coloman, King Hungary, had just mounted the throne as the armies of the First Crusade crossed his country. He was called *Bibliophilus* from his love of books. Thurocz, in his 'Chronicle of Hungary,' gives this portrait of him: "Coloman was hideous and ignoble in appearance, but artful and crafty in mind. He was hairy, humpbacked, blind in one eye, lame, and a stutterer."

*Conasylles*, p. 221, corruption for Covasiles, an Armenian, whose real name was Kogh Basil, according to von Sybel; Paulin Paris calls him Covasiles; Albert d'Aix gives his name as Corrovasilus; William of Tyre calls him Covasilio

*Conayn* of Brytayne, p. 92, Conayn the Breton, p. 206, an illustrious knight of Brittany, son of Alain Fergant

*Constantyn*, Monamaques, p. 304, Emperor of Constantinople from 1042—1053

*Corbagat*, p. 194, 196, etc. Kerbogha, Sultan of Aleppo at the time of the First Crusade. He besieged Antioch. He is called Corbaran by the French poems on the Crusades

*Cornelle*, p. 249, the Centurion, Cornelius, mentioned in Acts x.

*Cosdrove*, p. 19, 20, etc., Chosroes, or Khosru II., son of Hormizd IV., King of Persia; called "Parvez" the Conqueror. He was killed in 628 by the treachery of his own son, after a glorious reign of thirty-eight years

*Creçon* (Rembault), p. 188. The *Creçon* a corruption for *Creton*. The person here designated was Raimbaud Creton d'Estournel. Estournel is a village

- about a league from Cambrai. Graindor de Douai gives us a portrait of this Raimbaud Creton. Ordericus Vitalis says that he mounted the ladder fourth at the assault of Antioch. He returned safely from the Holy Land, and was killed at the siege of Montmorency in 1101. The family is called indifferently, Estourmel or Creton, but since 1500 Estourmel has prevailed
- Crosecarlx* (Guy de), p. 190, a paleographic error for Trosselle—Guy de Trosselle
- Cuyilly* (Guillaume de), p. 231, corruption for Cumilly. The Latin gives Cumiliaco; another variant is Cimilli
- Daher*, p. 27, Daher, surnamed Ledimillah, son of Hakem Biamrillah, Sultan of Egypt from 1021—1036
- Dancelle* (Doene), p. 72, corruption for Dreue de Neele
- D'Anse* (Robert), p. 112, 121, Robert de Hanse, according to Palgrave, a Norman from Caen, who accompanied Bohemond to the Crusades
- Dansique* (Henry), p. 46; *D'asque*, Henry, p. 65, etc. See *Assche*
- Dares*, p. 2, a Trojan priest, said to have lived at the time of the Trojan war, to whom was attributed an account of that war. A work in Latin, purporting to be a translation of this account, and entitled, 'Daretis Phrygii de Excidio Trojae Historia,' was much read in the Middle Ages, and ascribed to Cornelius Nepos; but the language belongs to a much later period than the time of Nepos. Dederick, who has given an excellent edition, is inclined to ascribe the work to a Roman of the sixth or seventh century
- Dasque*, Godefrey, p. 65, 67. See *Assche*
- Davyd*, p. 2, David, King of Israel
- Daybart*, p. 299, 300, corruption for Daimbart, Archbishop of Pisa; made patriarch of Jerusalem by the Crusaders
- Deltors* (Bawdyn), p. 272. Caxton makes the best of the text of his faulty original here, which gives Baudoin de Ultore. The Latin text shows this to be a corruption for Baudoin de Bugh; Lat. Balduinus de Burgo
- Discretus*, p. 79, paleographic error for Dioscurus, the heretic patriarch of Alexandria in 451
- Domedart* (Gaultier de), p. 206
- Donysmayn*, p. 309, Danismain, a Turcoman Emir
- Ducar*, p. 136, Durcas, Sultan of Damascus
- Duchelond* (Herman of), p. 100
- Dutar*, p. 136, corruption of Ducar, same as above
- Dytes*, p. 2, Dictys Cretensis, a Grecian historian, who wrote probably about the time of Nero, although tradition assigns him to a much earlier period. The main interest of his work consists in the fact, that it was the source from which the Homeric legends were introduced into the Middle Ages
- Dye* or *Dys* (Ysachar, Erle of), p. 206, 273, Isachar, or Isard Count of Die, a Provençal nobleman
- Ebriac* (Guyllyam de), p. 262
- Edward*, p. 4, Edward IV., King of France and England
- Elafdales*, p. 292, Emiricus, or the Emir Al Dioususch, called also El Afdel, took Jerusalem from the Turks in 1098
- Eliopolitans*, p. 27, Emperor of Constantinople. See *Romayn*
- Elyus* (Adrian), p. 250, Aelius Hadrianus, Emperor of Rome after Titus
- Emycon*, p. 62, 64, Emicio, leader of one of the bands of Crusaders. Rörich, 'Zur Geschichte der Kreuzzüge,' calls him *Graf Emicho von Leiningen* from Nahegau, and says that he was disliked on account of the persecution of the Jews in the middle Rhenish cities, which was vigorously carried on by him
- Emyrferyus*, p. 168, 175, etc., Phyrus or Phirrus, the renegade Christian who delivered Antioch to Bohemond. According to Michaud (I. 157), he embraced Christianity and followed the Crusaders to Jerusalem. His ambition not being satisfied, he returned to Mohammedanism, and died abhorred by both Christians and Moslems. He is called Mufero in 'La Gran Conquista,' which also says that he was an Armenian. Some historians give him the name Adrian; Abul Faradge calls him Kuzebach, and says that he

- was of Persian descent. Anna Comnena assigns to him an Armenian origin. William of Tyre, as we see, calls him Emir Feirus, while Sanuti gives his name as Hermiroferus. In the 'Chanson d'Antioche' he figures as Dacien, while von Sybel gives his true name, probably, as Feruz az Ferrad
- Emytes*, p. 240, corruption for Emires. The Latin gives Emireius, the Egyptian Emir who captured Jerusalem from the Persians
- Eneanz*, p. 249, Eneas, the man mentioned in Acts ix. 34, who was healed by Peter
- Entyses*, p. 79, Eutyches, Archimandrite of Constantinople, condemned for heresy in 451, at the Council of Chalcedon
- Eracles*, p. 18, etc.
- Eusebec of Cesarea*, p. 124. Eusebius of Cesarea—b. 276, d. 340—known as the father of ecclesiastical history
- Ezechyas*, p. 254, Hezekiah, King of the Jews, from 717 B.C. to 688 B.C.
- Fedre* (Thomas de), p. 111, Thomas de Fferre, p. 46, 272, etc., Thomas de la Fere, Sire de Marle. He belonged to the house of Coucy; he was a most famous fighter, who filled the Orient with the renown of his valour. He married Ida of Hainault. M. Michaud calls him Thomas de Feü. He was the son of Enguerrand de Couci, whose motto Palgrave gives in IV. 559, *Roi ne Duc, ne Prince je suis; Je suis le Sire de Couci*
- Fergaunt* (Alayn), p. 92, Alain Ferguant the sixth Duke of Brittany, father of Conain
- Flaundres* (Robert of), p. 84, 206, etc. Robert of Flanders was the leader of the Frisons and the Flemings. He was the eldest son of Robert the Frison, a brave and dashing nobleman, called the "Lance and Sword of the Christians" by the Christians, and the "son of St. George" by the Saracens
- foca Cœur*, p. 20, Nicéphorus Phocas, Emperor of the East from 602—610. He was a Cappadocian of humble origin. A revolution caused Mauritius to abdicate, and Phocas became emperor. He was an ignorant, brutal, and deformed man, and was deposed by his successful rival, Heraclius, in 610
- Forestes* (Guillem erle of), p. 84, 99, etc. According to Van Hasselt, he was a Belgian nobleman
- Fytz Christen* (Robert), p. 80
- Fytz Gerard* (Robert), p. 206
- Fytz Godeffroy* (Raoul), p. 206
- Fytz Raoul* (Humphrey), p. 80
- Gable*, p. 124, Gabael of the Bible, cousin of Tobias
- Gabryel*, p. 308, a wealthy Armenian. Albert of Aix calls him Gaveras
- Gaultier*, Sans Avoir, p. 48, 49, etc. Walter the Pennyless, one of the leaders of the First Crusade. (See note on this subject.)
- Gaunt* (Bawdwyn of), p. 99, etc. Bauduin de Gant or de Gand, called Bauduin le Grand, Baudouin second lord of Alost. He perished at the siege of Nicæa
- Gawayn*, p. 2, Gawain or Gauvaine, a knight of the Round Table, nephew of King Arthur
- George* (St.), the Martyr, p. 244, born in Cappadocia of noble parents. He fell a martyr under Diocletian at Lidda, or, according to some, at Nicomedia. He is the patron saint of England, and of Genoa and Venice. His popularity in England dates from the time of Richard Cœur de Lion, who successfully invoked his aid. His greatest achievement in life was the conquest of a dragon by which he delivered a king's daughter from death
- Ghalehot*, p. 2, Sir Galahad, one of the knights of the Round Table, son of Sir Lancelot and Elaine
- Gilbert*, p. 40, Archbishop of Ravenna, the anti-Pope who deposed Pope Gregory VII. He was known as Clement III., and occupied the Holy See from 1080—1101. He is not numbered among the legitimate popes
- Godechan*, p. 59, 61, etc., Gottschalk, a German priest of the Palatinate, who preached the Crusade in Germany, and started after Peter the Hermit with 20,000 men. According to Röh-

- richt, he was called in derision, "Der Falsche Schalk Gottes"
- Graterylle* (Guyllenn de), p. 195; Gratemnyl, p. 197, 199, etc.; William of Grandmenil or Grantemesnil, the second son of Robert, founder of the Abbaye St. Evreult. He was attached to the house of Robert Guiscard, whom he had followed into Apulia, and whose daughter Mabilie he married, thus becoming a brother-in-law of Bohemond. He quarrelled with Bohemond, and left his service for that of Godfrey, under whom he served in the First Crusade. He ran away during the siege of Antioch with his two younger brothers, Yves and Alberic, and returned to Apulia, where he died soon after
- Grece* (Garnyer de), p. 206, 298, etc., Garnier de Grès or de Gray, from Franche Compté, one of the nobles who accompanied Godfrey of Bouillon to the Holy Land. In the Historical Gallery of Versailles he is called de Gray. In a MS. of the Arsenal he has the title, Garnier de Gresse. Wilken (I. p. 102) writes it Werner von Greës. He died a few days after Godfrey of Bouillon, and was buried in the Basilica of St. Mary, in the Valley of Jehoshaphat
- Gregory*, p. 40, Gregory, the seventh pope of Rome, died May 25, 1085. He greatly extended the power of Rome; through his pretensions he involved himself in violent disputes with the Emperor of Germany
- Guennes* of Denmark, p. 147. Sweno, son of the King of Denmark, was attacked while bringing succour to Godfrey of Bouillon, by Solyman. He was killed on the field of battle. This hero figures in Tasso's 'Jerusalem Delivered'
- Guyllam*, p. 109, brother of Tancred
- Gulier*, p. 115. Gandeschilde, or Godechilda, daughter of Ralph de Soeny and Isabel de Montfort, and wife of Baldwin, brother of Godfrey of Bouillon. She accompanied her husband on the First Crusade. She died, and was buried in Meraasch in Asia. Fröbese calls her Godechild von Conches
- Guychart* (Robert), p. 46, etc., Robert Guiscard, Norman Duke of Apulia and Calabria, 1015—1085, sixth of the twelve sons of Tancred of Hauteville in Normandy
- Guyllamme*, p. 226. Paulin Paris conjectures that this is the same William who distinguished himself at the siege of Marrah. The 'Chanson d'Antioche' states that he was from Montpellier
- Gwynemer*, p. 121, Guy Nevers, p. 122, etc., Guinemers of Boulogne, a celebrated pirate captain. He was taken prisoner by the Emperor of Constantinople, and kept in prison in Laodicea. Godfrey of Bouillon restored him to liberty
- Guyon*, p. 197, Guyen, p. 198, Guy the Seneschal, brother of Bohemond, and attached by a brilliant marriage to the fortunes of Alexis, Emperor of Constantinople, according to Anna Comnena
- Handeron* (Bawdyn), p. 99. See *Canderson*. Handeron, a corruption of Canderson or Cauderon; Lat. Calderon
- Hanse* (Robert the), p. 80. Lat. Robertus de Anxa. See *D'Anse*
- Harry*, p. 40, 42, 279, Henry IV., Emperor of Germany
- Hecam*, p. 24, Hakim Biamrillah, Caliph of Egypt, 996—1021, third of the Fatimite Caliphs
- Hector* of Troy, p. 2, eldest son of Priam
- Hellom*, p. 202; Fr. Herluin, the interpreter who accompanied Peter the Hermit on his embassy to Kerbogha
- Helyas*, p. 244, Elijah the Prophet
- Helyzeus*, p. 249, Elisha the Prophet
- Henawde* (Bawdwyn, erle of), p. 45, 208, Baldwin, Earl of Hainault, a Flemish nobleman who went with Godfrey of Bouillon to the First Crusade
- Henry*, p. 297, Henry I., King of England
- Herman*, p. 62, 200. See *Duchelond*
- Hetam*, p. 27, a corruption for Hecam
- Homar*, p. 19, 20. See *Omar*
- Homer*, p. 2, the poet Homer
- Huon le Mayne*, p. 71, 206, 208, etc., Hugh de Vermandois, younger brother of King Philip of France. He was the second son of Henry I. and Anne,

- daughter of Jaroslaw, Duke of Russia. He became Count of Vermandois by his marriage with Adelaide, daughter of Count Herbert. He was called Hugh the Great (Huon le Mayne), either because he was the brother of the king or from his great size
- Hyart*, p. 24, Lord of Rames, bailiff of Hakim; the Hidraot of Tasso's 'Jerusalem Delivered'
- Iaphet*, p. 115, son of Noah
- Ieroboam*, p. 253, Jeroboam
- Incita*, p. 49, Duke of Bulgaria
- Iohan*, p. 78, John, son of Alexis Comnenus
- Iohan*, p. 215, John, patriarch of Antioch, reinstated after the conquest of Antioch
- Iohan Eleymont* (St.), p. 36, patriarch of Constantinople
- Ionen*, p. 115, Javan, fourth son of Japheth
- Iosue*, p. 1, 249, 253, Joshua
- Iude*, p. 124, St. Jude, author of one of the books of the New Testament
- Iustynyen*, p. 244, Justinianus, surnamed the Great, Emperor of Constantinople, 527—565. He was born in Illyria, and married the celebrated and beautiful actress Theodora. He is especially famous as a legislator
- Latyns*, p. 148, corruption for Tatyns, which is in turn a corruption of Tatinus.
- Launcelotte de Lake*, p. 2, Launcelot du Lac, chief knight of the Round Table
- Leuy*, p. 249, Levi, one of the twelve sons of Jacob
- Lucan*, p. 2, Marcus Annæus Lucanus, grandson of Seneca, born Nov. 3rd, 39 A.D. Most eminent Roman poet of the Silver Age
- Lutol*, p. 271. See *Tornay*
- Lybres* (Gonam), p. 272, corruption for Conain le Breton
- Lylle* (Galles de), p. 99, Galon de Lille, killed with Baldwin of Gand at the siege of Nicæa. An arrow laid him low as he was mounting to the assault. The two received burials worthy of great and noble men
- Lyon* (Pope), p. 79, Leo I., called Leo the Great, Pope from 440 to 461
- Lyonel*, p. 2, Sir Lionel, brother of Sir Launcelot, son of Ban, King of Benwick, a hero of the Arthurian legends
- Machabeus* (Judas), p. 2, Judas, called Maccabæus or the Hammerer, title given to Judas Asmonæus, the first great hero of the Jewish revolt against Antiochus Epiphanes. He was killed in 110 B.C.
- Machomet*, p. 18, Mahomet
- Marcyne*, p. 79, Marcianus, Emperor of the East from 450 to 457. He was a native of Thrace, and became emperor by marrying Pulcheria, widow of Theodosius
- Marie*, p. 20, daughter of the Emperor Mauritius of Rome, and wife of Khosru II., Sultan of Persia
- Maturane* (Bishop of), p. 280, 284, 296, etc.
- Mauilde*, p. 285, Maude, daughter of Eustache of Boulogne, wife of King Stephen of England
- Mauryce*, p. 20, Mauricius Flavius Tiberius, Emperor of the East from 582 to 602. He abdicated in favour of Phocas
- Maxyme*, p. 24, Maximus, patriarch of Jerusalem in the time of Constantine
- Modeste*, p. 19, Modestus, colleague of Zacharias, and his successor as patriarch of Jerusalem in 514. It is not certain how matters were arranged, whether Zacharias was brought back from Persia and became a colleague of Modestus or not. Three homilies of Modestus are still preserved. He was especially severe against the use of unguents by women
- Mollac* (Reynard de), p. 217, corruption for Aumellac. See *Aumellac*
- Montagu* (Conon de), p. 74 (Aconon de), p. 131, etc., one of Godfrey de Bouillon's companions in the First Crusade. He was a Belgian by birth, son of Gozelon, Count of Boulogne, and Ermentrude of Haranzey. Conon's wife was Ida, said to be sister of Godfrey of Bouillon. He died at the siege of Dolheim, April 30th, 1101
- Montagu* (Euenam), p. 206, corruption for Conon
- Montagu* (Lambert de), p. 206, 272, son of Conon

- Montagu* (Gossolyn de), p. 131, 132, Goscelin, son of Conon de Montagne
- Montague* (Guemes), p. 140, corruption for Conon
- Montcler* (Guyllebert de), p. 112
- Montpellier* (Guyllem de), p. 84, 206, etc. William of Montpellier, accompanied Raymond of Toulouse and Adhemar to the Holy Land
- Montygneux* (Umfrey of), p. 80. The Latin gives *Hunfredus de Monte Scabioso*
- Moucoux* (Loys de), p. 206, Louis de Moncon or Monson, called by Albert d'Aix, *Mirabilis in opere militare*, was one of those who entered Jerusalem first. According to Dansey ('Eng. Crusaders') a family of this name settled in England soon after the Conquest. From this family the present Lord Monson is said to descend
- Nabugodonosor*, p. 134, Nebuchadnezzar, King of Assyria, 604—647 B.C.
- Nelle* (Dreues de), p. 172, Drogo de Neel. He was among the prisoners released by Alexius on condition that Godfrey of Bouillon should discontinue pillaging his country. He was lord of Nesles, or Neelles, and Faloy. Lat. Drogo de Nahalla. He followed Hugh the Great, shared his captivity, and distinguished himself at the siege of Nicæa. According to Albert d'Aix, Drogon was the son of Yves de Nesles. The Castellany of Bruges belongs to this family. See 'Croisés Belges,' p. 142
- Noe*, p. 115, Noah
- Noradyn*, p. 137, Nouredin Mahmud, Malek al Adel, the scourge of the Christian settlements in Syria and Palestine, b. 1116, d. 1174. He is one of the great heroes of Moslem history
- Normandye* (Robert Duke of), p. 45, 91, etc., Robert Duke of Normandy, son of William the Conqueror, surnamed in French history *Courte heuse*. He mounted the walls among the first at the assault of Jerusalem. He died a prisoner in England in 1130 or '31. He mortgaged his Duchy of Normandy to King William, his brother, for 10,000 pounds in order to obtain the funds for the First Crusade
- Nycesores*, p. 28, corruption for Nycefores, Nicephorus, patriarch of Jerusalem
- Nychofores* (Bothoniat), p. 71, Nicophorus, Emperor of the East, 802—811. He succeeded Ireneus, and was the first Grecian emperor
- Nycose*, p. 165, etc., an Armenian
- Olyver*, p. 3, Oliver, one of the paladins of Charlemagne, the devoted friend and companion-at-arms of Roland, Charlemagne's nephew
- Omar*, p. 19, 20, 252, etc., Omar, son of Captaph, the second, successor of Mahomet. He was for ten years the head of the Moslem Empire, and died in 644
- Orange* (Raybout, erle of), p. 84, etc., Rembout, Earl of Orange, one of the great Provençal noblemen in the First Crusade
- Orege* (Bishop of), p. 84, etc., William, Bishop of Örege. He died at the siege of Marran, p. 228
- Oreste*, p. 24, Örestes, patriarch of Jerusalem in the time of Hakiin, whose uncle he was
- Orleans* (ffoucher d'), p. 58, one of the few knights in Peter's army. Slain before Nicæa
- Ovyde*, p. 2, Ovid, the Latin poet
- Pancrace*, p. 165, 221, etc., Pancratius, an Armenian prince, in his youth King of Northern Iberia. He joined the Crusaders in the hope of retrieving his fortunes. See *Michaud*, I, 120
- Paris* (Robert of), p. 109, Robert of Paris
- Pelet* (Remon), p. 234, 260, etc., Pabes, p. 206, Peles, p. 84. Raymond Pelet, a Provençal nobleman, called "The Crusader Vicomte of Narbonne." He was also Count of Miquel and Alais, thus belonging to one of the most distinguished families of Languedoc. He is the first ancestor known of the Pelets of Narbonne, of whom there are still several branches
- Perceval*, p. 2, Knight of the Round Table
- Perche* (Routrout, erle of), p. 45; Erle of Perse, p. 206; Rotheron of Perse,

- p. 92; Routrou, second Earl of Perche, who accompanied the Duke of Normandy. He commanded a corps of troops at the siege of Antioch, according to 'Chroniques Belges,' V, 101. He lost his life in 1144, while besieging the tower of Rouen with the Count of Anjou
- Perseus*, p. 115, a hero of Grecian mythology, son of Danaë and Zeus. He is said to have founded Tarsus in Cilicia, and appears on the coins of that city, as well as on coins of Pontus and Cappadocia
- Peter the Hermit*, p. 36, 37, 38, etc., born in Acheris, near Amiens, in the diocese of Laon. He returned from the Holy Land in 1102 with the Count of Montaigne. After his return he built the Abbey of Neufmoutiers at Huy, on the right bank of the Meuse, in honour of the Holy Sepulchre. Anna Comnena says that he was called Petrus Cucullatus, because he wore a cowl
- Peter* (of Narbonne), p. 226, made Bishop of Albare
- Peter*, p. 201. See *Bartelmewe*.
- Phyllip*, p. 279, Phelip, p. 216, Philippe, p. 42, etc., Philippe I., King of France
- Possesse* (Guy de), p. 46; Guy du Puysett, p. 97, Guy de Porsesse; Lat. Guido de Porsesso, a French nobleman from Champagne. Porsesse is near Vitry
- Pretopt* (Saint), p. 254, corruption for Saint Procope; Lat. *Sanctus Procopius*
- Principat* (Rychard the), p. 80, 112, etc., a Norman nobleman, Lord of Principata, son of William Fier-à-bras, Robert Guiscard's brother
- Puyssat* (Euerard du), p. 46, 206, according to Bongars, a nobleman from the neighbourhood of Chartres.
- Pyrrus*, p. 70, Pyrrhus, King of Epirus, 318—272 B.C.
- Quyén*. See *Guyon*
- Quyillehain*, p. 285. See *William*
- Raoul*, p. 289, Rudolph of Suabia, killed in 1080 at the battle of Merseburg.
- Raymont*, p. 80, Raymond, brother of Richard the Principat, son of William Fier-à-bras
- Retel* (Count Huon de), p. 45, father of Baldwin, cousin of Godfrey of Bouillon
- Richard*, son of Erle Ranyol, p. 80, Richard, son of Earl Ramol, or Ranulf of Roussignol
- Richard*, Duke of York, p. 5, son of Edward IV., one of the unhappy princes killed in the tower by the orders of Richard, Duke of Gloucester
- Robert* (Bishop of Rames), p. 245, a native of Rouen in Normandy
- Roboam*, p. 253, Rehoboam, son of Solomon
- Rodahan*, p. 218, 220, Lord of Halappe
- Romanus Diogenes*, p. 33, 95, Emperor of Constantinople 1065—1071, a member of a powerful Cappadocian family, who had risen to distinction in the army. The queen-mother became enamoured of him as he was brought into her presence, condemned to death for treason, and released and married him. He was disastrously defeated by Alp Arslan on the banks of the Araxes, returned home dishonoured, and retired to the isle of Crete, where he died in misery
- Romayn*, p. 27, Romanus Eliopolitanis, Emperor of Constantinople from 1028 to 1034, called Eliopolitanis because he was born in Eliopolis. He usually has the surname of Argire
- Rosoye* (Robert of), p. 130, Robert, or Roger de Rozoi
- Roussylon*, p. 84, 206, etc. (Girault de or Gyrard de), Gerard de Roussillon, of the distinguished Provençal family of that name
- Rousygnol* (the erle of), p. 80, the Earl of Roussignol; Lat. Rosinolo
- Rybemont* (Ancean de), p. 206, 208, etc., Count de Valenciennes in Picardy, husband of Agnes de Roncy, daughter of Eblis de Roncy, great-grandson of the famous Bernier, who killed Raoul de Cambrai. Ancean (Anselme) is mentioned with praise by Albert d'Aix, Guibert de Nogent, and Raoul de Caen. He was killed at the siege of Archas. Michaud calls him the Count de Bouchain. He went to the Crusade with Bohemond
- Sabram* (Guyllém de), p. 273
- Salamon*, p. 253, Solomon, son of David

- Sangum*, p. 137, Emad Eddin Zenghi, Emir of Mussul and Haleppe, founder of the dynasty of the Atabeks of Syria, known generally as Zenghi. This name was corrupted by the Crusaders into Sanquin
- Sansadol*, p. 226, Sensadole or Sensadoine, son of Soliman. Bongars (I, 239) calls him Sensadonia filius Darsiani
- Sara*, p. 124, daughter of Raguel, who lived in Ecbatana. See Book of Tobit
- Scarway* (Peter de), p. 112, corruption for Peter of Stadenois
- Sedechyas*, p. 134, Sedecias, Grecian form for Zedekiah, son of Josiah, King of Judah
- Selduc*, p. 30, Seljuk, grandfather of Togrul Bey, the first ruler of the Turks
- Selducees*, p. 30, the family or tribe of Selduc, Seljuks, a Perso-Turkish dynasty which produced eleven kings and lasted 138 years
- Semer*, p. 194; Fr. Soemer, Lat. Sigemar, p. 194; cousin of Henry d'Asche
- Seynt Pol* (Huge, the Erle of), p. 65, etc., Hugh, second Earl of Saint Paul, Count of Champ d'Avene, died in 1130 or 31
- Seynt Pol* (Everard of), p. 65; Seynt Poul (Eniorrann of), p. 230; Aniaran de St. Poul, p. 206; Engerran, or Engellran de St. Paul, son of Hugh. He died at the siege of Marrah, near Aleppo
- Sokins*, p. 115, C. Julius Solinus, author of a geographical compendium about A.D. 238
- Solyman*, p. 56, 57, 58, etc., Kilidge Arslem, also called David, or the Sword of the Spirit, and Solyman the younger. He was the son of Solyman. He was Sultan of Nice at the time of its conquest by the Crusaders. William of Tyre makes him a nephew of the Sultan of Persia, and mistakes him for his father
- Sophony*, p. 21, Sophronius, a monk of Damascus, who became patriarch of Jerusalem in 634. He opposed the endeavours of Cyrus, patriarch of Alexandria, to secure general acceptance of innothelite views. The Emperor Heraclius issued an edict in 638 to put an end to the discussion. Sophronius was patriarch of Jerusalem in 638, when it was taken by the Caliph Omar
- Soun*, p. 23, the Sonna, or Mishna, the oral law of the Mahometans
- Sourdeval* (Robert of), p. 80. An ancient house of Normandy, bearing the name of the fief of Sourdeval, is situated between Vire and Mortain. According to Rogier ('La Noblesse Française aux Croisades'), Robert of Sourdeval was at the siege of Amalfi with Bohemond, and went with him to the Holy Land
- Stace*, p. 2, Publius Papinius Statius, a Roman poet who lived A.D. 45—96
- Symeon*, p. 37, etc., Sinneon, patriarch of Jerusalem
- Tancre*, p. 80, 82, etc., Tancred of Sicily, son of the good Marquis Odon or William, and cousin of Bohemond on his mother Emma's side. He is immortalized by Tasso
- Tantyn*, p. 197; Tacius, p. 105, called in French *Estatin l'Esnasé*, Tatinus the Noseless, prefect of the palace of the Emperor of Constantinople. In the 'Chanson of Antioch' he is the nephew of the Emperor. Anna Comnena calls him Tatikios, and says that he was of Saracen origin
- Tareste*, p. 94, Tharasius, patriarch of Constantinople in 787
- Thabyte*, p. 249, Tabitha, the young woman healed by Peter in Acts ix.
- Theophilus*, p. 134. According to a story taken from the so-called 'Recognitions of St. Clement,' there was a certain nobleman of Antioch of the name of Theophilus converted by the preaching of Peter, who dedicated his own house as a church, in which the Apostle fixed his episcopal seat. William has confounded him with the Theophilus of the book of Luke
- Thobyte*, p. 24, the Tobias of the Apocrypha, son of Tobit and Anna
- Tholouse* (Raymond de St. Gilles, erle of Toulouse), p. 84, 96, etc., leader of the Provençal Crusaders with Adhemar de Monteil



- Thybauld* the old, p. 45, Thibaut, second son of Stephen, Count of Chartres and Blois; he died Jan. 1152
- Tornay* (Engelbert and Lethold of), p. 271, two brothers who mounted after Godfrey of Bouillon at the taking of Jerusalem
- Toul* (Bernard, erle of), p. 65, Bernard, a corruption for Reynard; Reynart, erle of, p. 112; Reignald of Toul, p. 206; Pieter, p. 65, brother of Reynard of Toul
- Tours* (Geffrey de), p. 227, Guelphe or Gouffier de las Tours
- Treue* (Gylbert de), p. 260
- Urban*, p. 40, 41, etc., Pope Urban the II., Eudes or Odo, pope from 1088 to 1099. He died fourteen days after the fall of Jerusalem, but before the news had reached Italy
- Vaspasian*, p. 250, Vespasian the tenth of the twelve Caesars, Roman emperor from 70 to 79
- Veer* (Gace de), p. 261, corruption for Gaston de Beart; Lat. *Gastonem de Beart*
- Venduel* (Clarembauld de), p. 72, 172
- Ver* (Gaultier de), p. 244
- Viator*, p. 41, corruption for Victor. This Victor was the third pope of the name. He was chosen in 1085, after Gregory's death. He did not consent to be consecrated until two years after, in May 1087. He died Sept. 16th, 1087
- William*, p. 285, fictitious brother of Godfrey of Bouillon
- Wylliam* Rous, p. 297, William Rufus, King of England 1057—1087—1100
- Yde*, p. 285, Ida, mother of Godfrey of Bouillon, sister of Godfrey le Bossu, Duke of Lower Lorraine



# INDEX OF PLACES.

- Abydon*, p. 73, Abydos, town on the Hellespont at the narrows of the Dardanelles
- Acheldemach*, p. 251, the Aceldama of the Bible
- Aciane*, p. 299, corruption for Ariane
- Acres*, p. 244, St. John d'Acre, modern Ptolemais, or Acca, a harbour of Syria at the foot of Mt. Carmel
- Adane*, p. 117, 218, to-day Adana, town of Cilicia in Asia Minor
- Adre*, or *Adria*, p. 69, town in Northern Italy, on the river Po
- Adryane*, p. 69, 79, 85, the Adriatic Sea
- Albane*, p. 225. See *Albare*
- Albare*, p. 226, 228, called Lanbare in the Chanson of Antioch, the El Barie of the Arabian chroniclers, to be found in Burckhardt's map of Syria under the name of El Bara; William of Tyre says that Albara formed part of the province of Apamia, and was a two days' journey from Antioch. The modern El Bara is between Apamia and Antioch, and about thirty-seven miles from the latter
- Alexandrye the Lasse*, p. 122; *Allexandrye the Lytyl*, p. 195; Alexandria the Less, or Alexandrette, on the coast of Palestine north of Antioch
- Allemaygne*, p. 65.
- Allemayne*, p. 40, etc., } Germany
- Almayne*, p. 288, }
- Alysaundre*, p. 79; *Alexandrye*, p. 23; the city of Alexandria
- Amene*, p. 134, corruption for *Aniene*; Lat. *Aniensis*
- Amiens*, p. 36, the city of Amiens in France
- Anamystre*, see *Mamstrye*, p. 118,
- Mamistra*, the modern Missis, formerly called Mopsuetis
- Anauazie*, p. 115, city of Cilicia, directly north of Antioch, the modern Anizarba, formerly the metropolitan city; Migne, *Ency. Ec.*, is in doubt about it, and cites different authorities on the subject
- Ancone*, p. 69, Sea of Ancona, part of the Gulf of Venice
- Andrenoble*, p. 76, or *Adrianople*, north-west of Constantinople; on the Maritza, the capital of Roumania
- Anthone*, p. 250, Antonia, one of the towers of Jerusalem, on the north side of the Temple
- Antibare*, p. 85, Antivari, modern name Antibaris, city of Dalmatia
- Antyoche*, p. 23, 34, etc., Antioch
- Antyoche the Lasse*, p. 112, chief city of Pisidia, also called Antiochetta
- Aperon*, p. 68, paleographic error for Ciperon
- Aquylee*, p. 85, Aquileia, ancient capital of the Carni, to-day Aglar or Aquileya, just at the head of the Adriatic Sea, north-west of Trieste
- Arabye*, p. 18, 19, etc., Arabia
- Archade*, p. 70, Arcadia
- Archys*, p. 233, 236, ancient Archis, to-day Arca, between Tripoli and the sea
- Ariane*, p. 299, town of Ariano in the Apennines
- Arsur*, p. 306, to-day Arsuf, a town north of Joppa, in the pashalic of Damascus, said to have been built originally by Solomon; it still possesses a fortress and a mosque
- Artaysse*, p. 130, *Artayse*, *Artaysis*, p.

131, 132, etc., to-day Ertesi, about seventeen miles north-east of Aleppo  
*Asinepol*, p. 70, Asinople  
*Asye*, p. 55, 73, etc., Asia  
*Aufrique*, p. 23, Africa  
*Amaure*, p. 218, corruption for Anavarzie  
*Auvergne*, p. 43, Auvergne in France

*Bagulars (Mt.)*, p. 70, the Balkan mountains

*Bandras*, p. 134, 137, etc., corruption for Baudas, the city of Bagdad

*Bar*, p. 84, Bari in Apulia, Italy

*Bardare*, p. 80, the ancient Achedorus, flows into the Gulf of Salonica, in Macedonia

*Baruth*, p. 243, modern Beirut, Palestine

*Baupere*, p. 62

*Bauyere*, p. 49, 140, } Bavaria

*Bellegraue*, p. 69, etc., mod. Belgrade, capital of Servia, on the right bank of the Danube, at the confluence of the Save

*Bethleem*, p. 28, } Bethlehem

*Bethlehem*, p. 245, 246, }

*Blacz*, p. 69, 70, the Wallachians

*Blaquerne*, p. 74, a palace in Constantinople

*Boloyne*, p. 235, etc., } Boulogne in

*Bullogne*, p. 1, } France

*Bougres*, p. 70, Bulgarians

*Bougrie*, p. 49,

*Bougrye*, p. 50, 69, etc., } Bulgaria

*Bethnie*, p. 79,

*Bethyne*, p. 34, } Variations of

*Bythyne*, p. 55, 91, etc., } spelling for

*Bythynie*, p. 198, } Bithynia

*Braas of St. George*, p. 34, 35, etc., the Dardanelles, called the Braas of St. George on account of a monastery of St. George built outside of the walls of the city. It generally means only the narrow straits which separate Asia from Europe, but sometimes taken for the whole Propontis enclosed between the two straits: St. George was a Cappadocian warrior

*Calabre*, p. 92, Calabria

*Calcedonie*, p. 79; *Calcedoine*, p. 83, Chalcedon, city in Bithynia, near Constantinople: seat of the Council of 451

*Calvarye*, Calvary

*Cappadoce*, p. 34, Cappadocia, eastern-

most province of Asia Minor, very early Christianized, and belonged to the diocese of Pontus, erected by Constantine the Great

*Carmely*, p. 244, Mt. Carmel

*Cartage*, p. 23, Carthage

*Castore*, p. 80, Castoria, city in Macedonia

*Ceassurye*, p. 34, province of which Damascus is the chief city

*Cesaire*, p. 300, } Caesarea, to-day

*Cezaire*, p. 231, 244, } called Seidjar

*Chamele*, p. 231, also called Emessa

*Cinintot*, corruption for Civitot, p. 55, town of Bithynia, on the Gulf of Mandania, called, to-day, Ghio or Gemlik

*Ciperon*, p. 68, now called Schoprony, in Hungarian, and Oedenburg in German, a town or small fortified place on the frontiers of Hungary

*Cleremont*, p. 42, Cleremont in Auvergne, France; the third Council of Pope Urban was held here, in Nov. 1095, attended by four archbishops and 225 bishops, besides an immense number of lower clergy and laity

*Clony*, p. 42, Abbey of Cluny in Burgundy, France, composed of Benedictine Monks, founded in 909

*Cobar*, p. 30, 31, to-day the river Khabur, on the frontier of Persia

*Coleyne*, p. 62, Cologne

*Comans*, p. 69,

*Counthot*, p. 105, corruption for Civitot

*Cryne*, p. 198. See *Lychonie*

*Cylyce*, p. 95; *Sylyce*, p. 123; Cilicia, one of the most important provinces of Asia Minor, corresponding partly to the modern Adana

*Dalmace*, p. 85, Dalmatia, between Hungary and the Adriatic Sea, on the eastern side of the sea

*Damaske*, p. 19, Damascus

*Danemarches*, p. 70, Danemarche the Mayene is Dacia Mediterranea, or Lower Moesia; the Latin gives *Dacia*, which was evidently mistaken for Dania, and translated accordingly by the French translator, whom Caxton follows

*Dorylee*, Dorylaeum, to-day called Eski Scheke, valley south-east of Nice, in ancient Phrygia

- Duchelande*, p. 226, etc., Germany  
*Dunoe*, p. 62, 68, etc., the Danube  
*Duras*, p. 70, 86, etc.; ancient Dyrrhachium, to-day called Durazzo, a Turkish port on the Adriatic
- Ebron*, p. 250, Hebron  
*Eliopee*, p. 133; this word is a corruption of Elyopie, the ancient Heliopolis or Baalbec. See *Mallec* or *Malbec*  
*Elye*, p. 250, *Ælia*, name given to Jerusalem by Aelius Adrianus  
*Emaus*, p. 248; there were two villages of this name, one, twenty-two Roman miles from Jerusalem, also called Nicopolis; and the Emmaüs of the Bible, seven and a half miles from Jerusalem; according to McClintock and Strong, *Dict.*, the Crusaders called Emmaus, Meopolis, but confused it with a small fortress farther south on the Jerusalem road, now called Latrôn  
*Ennon*, p. 51, 254, Ennon  
*Epyre*, p. 86, Epirus  
*Eraclee*, p. 115, etc., to-day called Heraclea; called also Eregli, city of Lycaonia, between Iconium and Tarsus  
*Ermenye*, p. 292, 308, etc., Armenia; Caxton also spells it *Hermonye*  
*Ermon*, p. 254, Hermon  
*Escalonne*, p. 279; *Escalonne*, p. 292, 293, etc.; city of Ascalon, on the coast south-west of Jerusalem  
*Espyre*, p. 70, Epirus  
*Eufrates*, p. 125, 165, etc., Euphrates
- Famosette*, p. 127, etc.  
*Fenyece*, p. 233, 236, etc., Phoenicia  
*flaundes*, p. 120, 243, etc. Flanders  
*franuce*, p. 3, 42, etc., France  
*fryselande*, p. 120, Friesland  
*Francone*, p. 49, 62, Franconia, made a duchy in the 10th century; its capital city Nuremberg. It belongs to Bavaria to-day  
*Fynemyne*, p. 148, 195, Von Sybel calls it Philomelium,—a place near Antioch in Asia Minor: also called by Spruner *Finimium*. Its modern name is Ak-schehr
- Gabao*, p. 249, Gibeon  
*Galace*, p. 34, Galatia
- Galgala*, p. 249, small town south-east of Jericho, on the Dead Sea  
*Galylee*, p. 298, Galilee  
*Geme*, p. 298, a corruption of *Genesar*, the lake of Gennesaret  
*Gene*, p. 243, 260, etc., Genoa  
*Genewes*, p. 260, etc., Genoese  
*Grece*, p. 64, Greece  
*Gybelet*, p. 235, etc., the ancient Gabala, to-day known as Jebeil, a town on the coast of Syria between Beirut and Tripoli
- Halappe*, p. 218, 219, etc., Aleppo  
*Haman*, p. 231, the ancient Epiphania, to-day called Hamal  
*Hasart*, p. 218, etc., town a little north of Aleppo, and called by Arabian historians Azaz, which name it still bears  
*Hatap*, p. 221, the modern Aintab  
*Helle*, p. 164, the river Orontes, called El Fer; Caxton by a mistake read it L'Enfer, and translated it by *Helle*  
*Hermonye*, p. 165. See *Ermenye*  
*Holande*, p. 120, Holland  
*Hongrye*, p. 47, 49, etc., Hungary
- Iadre*, p. 19, a city of Palestine  
*Iadre*, p. 85, etc., Zara, a city of Dalmatia with a port on the Adriatic  
*Iaphe*, p. 248, 301, etc., Joffa or Joppa, only sea-port of Judæa on the Mediterranean  
*Iheruhesees*, p. 250, the Jebusees  
*Iherusalem*, p. 20, etc., Jerusalem  
*Ihericho*, p. 249, Jericho  
*Iophat*, p. 250, } Jehoshaphat  
*Iosaphat*, p. 256, }  
*Ister*, p. 85, Istria  
*Iudee*, p. 250, { Judæa  
*Iurye*, p. 253, }
- Lamane*, p. 280. See *Maturane*  
*Lasse Asye*, Asia Minor  
*Lide*, p. 244, Lydda  
*Lintans*, p. 62; *Lyntans*, p. 65; the river Leytha, a tributary of the Danube  
*Lombardye*, p. 42, 69, etc.  
*Lorayne*, p. 49, Lorraine  
*Lybane*, p. 233, 242, Mt. Lebanon  
*Lycaone*, p. 34, Lycaonia  
*Lyce*, p. 34, Lycia  
*Lyche of Surrye*, p. 235; *Lystes of Surrye*, p. 34; *The Lyche*, p. 261; Lao-

- dicea; in one of the French manuscripts of William of Tyre, no. 8404, it is called *Le Chef de Surie*. This city still exists under the name of *Lakikieh*, according to Michaud
- Lychonie*, p. 113; *Licoine*, p. 114; another form is the *Cryne*, all mistranslations of the French *L'icoine*, the city of Iconium, to-day called *Konieh* in *Lycaonia*
- Macedomone*, p. 92, }  
*Macedonie*, p. 87, } *Macedonia*  
*Machedone*, p. 70, }
- Machabews*, p. 248, the Maccabees
- Magonce*, p. 62, Mainz or Mayence, on the Rhine
- Malfe*, p. 36, modern Amalfi, a city of Apulia in Italy
- Mallec*, p. 133, *Malbec* or *Baalbec*, the same city as *Eliopee*, or *Heliopolis*
- Malleville*, p. 48, 50, etc., said to be the modern *Semlin*; as the Crusaders did not know what to call it, it has been conjectured that they dubbed it *Malleville* on account of the sufferings which they endured
- Mamstre*, p. 218. See *Anamystre*
- Manbec*, p. 301, same as *Mallec*
- Marase*, p. 115, } *Marash*, formerly  
*Maraze*, p. 122, etc., } called *Germanica*
- Marce*, p. 47, a corruption of the word *Maroe*, a river of Hungary
- Marclée*, p. 236, to-day called *Merkale*, the first city of *Phœnicia*, situated on the sea-side between the castle of *Margat* and *Tortuose*
- Marese*, p. 130, mod. *Marasch*, in *Cilicia*, not far from *Aleppo*
- Margat*, p. 236, 299, to-day *Markab* on the coast between *Giblet* and *Tortuose*
- Marran*, p. 226; *Mazran*, p. 226; *Marran*, p. 229; modern name *Maarrah* en *Naaman*
- Mase*, p. 194, the river *Meuse*
- Mathale*, p. 194, town of *Mechelen*, near *Maestricht* in *Holland*; in French called *Machale* or *Machele*
- Maturane*, p. 280, town of *Martorano* in *Calabria*, Italy
- Maus*, p. 243, the ancient *Adonis*; to-day called *Nahr Ibrahim*: *Tudebodus* calls it *Braym*
- Mayene*, p. 70. See *Danemarches*
- Meeszebors*, p. 62, town at the junction of the *Leytha* and the *Danube*, in *Lower Hungary*
- Meletene*, p. 308, 309, called also *Malatia*, between the *Euphrates* and *Mesopotamia*
- Mese*, p. 70, *Moesia*
- Mesopotayne*, p. 308, *Mesopotamia*
- Mona*, p. 252, corruption for *Moriah*
- Moria*, p. 250, Mt. *Moriah* in *Jerusalem*
- Naples*, p. 249; *Napples*, p. 293, etc.; *Napoli*, or *Nauplia*, or *Nabulus*, mod. *Nabloos*, supposed to be the same as *Shechem* or *Sichem*: it is about thirty miles from *Jerusalem*. A Council was called here in 1120, by King *Baldwin* of *Jerusalem*; the object, to reform the Church
- Narbonne*, p. 226, *Narbonne* in *France*
- Nycene*, p. 46, etc., *Nice*, or *Nicaea*, the ancient capital of *Bithynia*, on the eastern shore of lake *Ascanius*: modern name, *Isnik*
- Nychomede*, p. 93; *Nycomede*, p. 91; *Nicomedia*, ancient capital of *Bithynia*, situated on the north-eastern angle of the Gulf of *Astacus*, in the *Propontis*, now called *Bay of Ismid*. This city was built A.D. 264 by *Nicomedes I.*; *Diocletian* and *Constantine* the Great lived there. It is now the small town of *Ismid*
- Nyz*, p. 40; *Nyze*, p. 50, mod. *Nissa*, a fortified city of *Servia*, on the *Nissava*, south-east of *Belgrade*
- Olyvet (Mt.)*, p. 262, Mt. *Olivet*
- Oronte (Mt.)*, p. 135, mountain in *Antioch*
- Oronte*, river, p. 135, see next
- Orontes*, p. 133, ancient name of the river *Fer*, to-day called *El Aasay*, "the rebellious"
- Osterych*, p. 49, *Austria*
- Palestyne*, p. 263, etc., *Palestine*
- Pamphyle*, p. 194, *Pamphylia*
- Pelagoine*, p. 80, } *Province in Greece*  
*Pelagonne*, p. 86, }
- Pernasus*, p. 135, Mt. *Parnassus*
- Perse*, p. 19, etc., *Persia*
- Phylstees*, p. 253, etc., *Philistines*
- Piside*, p. 111, *Pisside*, p. 112, *Pisidia*
- Playsance*, p. 42, Lat. *Placentia*, city of

- Piacenza in Italy. The first Council of Urban in 1095 was held here
- Porphyre*, p. 298
- Puyelle*, p. 70, etc., Apulia, province of Italy
- Puy Notre Dame*, p. 42, city of Puy Notre Dame in Auvergne, France
- Rages*, p. 218, etc., the city of Edessa, called Roha and Arta by the Arabians, and Roh or Rhodes by the French of the Middle Ages. Pococke says it is supposed to be the Ur of the Chaldees.
- Raguse*, p. 85, the ancient Rhaugia, Ragusium, or Ragusa, a fortified city of Dalmatia on the Adriatic
- Rames*, p. 245, etc., ancient Arimathea, to-day called Ramleh, or Ramla, sixteen miles north of Jerusalem, famous for the tomb of Samuel
- Rauendel*, p. 221; there are no traces of this castle to-day; M. P. Paris suggests that it may be the modern Ramana, between Turbesel and Rages
- Rauenne*, p. 40, Ravenna
- Redost*, p. 87, to-day called Rodasto, between Gallipolis and Constantinople
- Rhodes*, p. 4, 194, 243, etc., the island of Rhodes
- Rome*, p. 2, etc., Rome
- Rome*, p. 147, Roumania
- Rouge*, p. 229, Lat. *Rugiam*, to-day called Riha
- Salem*, p. 250, ancient name of Jerusalem
- Salenyke*, p. 87, Salonica
- Salerne*, Salerno on the Gulf of Salerno, south-east of Naples, Italy
- Samarye*, p. 249, etc., Samaria
- Samoloc*, p. 225, corruption for *Samosac*, or *Samosae*; to-day, according to P. Paris, Samizat on the Euphrates
- Sarepte*, p. 244, the Sarepta of the Bible
- Sayette*, p. 243, 244; Lat. *Sidonem*, ancient Sidon
- Saxone*, p. 288, 289, } Saxony
- Sessouagne*, p. 140, }
- Seirs*, p. 249, a corruption of *Sichar*
- Scilice*, p. 116. See *Cylyce*
- Sebaste*, p. 249, mod. Sebastieh, the reputed burial-place of St. John the Baptist, a village of Palestine, 6 miles north-west of Nabloos
- Sexton*, p. 73, the city of Sestos, on the European side of the Hellespont
- Serorge*, p. 129, } Town near Edessa,
- Sorarge*, p. 223, } to-day called Sarug
- Sororge*, p. 224, }
- Sklavonye*, p. 260, etc., Slavonia
- Sodome*, p. 249, Sodom
- Spalete*, p. 85, to-day, Spalatro, a fortified city of Dalmatia
- Spain*, p. 167, Spain
- Stralyce*, p. 48, 69; this town has not yet been definitely recognized, although Albert d'Aix calls it Sternitz, which is a city of Sordica, to-day called Sofia
- Sur*, p. 244, Tyre
- Surrye*, p. 19, }
- Surrye*, p. 33, etc., } Syria
- Syloe*, p. 254, Siloam
- Sympole*, p. 76,
- Syon*, p. 250, etc., Sion
- Tabarye*, p. 298, 301, Tabarieh on the Lake of Gennesaret; Lat. *Tiberiadensem*
- Tabor (Mt.)*, p. 298, Mt. Tabor
- Tarce*, p. 95, }
- Tarse*, p. 115, } Tarsus in Cilicia
- Thaarses*, p. 92, }
- Tarente*, Tarentum
- Tayllenborch*, p. 65, Tollenburch, town near the junction of the Maretsch and the Danube
- Tecua*, p. 249, 258, city where Amos the prophet was born, about six Roman miles from Jerusalem—name is still Tekua
- Terme*, p. 148, town in Pisidia
- Theopoble*, p. 134, former name of Antioch
- Thessalye*, p. 70, 135, Thessaly
- Tinchebray*, p. 297, village in Normandy, near Domfront
- Torbesel*, p. 217, etc., the Tel-Bacher of the Arabian historians, to-day a little village called Tel Bacher or Tel Bechir, on the right bank of the Sadjur
- Tortuose*, p. 234, 236, etc., formerly called Antaradus, a large and beautiful city on the sea-side, between Arcas and Antioch
- Trace*, p. 70; *Thaarses*, p. 92, Thrace
- Trypple*, p. 233, etc., Tripoli
- Valerne*, p. 299, etc., Valenia, formerly called Balanea, between Giblet and Margat
- Venyse*, p. 243, etc., Venice

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <i>Ybelyn</i> , p. 242, etc., the ancient Biblim,<br>also called Gibelet, on the coast below<br>Tripoli            | <i>Ynde</i> , p. 22, India  |
| <i>Ydronte</i> , p. 4, called Hydruntum by<br>Livy and Pliny, an ancient Roman<br>colony: to-day Otranto, in Italy | <i>Yrlond</i> , p. 4, Ireland   |
|  | <i>Zebus</i> , p. 250, mistranslation or corrup-<br>tion for <i>Jebus</i> |



# Early English Text Society.

---

## OFFICERS AND COMMITTEE:

### Honorary Director:

SIR I. GOLLANCZ, F.B.A., Litt.D., KING'S COLLEGE, LONDON, W.C. 2.

### Assistant Director and Secretary:

MISS MABEL DAY, D.Lit., 15, ELGIN COURT, ELGIN AVENUE,  
LONDON, W. 9.

**American Committee** { Chairmen : Prof. G. L. KITTREDGE, Harvard Coll., Cambr., Mass.  
Prof. J. W. BRIGHT, Johns Hopkins Univ., Baltimore.  
Hon. Sec. : Prof. CARLETON BROWN, Bryn Mawr Coll., Penn., U.S.A.

PROFESSOR R. W. CHAMBERS, D.Lit.

MR. HENRY LITTLEHALES.

MR. S. J. CRAWFORD, M.A., B.Litt.

MISS A. C. PAUES, Ph.D.

MR. W. A. DALZIEL.

PROFESSOR A. W. POLLARD, C.B.,  
F.B.A.

SIR SIDNEY LEE, F.B.A., Litt.D.

MR. ROBERT STEELE.

SIR G. F. WARNER, F.B.A., D.Lit.

### Bankers:

THE NATIONAL PROVINCIAL BANK LIMITED,  
2, PRINCES STREET, LONDON, E.C. 2.

---

The Subscription to the Society, which constitutes membership, is £2 2s. a year for the annual publications, from 1921 onwards, due in advance on the 1st of JANUARY, and should be paid by Cheque, Postal Order, or Money Order, crossed 'National Provincial Bank Limited,' to the Secretary, DR. MABEL DAY, 15, Elgin Court, Elgin Avenue, London, W. 9. The Society's Texts can also be purchased separately through a bookseller at the prices put after them in the Lists.

Any Member could save time and trouble by sending the Secretary an order on the Member's Banker to pay the subscription each January, until countermanded. A printed form for this purpose would be sent on application to the Secretary.

THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY was started by the late DR. FURNIVALL in 1864 for the purpose of bringing the mass of Early English Literature within the reach of the ordinary student, and of wiping away the reproach under which England had long rested, of having felt little interest in the monuments of her early language and life.

On the starting of the Society, so many Texts of importance were at once taken in hand by its Editors, that it became necessary in 1867 to open, besides the *Original Series* with which the Society began, an *Extra Series* which should be mainly devoted to fresh editions of all that is most valuable in texts already printed and Caxton's and other black-letter books, though first editions of MSS. will not be excluded when the convenience of issuing them demands their inclusion in the Extra Series. From 1921 there will be but one series of publications, merging the *Original* and *Extra Series*.

During the sixty years of the Society's existence, it has produced, with whatever shortcomings, and at a cost of over £35,000, an amount of good solid work for which all students of our Language, and some of our Literature, must be grateful, and which has rendered possible the beginnings (at least) of proper Histories and Dictionaries of that Language and Literature, and has illustrated the thoughts, the life, the manners and customs of our forefathers and foremothers.

The Society's experience has shown the very small number of those inheritors of the speech of Cynewulf, Chaucer, and Shakspeare, who care two guineas a year for the records of that speech. The Society has never had money enough to produce the Texts that could easily have been got ready for it; and Editors are now anxious to send to press the work they have prepared. The necessity has therefore arisen for trying to increase the number of the Society's members, and to induce its well-wishers to help it by gifts of money, either in one sum or by instalments. The Committee trust that all Members will bring before their friends and acquaintances the Society's claims for liberal support. Until all Early English MSS. are printed, no proper history of our language or social life is possible.

ORIGINAL SERIES. (*One guinea each year up to 1920.*)

1. Early English Alliterative Poems, ab. 1360 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 16s. 1864
2. Arthur, ab. 1440, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 4s. "
3. *Lauder on the Dewtie of Kyngis*, &c., 1556, ed. F. Hall, D.C.L. 4s. "
4. Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight, ab. 1360, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 3s. 6d. "
5. Hume's Orthographie and Congruitie of the Britan Tongue, ab. 1617, ed. H. B. Wheatley. 4s. 1865
6. Lancelot of the Laik, ab. 1500, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 8s. "
7. Genesis & Exodus, ab. 1250, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 8s. "
8. Morte Arthure, ab. 1440, ed. E. Brock. 7s. "
9. Thynne on Speght's ed. of Chaucer, A.D. 1599, ed. Dr. G. Kingsley and Dr. F. J. Furnivall. 10s. "
10. Merlin, ab. 1440, Part I., ed. H. B. Wheatley. 2s. 6d. "
11. Lyndesay's Monarchie, &c., 1552, Part I., ed. J. Small, M.A. 8s. "
12. Wright's Chaste Wife, ab. 1462, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 1s. "
13. Sainte Marherete, 1200-1330, ed. Rev. O. Cockayne. 1866
14. Kyng Horn, Floris and Blanchefleur, &c., ed. Rev. J. R. Lumby, D.D., re-ed. Dr. G. H. McKnight. 5s. "
15. Political, Religious, and Love Poems, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 7s. 6d. "
16. The Book of Quinte Essence, ab. 1460-70, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 1s. "
17. Parallel Extraots from 45 MSS. of Piers the Plowman, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 1s. "
18. Hali Meidenhad, ab. 1200, ed. Rev. O. Cockayne, re-edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall. (v. under 1920.) "
19. Lyndesay's Monarchie, &c., Part II., ed. J. Small, M.A. 3s. 6d. "
20. Richard Rolle de Hampole, English Prose Treatises of, ed. Rev. G. G. Perry. (v. under 1920.) "
21. Merlin, Part II., ed. H. B. Wheatley. 4s. "
22. Partenay or Lusignen, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 6s. "
23. Dan Michel's Ayenbite of Lnwytt, 1340, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10s. 6d. "
24. Hymns to the Virgin and Christ; the Parliament of Devils, &c., ab. 1430, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 8s. 1867
25. The Stacons of Rome, the Pilgrims' Sea-voyage, with Olene Maydenhod, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 1s. "
26. Religious Pieces in Prose and Verse, from R. Thornton's MS., ed. Rev. G. G. Perry. 5s. [1913.] "
27. Levine's Manipulus Vocabulorum, a ryming Dictionary, 1570, ed. H. B. Wheatley. 12s. "
28. William's Vision of Piers the Plowman, 1362 A.D.; Text A, Part I., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 6s. "
29. Old English Homilies (ab. 1220-30 A.D.). Series I, Part I. Edited by Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 7s. "
30. Pierce the Ploughmans Crede, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 2s. "
31. Myro's Duties of a Parish Priest, in Verse, ab. 1420 A.D., ed. E. Peacock. 4s. 1868
32. Early English Meals and Manners: the Boke of Nourture of John Russell, the Bokes of Keruyng, Courtasye, and Demeanor, the Babees Booke, Urbanitatis, &c., ed. F. J. Furnivall. 12s. "
33. The Knight de la Tour Landry, ab. 1440 A.D. A Booke for Daughters, ed. T. Wright, M.A. "
34. Old English Homilies (before 1300 A.D.). Series I, Part II., ed. R. Morris, LL.D. 8s. "
35. Lyndesay's Works, Part III.: The Historie and Testament of Squyer Meldrum, ed. F. Hall. 2s. "
36. Merlin, Part III. Ed. H. B. Wheatley. On Arthurian Localities, by J. S. Stuart Glennie. 12s. 1869
37. Sir David Lyndesay's Works, Part IV., Ane Satyre of the Three Estaites. Ed. F. Hall, D.C.L. 4s. "
38. William's Vision of Piers the Plowman, Part II. Text B. Ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 10s. 6d. "
39. Alliterative Romance of the Destruction of Troy. Ed. D. Donaldson & G. A. Panton. Pt. I. 10s. 6d. "
40. English Gilds, their Statutes and Customs, 1389 A.D. Edit. Toulmin Smith and Lucy T. Smith, with an Essay on Gilds and Trades-Unions, by Dr. L. Brentano (reprinted 1924). 30s. 1870
41. William Lauder's Minor Poems. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. 3s. "
42. Bernardus De Cura Rei Famularis, Early Scottish Prophecies, &c. Ed. J. R. Lumby, M.A. 2s. "
43. Ratis Raving, and other Moral and Religious Pieces. Ed. J. R. Lumby, M.A. 8s. "
44. The Alliterative Romance of Joseph of Arimathe, or The Holy Grail: from the Vernon MS.; with W. de Worde's and Pynson's Lives of Joseph: ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 5s. 1871
45. King Alfred's West-Saxon Version of Gregory's Pastoral Care, edited from 2 MSS., with an English translation, by Henry Sweet, Esq., B.A., Balliol College, Oxford. Part I. 10s. "
46. Legends of the Holy Rood, Symbols of the Passion and Cross Poems, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10s. "
47. Sir David Lyndesay's Works, Part V., ed. Dr. J. A. H. Murray. 3s. "
48. The Times' Whistle, and other Poems, by R. C., 1616; ed. by J. M. Cowper, Esq. 6s. "
49. An Old English Miscellany, containing a Bestiary, Kentish Sermons, Proverbs of Alfred, and Religious Poems of the 13th cent., ed. from the MSS. by the Rev. R. Morris, LL.D. 10s. 1872
50. King Alfred's West-Saxon Version of Gregory's Pastoral Care, ed. H. Sweet, M.A. Part II. 10s. "
51. The Life of St Juliana, 2 versions, A.D. 1230, with translations; ed. T. O. Cockayne & E. Brock. 2s. "
52. Palladius on Husbandrie, englisht (ab. 1420 A.D.), ed. Rev. Barton Lodge, M.A. Part I. 10s. "
53. Old-English Homilies, Series II., and three Hymns to the Virgin and God, 13th-century, with the music to two of them, in old and modern notation; ed. Rev. R. Morris, LL.D. 8s. 1873
54. The Vision of Piers Plowman, Text C: Richard the Redeles (by William, the author of the *Vision*) and The Crowned King; Part III., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 18s. "
55. Generydes, a Romance, ab. 1440 A.D. ed. W. Aldis Wright, M.A. Part I. 3s. "

56. The Gest Hystoriale of the Destruction of Troy, in alliterative verse ; ed. by D. Donaldson, Esq., and the late Rev. G. A. Panton. Part II. 10s. 6d. 1874
57. The Early English Version of the "Cursor Mundi" ; in four Texts, edited by the Rev. R. Morris, M.A., LL.D. Part I, with 2 photolithographic facsimiles. 10s. 6d. "
58. The Blickling Homilies, 971 A.D., ed. Rev. R. Morris, LL.D. Part I. 8s. "
59. The "Cursor Mundi" in four Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part II. 15s. 1875
60. Meditacyuna on the Soper of our Lorde (by Robert of Brunne), edited by J. M. Cowper. 2s. 6d. "
61. The Romance and Prophecies of Thomas of Erceoldoune, from 5 MSS.; ed. Dr. A. H. Murray. 10s. 6d. "
62. The "Cursor Mundi" in four Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part III. 15s. 1876
63. The Blickling Homilies, 971 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part II. 7s. "
64. Francis Thynne's Emblemes and Epigrams, A.D. 1600, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 7s. "
65. Be Domes Dæge (Bede's *De Die Judicii*), &c., ed. J. R. Lumby, B.D. 2s. "
66. The "Cursor Mundi," in four Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part IV., with 2 autotypes. 10s. 1877
67. Notes on Piers Plowman, by the Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. Part I. 21s. "
68. The "Cursor Mundi," in 4 Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part V. 25s. 1878
69. Adam Davie's 5 Dreams about Edward II., &c., ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 5s. "
70. Generydes, a Romance, ed. W. Aldis Wright, M.A. Part II. 4s. "
71. The Lay Folks Mass-Book, four texts, ed. Rev. Canon Simmons. 25s. 1879
72. Palladius on Husbandrie, englisht (ab. 1420 A.D.). Part II. Ed. S. J. Herrtage, B.A. 15s. "
73. The Blickling Homilies, 971 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part III. 10s. 1880
74. English Works of Wyclif, hitherto unprinted, ed. F. D. Matthew, Esq. 20s. "
75. Catholicon Anglieum, an early English Dictionary, from Lord Monson's MS. A.D. 1483, ed., with Introduction & Notes, by S. J. Herrtage, B.A.; and with a Preface by H. B. Wheatley. 20s. 1881
76. Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints, in MS. Cott. Jul. E 7., ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, M.A. Part I. 10s. "
77. Beowulf, the unique MS. autotyped and transliterated, edited by Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D. 25s. 1882
78. The Fifty Earliest English Wills, in the Court of Probate, 1387-1439, ed. by F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 7s. "
79. King Alfred's Orosius, from Lord Tollemache's 9th century MS., Part I, ed. H. Sweet, M.A. 18s. 1883
- 79b. Extra Volume. Facsimile of the Epinal Glossary, ed. H. Sweet, M.A. 15s. "
80. The Early-English Life of St. Katherine and its Latin Original, ed. Dr. Eickenel. 12s. 1884
81. Piers Plowman : Notes, Glossary, &c. Part IV, completing the work, ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, M.A. 18s. "
82. Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints, MS. Cott. Jul. E 7., ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, M.A., LL.D. Part II. 12s. 1885
83. The Oldest English Texts, Charters, &c., ed. H. Sweet, M.A. 20s. "
84. Additional Analogs to 'The Wright's Chaste Wife,' No. 12, by W. A. Clouston. 1s. 1886
85. The Three Kings of Cologne. 2 English Texts, and 1 Latin, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 17s. "
86. Prose Lives of Women Saints, ab. 1610 A.D., ed. from the unique MS. by Dr. C. Horstmann. 12s. "
87. The Early South-English Legendary (earliest version), Laud MS. 108, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 20s. 1887
88. Hy. Bradshaw's Life of St. Werburge (Pynson, 1521), ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 10s. "
89. Vices and Virtues, from the unique MS., ab. 1200 A.D., ed. Dr. F. Holthausen. Part I. 8s. 1888
90. Anglo-Saxon and Latin Rule of St. Benet, interlinear Glosses, ed. Dr. H. Logeman. 12s. "
91. Two Fifteenth-Century Cookery-Books, ab. 1430-1450, edited by Mr. T. Austin. 10s. "
92. Eadwine's Canterbury Psalter, from the Trin. Cambr. MS., ab. 1150 A.D., ed. F. Harsley, B.A. Pt. I. 12s. 1889
93. Defensor's Liber Scintillarum, edited from the MSS. by Ernest Rhodes, B.A. 12s. "
94. Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints, MS. Cott. Jul. E 7, Part III., ed. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D. 15s. 1890
95. The Old-English version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History, re-ed. by Dr. Thomas Miller. Part I, § 1. 18s. "
96. The Old-English version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History, re-ed. by Dr. Thomas Miller. Pt. I, § 2. 15s. 1891
97. The Earliest English Prose Psalter, edited from its 2 MSS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring. Part I. 15s. "
98. Minor Poems of the Vernon MS., Part I., ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 20s. 1892
99. Cursor Mundi. Part VI. Preface, Notes, and Glossary, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10s. "
100. Capgrave's Life of St. Katharine, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann, with Forewords by Dr. Furnivall. 20s. 1893
101. Cursor Mundi. Part VII. Essay on the MSS., their Dialects, &c., by Dr. H. Hupe. 10s. "
102. Lanfranc's Chirurgie, ab. 1400 A.D., ed. Dr. R. von Fleischhacker. Part I. 20s. 1894
103. The Legend of the Cross, from a 12th century MS., &c., ed. Prof. A. S. Napier, M.A., Ph.D. 7s. 6d. "
104. The Exeter Book (Anglo-Saxon Poems), re-edited from the unique MS. by I. Gollancz, M.A. Part I. 20s. 1895
105. The Prymer or Lay-Folks' Prayer-Book, Camb. Univ. MS., ab. 1420, ed. Henry Littlehales. Part I. 10s. "
106. R. Myrny's Fire of Love and Mending of Life (Hampole), 1434, 1435, ed. Rev. R. Harvey, M.A. 15s. 1896
107. The English Conquest of Ireland, A.D. 1166-1185, 2 Texts, 1425, 1440, Pt. I, ed. Dr. Furnivall. 15s. "
108. Child-Marriages and -Divorces, Trothlights, &c. Chester Depositions, 1561-6, ed. Dr. Furnivall. 15s. 1897
109. The Prymer or Lay-Folks' Prayer-Book, ab. 1420, ed. Henry Littlehales. Part II. 10s. "
110. The Old-English Version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History, ed. Dr. T. Miller. Part II, § 1. 15s. 1898
111. The Old-English Version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History, ed. Dr. T. Miller. Part II, § 2. 15s. "
112. Merlin, Part IV : Outlines of the Legend of Merlin, by Prof. W. E. Mead, Ph.D. 15s. 1899
113. Queen Elizabeth's Englishings of Boethius, Plutarch &c. &c., ed. Miss C. Pemberton. 15s. "
114. Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints, Part IV and last, ed. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D. 10s. 1900
115. Jacob's Well, edited from the unique Salisbury Cathedral MS. by Dr. A. Brandeis. Part I. 10s. "
116. An Old-English Martyrology, re-edited by Dr. G. Herzfeld. 10s. "
117. Minor Poems of the Vernon MS., edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall. Part II. 15s. 1901
118. The Lay Folks' Catechism, ed. by Canon Simmons and Rev. H. E. Nolloth, M.A. 5s. "
119. Robert of Brunne's Handlyng Synne (1303), and its French original, re-ed. by Dr. Furnivall. Pt. I. 10s. "
120. The Rule of St. Benet in Northern Prose and Verse & Caxton's Summary, ed. by E. A. Kock. 15s. 1902

121. The Laud MS. Troy-Book, ed. from the unique Laud MS. 595, by Dr. J. E. Wülfing. Part I. 15s. 1902
122. The Laud MS. Troy-Book, ed. from the unique Laud MS. 595, by Dr. J. E. Wülfing. Part II. 20s. 1903
123. Robert of Brunne's Handlyng Synne (1303), and its French original, re-ed. by Dr. Furnivall. Pt. II. 10s. "
124. Twenty-six Political and other Poems from Digby MS. 102 &c., ed. by Dr. J. Kail. Part I. 10s. 1904
125. Medieval Records of a London City Church, ed. Henry Littlehales. Part I. 10s. "
126. An Alphabet of Tales, in Northern English, from the Latin, ed. Mrs. M. M. Banks. Part I. 10s. "
127. An Alphabet of Tales, in Northern English, from the Latin, ed. Mrs. M. M. Banks. Part II. 10s. 1905
128. Medieval Records of a London City Church, ed. Henry Littlehales. Part II. 10s. "
129. The English Register of Godstow Nunnery, ed. from the MSS. by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark. Pt. I. 10s. "
130. The English Register of Godstow Nunnery, ed. from the MSS. by the Rev. Dr. A. Clark. Pt. II. 15s. 1906
131. The Brut, or The Chronicle of England, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. F. Brie. Part I. 10s. "
132. John Metham's Works, edited from the unique MS. by Dr. Hardin Craig. 15s. "
133. The English Register of Osney Abbey, by Oxford, ed. by the Rev. Dr. A. Clark. Part I. 15s. 1907
134. The Coventry Leet Book, edited from the unique MS. by Miss M. Dormer Harris. Part I. 15s. "
135. The Coventry Leet Book, edited from the unique MS. by Miss M. Dormer Harris. Part II. 15s. 1908
- 135 b. Extra Issue. Prof. Manly's Piers Plowman & its Sequence, urging the fivefold authorship of the Vision. 5s. [On sale to Members only.]
136. The Brut, or The Chronicle of England, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. F. Brie. Part II. 15s. "
137. Twelfth-Century Homilies in MS. Bodley 348, ed. by A. O. Belfour, M.A. Part I, the Text. 15s. 1909
138. The Coventry Leet Book, edited from the unique MS. by Miss M. Dormer Harris. Part III. 15s. "
139. John Arderne's Treatises on Fistula in Ano, &c., ed. by D'Arcy Power, M.D. 15s. 1910
- 139 b, c, d, e, f, Extra Issue. The Piers Plowman Controversy: b. Dr. Jusserand's 1st Reply to Prof. Manly; c. Prof. Manly's Answer to Dr. Jusserand; d. Dr. Jusserand's 2nd Reply to Prof. Manly; e. Mr. R. W. Chambers's Article; f. Dr. Henry Bradley's Rejoinder to Mr. R. W. Chambers (issued separately). 10s. [On sale to Members only.]
140. Capgrave's Lives of St. Augustine and St. Gilbert of Sempringham, A.D. 1451, ed. by John Munro. 10s. "
141. Earth upon Earth, all the known texts, ed., with an Introduction, by Miss Hilda Murray, M.A. 10s. 1911
142. The English Register of Godstow Nunnery, edited by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark. Part III. 10s. "
143. The Wars of Alexander the Great, Thornton MS., ed. J. S. Westlake, M.A. 10s. "
144. The English Register of Osney Abbey, by Oxford, edited by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark. Part II. 10s. 1912
145. The Northern Passion, ed. by Miss F. A. Foster, Ph.D. Part I, the four parallel texts. 15s. "
146. The Coventry Leet Book, ed. Miss M. Dormer Harris. Introduction, Indexes, etc. Part IV. 10s. 1913
147. The Northern Passion, ed. Miss F. A. Foster, Ph.D., Introduction, French Text, Variants and Fragments, Glossary. Part II. 15s. "
- [An enlarged re-print of No. 26, Religious Pieces in Prose and Verse, from the Thornton MS., edited by Rev. G. G. Perry. 5s.]
148. A Fifteenth-Century Courtesy Book and Two Franciscan Rules, edited by R. W. Chambers, M.A., Litt.D., and W. W. Seton, M.A. 7s. 6d. 1914
149. Sixty-three Lincoln Diocese Documents, ed. by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark. 15s. "
150. The Old-English Rule of Bp. Chrodegang, and the Capitula of Bp. Theodulf, ed. Prof. Napier, Ph.D. 7s. 6d. "
151. The Lanterne of Light, ed. by Miss Lillian M. Swinburn, M.A. 15s. 1915
152. Early English Homilies, from Vesp. D. XIV., ed. by Miss Rubie D.-N. Warner. Part I, Text. 15s. "
153. Mandeville's Travels, ed. by Professor Paul Hamelius. Part I, Text. 15s. 1916
154. Mandeville's Travels (Notes and Introduction). 15s. "
155. The Wheatley MS., ed. by Miss Mabel Day, M.A. 80s. 1917
156. Reginald Pecock's Donet, from Bodl. MS. 916; ed. by Miss E. Vaughan Hitchcock. 35s. 1918
157. Harmony of the Life of Christ, from MS. Pepys 2498, ed. by Miss Margery Goates. 15s. 1919
158. Meditations on the Life and Passion of Christ, from MS. Addit. 11307, ed. by Miss Charlotte D'Evelyn. 20s. "
159. Vices and Virtues, Part II., ed. Prof. F. Holthausen. 12s. 1920
- [A re-print of No. 20, English Prose Treatises of Richard Rolle de Hampole, ed. Rev. G. G. Perry. 5s.]
- [A re-edition of No. 18, Hali Meidenhad, ed. O. Cockayne, with a variant MS., Bodl. 34, hitherto unprinted, ed. Dr. Furnivall. 12s.]
160. The Old English Heptateuch, MS. Cott. Claud. B. IV., ed. S. J. Crawford, M.A. 42s. 1921
161. Three O.E. Prose Texts, MS. Cott. Vit. A. XV., ed. Dr. S. Rypins. 25s. "
162. Facsimile of MS. Cotton Nero A. x (Pearl, Cleanness, Patience and Sir Gawain), Introduction by Sir I. Gollancz. 68s. 1922
163. Book of the Foundation of St. Bartholomew's, Smithfield, ed. the late Sir Norman Moore. 10s. 1923
164. Pecock's Fowler to the Donet, ed. by Miss E. Vaughan Hitchcock. 30s. "
165. Middleton's Chynon of England, with Leland's Assertio Arturii and Robinson's translation, ed. Prof. W. E. Mead, Ph.D. 25s. "

# EXTRA SERIES. (One guinea each year up to 1920.)

*The Publications for 1867-1919 (one guinea each year) are:—*

- I. William of Palerne; or, William and the Werwolf. Re-edited by Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 12s. 1867
- II. Early English Pronunciation with especial Reference to Shakspeare and Chaucer, by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part I. 10s. "
- III. Caxton's Book of Curtesye, in Three Versions. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. 5s. 1868
- IV. Havelok the Dane. Re-edited by the Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 10s. "
- V. Chaucer's Boethius. Edited from the two best MSS. by Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 12s. "
- VI. Chevelere Assigne. Re-edited from the unique MS. by Lord Aldenham, M.A. 3s. "
- VII. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part II. 10s. 1869
- VIII. Queene Elizabethes Achaedemy, &c. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. Essays on early Italian and German Books of Courtesy, by W. M. Rossetti and Dr. E. Oswald. 13s. "
- IX. Aweley's Fraternity of Vacabondes, Harman's Caveat, &c. Ed. E. Viles & F. J. Furnivall. 7s. 6d. "
- X. Andrew Boorde's Introduction of Knowledge, 1547, Dyetary of Helth, 1542, Barnes in Defence of the Berde, 1542-3. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. 18s. 1870
- XI. Barbour's Bruce, Part I. Ed. from MSS. and editions, by Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 12s. "
- XII. England in Henry VIII's Time: a Dialogue between Cardinal Pole & Lupset, by Thom. Starkey, Chaplain to Henry VIII. Ed. J. M. Cowper. Part II. 12s. (Part I. is No. XXXII, 1878, 8s.) 1871
- XIII. A Supplication of the Beggars, by Simon Fish, 1528-9 A.D., ed. F. J. Furnivall; with A Supplication to our Moste Soueraigne Lorde; A Supplication of the Poore Commons; and The Decayes of England by the Great Multitude of Sheep, ed. by J. M. Cowper, Esq. 6s. "
- XIV. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, Esq., F.R.S. Part III. 10s. "
- XV. Robert Crowley's Thirty-One Epigrams, Voyce of the Last Trumpet, Way to Wealth, &c., A.D. 1550-1, edited by J. M. Cowper, Esq. 12s. 1872
- XVI. Chaucer's Treatise on the Astrolabe. Ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 6s. "
- XVII. The Complaynt of Scotlande, 1549 A.D., with 4 Tracts (1542-48), ed. Dr. Murray. Part I. 10s. "
- XVIII. The Complaynt of Scotlande, 1549 A.D., ed. Dr. Murray. Part II. 8s. 1873
- XIX. Oure Ladyes Myroure, A.D. 1530, ed. Rev. J. H. Blunt, M.A. 24s. "
- XX. Lovelich's History of the Holy Grail (ab. 1450 A.D.), ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part I. 8s. 1874
- XXI. Barbour's Bruce, Part II., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 4s. "
- XXII. Henry Brinklow's Complaynt of Roderyk Mors (ab. 1542): and The Lamentacion of a Christian against the Citty of London, made by Roderigo Mors, A.D. 1545. Ed. J. M. Cowper. 9s. "
- XXIII. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part IV. 10s. "
- XXIV. Lovelich's History of the Holy Grail, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part II. 10s. 1875
- XXV. Guy of Warwick, 15th-century Version, ed. Prof. Zupitza. Part I. 20s. "
- XXVI. Guy of Warwick, 15th-century Version, ed. Prof. Zupitza. Part II. 14s. 1876
- XXVII. Bp. Fisher's English Works (died 1585), ed. by Prof. J. E. B. Mayor. Part I, the Text. 16s. "
- XXVIII. Lovelich's Holy Grail, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part III. 10s. 1877
- XXIX. Barbour's Bruce. Part III., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 21s. "
- XXX. Lovelich's Holy Grail, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part IV. 15s. 1878
- XXXI. The Alliterative Romance of Alexander and Dindimus, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 6s. "
- XXXII. Starkey's "England in Henry VIII's time." Pt. I. Starkey's Life and Letters, ed. S. J. Hertridge. 8s. "
- XXXIII. Gesta Romanorum (englisht ab. 1440), ed. S. J. Hertridge, B.A. 15s. 1879
- XXXIV. The Charlemagne Romances:—1. Sir Ferumbras, from Ashm. MS. 33, ed. S. J. Hertridge. 15s. "
- XXXV. Charlemagne Romances:—2. The Sege of Melayne, Sir Otuel, &c., ed. S. J. Hertridge. 12s. 1880
- XXXVI. Charlemagne Romances:—3. Lyf of Charles the Grete, Pt. I., ed. S. J. Hertridge. 16s. "
- XXXVII. Charlemagne Romances:—4. Lyf of Charles the Grete, Pt. II., ed. S. J. Hertridge. 15s. 1881
- XXXVIII. Charlemagne Romances:—5. The Sowdone of Babylone, ed. Dr. Hausknecht. 15s. "
- XXXIX. Charlemagne Romances:—6. Rauf Colyear, Roland, Otuel, &c., ed. S. J. Hertridge, B.A. 15s. 1882
- XL. Charlemagne Romances:—7. Huon of Burdeux, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Part I. 15s. "
- XLI. Charlemagne Romances:—8. Huon of Burdeux, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Pt. II. 15s. 1883
- XLII. Guy of Warwick: 2 texts (Auchinleck MS. and Caius MS.), ed. Prof. Zupitza. Part I. 15s. "
- XLIII. Charlemagne Romances:—9. Huon of Burdeux, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Pt. III. 15s. 1884
- XLIV. Charlemagne Romances:—10. The Four Sons of Aymon, ed. Miss Octavia Richardson. Pt. I. 15s. "
- XLV. Charlemagne Romances:—11. The Four Sons of Aymon, ed. Miss O. Richardson. Pt. II. 20s. 1885
- XLVI. Sir Bevis of Hamton, from the Auchinleck and other MSS., ed. Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D. Part I. 10s. "
- XLVII. The Wars of Alexander, ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D. 20s. 1886
- XLVIII. Sir Bevis of Hamton, ed. Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D. Part II. 10s. "
- XLIX. Guy of Warwick, 2 texts (Auchinleck and Caius MSS.), Pt. II., ed. Prof. J. Zupitza, Ph.D. 15s. 1887
- L. Charlemagne Romances:—12. Huon of Burdeux, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Part IV. 5s. "
- LI. Torrent of Portyngale, from the unique MS. in the Chetham Library, ed. E. Adam, Ph.D. 10s. "
- LII. Bullein's Dialogue against the Feuer Pestilence, 1578 (ed. 1, 1564). Ed. M. & A. H. Bullen. 10s. 1888
- LIII. Vicary's Anatomie of the Body of Man, 1548, ed. 1577, ed. F. J. & Percy Furnivall. Part I. 15s. "
- LIV. Caxton's Englyshing of Alain Chartier's Orial, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall & Prof. P. Meyer. 5s. "
- LV. Barbour's Bruce, ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D. Part IV. 5s. 1889
- LVI. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, Esq., F.R.S. Pt. V., the present English Dialects. 25s. "
- LVII. Caxton's Eneydos, A.D. 1490, coll. with its French, ed. M. T. Culley, M.A. & Dr. F. J. Furnivall. 13s. 1890
- LVIII. Caxton's Blanchardyn & Eglantine, c. 1489, extracts from ed. 1595, & French, ed. Dr. L. Kellner. 17s. 1890

LIX. Guy of Warwick, 2 texts (Auchinleck and Caius MSS.), Part III., ed. Prof. J. Zupitza, Ph.D.	15s.	1891
LX. Lydgate's Temple of Glass, re-edited from the MSS. by Dr. J. Schick.	15s.	"
LXI. Hoccleve's Minor Poems, I., from the Philipps and Durham MSS., ed. F. J. Furnivall, Ph.D.	15s.	1892
LXII. The Chester Plays, re-edited from the MSS. by the late Dr. Hermann Deimling. Part I.	15s.	"
LXIII. Thomas a Kempis's De Imitatione Christi, english ab. 1440, & 1502, ed. Prof. J. K. Ingram.	15s.	1893
LXIV. Caxton's Godfrey of Bolyne, or Last Siege of Jerusalem, 1481, ed. Dr. Mary N. Colvin.	15s.	"
LXV. Sir Bevis of Hampton, ed. Prof. E. Kölbinger, Ph.D. Part III.	15s.	1894
LXVI. Lydgate's and Burgh's Secrees of Philosophes ('Governance of Kings and Princes'), ab. 1445—50, ed. R. Steele, B.A.	15s.	"
LXVII. The Three Kings' Sons, a Romance, ab. 1500, Part I., the Text, ed. Dr. Furnivall.	10s.	1895
LXVIII. Melusine, the prose Romance, ab. 1500, Part I, the Text, ed. A. K. Donald.	20s.	"
LXIX. Lydgate's Assembly of the Gods, ed. Prof. Oscar L. Triggs, M.A., Ph.D.	15s.	1896
LXX. The Digby Plays, edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall.	15s.	"
LXXI. The Towneley Plays, ed. Geo. England and A. W. Pollard, M.A.	15s.	1897
LXXII. Hoccleve's Regement of Princes, 1411-12, and 14 Poems, edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall.	15s.	"
LXXIII. Hoccleve's Minor Poems, II., from the Ashburnham MS., ed. I. Gollancz, M.A.	"	"
LXXIV. Secreta Secretorum, 3 prose Englishings, one by Jas Yonge, 1428, ed. R. Steele, B.A. Part I.	20s.	1898
LXXV. Speculum Guidonis de Warwyk, edited by Miss G. L. Morrill, M.A., Ph.D.	10s.	"
LXXVI. George Ashby's Poems, &c., ed. Miss Mary Bateson.	15s.	1899
LXXVII. Lydgate's DeGuilleville's Pilgrimage of the Life of Man, 1426, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall. Part I.	10s.	"
LXXVIII. The Life and Death of Mary Magdalene, by T. Robinson, c. 1620, ed. Dr. H. O. Sommer.	5s.	"
LXXIX. Caxton's Dialogues, English and French, c. 1483, ed. Henry Bradley, M.A.	10s.	1900
LXXX. Lydgate's Two Nightingale Poems, ed. Dr. Otto Glauning.	5s.	"
LXXXI. Gower's Confessio Amantis, edited by G. C. Macaulay, M.A. Vol. I.	15s.	"
LXXXII. Gower's Confessio Amantis, edited by G. C. Macaulay, M.A. Vol. II.	15s.	1901
LXXXIII. Lydgate's DeGuilleville's Pilgrimage of the Life of Man, 1426, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall. Pt. II.	10s.	"
LXXXIV. Lydgate's Reason and Sensuality, edited by Dr. E. Sieper. Part I.	5s.	"
LXXXV. Alexander Scott's Poems, 1568, from the unique Edinburgh MS., ed. A. K. Donald, B.A.	10s.	1902
LXXXVI. William of Shoreham's Poems, re-ed. from the unique MS. by Dr. M. Konrath. Part I.	10s.	"
LXXXVII. Two Coventry Corpus-Christi Plays, re-edited by Hardin Craig, M.A.	10s.	"
LXXXVIII. Le Morte Arthur, re-edited from the Harleian MS. 2522 by Prof. Bruce, Ph.D.	15s.	1903
LXXXIX. Lydgate's Reason and Sensuality, edited by Dr. E. Sieper. Part II.	15s.	"
XC. English Fragments from Latin Medieval Service-Books, ed. by Hy. Littlehales.	5s.	"
XCI. The Macro Plays, from Mr. Gurney's unique MS., ed. Dr. Furnivall and A. W. Pollard, M.A. (reprinted 1924).	15s.	1904
XCII. Lydgate's DeGuilleville's Pilgrimage of the Life of Man, Part III., ed. Miss Locock.	10s.	"
XCIII. Lovelich's Romance of Merlin, from the unique MS., ed. Dr. E. A. Kock. Part I.	10s.	"
XCIV. Respublica, a Play on Social England, A.D. 1553, ed. L. A. Magnus, LL.B.	12s.	1905
XCV. Lovelich's History of the Holy Grail, Pt. V.: The Legend of the Holy Grail, by Dorothy Kempe.	6s.	"
XCVI. Mirr's Festival, edited from the MSS. by Dr. Erbe. Part I.	12s.	"
XCVII. Lydgate's Troy Book, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. Hy. Bergen. Part I, Books I and II.	15s.	1906
XCVIII. Skelton's Magnyfyceence, edited by Dr. R. L. Ramsay, with an Introduction.	7s. 6d.	"
CIX. The Romance of Emaré, re-edited from the MS. by Miss Edith Rickert, Ph.D.	7s. 6d.	"
C. The Harrowing of Hell, and The Gospel of Nicodemus, re-ed. by Prof. Hulme, M.A., Ph.D.	15s.	1907
CI. Songs, Carols, &c., from Richard Hill's Balliol MS., edited by Dr. Roman Dyboski.	15s.	"
CII. Promptorium Parvulorum, the 1st English-Latin Dictionary, ed. Rev. A. L. Mayhew, M.A.	21s.	1908
CIII. Lydgate's Troy Book, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. Hy. Bergen. Part II, Book III.	10s.	"
CIV. The Non-Cycle Mystery Plays, re-edited by O. Waterhouse, M.A.	15s.	1909
CV. The Tale of Beryn, with the Pardoner and Tapster, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall and W. G. Stone.	15s.	"
CVI. Lydgate's Troy Book, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. Hy. Bergen. Part III.	15s.	1910
CVII. Lydgate's Minor Poems, edited by Dr. H. N. MacCracken. Part I, Religious Poems.	15s.	"
CVIII. Lydgate's Siege of Thebes, re-edited from the MSS. by Prof. Dr. A. Erdmann. Pt. I, The Text.	15s.	1911
CIX. Partonope, re-edited from its 3 MSS. by Dr. A. T. Bödtker. The Texts.	15s.	"
CX. Caxton's Mirrour of the World, with all the woodcuts, ed. by O. H. Prior, M.A., Litt.D.	15s.	1912
CXI. Caxton's History of Jason, the Text, Part I, ed. by John Munro.	15s.	"
CXII. Lovelich's Romance of Merlin, ed. from the unique MS. by Prof. E. A. Kock, Ph.D. Pt. II.	15s.	1913
CXIII. Poems by Sir John Salusbury, Robert Chester, and others, from Christ Church MS. 184, &c., ed. by Prof. Carleton Brown, Ph.D.	15s.	"
CXIV. The Gild of St. Mary, Lichfield, ed. by the late Dr. F. J. Furnivall.	15s.	1914
CXV. The Chester Plays. Part II re-edited by Dr. Matthews.	15s.	"
CXVI. The Pauline Epistles, ed. Miss M. J. Powell.	15s.	1915
CXVII. Bp. Fisher's English Works, Pt. II, ed. by the Rev. Ronald Bayne.	15s.	"
CXVIII. The Craft of Nombryne, ed. by R. Steele, B.A.	15s.	1916
CXIX. The Owl and Nightingale, 2 Texts parallel, ed. by the late G. F. H. Sykes and J. H. G. Grattan.	15s. [At Press.]	"
CXX. Ludus Coventriae, ed. by Miss K. S. Block, M.A.	"	1917
CXXI. Lydgate's Fall of Princes Pt. I, ed. Dr. H. Bergen.	15s.	1918
CXXII. Lydgate's Fall of Princes, Pt. II, ed. Dr. H. Bergen.	15s.	"
CXXIII. Lydgate's Fall of Princes, Pt. III, ed. Dr. H. Bergen.	15s.	1919

## ORIGINAL SERIES.

*Forthcoming issues will be chosen from the following:—*

- The Alliterative Siege of Jerusalem, edited by the late Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D. [*At Press.*]  
 A Stanzaic Exposition of the Feasts of the Church and the Life of Christ based on the *Legenda Aurea*, ed. from the MSS. Harl. 3909, Harl. 2250, and Addit. 38666, by Miss F. A. Foster, Ph.D. [*At Press.*]  
 The Earliest English Apocalypse with a Commentary, edited by Dr. Anna C. Paues. [*At Press.*]  
 Trevisa's *Dialogus inter Militem et Clericum*, Sermon by FitzRalph, and *Begynnyng of the World*, edited from the MSS. by Aaron J. Perry, M.A. [*At Press.*]  
 The Sege or Battell of Troy, ed. by Miss Barnicle.
- 

## EXTRA SERIES.

*The Publications due up to 1920 will probably be chosen from:—*

- Lydgate's Minor Poems, ed. Dr. H. N. MacCracken. Part II, Secular Poems. [*At Press.*]  
 Lydgate's Troy Book, ed. by Dr. Hy. Bergen. Part IV, Introduction, Notes, &c. [*At Press.*]  
 Lydgate's Siege of Thebes, re-edited from the MSS. by Prof. Dr. A. Erdmann. Part II, Notes, &c.  
 Piers Plowman, the A Text, re-edited from the MSS. by Prof. R. W. Chambers, M.A., D.Lit., and J. H. G. Grattan, M.A. [*At Press.*]  
 King Alisaunder, two parallel texts, ed. from Lincoln's Inn MS. 150 and Laud. Misc. 622 by L. F. Powell, Esq.  
 Caxton's Paris and Vienne, ed. by O. H. Prior, Litt.D.  
 Interludium de Clerico et Fuella and Dux Moraud, ed. Prof. J. M. Manly.

*Other texts are in preparation.*

*July 1925.*

---

PUBLISHER:

LONDON: HUMPHREY MILFORD, OXFORD UNIV. PRESS, AMEN HOUSE, E.C. 4.









GEORGETOWN UNIVERSITY LIBRARY



3 9020 00469197 1



